



## Angina Pectoris and Myocardial Infarction



# Angina Pectoris and Myocardial Infarction

*With Special Reference to the  
Autonomic Nervous System*

---

HEYMEN R. MILLER, M.D.

*Formerly Principal Physician and Chief Signal Corps Climatic Research  
Attending Physician Sydenham Hospital Assistant Professor of  
Medicine, New York Postgraduate Medical School and Hos-  
pital Associate Attending Physician Montefiore  
Hospital*



GRUNE & STRATTON • • 1950  
New York





*To the memory of my son  
Frederick Montezur Miller*

Copyright 1950  
CRANE & SHATTUCK, Inc  
*381 Fourth Avenue*  
New York 16 N. Y.

Printed by WAVERLY PRESS, INC. 311 Madison Ave.  
Bound by MOORE & CO., INC. 311 Madison Ave.  
on water repellent pyroxylin impregnated cloth

# Preface

**E**VEN A cursory survey of the extensive literature on angina pectoris and myocardial infarction renders it apparent that many problems which beset workers and writers in this field are still with us. Briefly and in the main these are: confusion arising in the concept and use of the terms anginal pain, angina pectoris, and acute myocardial infarction with or without acute coronary occlusion; lack of knowledge of the physiology of pain in general and of anginal pain in particular; the comparatively large number of unrevealed or only partially explored pathways for the transmission of anginal pain; almost total ignorance of the genesis and mechanics of emotional elements which belong with the disorders in question; and above all failure to appreciate that central and peripheral autonomic reactions underlie the clinical features associated with angina pectoris and acute myocardial infarction and with many acute extracardiac conditions which simulate these disorders.

The original volume which appeared in 1939 and its reissue with an appendix three years later dealt with all these problems but paid special attention to two objectives: (1) a comprehensive and accurate delineation of the cardiac innervations; (2) the concept that the autonomic nervous system functions by a unitary or mass action to produce wide and varied clinical manifestations. It was further stressed that these manifestations as well as the mechanism of referred pain are common overlapping features which underlie most acute explosive cardiac as well as noncardiac episodes.

To help toward the first objective a series of anatomic charts of the cardiac innervation was carefully developed. The charts or drawings were presented as a progressive series from the simplest to the more complicated, each in turn adding a portion of the cardiac nerve supplies. Each drawing was designed to carry a concept or anatomic structure absent in the immediately preceding drawing and all were to be studied in the order of their arrangement. Schematic presentation was employed to keep the three-dimensional visualizations lucid and simple and wherever possible the exact anatomic relationships were preserved. Practically all the illustrations were drawn in relation to bodily contours thus permitting easy recognition of every portion of the cardiac nerve supplies in respect to the adjacent structures and to the body as a whole and furthermore thus avoiding the unsound practice of presenting fragments of the nervous system without due regard for important topographic landmarks. Technical delineations necessitated taking mild liberties with dimensions and perspective but not at the expense of accuracy. The task of developing this series of anatomic charts was facilitated by the help of Dr. L. Vosburgh Lyons, Attending Neurologist at the Neurological Institute



## Preface

**E**VEN A cursory survey of the extensive literature on angina pectoris and myocardial infarction renders it apparent that many problems which beset workers and writers in this field are still with us. Briefly and in the main these are: confusion arising in the concept and use of the terms anginal pain, angina pectoris, and acute myocardial infarction with or without acute coronary occlusion; lack of knowledge of the physiology of pain in general and of anginal pain in particular; the comparatively large number of unrevealed or only partially explored pathways for the transmission of anginal pain; almost total ignorance of the genesis and mechanics of emotional elements which belong with the disorders in question; and above all, failure to appreciate that central and peripheral autonomic reactions underlie the clinical features associated with angina pectoris and acute myocardial infarction, and with many acute extracardiac conditions which simulate these disorders.

The original volume which appeared in 1939 and its reissue with an appendix three years later dealt with all these problems but paid special attention to two objectives: (1) a comprehensive and accurate delineation of the cardiac innervations; (2) the concept that the autonomic nervous system functions by a unitary or mass action to produce wide and varied clinical manifestations. It was further stressed that these manifestations as well as the mechanism of referred pain are common overlapping features which underlie most acute explosive cardiac as well as noncardiac episodes.

To help toward the first objective a series of anatomic charts of the cardiac innervation was carefully developed. The charts or drawings were presented as a progressive series from the simplest to the more complicated, each in turn adding a portion of the cardiac nerve supplies. Each drawing was designed to carry a concept or anatomic structure absent in the immediately preceding drawing and all were to be studied in the order of their arrangement. Schematic presentation was employed to keep the three-dimensional visualizations lucid and simple and wherever possible the exact anatomic relationships were preserved. Practically all the illustrations were drawn in relation to bodily contours thus permitting easy recognition of every portion of the cardiac nerve supplies in respect to the adjacent structures and to the body as a whole, and furthermore thus avoiding the unsound practice of presenting fragments of the nervous system without due regard for important topographic landmarks. Technical delineations necessitated taking mild liberties with dimensions and perspective but not it was hoped at the expense of accuracy. The task of developing this series of anatomic charts was facilitated by the help of Dr L. Osburgh Lyons, Attending Neurologist at the Neurological Institute

Columbia University, and by the great skill and unfailing patience of Mrs Selma T Johnson, who put the drawings into final form

The present volume, rewritten in major part, still retains the purpose of bringing to the uninitiated as well as to the informed student a graphic visualization of the cardiac innervations, and of relating the clinical events of angina pectoris, myocardial infarction and allied conditions to the activities of central and peripheral representations of the autonomic nervous system. The occasion of a new edition, however, provided a welcome opportunity to furnish a more complete account of these autonomic activities as they bear upon the body in general and on the circulation in particular. Accordingly, a chapter on the general functions of the autonomic nervous system and another on the autonomic regulation of the circulation were incorporated. These chapters, together with a shorter one on the anatomy of peripheral pathways were slightly modified and reprinted from the author's "Central Autonomic Regulations in Health and Disease," by the kind permission of the publishers, Grune and Stratton.

It is hoped that these changes and additions will supplement a primary aim of the entire text, namely, to point up the important role of the autonomic nervous system in regard to clinical manifestations, differential diagnosis, functional pathogenesis, and the medical, surgical and psychologic management of cardiac states.

The past decade has sharpened the focus with which not only angina pectoris but acute myocardial infarction and allied or simulating extracardiac conditions are now regarded. The present volume has therefore been expanded to cover not only angina pectoris but fuller details of the physiologic and structural events of acute myocardial infarction. This explains the addition in the wording of the title of the book. A chapter limited to relevant electrocardiographic illustrations containing also a discussion of electrocardiographic evidence as related to certain aspects of autonomic activity was added.

Finally although there is perhaps an element of warning in the facetious observation that psychosomatic medicine is the common ground where the psychiatrist practices poor medicine and the internist poor psychiatry, an attempt has nevertheless been made to put together a brief exposition of the psychologic aspects in angina pectoris and acute myocardial infarction particularly from the standpoint of the cardiologist who encounters psychogenic or psychosomatic disturbances of the cardiac apparatus. No discussion of the heart maladies is entirely adequate without taking into account the emotional factors involved.

HEYMEN R. MILLER, M. D.

New York City

# Acknowledgments

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS are due chiefly to Dr Frank H. Luke of the College of Physicians and Surgeons, Columbia University, to whom I owe many valuable ideas and the benefit of his critical acumen, and to Professor Ernest A. Spiegel of the Temple University Medical School who was good enough to act as guide in the intricate field of neurophysiology. I have had the benefit of the critical comments of Dr M. Ralph Kaufman, Dr Carl Binger, Dr Paul Goolker, and Dr Mack Lipkin in the preparation of Chapter XIV. I wish to thank Dr Arthur M. Master of Mount Sinai Hospital for permission to use Figures 1, 4, 5, 6, and 8; Dr Robert L. Levy of the College of Physicians and Surgeons for the use of Figures 2 and 7, and Dr Harry J. Weintraub for Figure 1a. My former secretary, Miss Margaret Rose, and her successor, Miss Ann Bowers, gave much help in the preparation of the original and revised manuscripts. To my wife, Marion Montser Miller, I am indebted more than words can tell for her sensitive skill in clarifying and revising the text, and for the devotion and industry with which she worked beside me during days of heavy sorrow for us both.

H. R. M.





# Contents

vii

## Preface

### Section One General Clinical Aspects

<b>I GENERAL CONSIDERATION OF ANGINA PECTORIS AND ACUTE MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION</b>	<b>1</b>
Angina Pectoris or Acute Insufficiency of the Coronary Circulation (Acute Coronary Insufficiency)	3
Acute Myocardial Infarction without Acute Coronary Occlusion	9
Acute Myocardial Infarction with Acute Coronary Occlusion	10
<b>II CLINICAL FEATURES OF ANGINA PECTORIS (ACUTE CORONARY INEFFICIENCY) AND ACUTE MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION</b>	<b>15</b>
General Systemic Reactions Induced by Mass Action of the Autonomic Nervous System	18
Autonomic Divisional Manifestations	23
<b>III ELECTROCARDIOGRAPHIC FINDINGS IN ANGINA PECTORIS ACUTE MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION AND ACUTE EXTRACARDIAC CONDITIONS</b>	<b>47</b>
Acute Cardiac Conditions	47
Acute Extracardiac Conditions	54

### Section Two Physiological Aspects

<b>IV GENERAL AUTONOMIC REGULATION</b>	<b>61</b>
General Considerations	61
Manifestations Projected by the Autonomic Nervous System	63
Anatomic Pattern of Ganglia, Neurons, and Plexuses as a Determinant of Physiologic Behavior of the Autonomic Nervous System	66
Participation of Chemical Transmitter Substances in Physiologic Responses of the Autonomic Nervous System	72
Mass Action of the Autonomic Nervous System	75
Emergency Function of the Autonomic Nervous System	76
Antagonisms Between the Autonomic Divisions	78
Mutual Cooperation or Synergism of the Autonomic Divisions	79
Coordination and Interrelation of Central Autonomic Functions	80
<b>V THE AUTONOMIC REGULATION OF CIRCULATION</b>	<b>83</b>
Autonomic Peripheral Regulations	88
Autonomic Central Controls	105

## Section Three Autonomic Pathways for Cardiac Pain

VI PERIPHERAL PATHWAYS FOR GENERAL AUTONOMIC REACTIONS	131
VII THE SYMPATHETIC PATHWAYS FOR ANGINAL PAIN	137
VIII THE VAGAL SUPPLY TO THE HEART AND AORTA	169
IX THE ANASTOMOSES BETWEEN THE SYMPATHETIC AND VAGAL SYSTEMS	180

## Section Four Reference, Distribution and Simulation of Anginal Pain

X THE DERMATOMES CONCERNED WITH ANGINAL PAIN	185
XI THE DISTRIBUTION OR REFERENCE OF ANGINAL PAIN	194
Sites of Origin	194
The Common Territory of Reference	200
The Uncommon Distributions	201
Characteristics of Referred Anginal Pain	216
XII THE SIMULATION OF ANGINAL PAIN ANGINA PECTORIS AND ACUTE MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION	221
The Simulation of Anginal Pain in the Sternum or in the Region of the Sternum	221
Into the Left Anterior Chest or Pectoral Region	222
Into the Left Upper Extremity the Shoulder and the Rest of the Limb	222
Into the Left Side of the Face Neck Head	225
Thoracic Conditions that Simulated Anginal Pain	225
Cardiovascular Conditions with Simulated Anginal Pain	225
Simulation from Abdominal and Pelvic Conditions	226
More General Causes that Simulate Anginal Pain	227

## Section Five Concept and Mechanism of Anginal Pain

XIII PHYSIOLOGIC ASPECTS OF PAIN	233
General Considerations	233
Sites of Origin of Cardiovascular (Anginal) Pain	234
The Nervous Apparatus for the Initiation and Transmission of Pain	239
XIV PSYCHOLOGIC ASPECTS OF PAIN	243
General Considerations	243
The Individual Capacity To Feel and Experience Pain and To React to Pain	245
Classification of Individuals With Respect to Pain	251

## Section Six Psychosomatic Disorders of the Heart

XV PSYCHOSOMATIC DISORDERS OF THE HEART	255
Psychological Aspects Emotional Reactions Autonomic Activities Conversion Hysteria Infantile Mechanisms	255

# CONTENTS

Autonomic Mass Action	257
Referred Anginal Pain	260
Cardiac Disorders	261
Section Seven Treatment of Angina Pectoris and Myocardial Infarction	
XVI GENERAL MANAGEMENT AND MEDICAL TREATMENT	271
Acute Episodes	271
Acute Coronary Insufficiency	271
Acute Myocardial Infarction with or without Acute Coronary Occlusion	272
Interval or Chronic States	288
XVII SURGICAL TREATMENT	300
Neurosurgery and Paravertebral Block	300
The Artificial Vascularization of the Heart	312
Author Index	321
Subject Index	327



## SECTION ONE

# General Clinical Aspects

---

## CHAPTER I

# General Considerations of Angina Pectoris And Acute Myocardial Infarction\*

### GENERAL DEFINITIONS OF TERMS

THE TERM angina pectoris was originally employed to denote transient and recurrent attacks of precordial pain but more recently the term has been reserved for acute insufficiency of the coronary circulation. Although in many instances this insufficiency leads to myocardial damage it seems justified at least for the present to look upon acute coronary insufficiency as a separate entity<sup>4</sup> and to distinguish acute myocardial infarction associated with acute coronary insufficiency and free of acute coronary occlusion from acute myocardial infarction accompanied by acute coronary occlusion. This division into three conditions has validity but it must not be carried too far. Clinical x ray and electrocardiographic criteria usually help keep these conditions apart but overlapping of manifestations is not rare. The electrocardiographic picture of acute coronary insufficiency for example may be observed in both types of heart muscle infarction and the clinical features of acute coronary insufficiency may assume the character and magnitude of acute myocardial infarction with or without acute coronary occlusion. Manifestation of (a) a generalized autonomic mass reaction and (b) the feature of anginal pain and its radiation are common to all these conditions.

The cardinal features of shock, precordial pain with radiation and mental anguish are decidedly more apt to occur with acute damage of the cardiovascular apparatus as opposed to acute coronary insufficiency. But abrupt death may come in any of the three conditions. The nature of the precipitating cause of the acute attack, the predisposing factors in the victim and the sequelae which follow from somatic damage of the heart muscle or coronary vessels or in other organs vary in each individual case.

The remarks in this chapter are intended to be introductory and general; a more detailed account appears in the chapters which follow.

(a) *The Autonomic Mass Action*

A sudden upheaval, i.e., mass action, of the autonomic nervous apparatus as a whole may be severe, intense and wide flung, or mild and subclinical practically absent. The responses may be grouped as central and peripheral and consist of sympathetic (adrenergic) and parasympathetic (cholinergic) activities. Disturbances in temperature regulations (fever), water balance (diuresis), sleep-waking rhythm, sweating, are under central control. Many cardiovascular, respiratory and gastro intestinal reactions are initiated by peripheral as well as central mechanisms (Chapter IV).

(b) *Anginal Pain and its Reference*

Anginal pain with its transmission into the usual dermatomes is, as a general rule, a reliable guide in diagnosis. But the pain may be atypical or it may arise in an extracardiac focus and simulate anginal pain by its overflow<sup>45-48</sup> (Chapters III & I).

## OPTIMAL PERFORMANCE OF HEART AND CORONARY CIRCULATION: PHYSIOLOGIC FACTORS

The optimal performance of the heart depends mainly upon the normal state of the myocardium and an adequate supply of oxygen in the blood transported by the coronary circulation. Acute coronary insufficiency is essentially the result of a discrepancy between the requirements of the heart for blood and the ability of the coronary system to deliver the blood. The functional equilibrium of the heart and coronary circulation becomes disturbed when the cardiac load is beyond the capacity of the coronary system to make good or when the blood which reaches the heart is impoverished.

The coronary circulation is governed chiefly by aortic pressure and the peripheral resistance of the coronary bed. This peripheral resistance is influenced by (a) nervous regulation (b) the metabolism of the myocardium and (c) by mechanisms such as the strength of the cardiac contraction and variations in lymph and arteriovenous flow in the loose tissues which surround the major trunks of the coronary system (Hirsch<sup>50</sup>). There are also intracardiac factors contributing to the regulation of coronary flow but these are of comparatively minor significance. All the factors combined achieve a flexible dynamic regulation of the coronary circuit adjusted primarily to the metabolic needs of the heart muscle. The metabolic activity of the myocardium is, however, the chief determinant of the amount of fully oxygenated blood required by the heart muscle and brought to it.

To combat strain upon the heart, or, better, to overcome the influence of acute coronary insufficiency as it affects the heart, an efficient coronary circulation and an adequate supply of normal coronary blood are primary requisites.

Wenckebach<sup>12</sup> believed that the coronary flow is actually increased in coronary occlusion, but this has no solid proof

### Angina Pectoris or Acute Insufficiency of the Coronary Circulation (Acute Coronary Insufficiency)

The term angina pectoris is in many respects unfortunate. It means strangulation of the chest but this describes only part of the picture and there are other objections. For example the sensation of strangling may be absent and the distressed area may be distant and disconnected from the chest. It would however be captious at this late date to civil at the use of the term. It has come to stay. While honoring it as a label of ancient usage it has been necessary to give it a new and clearer meaning because decades of uncritical writings have piled up ambiguity and confusion not only in the employment of the term angina pectoris but also in ill assorted related designations of dubious value: false pseudo mock angina.

There are no false diseases there are only false diagnoses<sup>13</sup> and this aphorism seems especially appropriate in the study of angina pectoris. A large number of conditions it is true simulate angina pectoris but these simulations although difficult and almost impossible to distinguish at times from angina pectoris are specific conditions and not just shadow or phantom forms of angina pectoris. Until comparatively recently a wide range of clinical conditions was grouped under angina pectoris: at one pole the catastrophic explosion of acute coronary occlusion or sudden vagal cardiac inhibition causing swift death at the other pole various episodes of heart pain.

Angina pectoris is now considered the equivalent of acute coronary insufficiency. Acute coronary insufficiency as an entity separate and apart from acute coronary occlusion was recognized by many workers. Danielopolu<sup>14</sup> stated that 'anginal pain is an expression of myocardial impairment that follows from inadequacy of coronary circulation in the face of untolerated physical strain' and that 'angina pectoris is due to a disparity between burdens thrown upon the heart and the failure of the coronary circulation to withstand them'. The same point of view was set forth by Keefer and Resnik<sup>15</sup> Hallermann<sup>16</sup> Dietrich<sup>1</sup> Dietrich and Schwiگل<sup>17</sup> Buchner Weber and Haager<sup>18</sup> Buchner<sup>19</sup> Master and his co-workers<sup>20-22</sup> in this country have emphasized the recognition and significance of the condition.

### CONCEPT OF ACUTE CORONARY INSUFFICIENCY

Inadequacy of the coronary system can be induced by (a) physical diminution of the coronary circulation by arterial narrowing occlusion or congenital defects: collateral channels come into action but this may not be enough to uphold the equilibrium between the coronary circulation and the heart in the face of a sudden emergency (Blumgart and his associates<sup>23</sup>) (b) reduction of coronary



flow caused by fall in aortic pressure (or by anatomic constriction of the coronary ostia) (Buchner<sup>7</sup>), (c) reduction of coronary blood flow as a result of nervous constriction of coronary vessels (Gilbert et al<sup>18-19</sup>), (d) impoverishment of the blood in the coronary circulation as a consequence, for example, of systemic loss of blood as in acute anemia (Elliott,<sup>16</sup> Scherf,<sup>16-17</sup> Master et al,<sup>41-43</sup>) or of poisoning of the blood from carbon monoxide (Christ,<sup>10</sup> Kroetz<sup>36</sup>), and other poisons (Wyburn Mason<sup>44</sup>)

These conditions, however, may exist for a variable time, minutes or years, without acute insufficiency of the coronary circulation. What sets it off? To understand the question, let alone answer it, it is essential to bear in mind that the cardiovascular apparatus, as is the case with other systems of the body, strives and nearly always contrives to maintain an effective functional equilibrium. The adaptation between the myocardium and the coronary circulation is fundamentally an expression of what the myocardium needs and receives.

Overloading the balance at either end, as from sudden or severe physical or emotional strain touches off an acute coronary insufficiency. The equilibrium is thrown out of kilter and the coronary circulation already operating under difficulties, that is to say, with reduced reserve, now breaks down. Acute coronary insufficiency develops and in turn may produce damage to the myocardium (Buchner<sup>7</sup> Neuburger<sup>47</sup> Opitz<sup>49</sup>). Again, an abrupt or major disturbance of the coronary innervations by vagal constriction following an acute loss of blood or an occlusion of a minor coronary vessel for instance, will tip the precarious balance between coronary circulation and the myocardium. Acute coronary insufficiency will develop and focal necroses are apt to appear in the heart wall, especially in the left ventricle (Buchner<sup>7</sup>).

Thus far we have spoken of the train of events as it unfolds when the heart or coronary system or the blood itself undergoes a change. But let us suppose as in the case of healthy young individuals, that the cardiovascular apparatus and blood are normal. Can acute coronary insufficiency occur? It is difficult to answer the question categorically because it is not easy to procure correlated clinical and pathologic material with which to prove the point. Acute coronary insufficiency is encountered in subjects who are ostensibly sound and normal but in them the suspicion will not down that the heart or coronary system may have been damaged in some undetectable manner after all. The case cited below indicates however that acute coronary insufficiency may occur without discernible heart muscle damage and in a healthy comparatively young subject.

**C. P.** a 43 year old woman with essential hypertension was operated on for detachment of the left retina and became critically ill with manifestations of acute pulmonary embolization four days later. The electrocardiogram revealed signs characteristic of this state and acute coronary insufficiency. She died six days later. The autopsy revealed several pulmonary emboli with the heart and coronary vessels normal (electrocardiogram on p. 46).

Not only in cardiovascular states but in those which involve other organs and systems disturbances in regulation may lead to severe symptoms which are however usually reversible and unaccompanied by somatic, i.e. structural damage. But, if prolonged or intense enough the disturbance may become irreversible and thus constitute a serious threat to life or actually produce death sometimes in short order as by vagal inhibition of the frog's heart when the epigastrium is forcibly tapped. On the other hand the dysregulation may go on to produce somatic damage and thus eventually causes its own sequence of events reversible or not as the case may be. The dividing line or zone between dysregulation of function and anatomic change is not always clear, let alone discernible. This principle underlies the outcome of many disorders of the human system and the problem of acute coronary insufficiency and myocardial damage is no exception.

### *Precipitating Agents and Factors*

The most frequent precipitating agents or factors are overexertion, intense emotion, severe fatigue, heavy or indiscreet eating and adverse meteorologic conditions. Straining at stool, sexual intercourse, lifting excessive weights, walking stairs, rapid walking or running upon level ground, bring on an attack also deep fatigue particularly if accompanied by hypotension. Severe cold walking against a sharp wind, the ingestion of heavy or large meals or excessive amounts of fluid produce attacks. Attacks also come with acute loss of blood, dehydration, trauma to the chest or reflexly from trauma to other parts of the body. Tobacco is probably an offender more so in a predisposing way. (See Boyle et al.<sup>6</sup> for effect of nicotine in inducing coronary insufficiency.) Hypoglycemia, the injection of pituitrin, adrenalin or other sympathomimetic substances, the inhalation of carbon monoxide, exposure to trichlorethylene or other poisons, postoperative shock, the effect of anesthesia, a sudden change in cardiac rhythm (paroxysmal tachycardia), heart failure and peripheral collapse are all capable of precipitating an attack. Other instigators are general infections, pulmonary embolization, sudden dislocation of thoracic contents as in massive pulmonary collapse, acute pneumothorax, acute pericardial or pleural effusions, a severe asthmatic paroxysm, the crisis of acute thyrotoxicosis, states of hypertension, gout and other metabolic as well as allergic and toxic conditions. All these factors fall into three groups<sup>11-12</sup> (1) sudden increase in cardiac work, (2) reduction in coronary blood flow, (3) interference with oxygenation of the blood.

Unless evidence to the contrary exists, it may be taken for granted that a young subject possesses a sound cardiovascular system. Yet acute coronary insufficiency in such a person may be brought on, as already suggested, by a sudden or severe loss of blood or by shock, as in post-operative situations. Whether physical exertion can act in a similar way in these individuals is not

flow caused by fall in aortic pressure (or by anatomic constriction of the coronary ostia) (Buchner<sup>7</sup>), (c) reduction of coronary blood flow as a result of nervous constriction of coronary vessels (Gilbert et al<sup>18-19</sup>), (d) impoverishment of the blood in the coronary circulation as a consequence, for example, of systemic loss of blood as in acute anemia (Elliott,<sup>18</sup> Scherf,<sup>44-47</sup> Master et al,<sup>41-43</sup>) or of poisoning of the blood from carbon monoxide (Christ,<sup>10</sup> Kroetz<sup>30</sup>), and other poisons (Wyburn Mason<sup>44</sup>)

These conditions, however, may exist for a variable time—minutes or years, without acute insufficiency of the coronary circulation. What sets it off? To understand the question—let alone answer it, it is essential to bear in mind that the cardiovascular apparatus as is the case with other systems of the body, strives and nearly always contrives to maintain an effective functional equilibrium. The adaptation between the myocardium and the coronary circulation is fundamentally an expression of what the myocardium needs and receives.

Overloading the balance at either end, as from sudden or severe physical or emotional strain, touches off an acute coronary insufficiency. The equilibrium is thrown out of kilter and the coronary circulation—already operating under difficulties, that is to say, with reduced reserve, now breaks down. Acute coronary insufficiency develops and in turn may produce damage to the myocardium (Buchner,<sup>7</sup> Neuburger<sup>47</sup> Opitz<sup>49</sup>). Again, an abrupt or major disturbance of the coronary innervations by vagal constriction following an acute loss of blood or an occlusion of a minor coronary vessel—for instance, will tip the precarious balance between coronary circulation and the myocardium. Acute coronary insufficiency will develop and focal necroses are apt to appear in the heart wall—especially in the left ventricle (Buchner<sup>7</sup>).

Thus far we have spoken of the train of events as it unfolds when the heart or coronary system or the blood itself undergoes a change. But let us suppose as in the case of healthy young individuals that the cardiovascular apparatus and blood are normal. Can acute coronary insufficiency occur? It is difficult to answer the question categorically because it is not easy to procure correlated clinical and pathologic material with which to prove the point. Acute coronary insufficiency is encountered in subjects who are ostensibly sound and normal but in them the suspicion will not down that the heart or coronary system may have been damaged in some undetectable manner after all. The case cited below indicates however that acute coronary insufficiency may occur without discernible heart muscle damage and in a healthy, comparatively young subject.

**C P**—a 43-year-old woman with essential hypertension was operated on for detachment of the left retina and became critically ill with manifestations of acute pulmonary embolization four days later. The electrocardiogram revealed signs characteristic of this state and acute coronary insufficiency. She died six days later. The autopsy revealed several pulmonary emboli with the heart and coronary vessels normal (electrocardiogram on p. 46).

metabolites) held responsible for pain in skeletal muscles. This analogy however, may not be altogether complete.

In the first place unlike skeletal muscle the myocardium is one continuous branching system no sarcolemma sheaths each muscle fiber as is the case of the skeletal musculature. An anoxic state therefore would be expected to produce the greatest and most extensive pain since the entire myocardium is affected. In practice however such a correlation is not the rule. Secondly the oxygen supply to the heart is safeguarded up to a certain point. Below this point under the unfavorable circumstance, for example, of lowered arterial oxygen saturation the myocardium tends to be protected against the effects of anoxia by such regulatory devices as an increase in capillary oxygen utilization, nervous regulation of the coronary flow, changes in cardiac rate and in arterial systemic pressure and finally by intrinsic changes in the metabolic processes within the myocardial fibers. This is not to gainsay however that localized oxygen deprivation of the heart muscle may occur in advanced arteriosclerotic or functional constriction (spasm) of the coronary vessels. The point is that in a localized and even in some cases of more extensive anoxemia of the heart muscle an effective compensatory adaptation will tend to offset the deleterious effect of lack of oxygen. Experimental and clinical observations lend support to this premise.

For example in the dog Gorham and Martin<sup>21</sup> were able to demonstrate that pain resulted from indirectional traction exerted on a coronary vessel in one plane the caliber of the vessel was increased and the flow through it enhanced. Furthermore abrupt ligation of a coronary vessel in the dog is accompanied by intense pain. Within a few hours though the ligature is still tight the pain may disappear although the compromised segment of heart muscle obviously still remains inadequately supplied with blood and oxygen.

Clinically sudden coronary thrombosis, attended by almost devastating pain is a common experience. Yet, after an interval of a few hours with the thrombus undisturbed and the affected cardiac area still deprived of its normal blood supply the pain will let up and disappear. Again as in the case of marked anemia or advanced luetic aortitis with almost complete closure of the coronary ostia and presumptive reduction of the blood supply to the heart cardiac pain will not be a constant feature. A supplementary blood supply through intercoronary channels and arteriovenous anastomoses raises the threshold for cardiac pain yet accepting this if pain were due to anoxemia alone one would expect it to be of the utmost severity since the entire myocardium as one unit would be deprived of oxygen. The fact of the matter is, as suggested a moment ago the extent and severity of cardiac infarction is not always paralleled by the character and severity of pain. A coronary thrombosis in a small or moderately sized vessel infarcting a limited portion of heart muscle

altogether clear, even though it has been claimed that marathon runners may collapse from an acute cardiac dilatation to which acute coronary insufficiency was a precursor. Practitioners of psychosomatic medicine accept severe emotional strain as a valid precipitating cause. In middle aged and older subjects the onset of an attack almost always presupposes that a cardiovascular derangement antedated the coronary insufficiency and contributed to it. Often however, the functional derangement or the anatomic damage previously sustained may be so minimal as to deprive the heart and the coronary circulation of little if any functional capacity to meet threatening emergencies.

### *Symptoms and Signs*

Acute coronary insufficiency (angina pectoris) is generally characterized by mild episodes of evanescent chest pain, cardiovascular and general systemic reactions remaining slight or minimal. A disturbance in the regulation of the coronary circulation is at fault but the heart and its action may be quite good, the dynamics of the circulation little deranged and the general autonomic effects minimal. Fever, leukocytosis, rapid sedimentation rate and gastro intestinal symptoms are absent or inconspicuous. Pain is variable, usually not intense, fatigue and some degree of prostration may set in. However acute coronary insufficiency (angina pectoris) is not always so gentle a phenomenon. Cardiac as well as systemic disturbances can be severe. Sudden death has been known to occur even though the heart and coronary system have suffered no structural impairment. The insufficiency of the coronary system is as a rule reversible, the paroxysm of the attack subsiding quickly or yielding to nitroglycerine rest and the removal of the offending or precipitating agent.

Anginal pain is the most constant and perhaps most significant symptom. The cause is still not fully understood. Those of an archeologic turn of mind can unearth scores of theories (Huchard<sup>44</sup>), but these we have deliberately avoided. The present explanation of anginal pain revolves chiefly about an inability of the coronary circulation to provide an adequate amount of oxygen to the heart muscle and the hypothesis that anoxemia with resulting ischemia is the cause of anginal pain is strongly upheld by many cardiologists. The theory however, is not entirely free from criticism.

### *Anginal Pain and Myocardial Anoxemia\**

The theory that anoxemia of the heart muscle causes cardiac pain is based on an analogy of the local conditions (oxygen lack, fatigue accumulation of

\* These remarks are not intended to be a complete refutation of the concept of anoxemia of the myocardium as the cause of cardiac pain but are offered merely as a critique and to point up the possibility that features other than the lack of oxygen may be significant.

## Acute Myocardial Infarction

## ACUTE MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION WITHOUT CORONARY OCCLUSION

Acute damage of heart muscle without the intervention of acute coronary occlusion has been a puzzling autopsy finding for many decades and the specific clinical delineations of the condition were none too well defined. Gradually, however, it became apparent that the heart could undergo damage in relation to the coronary circulation when the latter became impaired (p. 4). When the heart itself is impaired by noncoronary causes such as carbon monoxide poisoning or a marked loss of systemic blood or by disease the coronary circulation is given a task to which it may prove unequal and it becomes insufficient. But whether rendered insufficient primarily or secondarily, the impairment of the coronary circulation if prolonged and severe will cause initial injury or increased damage to the myocardium. This damage is disseminated in character and consists of multiple foci which go on to necrosis and then in many cases to healing.

An acute lowering of the systemic blood pressure in the dog produces after a while myocardial damage. This effect of lowered aortic pressure obviously is significant in connection with acute coronary insufficiency initiated by shock, hemorrhage etc. (Wegria et al.<sup>22</sup>). On the other hand, with the aortic pressure unchanged and cardiac output kept presumably unaltered clamping a major coronary vessel in the dog for ten to fifteen seconds will provoke according to Green and Wegria<sup>23</sup> a prompt and augmented coronary flow. This reactive hyperemia is induced by the local metabolic change in the heart muscle.

The chief determinant in acute myocardial infarction free of acute coronary occlusion may therefore be described as physiologic in nature and related mainly to the interrelationship and interdependence between the coronary circulation and the myocardium. The myocardial infarction is the anatomic evidence of acute coronary insufficiency. Many investigators from the laboratory and clinic contributed to this understanding. To mention a few: Anrep et al.<sup>1, 3</sup> Rein<sup>24</sup> Kroetz<sup>25</sup> Scherf<sup>26</sup> Buchner and Lucadou<sup>4</sup> Buchner<sup>7</sup> Neuburger<sup>47</sup> Opitz<sup>49</sup> Friedberg and Horn<sup>17</sup> Gross and Sternberg<sup>2</sup> Blumgart et al.<sup>4, 5</sup> Master et al.<sup>41-43</sup>

*Pre-existing and Precipitating Factors*

These are in general practically identical with those described in acute coronary insufficiency. Acute heart infarction however more frequently strikes older individual and in them coronary sclerosis with or without hypertension or aortic disease are frequently pre-existing factors. The sequence of events is probably as follows: acute coronary insufficiency is precipitated by some acute provocation abetted as it were by an underlying anatomic alteration of the cardiovascular apparatus and the acute insufficiency leads to myocardial infarction.

may precipitate the most overwhelming kind of cardiac pain and general reaction

The production of pain when a human being is exposed to breathing low oxygen mixtures, as described by Rothschild and Kassin<sup>35</sup> and later more extensively elaborated by Levy and his associates,<sup>36</sup> is undoubtedly associated with an anoxic state in the myocardium. However, it is not established whether an anoxic state of the cerebral centers, under such circumstances, exerts an influence on the coronary circulation in man by nerve or other pathway outside the blood stream.

Although anoxemia is a factor in the genesis of heart pain can not and should not be excluded, it should be realized that certain types of intense precordial pain associated with characteristic radiations which simulate angina pectoris may be set off by excessive stimuli engendered outside the cardiac apparatus (p. 221). Esophageal herniation and the severe brachial neuritis described by some French observers (Lian<sup>37</sup>) are cases in point.

An example of anginal pain associated with esophageal hernia is that of G. L., a 48 year old female who was admitted several times to Montefiore Hospital. She was known to have a bleeding gastric ulcer and a congenital diaphragmatic hernia and she suffered a number of episodes characterized by severe anginal pain in the lower sternal region radiating to the back and on occasions to the left shoulder. In one typical attack her blood pressure rose from 168/120 to 250/138 and she developed leukocytosis. The electrocardiographic tracings were always negative for signs of myocardial alteration. Over a subsequent period of three years observation she showed no features of coronary occlusion or attendant heart muscle damage.

In this type of case, we are most probably dealing not with a state of anoxia but with a mechanism whereby afferent stimuli from a noncardiac viscus or structure enter the neuraxis at levels linked by afferent neurons to the extracardiac organ or structure in question. Pain is registered in the heart and related dermatomes (p. 185).

Relevant too, are the observations on the precipitation of cardiac pain by stimulating a peripheral part of the autonomic nervous system. Leriche<sup>38</sup> brought on intense cardiac pain in human beings by stimulating the left stellate ganglion, and Spiegel and Hashimoto<sup>39</sup> obtained the same result in dogs. That the coronary bed in man may suffer a reduction in blood flow as a consequence of functional neurogenic factors is strongly implied by the fundamental investigations on animals by Anrep and Segall<sup>4</sup> and by the corroborative studies of Rein<sup>54</sup> and Gollwitzer Meier and Krueger.<sup>5</sup> Gilbert and his associates<sup>13, 19</sup> observed a reduction in the coronary blood flow in dogs after experimentally induced abdominal distention and they reported the onset of pain in human beings from similar causes.

Electrocardiographic findings during an attack consist of depression (sagging) of the R-ST segment in one or more leads and often T inversions (p. 42). The findings may disappear as abruptly as they come (Chapter III).

## Acute Myocardial Infarction

## ACUTE MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION WITHOUT CORONARY OCCLUSION

Acute damage of heart muscle without the intervention of acute coronary occlusion has been a puzzling autopsy finding for many decades and the peptic clinical delineations of the condition were none too well defined. Gradually, however, it became apparent that the heart could undergo damage in relation to the coronary circulation when the latter became impaired (p. 4). When the heart itself is impaired by noncoronary causes such as carbon monoxide poisoning or a marked loss of systemic blood or by disease the coronary circulation is given a task to which it may prove unequal and it becomes insufficient. But whether rendered insufficient primarily or secondarily, the impairment of the coronary circulation if prolonged and severe will cause initial injury or increased damage to the myocardium. This damage is disseminated in character and consists of multiple foci which go on to necrosis and then, in many cases, to healing.

An acute lowering of the systemic blood pressure in the dog produces after a while myocardial damage. This effect of lowered aortic pressure obviously is significant in connection with acute coronary insufficiency initiated by shock, hemorrhage, etc. (Wegria et al.<sup>20</sup>). On the other hand, with the aortic pressure unchanged and cardiac output kept presumably unaltered, clamping a major coronary vessel in the dog for ten to fifteen seconds will provoke, according to Green and Wegria,<sup>21</sup> a prompt and augmented coronary flow. This reactive hyperemia is induced by the local metabolic change in the heart muscle.

The chief determinant in acute myocardial infarction free of acute coronary occlusion may therefore be described as physiologic in nature and related mainly to the interrelationship and interdependence between the coronary circulation and the myocardium. The myocardial infarction is the anatomic evidence of acute coronary insufficiency. Many investigators from the laboratory and clinic contributed to this understanding. To mention a few: Anrep et al.<sup>1-3</sup> Rein,<sup>4</sup> Kroetz,<sup>5</sup> Scherf,<sup>6-8</sup> Buchner and Lucadou,<sup>9</sup> Büchner,<sup>10</sup> Neuburger,<sup>11</sup> Opitz,<sup>12</sup> Friedberg and Horn,<sup>13</sup> Gross and Sternberg,<sup>14</sup> Blumgart et al.,<sup>15</sup> Master et al.<sup>16-18</sup>

*Pre-existing and Precipitating Factors*

These are in general practically identical with those described in acute coronary insufficiency. Acute heart infarction, however, more frequently strikes older individuals and in them coronary sclerosis with or without hypertension or aortic disease are frequently pre-existing factors. The sequence of events is probably as follows: acute coronary insufficiency is precipitated by some acute provocation, abetted as it were by an underlying anatomic alteration of the cardiovascular apparatus, and the acute insufficiency leads to myocardial infarction.



### *Signs and Symptoms*

The clinical manifestations range from mild to severe. Since the general autonomic upheaval is, as a rule, more pronounced than in acute coronary insufficiency, centrally initiated effects are apt to be marked. Shock, fever, disturbance in water balance accompanied by marked sweating, difficulties in sleep, respiratory and cardiovascular or even gastro intestinal symptoms may dominate the picture, the sedimentation rate and the leukocyte count are increased. The cardiovascular features are obviously of foremost significance and may be varied and mild or severe.

That the clinician should long have failed to distinguish acute myocardial infarction unaccompanied by acute coronary occlusion from acute myocardial infarction associated with acute coronary occlusion is not altogether surprising since the symptoms and signs are frequently identical. With a more critical approach, it became possible to distinguish these two types of infarction on the basis of the character of the pathologic lesion and the clinical and electrocardiographic features.

Two points deserve special mention. Trauma is held to be no factor as a precipitating cause in acute coronary occlusion, at least it is less likely and acute pericarditis and intracardiac thrombi are less frequent complications in infarction unassociated with acute coronary occlusion, because the myocardial lesion does not encroach on the inner and outer linings of the heart. The last is not an absolute rule. Heart failure may be an early complication or appear some time after the acute attack is over. The prognosis of acute myocardial infarction uncomplicated by acute coronary occlusion is probably better than in acute heart damage accompanied by acute coronary occlusion but it would be hazardous to count too heavily on this.

### *Electrocardiographic Findings*

The electrocardiogram discloses early R ST depression which gradually returns to the isoelectric line. T inversions in one or more leads and a conspicuous absence of Q waves (p. 52). The signs are practically identical with those noted in acute coronary insufficiency.

### ACUTE MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION WITH ACUTE CORONARY OCCLUSION

Acute coronary occlusion as a clinical entity was recognized many years ago. Hammer in 1878 diagnosed a case before death, complete heart block was a prominent feature. Dock<sup>15</sup> diagnosed a case before death. Kent Marie<sup>16</sup> in 1896 and M. Sternberg<sup>17</sup> in 1914 published accounts of acute coronary occlusion. The Russians Obrastzow and Straschesko<sup>18</sup> in 1920 gave a careful description of the clinical and pathologic features of the condition as well as of infarction and softening of the affected heart muscle. In 1911 Hochhaus<sup>11</sup> described 4 cases stressing the significance and course of events in acute

coronary occlusion The foremost clinical proponent of acute coronary occlusion was Herrick<sup>7-23</sup> his report roused the medical profession to the importance of the entire problem An extensive literature developed with many comprehensive monographs (Hochrein<sup>24</sup> Buchner<sup>25</sup>)

Important laboratory criteria came from Fred Smith<sup>26</sup> in 1918 and Lardee<sup>27</sup> in 1920 who described electrocardiographic signs in the onset and course of acute coronary occlusion and Blumgart and his co-workers,<sup>28</sup> employing a specially devised injection technic carried out on autopsied hearts demonstrated the significant function intercoronary anastomoses performed as accessory or collateral channels when the coronary system or heart muscle was damaged Arteriovenous anastomoses in the coronary system proved to have a similar function (Prinzmetal et al<sup>29</sup>) Clinical and diagnostic criteria of myocardial infarction associated with coronary occlusion continue to receive much attention

Three main features characterize acute coronary occlusion a mechanical block in the coronary circuit an acute coronary insufficiency and an acute myocardial injury The mechanical block cannot be dislodged but accessory collateral coronary channels and newly opened arteriovenous anastomoses attempt to short circuit it the supplementation of the coronary blood supply improves the competence of the coronary circulation and promotes healing of the injured heart muscle The ability of the coronary circulation to perform at a level not below that essential for repairing the acutely damaged area of heart muscle and the state of the rest of the heart determine the fate of the victim of acute coronary occlusion

#### *Predisposing and Precipitating Factors*

Pre existing or predisposing factors consist principally of coronary sclerosis associated with or without hypertension aortitis and polycythemia<sup>30</sup> Precipitating factors are claimed by some to be practically nonexistent<sup>31-32</sup> Others like Boas<sup>33</sup> believe that trauma or severe physical exertion have an influence on the production of coronary occlusion Intense emotional strain indiscretion in eating and other elements are still controversial etiologic factors

#### *Clinical Features*

The acute episode and immediate subsequent course are sometimes surprisingly mild and brief More frequently the clinical picture is extremely grave death taking place at once or soon after the attack or the menace of sudden death may hover over a severe and lingering illness Systemic manifestations are quite marked as a rule and attest the severity and extent of the general autonomic reaction The general circulatory effects observed in nonocclusive acute cardiac infarction are present here too Cardiovascular features especially anginal pain may dominate the picture especially in the beginning Serious

### *Signs and Symptoms*

The clinical manifestations range from mild to severe. Since the general autonomic upheaval is, as a rule, more pronounced than in acute coronary insufficiency centrally initiated effects are apt to be marked. Shock, fever, disturbance in water balance accompanied by marked sweating, difficulties in sleep, respiratory and cardiovascular or even gastro intestinal symptoms may dominate the picture, the sedimentation rate and the leukocyte count are increased. The cardiovascular features are obviously of foremost significance and may be varied and mild or severe.

That the clinician should long have failed to distinguish acute myocardial infarction unaccompanied by acute coronary occlusion from acute myocardial infarction associated with acute coronary occlusion is not altogether surprising since the symptoms and signs are frequently identical. With a more critical approach, it became possible to distinguish these two types of infarction on the basis of the character of the pathologic lesion and the clinical and electrocardiographic features.

Two points deserve special mention. Trauma is held to be no factor as a precipitating cause in acute coronary occlusion, at least it is less likely and acute pericarditis and intracardiac thrombi are less frequent complications in infarction unassociated with acute coronary occlusion because the myocardial lesion does not encroach on the inner and outer linings of the heart. The last is not an absolute rule. Heart failure may be an early complication or appear some time after the acute attack is over. The prognosis of acute myocardial infarction uncomplicated by acute coronary occlusion is probably better than in acute heart damage accompanied by acute coronary occlusion but it would be hazardous to count too heavily on this.

### *Electrocardiographic Findings*

The electrocardiogram discloses early R ST depression which gradually returns to the isoelectric line, T inversions in one or more leads and a conspicuous absence of Q waves (p. 52). The signs are practically identical with those noted in acute coronary insufficiency.

### ACUTE MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION WITH ACUTE CORONARY OCCLUSION

Acute coronary occlusion as a clinical entity was recognized many years ago. Hammer in 1878 diagnosed 1 case before death, complete heart block was a prominent feature. Dock<sup>15</sup> diagnosed 1 case before death. René Marie<sup>16</sup> in 1896 and M. Sternberg<sup>17</sup> in 1914 published accounts of acute coronary occlusion. The Russians Obristzow and Strischesko<sup>18</sup> in 1920 gave a careful description of the clinical and pathologic features of the condition as well as of infarction and softening of the affected heart muscle. In 1911 Hochhaus<sup>11</sup> described 4 cases, stressing the significance and course of events in acute

- " DANIELOPOLO D L *Angine de poitrine et l'angine abdominale* Paris Masson 1927
- " DIETRICH S *Die Angina pectoris ein Syndrom der Ischämie des Herzens nicht Krankheitsseinheit* Med Welt 1933 7 42
- " DIETRICH E AND SCHWIEGA H *Das Schmerzproblem der Angina pectoris* Klin Wchnschr 1933 17 135
- " — AND — *Angina pectoris und Anoxie des Herzmuskels* Ztschr klin Med 1933 125 192
- " DOCK G *Some notes on the coronary arteries* Med & Surg Reporter 1896 75 1
- " ELLIOTT A H *Anemia as the cause of angina pectoris in the presence of healthy coronary arteries and aorta* report of case Am J M Sc 1931 187 185
- FRIEDBERG C A AND HORN H *Acute myocardial infarction not due to coronary artery occlusion* J A M A 1939 112 16 5
- " GILBERT V C FENN G K AND LEROY G V *The effect of distention of abdominal viscera on the coronary blood flow* J A M A 1940 115 1962
- LEROY G V AND FENN G K *The effect of distention of abdominal viscera on the blood flow in the circumflex branch of the left coronary artery of the dog* Am Heart J 1940 20 519
- " G LUTZNER MEIER A AND KETTERER F *Der Einfluss des Sympathikus auf die Koronargefäße* Pflügers Arch 1935 236 394
- " GORNAN L W AND MARTIN L J *Coronary occlusion with and without pain* Arch Int Med 1938 67 871
- " GREEN H H AND WECHEA R *Effects of aphyxia anoxia and myocardial ischemia on the coronary blood flow* Am J Physiol 1942 135 271
- " GROSS H AND STERNBERG W H *Myocardial infarction without significant lesions of coronary arteries* Arch Int Med 1939 64 249
- " HALLERMAN W *Der plötzliche Herztod bei Kranzgefäßerkrankungen* Stuttgart Ferdinand Enke 1939
- " HANDEK A *Ein Fall von thrombotischem Verschluss einer der Kranzarterien des Herzens* Wien med Wchnschr 18 8 28 97
- " HERBERDEN W *Some account of a disorder of the breast* Med Tr Coll Phys London 1717 2 59
- " HERBICH J H *Clinical features of sudden obstruction of the coronary arteries* J A M A 1912 59 7015
- " — *Thrombosis of the coronary arteries* J A M A 1919 77 361
- " — *A concise account of my early experience with coronary thrombosis* Am Heart J 1944 28 1
- " HIRSCH S H *L'autonomie de la circulation coronarienne. Quelques remarques topographiques sur les dispositifs de régulation de l'irrigation cardiaque chez l'homme* Arch d malades du coeur 1947 40 433
- HOCHREITS H *Zur Diagnose des plötzlichen Verschlusses der Kranzarterien des Herzens* Dtsch med Wchnschr 1911 37 2065
- " HOCHREITS M *Der Koronarreiselauf* Physiologie Pathologie Therapie Berlin J Springer 1932
- " — *Der Myokardinfarkt Erkennung Behandlung und Verhütung* Dresden u Leipzig Th Steinkopff 1937 2 Aufl 1941
- HUWARD H *Traité clinique des maladies du coeur et de l'aorte* Paris O Doin 1870
- " KETTERER C S AND PERRY W H *Angina pectoris a syndrome caused by arteria of the myocardium* Arch Int Med 1928 41 160
- " KROETZ C *Forschachungen und Kohlenoxydvergiftung* Dtsch med Wchnschr 1916 67 1365
- LERICHE R *The surgery of pain* Trans and ed by LOUG A. Ballou, C Williams & Wilkins 1931

heart arrhythmias and sudden heart failure are ever present dangers, pericarditis and intracardiac thrombi are frequent complications since the myocardial lesion is prone to involve the pericardial and endocardial linings. The lesion is generally massive, extensive and of "one piece," more homogeneous than in the myocardial infarction unattended by acute coronary occlusion. Septal damage is frequent and produces striking disturbances in cardiac rhythm and rate.

An accurate diagnosis between acute myocardial infarction with or without acute coronary occlusion may mean the difference between fatal outcome or recovery. Acute myocardial damage without acute coronary occlusion, induced, for example, by severe hemorrhage or postoperative shock calls for life saving blood transfusion or vigorous antishock treatment, but these measures would be contraindicated in acute cardiac damage produced by acute coronary occlusion.

The outcome in general varies between early or sudden death, chronic illness, and good recovery. An attack may be violent or gentle but neither aspect is a harbinger or guarantee of the eventual result.

### *Electrocardiographic Findings*

The electrocardiographic findings are characteristic and, according to some authorities pathognomonic. The R ST segment is elevated but gradually drops to the isoelectric line, T waves are inverted and cone shaped and Q waves appear (p. 54).

### BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. ANREP G. N. Regulation of coronary circulation. *Physiol. Rev.* 1926 6: 596.
2. —. Neue Untersuchungen über Physiologie und Pharmacologie der Kranzgefäße. *Arch. exp. Pharm.* 1928 138: 119.
3. —. AND SUGGILL H. N. The regulation of the coronary circulation. *Heart* 1926 13: 239.
4. BLUMGART H. L. SCHLESINGER M. J. AND DAVIS D. Studies on the relation of the clinical manifestations of angina pectoris, coronary thrombosis and myocardial infarction to the pathologic findings. *Am. Heart J.* 1940 19: 1.
5. —. —. AND ZOLL P. M. Angina pectoris, coronary failure and acute myocardial infarction. The role of coronary occlusion and collateral circulation. *J. A. M. A.* 1941 116: 91.
6. BOAS I. P. Some immediate causes of cardiac infarction. *Am. Heart J.* 1947 23: 1.
7. BOYLE M. N. WEGRIA R. CATHCART I. T. NICKERSON J. F. AND LEVY R. L. Effects of intravenous injection of nicotine on the circulation in normal persons and in patients with cardiovascular disease. *Am. Heart J.* 1947 34: 65.
8. BUCHNER F. Die Koronarsuffizienz. Dresden u. Leipzig: Th. Steinkopff, 1939.
9. —. AND VON LUDOW. —. Elektrokardiographische Veränderungen und disseminierte Nekrosen des Herzmuskels bei experimenteller Koronarsuffizienz. *Beitr. path. Anat.* 1934 93: 169.
10. —. WEDER A. AND HAAGER B. Koronarinfarkt und Koronarsuffizienz in vergleichender elektrokardiographischer und morphologischer Untersuchung. Leipzig: Georg Thieme, 1935.
11. CHRIST C. Experimentelle Kohlenoxydvergiftung. Herzmuskelnekrosen und Elektrokardiogramm. *Beitr. path. Anat.* 1934 94: 111.

## CHAPTER II

# Clinical Features of Angina Pectoris (Acute Coronary Insufficiency) and Acute Myocardial Infarction

### INTRODUCTION

THE CLINICAL aspects of acute insufficiency of the coronary circulation as an isolated functional derangement yet associated with other cardiovascular events and of acute myocardial infarction with or without coronary occlusion will be considered as a whole. This plan is employed to point up the common clinical and physiologic features of these conditions not losing sight of their respective distinguishing details.<sup>\*</sup> The symptoms and physical signs as far as possible will be discussed from the point of view of their autonomic significance.

The first part of the discussion following this introduction deals with the central autonomic responses registered as disturbances in regulation of temperature water sleep-waking rhythm sweating etc. and with common or overlapping pictures of these reactions as observed in acute explosive cardiac or noncardiac states. The second part is devoted to an account of the divisional autonomic reactions (sympathetic and parasympathetic) responsible for the signs and symptoms associated with acute insufficiency of the coronary circulation (acute coronary insufficiency) and with acute myocardial infarction.

*General considerations.* The paroxysmal nature and unpredictability of an attack of angina pectoris (acute coronary insufficiency) are general knowledge. The episode may last seconds and consist of fleeting mild precordial distress or pain or the reaction may be almost entirely emotional i.e., a feeling of apprehension or impending danger or unexpected and swift death may be the first and only evidence. On the other hand attacks of angina pectoris can recur over decades. Severe myocardial infarction more especially associated with acute coronary occlusion is a frequent cause of sudden death. Myocardial infarction with or without acute coronary occlusion can recur or come as an initial terminal event.

*Mild attacks.* These are usually due to mild episodes of acute coronary insufficiency. The condition is characterized by mild evanescent pain with or without reference into the left arm and often little else except for emotional disturbance and poor sleep.

<sup>\*</sup>See chapters I & IV.

- <sup>36</sup> LEVY R I, WILLIAMS N E, BRUENY H G, AND CARR H A The 'anoxemia test' in the diagnosis of coronary insufficiency *Am Heart J* 1941 21 634
- <sup>37</sup> LIAN C L'angine de poitrine Paris Masson 1932
- <sup>38</sup> MARIE R L'infarctus du myocarde et ses conséquences 1896
- <sup>39</sup> MASTER A M, GUBNER R, DACK S AND JAFFE H L Differentiation of acute coronary insufficiency with myocardial infarction from coronary occlusion *Arch Int Med* 1941 67 647
- <sup>40</sup> — JAFFE H L, DACK S AND GRISHMAN A Coronary occlusion coronary insufficiency and angina pectoris *Am Heart J* 1944 27 803
- <sup>41</sup> — DACK S, GRISHMAN A, FIELD L I AND HORN H Acute coronary insufficiency an entity Shock hemorrhage and pulmonary embolism as factors in its production *J Mt Sinai Hospital* 1947 14 8
- <sup>42</sup> MILLER H R The occurrence of coronary artery thrombosis in polycythemia vera *Am J M Sc* 1939 198 323
- <sup>43</sup> — The nerve pathways and clinical features of shoulder pain in relation to angina pectoris *New York State J Med* 1941 41 345
- <sup>44</sup> — The interrelationship of disease of the coronary arteries and gall bladder *Am Heart J* 1942 24 519
- <sup>45</sup> NEUBURGER K Über die Herzmuskelveränderungen bei Epileptikern und ihre Beziehungen zur Angina pectoris *Frankf Ztschr f Path* 1933 46 14
- <sup>46</sup> OBRASZOW W P AND STRASCHESKO N D Zur Kenntnis der Thrombose der Koronararterien des Herzens *Ztschr f klin Med* 1910 71 116
- <sup>47</sup> OPITZ E Herzmuskelveränderungen durch Störung der Sauerstoffzufuhr *Ztschr f Kreislauf* 1935 27 227
- <sup>48</sup> PAL J Gefäßkrisen Leipzig Hirzel 1905
- <sup>49</sup> PARDEE H I B An electrocardiographic sign of coronary artery obstruction *Arch Int Med* 1920 26 244
- <sup>50</sup> POTAIN C Des différentes formes de l'angine de poitrine *Gaz d Hôp* 1890 53 761
- <sup>51</sup> PRINZMETAL M, BFROMAN H C, KRUGER H F, SCHWARTZ L, SIMKIN B AND SOBIN S S Studies on the coronary circulation III Collateral circulation of beating human and dog hearts with coronary occlusion *Am Heart J* 1948 35 689
- <sup>52</sup> REIN H Die Physiologie der Herzkranzgefäße *Ztschr Biol* 1931 92 101
- <sup>53</sup> ROTHCHILD M A AND KISSIN M Anginal syndrome induced by gradual general anoxia *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1931 29 517
- <sup>54</sup> SCHIFFR D I in Fall von Angina pectoris *Ztschr f klin Med* 1932 120 715
- <sup>55</sup> — Koronarerkrankungen *Erg d ges Med* 1935 20 23
- <sup>56</sup> SCHLESINGER M J An injection plus dissection study of coronary artery occlusions and anastomoses *Am Heart J* 1938 15 528
- <sup>57</sup> SMITH F The ligation of coronary arteries with electrocardiographic study *Arch Int Med* 1918 22 8
- <sup>58</sup> SIEGEL E A AND HASHIMOTO S Über die Schmerzleitung aus dem cardioaortalen System in Beziehung zu den Spinalganglion und den Rückenmarksbahnen *Ztschr f d ges exp Med* 1930 71 409
- <sup>59</sup> STERNBERG M Das chronische partielle Herzaneurysma *Anatomie Klinik Diagnose* Leipzig u Wien F Deuticke 1914
- <sup>60</sup> WEGRIA R, GUEVARA A R AND WIGGERS C R A study of spontaneous fulminant shock in a heart lung-dog preparation *Am J Physiol* 1943 136 212
- <sup>61</sup> WENCKEBACH K I Angina pectoris and the possibilities of its surgical relief *Brit M J* 1921 1 809
- <sup>62</sup> WYBURN MASON R A new conception of angina pectoris *Brit M J* 1948 1 912

but among them the outstanding and by far most dramatic is the typical severe paroxysmal life-threatening oppression for all time graphically described by Heberden<sup>14</sup> as angina pectoris but now recognized as acute coronary insufficiency complicated by myocardial infarction with or without acute coronary occlusion.

In the typical severe attack pain is no ordinary depression or discomfort instead a tremendous clutching and crushing sensation holding the heart vise like in an inexorable clasp. In some cases the patient describes an iron claw grasping and tearing the heart others will live through a sensation as if a heavy bar were crushing the chest transversely at the level of the second or third intercostal spaces. This torturing anguish as if life were being squeezed out is truly paralyzing so that it is not surprising that a patient so racked remains motionless in his attempt to appease his suffering. The pain may stop as suddenly as it began.

Pain in the heart or in the region of the heart frequently spreads in a fairly typical manner. At its central point the devastating pain seems to be beneath the sternum or it may be located in any part of the breast bone. The reason for this sternal localization is no clearer to the clinicians of our day than it was to Heberden<sup>14</sup> who confessed to bewilderment on this point. From the sternum or left pectoral region pain ordinarily spreads upward curving to the left shoulder down the left arm into the elbow wrist and fifth finger thus assuming an ulnar nerve distribution. At times the distribution is into the face and throat less often into the right shoulder however radiation in any direction is not constant nor is it an essential part of the picture (Chapter VI).

A sense of fullness in the chest instead of pain in the heart may be the chief complaint in angina pectoris. This is not to be confused with so-called heart consciousness or with the feeling of goneness of which patients frequently complain. Heart consciousness is a general descriptive term often used by patients who are indiscriminating in their choice of terms. Nevertheless it expresses a degree of apprehension coupled with some kind of uneasiness localized in the heart or heart region. In certain adults of middle aged and older groups this subjective complaint should always be respected even if clinical and graphic proof of cardiovascular disease is lacking. This holds with even greater force for the feeling of goneness in the heart region. A very troublesome symptom to conquer is the fear of falling asleep either shortly after coming through an attack or during a convalescent period. This anxiety is really a fear of dying during sleep and is still more intensified if the subject has difficulty in breathing nocturnal dyspnea or breathlessness at any time. Mental features are symptoms but mental anxiety and conflict may act to precipitate the cardiac episode.

*Collapse and shock* are often striking also immobility of the body and the appearance of a ghastly grey color. Syncope may occur, but more often the



*Severe attacks* are mainly associated with acute myocardial infarction and produce vigorous and wide spread reactions. The reactions can be dramatic, terrorizing and unforgettable. The onset is often abrupt, with startling pain which comes out of a clear sky, sometimes seizing an apparently healthy person, and the attack may appear for no known reason, as when the patient has been resting or even asleep. Sometimes the sensation is one of severe discomfort and not genuine pain. Acute coronary insufficiency (angina pectoris) occasionally produces a marked clinical response.

The incidence of fatality, immediate or early, is supposedly small with a first attack in young or the older individuals who have a "sound" heart and coronary system. In such individuals, Blumgart and his co-workers<sup>4</sup> demonstrated that intercoronary arterial communications, not less than 40 micra in lumen, are available for the prompt transportation of blood to the injured heart, thus bridging an emergency, and very probably the arteriovenous anastomoses of the heart, described by Prinzmetal et al.,<sup>37-39</sup> serve a similar purpose. These anastomoses function even in hearts that have considerable coronary sclerosis. When the sclerotic process has deprived the heart of the safeguard of throwing coronary anastomoses into the breach, as in advanced hypertensive arteriosclerotic heart disease, death can come with the initial infarction of the heart muscle. Here, as in the advent of sudden, unexpected death which occurs by abrupt shut down of coronary ostia previously diseased by syphilis, the coronary circulation has managed by virtue of accessory and collateral channels to keep the subject seemingly well and free of pain.

Although the peril of a paroxysm is unmistakable the patient succumbing often during the attack he may not only survive but live to endure, over months and years, other seizures. There is, therefore, much variability in the intervals between seizures and in the symptomatology of the attacks themselves even the cardinal feature of pain may be missing. The predominant feature may be a gastro intestinal disturbance or a peripheral intense neuritis, or the entire anginal syndrome may masquerade as a serious surgical condition. Whatever the form or deviations from the classic picture of the attack and how ever long the periods of remission it is unwise to be overoptimistic in prognosis. Remissions may be deceptive and recovery seldom complete. Most treacherous of all in diagnosis is the disorder free from pain—*angina (pectoris) sine dolore*,<sup>40</sup> a condition either unrecognized or mistaken for a nonanginous condition.

Both conditions—*angina pectoris* and *myocardial infarction*—considered as a whole are characterized chiefly by precordial pain, some degree of circulatory derangement associated often with collapse and shock and by mental features of anxiety or anguish. At this juncture this triad of symptoms will be described briefly, a fuller discussion covering all the clinical aspects is developed under the sections which deal with central and peripheral autonomic influences.

*Pain* There are many kinds of heart pain, varying in severity and duration

Much milder reactions accompany an episode of acute coronary insufficiency uncomplicated by acute myocardial infarction. But in any case the general character and wide distribution of the multiple manifestations which involve many systems of the body, attest the generalized mass or universal hyperactivity of the autonomic nervous system.

Almost identical general autonomic reactions are observed in many acute explosive extracardiac conditions. This aspect will be further discussed (p. 20). The similarities sometimes make it difficult or impossible for even the best of clinician always to distinguish acute myocardial infarction (or instance from acute gall bladder or pancreatic disease or from such diverse conditions as intense brachial neuritis (Lian<sup>19</sup>) acute esophageal herniation or acute pulmonary embolization. In such circumstances the physician will come to rely for a differential diagnosis chiefly on two aids: (1) the character, duration and particularly the reference or distribution of pain into dermatomes and (2) appraisal of the autonomic reactions especially the peripheral manifestations with respect to their sympathetic (adrenergic) or parasympathetic (cholinergic) nature. The feature of pain and its distribution we shall turn to later but at this point we shall discuss the general autonomic responses.

Certain central effects such as disturbances in temperature (fever), water balance (sweating or polyuria), sleep-waking rhythm, responses of the blood can not be catalogued as sympathetic or parasympathetic. But centrally induced derangements of the circulation, respiration and metabolism are quite readily grouped in accordance with their divisional autonomic origin. The recognition of whether autonomic manifestations are central or peripheral sympathetic or parasympathetic can be of practical importance. For instance states of anxiety and terror are characterized by reactions which are chiefly adrenal sympathetic, shock and the state of sleep by responses which are predominantly parasympathetic. Understanding these differences can be of considerable help in planning therapeutic measures.

Acute myocardial infarction with or without acute coronary thrombosis is usually accompanied by fever. Fever is less likely and short lived in acute coronary insufficiency. With the onset of heart failure, particularly if the lung bases are involved or with the intervention of pericarditis or fresh infarction, fever as well as leukocytosis and an increased sedimentation rate develop. Disturbances in water balance are not marked unless congestive heart failure ensues, polyuria, excessive sweating, frequent bowel movements may be evidence of a disturbed water regulation. Gastro-intestinal and occasionally bladder disturbances arise and troublesome insomnia or poor sleep are rather frequent. Transient glycosuria is occasionally encountered and is of central origin.

Activities in various systems of the body though centrally induced can be grouped as sympathetic or parasympathetic circulatory responses reflected as

patient is wide awake and speechless. His facies are torn by suffering, anguish and terror with the stamp of death upon them. The victim, afraid to draw a breath, remains frozen in whatever position the attack overtakes him, helpless and rooted to the spot. He is likely to be drenched in cold sweat and salivation may be active. Breathing, restricted by pain, grows shallow and assumes a panting or sighing character, seldom Biot in type, more likely Cheyne Stokes. Some patients become frantic with air hunger but this is not the rule. General cyanosis usually is not present, on occasions cutaneous portions of the body well supplied by capillaries take on a livid hue, i.e., lips, lobes of the ears, malar portions of the face, toes and fingers, and often become clammy. The pulse grows feeble and the blood pressure sinks.

Obviously, the human frame is not built to withstand, for longer than the briefest time, so tremendous a disturbance as is depicted above and it is not surprising that a paroxysm lasts but a very short period in actual time. However endless it may seem to the sufferer. Generally the intensity of the attack wanes in a few minutes. There are cases where one such attack is not followed by another for months or years; again successive recurrences are close upon one another and of various and varying degrees of severity. Recovery too is variable, for some prompt, practically complete and lasting, for others prolonged, precarious and partial. A striking phenomenon is extreme exhaustion which may persist over days and weeks after the subsidence of the initial storm. Or, 'if no accident intervenes the disease goes on to its height the patients all suddenly fall down and perish almost immediately' (Heberden<sup>14</sup>).

*Mental anguish* or other psychic features are a frequent accompaniment of the acute attack. The terror of impending death may appear before an attack as an aura or premonition. This aura and the paroxysmal nature of the whole attack have suggested to some an epileptic character of angina pectoris (Trousseau<sup>15</sup>). An aura like state of mind may accompany the paroxysm of acute coronary insufficiency or acute infarction. This state of mind is known as *angor animi* and represents a fear at other times rather an overwhelming conviction, almost a certainty, of the approach of death. The Germans have described it tellingly as *Todesangst* or *Todesgefühl*. Often it is a true herald and death follows implacably. When the patient escapes death he has been so near it that the *angor animi* remains for him nonetheless a terrible and ominous experience. There are cases in which it is almost the sole subjective symptom, Allbutt<sup>1</sup> wrote, 'it chiefly consists in this'.

### I General Systemic Reactions Induced by Mass Action of the Autonomic Nervous System

A galaxy of widespread and vigorous central autonomic reactions is usually evoked by the severe attack of acute myocardial infarction which occurs with a sudden closure of a coronary vessel or even without the latter complication.

In the right lower quadrant there was moderate tenderness and some spasm of the right rectus muscle especially of the lower half. The temperature ranged between 101 and 102 F. The blood count showed 17,600 white cells, 89 polys (41 stab forms). The patient was pale, perspired profusely, and looked acutely and gravely ill. He was in shock and mentally greatly agitated by fear of death. A laparotomy promptly carried out disclosed a normal looking appendix; it was removed. On section it showed only mild chronic changes. The temperature remained at about 101 F. for about six subsequent days, then became normal. In this case the local features pointed strongly to an acute gangrenous appendicitis and were accompanied by a marked autonomic general reaction, yet no somatic damage was uncovered either at operation or during the subsequent and uneventful course.

(3) *Acute cholecystitis*. A young woman 27 years old, always in good health and married for two years, the mother of a child one year old, became very ill within a few hours. She developed fever 102-103 F., signs of collapse, sweating and some nausea. Her abdomen was soft, not spastic or distended, and no tenderness was elicitable. She gave the impression of being very ill, and had it not been for her youth and the excellent condition of her cardiovascular system a diagnosis of acute coronary occlusion might have been seriously entertained despite the absence of precordial pain. She was suspected of having a sudden explosive constriction in the abdomen, and either an acute cholecystitis or a duodenal perforation. Laparotomy on the following day revealed a very large gallbladder, the mucosa of which had already undergone patchy necrosis. The organ was distended with cloudy fluid, not yet frankly purulent. Recovery was excellent and permanent.

Averbuch has reported two interesting cases of acute generalized postoperative peritonitis associated with acute coronary thrombosis.

(4) *Cerebral apoplexy*. L. L., 5 years old, has been under observation for about 10 years. For this period she was known to have a systolic and diastolic hypertension of about 27/17 mm. Except for some difficulty in her vision due to vascular changes, she had enjoyed an active and rather well rounded life. She was suddenly stricken with a left hemiplegia accompanied by the immediate onset of marked shock, fever 102-103 F., profuse drenching sweats and a vasomotor disturbance of the skin. The latter took the form of sudden and intense cyanobluish discoloration of the face and upper torso, including the upper extremities. This coloration was quickly changed to a violaceous hue, and after ten to fifteen minutes returned to normal. Similar peripheral manifestations were noted in other parts of the body, and the involvement was never patchy but conformed fairly closely to segmental level. She showed also a disturbance in the sleep-waking rhythm and within a few weeks glycosuria appeared.

(5) *Acute pulmonary embolism*. H. M., 33 years old, had enjoyed excellent health all her life. For about fifteen years she had varicose veins of the lower limbs, more marked on the right side. With out any apparent cause she suddenly developed seizures of intense precordial pain, marked collapse associated with feeble thread-like pulse, low blood pressure (100/60), profuse sweating and mental anguish. Within a period of three months she experienced eight severe and several minor episodes of this character. In the intervals between the attacks she slowly recovered though not completely. Physical signs of pulmonary involvement became more pronounced but signs of circulatory failure did not supervene. A diagnosis of recurrent pulmonary embolization with pulmonary infarction was made and the varicose veins of the right side (because of local changes in this limb) were considered the site of origin of the emboli. The right saphenous vein was ligated and divided at the femoral triangle. Thereafter no further embolizations took place. She is now 92 years old and in good health. The repeated electrocardiograms disclosed no heart disturbance.

change in blood pressure, heart rate or output, *respiratory* reactions expressed as alteration in rate, rhythm or pattern of breathing, *gastro intestinal* symptoms which take the form of meteorism, diarrhea, abdominal colic, *genito urinary* manifestations announced mainly as kidney or ureter symptoms *sweating* pilomotor reactions, etc. These manifestations do not originate in the autonomic ganglia and neurons outside the neuraxis as in the case of change in heart rate produced by stimulating or depressing the peripheral cardiac innervations.

Shock, emotional fear, anguish and other features of acute cardiac as well as extracardiac episodes, are central autonomic manifestations. Pain, too, is almost a constant element in all these episodes but it is more strictly a peripheral manifestation. The registration of pain into consciousness by the thalamus and cortex is a central process but the mediation of pain is accomplished by peripheral pathways.

### CLINICAL EXAMPLES

The group of cases below illustrates the variety of ways in which the autonomic nervous system reacts en masse. The clinical manifestations may vary in pattern or in degree of intensity, not only in acute conditions but in subacute or chronic states as well. But the clinical manifestations excluding those directly due to somatic damage, are always expressions of an autonomic discharge. When confronted by any of these clinical conditions the physician will recognize that the attendant features of shock, lowered blood pressure, slowed heart rate, prostration, meteorism, vertigo etc. are parasympathetic in character, and that sweating, pilomotor reactions, unusual elevations in blood pressure and tachycardias are sympathetic. All the manifestations, central and peripheral are marshalled promptly and effectively as for an emergency.

(1) *Reaction to ingested spoiled food* J. S. a business executive 58 years old with mild diabetes but otherwise in rather good health complained toward the close of a work day of some nausea and general malaise. He refused his dinner. Within an hour he was in severe shock. The skin became grey and cold to the touch, the entire body was covered with perspiration. His blood pressure usually at 130/80 fell to 85/50, the pulse grew very weak and at times imperceptible. The patient was prostrated and although apparently a restrained and unemotional individual he stated that he felt his end was near. Despite the absence of precordial or referred angular pain he gave the appearance of having suffered an acute occlusion of a major coronary vessel; his condition was alarming and his chances for survival seemed poor. Within two hours however and without the administration of any medication except a small dose of morphine the blood pressure returned to normal levels, the pulse became full and strong, the skin rose colored and the exhaustion disappeared. An electrocardiogram taken the next day was normal. He resumed his work after resting another day. Subsequently it was disclosed that the patient and his brother had partaken of some spoiled food at lunch on the day of the attack and that the brother had also developed practically the same reaction.

(2) *Acute gangrenous appendicitis* D. C. 58 years old in good health developed (at 3 a.m.) intense abdominal pain especially on the right side. The pain persisted unrelieved for six hours.

infarction. The jaundice steadily deepened and a tender gall bladder mass became palpable. Fever and leukocytosis persisted, the temperature ranging from 102° to 103° F. on the tenth day. Surgical opinion held that the primary condition was either acute pancreatitis or acute cholecystitis. Laparotomy revealed an acute but resolving cholecystitis. The patient succumbed to a fresh cardiac attack on the day after operation and autopsy disclosed an acute cholecystitis with areas of resolution, a recent infarction of the posterior wall and a recent thrombosis high up in the left descending coronary vessel.

No experienced physician has failed to encounter similar cases in which the manifestations of acute explosive states constituted a violent reaction of the autonomic nervous system. Chapter VII on simulations furnishes many extracardiac examples. Since acute coronary insufficiency occurring without myocardial infarction and acute myocardial infarction with and without acute coronary thrombosis may have enough common autonomic reactions to make clinical differentiation very difficult, it is suggested that a classification which considers these three cardiovascular conditions always separate entities is perhaps too rigid.

## II Autonomic Divisional Manifestations

The individual manifestations as well as the total clinical picture of acute explosive states such as acute coronary insufficiency or acute myocardial infarction consist of responses by each autonomic division. The responses may be predominantly sympathetic or parasympathetic since each division does not necessarily react with equal magnitude or extent.

During an attack of acute myocardial infarction, for instance, the parasympathetic division, as already mentioned, may depress the blood pressure and even tend to retard the heart, slow the respiration, induce meteorism, vomiting, nausea (the nausea presumably is a sensory vagal effect) and bring about localized vagal motor phenomena such as constriction of the coronary vessels, the bronchial musculature or muscles of the throat or epigastrium. These parasympathetic effects, however, may be overshadowed or never allowed to develop when the hyperactivity of the sympathetic division gets the upper hand. Sympathetic (adrenergic) responses become prominently manifested as respiratory acceleration, generalized sweating activity, occasionally including pilomotor reactions and vascular responses which may include hypertension of some circuits, i.e. the peripheral vascular bed, tachycardia, etc. Sweating is centrally induced by central sympathetic representations but is registered by parasympathetic postganglionic neurons.

### A SYMPATHETIC MANIFESTATIONS

#### 1 Cardiovascular Features

Cardiovascular features in acute coronary insufficiency (angina pectoris) may be mild, negligible or absent. Pain and reference into dermatomes can be an outstanding feature but the heart sounds hardly change, the cardiac output

(6) *Esophageal herniation* M C aged 54 was admitted to Montefiore Hospital in 1940. It was alleged that he had had an acute coronary occlusion in 1930. With the onset of that attack which lasted several days he experienced dyspnea and intense cutting pain across his lower chest. Thereafter up to the time of his admission he had repeated seizures of severe paroxysmal dyspnea and intense precordial pain brought on by excitement or undue exertion as for instance on walking up a flight of stairs. In the last year the attacks were accompanied by darting pain in the left shoulder radiating down into the left arm leaving a sensation of numbness in the arm. Frequently the pain was associated with a sensation of suffocation. Throughout these years he developed no congestive failure. More recently attention was directed to his gastro intestinal tract because of features suggestive of peptic ulcer. The x ray studies disclosed an esophageal herniation. The episodes which in recent years at least simulated attacks of sudden coronary occlusion were due to the herniation and not to any somatic damage of his cardiovascular apparatus. For more than 11 years he had failed to show clinical or electrocardiographic evidence of cardiovascular disease.

(7) *Acute coronary insufficiency induced by a heavy meal* A heavy set swarthy Italian individual A D aged 48 developed promptly after the ingestion of an unusually rich and heavy meal late at night intense precordial pain radiating into the left arm and shoulder accompanied by marked collapse. The blood pressure fell from normal levels of 128/88 to 80/50 the pulse became imperceptible and dyspnea was marked. This acute alarming episode disappeared within a few hours and the patient was ambulant and apparently well. His blood pressure was restored to normal within a day. He was known to have had mild anginal pain in the past.

(8) *Acute myocardial damage without coronary occlusion* M C a 46 year old heavy set polycythemic individual was suddenly seized following an intense emotional upheaval with severe precordial pain pallor which gave place to cyanosis vertigo profuse sweating and general collapse. His blood pressure which had steadily mounted in the previous year to 190/120 dropped to 150/80. An especially troublesome manifestation was recurrent anginal pain accompanied by sensations of suffocation. Congestive failure did not appear. The electrocardiogram disclosed signs of acute myocardial damage.

(9) *Anterior wall infarction with acute coronary occlusion* J J a 68 year old male with symptomless generalized arteriosclerosis and hypertension (190/120) the latter of several years duration suddenly developed intense precordial pain radiating into the left arm. The seizure was quickly followed by shock cyanosis depressed blood pressure (90/65) feeble pulse volleys of extrasystoles marked prostration temperature of 102 to 103 F and leukocytosis. The cardiac arrhythmia never developed into paroxysmal tachycardia. Frank congestive failure did not appear but recurrent anginal pain and prostration lasted many weeks. The electrocardiogram taken about ten hours after the attack revealed characteristic signs of acute anterior wall infarction associated with acute coronary occlusion.

(10) *Posterior wall infarction with acute coronary thrombosis and acute cholecystitis* L M 68 years old in excellent health for years was seized soon after an evening meal with agonizing upper epigastric and precordial pain. Shock and cyanosis appeared promptly the cyanosis persisting even while he remained in an oxygen tent. During the next four days he had recurrent episodes of severe precordial pain associated with bloody frothy sputum also attacks of cardiac collapse and recurrent episodes of transient auricular fibrillation. The electrocardiograms on the second eighth and sixteenth days disclosed signs of acute infarction of the posterior wall associated with acute coronary occlusion. Five days after the onset of his illness he

the sensation of pain projected into the cardiac territory as a psychosomatic symptom the coronary circulation is not involved (Chapter VI)

In the classic severe attack of acute myocardial infarction the pain may be very severe and is always fraught with grave danger but the peril may be as great with mild pain or even in the absence of pain (*sine dolore*) Heart weakness collapse the *angor animi* and a history of similar episode with or without pain bear witness to the diagnosis What is true of the intensity is also true for the duration A fleeting pain severe or mild may bring death although as a rule fleeting pains are recurrent and not always alarming All this emphasizes the variability of the nature and other aspects of *anginal* pain and the danger that lurks even in its mildest manifestations

The character of *anginal* pain is not uniform This is well demonstrated by the ways in which it is described boring burning crushing bursting twisting tearing knifelike lancinating viselike clawlike or dull oppressive leaden etc Most of these terms apply to pain of a mechanical character Some patients among them well trained physicians have unmistakably described some of these mechanical types of agony i.e. insupportable weight on the chest as if the sternum were being crushed back to meet the spine There is no mistaking the agonizing unbearable character of this pain in a full fledged intense attack but the descriptions of pain may vary in the same individual from one attack to another as may the intensity or duration of the pain There are slight minor attacks and still milder forms shading off into states of distress or uneasiness Slight exertion cold emotions are capable of producing minor attacks These have been compared to and even named *petit mal* of angina and they may be as ominous as the vicious horrible variety the milder pains differing from the other types in degree only Pain as already mentioned is conspicuously absent in the type named *angina (pectoris) sine dolore* and exitus with this is by no means unknown When a first attack of *angina (pectoris) sine dolore* is not fatal recurrences are not unlikely the paroxysms possessing some or all of the other features heart weakness collapse and terror met with in the painful variety

Laquer<sup>20</sup> has made a special point of dividing *anginal* pain into that brought on by effort (effort syndrome) and *anginal* pain without effort (decubitus) The latter was further subdivided by Danielopolu<sup>7</sup> into *anginal* pain of repose that is when at rest in the waking state usually in the daytime and *anginal* pain during the night This classification is open to objection Laquer<sup>20</sup> claimed that the *anginal* pain and associated features which occur during rest in bed (decubitus) or even in sleep represent a spontaneous failure of the left ventricle effort playing no part in producing the failure But this takes it for granted that during sleep the body is devoid of fluctuations in metabolic activity or emotional content This is far from the fact and these processes indeed may be equivalent to effort thrown upon the heart and coronary circulation The transient character



is rarely affected and the heart rate remains normal or perhaps moderately accelerated. The blood pressure, too, is little disturbed and heart failure is not expected. Peripheral collapse and shock are seldom part of the picture. Syncope is sometimes a feature and not to be confused with unconsciousness or mild mental confusion, manifestations which usually are preliminary to an attack. Prolonged or progressive coronary insufficiency can lead to very severe manifestations, including heart failure and death, more often myocardial infarction intervenes and contributes to the outcome. Sudden or unexpected death fortunately a rare event in acute coronary insufficiency (angina pectoris), may be the only clinical testimony of acute coronary insufficiency; the autopsy disclosing either extensive subendocardial necrosis or hardly any lesion if death is early.

The cardiovascular features, as we shall see, are generally more marked and intense with the advent of acute myocardial infarction.

(a) *Anginal Pain* It may be asked whether pain is properly grouped as a sympathetic manifestation since the afferent pathways for pain are not considered part of the autonomic apparatus. For the clinician, however, this is an academic point. Pain has been grouped with sympathetic reactions for two reasons: because pain or its associated effects are transmitted centrifugally by efferent sympathetic fibers, causing for example peripheral vasomotor or sudomotor responses; and because the surgical attack on anginal pain is directed largely to interrupting the efferent supplies to the cardiovascular apparatus.

A connection between the segmental dermatomes and the neuraxis is laid down early in embryonal life. A portion of the outer integument develops into the central nervous system, the skin forever preserving its neurogenic property, and the viscera become connected to the dermatomes by nerves which pass through the neuraxis. This connection is the basis for the dermatomic reception of pain arising in the heart and other organs. The pain is sometimes wholly confined to the reference zone. In man pain and its reference serve as a grim albeit beneficent warning signal.

The heart is supposed to be an insensitive organ—a belief which is supported by authentic records of injury to the heart from external causes such as knife stab etc. Most cardiac conditions other than acute coronary insufficiency and its allied complications are free of heart pain. Thus disease of the heart muscle, the endocardial lining, the valves, the nodes, junctional and septal structures rarely produces pain. Exceptions are rheumatic mitral disease, especially in a small percentage of children and occasionally in an adult, and rheumatic aortic disease. Anginal pain appears more frequently when the etiology is luetic. Cardiac pain sometimes occurs in cardiovascular disease associated with marked hypertension. Heart pain is seen in hypertensive states, in anemias and other blood conditions, in Graves disease, in toxic states (poisons), pericardial pain is excluded in this discussion. The pain may be caused by mental conflict.

pain with incapacitation and even to sudden, unexpected death. This occurs upon the advent of exertion or other precipitating elements acting upon a cardiovascular system that would otherwise be expected to carry on for years. On the other hand patients with a marked diminution of cardiac reserve due to antecedent crippling attacks of coronary or heart disease may weather fairly severe attacks characterized by intense anginal pain.

Some of the unpredictability in the relationship of the degree and extent of an acute cardiac attack and the amount of effort or other precipitating cause is due to the fact that we have no accurate method of measuring untapped and unused cardiac reserve. Nor can we estimate precisely how much of this reserve is brought into action in the face of effort nor how capable the coronary circulation will prove to be in putting into use collateral interarterial channels of 40 micra or more or arteriovenous anastomoses. In short even when pre-existing cardiovascular damage is suspected it cannot always be recognized let alone gauged. It therefore happens and with tragic consequences that a mild apparently insignificant exertion sometimes enough to tip the scale and bring on severe anginal pain and even dissolution. Effort therefore however trivial it may seem to the victim must be avoided if it has been known to produce anginal pain or related features.

The same individual may vary in his tolerance to effort that is to say without demonstrable change in the cardiovascular system he may negotiate stairs at one time without difficulty and at another time the same performance is impossible or disastrous. As nearly as one can tell no known factors have been introduced to explain the difference in reaction. Undoubtedly the tolerance varies with the physiologic endowment of the heart and coronary circulation but this can be measured and evaluated in a gross way only.

Just as effort frequently brings on an attack of acute coronary insufficiency stopping the effort will often stop the attack. This is particularly so in seizures of rather mild anginal pain. The effort syndrome is characterized by the provocation of pain associated sometimes with dyspnea and even mild effort may be an offender. Stopping the effort enables the patient to get his second wind and he then proceeds in comparative comfort if the exertion ahead is not too taxing. This is almost a pathognomonic sign of acute coronary insufficiency (angina pectoris). In the face of a mild effort such as climbing a gentle slope mounting a few steps or even traversing a city block or two the heart promptly flags and its owner develops breathlessness pain in the precordium possibly with overflow manifestations. This brings him to an abrupt halt. Some who shun any demonstration of illness pretend at window shopping ( *Schaufenster Frankheit* ). The physical exertion is halted and an immediate physiologic adjustment takes place whereby the left ventricle has an opportunity to become stabilized. The patient now without fear and the heart without pain can resume and finish the appointed task. Although the genesis and mechanism with

ter of these types of anginal pain attest to the temporary nature of the disturbance in the coronary circulation, i.e., acute coronary insufficiency. This contrasts with severer and more enduring anginal pain produced by acute myocardial infarction.

Slow moving arteriosclerotic changes in the blood vessels of the heart lead to constriction of their lumen and to obliteration, but these gradual changes are not attended by pain. On the other hand, it is comparatively rare for abrupt or sudden occlusions in the coronary vessels not to cause pain. The sensation varies from extreme anguish to mild distress or none at all, depending upon the many physiologic and psychologic elements such as the individual's threshold for the perception of pain, etc. The chief consideration, however, is undoubtedly the heart itself, its age and condition in respect to the vascular supply to the musculature in respect to the caliber of the vessels and especially to the capacity of the organ to call upon collateral channels to protect the distressed areas.

The pain in all these conditions is localized in the heart or in the region of the heart. Of the authenticity of this localization, i.e., in or about the heart, not only the testimony of sufferers but the records of careful clinical observers leave no room for doubt. It is therefore open to some question whether the heart is truly an insensitive organ. The coronary vessels in lower forms are known to cause pain, but in human beings this information is lacking (Spiegel<sup>41-42</sup>).

Although angina pectoris (acute coronary insufficiency) often includes more than pain and pain, in fact may be absent, it may be the single feature of an attack and thus practically synonymous with angina pectoris. Anginal pain has fairly well defined delineations, even though gradations and nuances of the pain modalities, variations in distribution and reference reversals in the direction of the distribution and substitutes or equivalents have been described.<sup>43</sup> While anginal pain in uncomplicated acute coronary insufficiency (angina pectoris) may not be outstanding its physiognomy takes on new proportions when the insufficiency is accompanied by acute heart muscle damage or by acute coronary thrombosis with infarction of a related myocardial area. Anginal pain, on the other hand, is alleged to be warded off by congestive heart failure. This is not always the case nor is it consistently valid that the attack of acute coronary insufficiency which instigates anginal pain will not come off in the presence of auricular fibrillation.

(b) *Anginal Pain and Effort* The connection between anginal pain and effort is common knowledge and exemplified in many cases. Effort is the most frequent precipitating cause of acute coronary insufficiency, plays a part in producing acute myocardial infarction and is perhaps not entirely excluded as a precipitating factor in acute coronary occlusion. Not always is there a quantitative relation between the onset or degree of the cardiac episode and the amount of physical exertion. Thus seemingly insignificant exertion may lead to anginal

duce severe and even alarming features. As the minute output is reduced the circulation may develop forward failure, i.e. not enough blood reaches the peripheral circulation. The acute form of this type of failure can produce a picture which resembles shock (peripheral vascular failure) with manifestations of weakness, fatigue, fall in blood pressure, cold clammy skin and unconsciousness. Sudden weakness of a severely infarcted heart or heart failure induced by severe unrelieved tachycardia as in acute coronary insufficiency, for instance, may produce peripheral vascular failure. The peripheral failure is associated with reduction in cardiac filling, diminished coronary flow and under nutrition of the heart muscle. Peripheral vascular failure also has been attributed to a reflex act and not directly to the state of the heart muscle or the character of coronary flow. Although cardiac output appears to be undisturbed in many cases of acute coronary insufficiency, the patient often experiences lassitude, fatigue, weakness or faintness, and for days or weeks after the acute episode is over the complaints may persist. Whether these symptoms represent after all some form of undetected impairment of cardiac output cannot be said. Recovery is usually rapid and complete and the cardiac output, if it has been disturbed, is quickly righted. Prolonged or extremely severe coronary insufficiency can reduce the cardiac output and so lead to the manifestations associated with forward failure.

*Cardiac Output in Acute Myocardial Damage* The cardiac output as a rule is diminished when the heart failure is associated with myocardial infarction (Hickam and Cargill<sup>13</sup>, Stead et al<sup>14</sup>) complicated by congestive manifestations. Undiminished and even increased cardiac output has been noted in congestive heart failure in subjects with thyrotoxicosis, anemia or beriberi, and this paradoxical result is explained by the fact that the cardiac output is augmented before the onset of congestive heart failure and that the cardiac output is depressed but not to subnormal levels.

Cardiac output and congestive heart failure are to a great degree conditioned by the state of the myocardium. As the left ventricle weakens, back failure develops. The feeble left ventricle permits the pressure to rise in the left auricle and the pulmonary circulation as a consequence is retarded and the pulmonary vessels become engorged and stiffened. Vital capacity is diminished and breathing rendered difficult. The difficulty in breathing or dyspnea is due to the effect of local congestion on pulmonary vagal endings and not to chemical agents acting on the respiratory centers. As volume and pressure in the pulmonary circulation increase, the right ventricle will eventually weaken still more, the systemic venous pressure will rise and visceral engorgement and general edema ensue.

The accumulation of fluid (edema) in the organs and tissues is attributed mainly to two factors: (a) a reduced renal flow which follows lowered cardiac output (Warren and Stead<sup>15</sup>) and (b) the diminished reabsorption of sodium

attendant pain are not entirely clear, the achievement of a "second wind" represents a very useful warning to the anginal patient and enables him in certain physical tasks to avoid threatened disaster. By trial and error, the intelligent sufferer comes to realize the limitations which surround him and he will undertake certain efforts with the greatest circumspection and shun others entirely. But this is not a universal rule, for the most intelligent patients may be unsuccessful.

The effort involved for instance in many bodily functions is a serious problem to some patients. Swallowing, vomiting, mastication, defecation, sexual intercourse, speaking, sneezing, coughing, retching, acts which are only in part under conscious control and, therefore, almost passive functions, may bring on anginal seizures. In advanced cases the effort entailed even in the mildest of these acts is sufficient to usher in a paroxysm. Lifting an easy weight such as a small grip, stooping to the floor or rising from a chair or from bed, very slow walking, especially in the face of a wind or in the presence of cold. Even speaking at some length in an ordinary tone of voice or the performance of light hand work while at rest may lead to an anginal attack. Deep sighing, yawning or a sense of leaden weariness may be in the picture. Apart from the emotional excitement entailed, a sudden trauma under other circumstances almost inconsequential as such an injury as stubbing a toe, bruising a finger nail, or even being shaken in a moving vehicle may be a precipitating cause. The physical effort in all these active and passive acts is not always the same, which explains in part why they are not always precipitating causes.

Less frequent but not at all rare is another form of effort syndrome, signalized by a delayed yet sudden onset of deep weariness, sighing and yawning, some degree of shortness of breath and heart or precordial pain radiation into the left arm is sporadic. This train of events comes on minutes, sometimes ten or fifteen after, not during, the expenditure of an effort. The postponed reaction may overtake the subject when he is resting and the performance of exertion forgotten. He must be on guard, therefore, against overtaking himself during the period that follows an exertion. The mechanism probably is related to oxygen debt.

(c) *Cardiac Rate* Sinus tachycardia is frequent especially in acute coronary insufficiency. Supraventricular or ventricular paroxysmal tachycardia, auricular fibrillation, auricular flutter, extrasystoles, heart block may accompany myocardial injury. Changes in heart rate are not necessarily of serious import. A very rapid rate, however, in a badly damaged heart adds to the gravity of the situation. Bradycardia, on the other hand, is not frequent in myocardial infarction and is, indeed, considered a favorable sign (p. 35). Pulsus alternans is a grave sign if the heart rate is not too high.

(d) *Cardiac Output in Acute Coronary Insufficiency* The inability of the cardiac pump to deliver adequate amounts of blood to the tissues of the body may pro-

duce severe and even alarming features. As the minute output is reduced the circulation may develop 'forward failure', i.e. not enough blood reaches the peripheral circulation. The acute form of this type of failure can produce a picture which resembles shock (peripheral vascular failure) with manifestations of weakness, fatigue, fall in blood pressure, cold clammy skin and unconsciousness. Sudden weakness of a severely infarcted heart or heart failure induced by severe unrelieved tachycardia as in acute coronary insufficiency, for instance, may produce peripheral vascular failure. The peripheral failure is associated with reduction in cardiac filling, diminished coronary flow and undernourishment of the heart muscle. Peripheral vascular failure also has been attributed to a reflex act and not directly to the state of the heart muscle or the character of coronary flow. Although cardiac output appears to be undisturbed in many cases of acute coronary insufficiency, the patient often experiences lassitude, fatigue, weakness or faintness, and for days or weeks after the acute episode is over the complaints may persist. Whether these symptoms represent after all some form of undetected impairment of cardiac output cannot be said. Recovery is usually rapid and complete and the cardiac output, if it has been disturbed, is quickly righted. Prolonged or extremely severe coronary insufficiency can reduce the cardiac output and so lead to the manifestations associated with forward failure.

**Cardiac Output in Acute Myocardial Damage.** The cardiac output as a rule is diminished when the heart failure is associated with myocardial infarction (Hickam and Cargill<sup>12</sup>, Stead et al.<sup>13</sup>) complicated by congestive manifestations. Undiminished and even increased cardiac output has been noted in congestive heart failure in subjects with thyrotoxicosis, anemia or beriberi, and this paradoxical result is explained by the fact that the cardiac output is augmented before the onset of congestive heart failure and that the cardiac output is depressed but not to subnormal levels.

Cardiac output and congestive heart failure are to a great degree conditioned by the state of the myocardium. As the left ventricle weakens, back failure develops. The feeble left ventricle permits the pressure to rise in the left auricle and the pulmonary circulation as a consequence is retarded and the pulmonary vessels become engorged and stiffened. Vital capacity is diminished and breathing rendered difficult. The difficulty in breathing, or dyspnea, is due to the effect of local congestion on pulmonary vagal endings and not to chemical agents acting on the respiratory centers. As volume and pressure in the pulmonary circulation increase, the right ventricle will eventually weaken still more; the systemic venous pressure will rise and visceral engorgement and general edema ensue.

The accumulation of fluid (edema) in the organs and tissues is attributed mainly to two factors: (a) a reduced renal flow which follows lowered cardiac output (Warren and Stead<sup>14</sup>) and (b) the diminished reabsorption of sodium.

by renal tubules (Merrill<sup>3</sup>) These explanations are, perhaps, not entirely free from criticism In the first place, some waterlogged patients with congestive heart failure show a normal or even increased cardiac output, in the second place, it is difficult to reconcile waterlogging of the body on the basis of disturbed tubular reabsorption with the experience that waterlogging is absent when the tubular apparatus is crippled by nephrosclerosis

The average cardiac output of normal adults at rest is approximately 5.4 liters per minute or 3.1 liters per square meter of body surface (Courmand<sup>6</sup>, Warren and Stead<sup>41</sup> McMichael and Sharpey Schaefer<sup>42</sup>) The output may be reduced 50 per cent or more in heart failure associated with cardiac anasarca These results have been recently obtained by the intracardiac catheterization technics based as were the older methods on the principle of the direct Fick method A caution is in order on evaluating the recent data, the normal cardiac output is reduced almost one third when the subject assumes a recumbent position<sup>4</sup>

(e) *Coronary Circulation* The degree and extent of dynamic alteration in the coronary circulation of human beings has not been directly established because the technical difficulties have been insurmountable A considerable body of information of the physiology of this circuit has nevertheless been obtained by investigations on lower forms Recently, Goodale et al<sup>19, 21</sup> succeeded in catheterizing the coronary sinus of dogs and this has led to a similar technic in man (Bing et al<sup>22</sup>) This points to a direct method of investigating heart muscle metabolism and of determining the energy output (wattage) of the heart as a pump

On theoretic principles if the coronary flow over a given time were known, the work of heart muscle could be calculated by noting the difference in temperature between afferent and efferent blood Since a method for determining the coronary volume in man has been made available by Kety and Schmidt (Am Heart J 1949 38: 1) it may prove feasible to correlate temperature gradient and blood flow utilizing the former as an index of cardiac metabolism Then too the employment of isotopes contrived with a specific linkage to elements which participate in the intermediary metabolism of heart muscle might yield information on the efficiency of the heart as a pump It is known for instance that anoxemia leads to profuse disturbances of crucial points in the long chain of intermediary metabolic activity and a disturbance of this type i.e. pyruvemia has been correlated with the degree of heart failure (Yanof<sup>23</sup>) and with abnormal T waves (Randles et al<sup>20</sup>) Methods of the type suggested above are obviously not perfected and the functional impairment of the cardiac apparatus in acute coronary insufficiency or acute myocardial infarction is at present evaluated chiefly by clinical x-ray and electrocardiographic criteria, methods which leave much to be desired

(f) *Pulmonary Circulation* Cardiac output in acute coronary insufficiency and in acute heart muscle damage is tied up with the regulation of the pul

monary circulation since this extracardiac circuit is the first to bear the brunt of the dynamic changes initiated by damage to the pump (heart)

A sharp rise in pulmonary blood pressure is alleged to accompany angina pectoris (acute coronary insufficiency) occasionally in male hypertensive individuals. Sytkin<sup>10</sup> proposed his Hochstaunungsdruck theory to explain such a rise maintaining that in the pulmonary circulation the blood pressure heightened by long standing hypertensive cardiovascular disease underwent abrupt variations responsible for sudden attacks of pulmonary edema and that the latter evoked reflex constriction of the pulmonary vessels. This explanation is however theoretic. The pulmonary circulation of nonhypertensive individuals is also though very infrequently subject to bursts of elevated blood pressure. Not only were these and other activities of the pulmonary and cardiac circulations looked upon as reflex in nature but a reflex it was held governed the interaction of both circuits (Sirwell<sup>11</sup>, Villaret et al.<sup>12</sup>). Scherf and Schonbrunner<sup>13</sup> offered electrocardiographic evidence to support this latter contention but this evidence Parin<sup>14</sup> maintains is not conclusive. The electrocardiographic signs resembling myocardial infarction observed in acute pulmonary embolization may be due to depressor effects on the systemic circulation and to alterations in gas exchange which in turn affect the coronary circuit.\*

(g) *Blood Pressure* Uncomplicated acute coronary insufficiency disturbs the arterial blood pressure little. A sudden rise in systemic pressure is observed occasionally in hypertensive subjects in the early stage of acute myocardial

ischemia. It is perhaps in order whether the pulmonary artery possesses units receptive which help regulate the systemic and pulmonary circulations. Evidence to support such a contention consists of the striking analogy in lower forms and in the human embryo of the regulative functions of the descending sensory receptors in the branchial arteries and of relevant clinical observation of burns subjects.

The branchial arteries associated with the branchial arches in aquatic forms possess nerve elements which participate in regulating the circulation and respiration. Similar elements or receptors are recognizable in all the branchial arteries of the mammalian embryo. The first and second set of arches are only the third set forms the carotid vessels with their retained receptors. The fourth (on the left side) becomes the aorta with its sinus receptor. The sixth and sixth sets fuse into the pulmonary artery. Receptors in the pulmonary artery would therefore be expected to survive and function.

Parin<sup>14</sup> on the basis of his own studies and the work of predecessors states that the pulmonary artery branch possesses depressor receptors which following a local increase in pulmonary blood pressure induce a (depressor) fall in systemic blood pressure and a slowing of the heart rate. The influence of these receptors on the pulmonary blood pressure has however not been investigated.

It is rather remarkable that death from acute massive pulmonary embolization and infarction is practically instantaneous and signs of a phlyza seldom part of the picture. The observations are in his suggestive of the activity of a peripheral reflex depressor effect produced by the pulmonary receptors in a manner analogous to the swift death known to follow stimulation of the carotid or aortic sinuses.



damage, and in nonhypertensive cases the rise is even less frequent. The elevation is mainly in the systolic level, the diastolic plateau remaining less volatile and the episode is transient.

Since the early stage of acute myocardial infarction is characterized by a parasympathetic (depressor) effect, it seems paradoxical to find even rarely a sudden elevation of blood pressure. When it is realized, however, that both autonomic divisions may be hyperactive with the onset of the autonomic upheaval, it will not be surprising to find that the sympathetic occasionally gains the ascendant role.

Venous pressure is greatly increased in congestive heart failure, especially in chronic failure. The increase takes place after considerable salt and water have been retained and the blood volume has increased (Warren and Stead<sup>21</sup>). This train of events is frequently seen with impairment of the heart muscle or the coronary system. When the rise of venous pressure is acute and sharp it can act upon receptors in the auricles and in the large veins causing an acceleration of the heart rate through the cardiac sympathetic nerves. This is the Bainbridge reflex. The reverse of this, a depression in venous pressure responsible for a slowing of the cardiac rate, is not established. A reflex described by McDowall<sup>22</sup> and supposed to start in the right auricle is due to an increase in venous pressure. The reflex produces stimulation of the sympathetic innervations leading to vasomotor constriction with an increase in systemic blood pressure.

(h) *Peripheral Vascular Phenomena* These occur mainly as intermittent claudication of the lower limbs, but claudication can also affect the upper extremities: the vessels of the fundi oculi, the brain and in the thorax and abdomen. Many years ago, Pridmore<sup>23</sup> called attention to vascular spasms or crises as he termed them and a form of intermittent claudication which attacks the pulmonary vessels has been described by Posselt<sup>24</sup> manifested by tightness and general distress in the chest. All these spastic phenomena probably depend upon sympathetic vasoconstriction.

The mechanism of the spasm which seizes the coronary vessels has received a good deal of study especially in animals under experimental conditions (Manning et al.,<sup>1</sup> McEachern et al.<sup>25</sup> Opdyke and Selkurt<sup>26</sup>) and it is generally agreed that the impulses travel by vagal pathways. The clinical aspect of reflex vasoconstriction will therefore be discussed under the parasympathetic effects (p. 37).

## 2 Shock

Although the action of the autonomic nervous system in shock seems to be chiefly depressor in character, pressor effects account for the constriction of the splanchnic vessels, the cutaneous vascular bed and of arterioles in other parts of the body. The depressor manifestations are prominent (p. 35).

### 3 Respiratory Features

The pulmonary vessels may become constricted as a result of regional (pulmonary) or generalized sympathetic autonomic discharge. This is observed in angina pectoris or acute myocardial infarction or it may persist after the acute attack. Changes in respiratory rate and rhythm are often due to central effects occurring either as primary responses on the part of the respiratory autonomic representations in the brain stem and cortex or as reactions brought on by the influence of metabolites or excessive edema fluid acting on the respiratory centers. Dissociation of the integrated pattern of respiration takes place only when the cerebral zones of respiratory regulation are severely compromised.<sup>16</sup>

The respiratory manifestations can also follow stimulation of the sympathetic fibers which innervate the bronchial musculature and relax it. As a matter of interest the administration of epinephrine in asthma or other acute paroxysmal states relaxes the bronchial musculature in this way. It acts by relaxing the bronchial musculature through sympathetic stimulation. The cautious use of epinephrine may be advisable to bring about this relief even in the presence of anginal pain (p. 291).

### 4 Gastrointestinal Features

The sympathetic motor nerves of the gastro-intestinal musculature consist of a group of efferent fibers which leave the neuraxis between Th 6 and L 4 including forming the splanchnic nerves. They innervate not only the musculature glandular elements but also blood vessels of the alimentary tract. Sympathetic stimulation can therefore cause constriction of the vascular supplies of this tract.

The sympathetic nerves inhibit contraction of the gastro-intestinal musculature. This inhibitory effect can lead to acute gastric dilatation atony of the bowels meteorism and flatulence and belching are probably associated phenomena. The symptoms may arise prior to an attack of acute myocardial infarction or acute coronary insufficiency or they may precipitate the attack. Attacks of this nature have been labeled in the past as indigestion or ptomaine poisoning but they are in reality cardiac episodes and dangerous. Not only flatulence and belching but hyperchlorhydria and cardialgia may precede or accompany an acute cardiac episode or persist long after the attack. The gastro-intestinal events which precede an attack have been studied extensively by Verdon.<sup>17</sup> Compared to circulatory features the gastro-intestinal manifestations are of secondary import but they may take on major significance and throw the balance from recovery to no recovery especially if the heart has been badly damaged. Meteorism can be a great offender in this respect and vomiting too.

### 5 Sudomotor Reaction (Sweating)

Pallor flushes, clamminess of many parts of the surface of the body are quite common during and shortly after an acute attack of acute coronary insufficiency free of or complicated by acute myocardial infarction. The clamminess is due to sweating associated with vasoconstriction of the skin vessels. Sweating may be drenching and aggravate the fatigue and asthenia which soon follow the attack. The sweating often is manifested through the fiber paths which transmit anginal pain and thus remain limited to the dermatomes innervated by the left thoracic segments 1 to 4, or the sweating can take a patchy or bizarre pattern on the body surface or it may be generalized and independent of precursors, excessive in the day time or at night, and unrelated to the mobility or physical activity of the patient. After an attack of acute myocardial infarction sweating may persist for weeks lingering as a sole symptom when all other evidences of the attack have apparently subsided. Sweating of this order is a serious symptom and speaks for a generalized disturbance of the autonomic apparatus not yet come to rest. Very occasionally sweating as well as flushes, pallor, paresthesias, yawning, or insomnia may be a forerunner of an oncoming attack. The restriction of fluid or sodium chloride or the administration of atropine have little influence on this sweating. Sweating is grouped with sympathetic manifestations because it is induced by central autonomic representations throughout the neuraxis. The peripheral limb of the pathway is, however, parasympathetic and this explains the blocking effect sometimes obtained by atropine.

### 6 Pilomotor Reactions

Erection of the body hair a striking feature in lower forms is not prominent in the human subject. Nevertheless these manifestations can occur in man and represent a sympathetic effect of the pilomotor apparatus. The reaction in colloquial parlance is known as goose pimples or goose flesh. Pilomotor activities have been produced experimentally in cats for example by stimulating the posterior hypothalamus (Case E. K. developed during an attack of angina pectoris, generalized sudomotor and pilomotor changes whereas the skin of the upper half of the body was warm and red and the skin of the lower half was grey, cold and clammy. See p. 38).

## B THE PARASYMPATHETIC MANIFESTATIONS

Parasympathetic manifestations are generally prone to be less regional namely more wide spread and generalized than in the case of sympathetic manifestations but this is not a first rule.

### 1 Shock

This condition is not a usual accompaniment of mild or moderate acute coronary insufficiency. It may, however, appear in a protracted unrelieved

attack and is more frequent and pronounced when acute myocardial infarction occurs. The degree of shock is variable. In severe shock the circulatory manifestations are marked and to the fore: venous pressure is lowered, cardiac output reduced, peripheral circulation slowed, the splanchnic area overfilled with blood and the cutaneous vascular bed constricted. Cutaneous pallor, peripheral collapse and cardiac failure are the clinical features of shock. These reactions are for the most part depressor in character and stem chiefly from activities in the brain stem. Sympathetic vasoconstriction however can eventually get the upper hand or become manifest even during the state of shock. This can be evidenced by constriction of arteriolar beds in various parts of the body, especially the splanchnic region and the skin.

## 2 Exhaustion and Prostration

Prostration or a sense of exhaustion is often a sequel to a paroxysm (attack) of acute coronary insufficiency. Even a mild attack can bring this on with variations from listlessness lassitude to a deep weariness or leaden heavy tiredness or prostration. Prostration or exhaustion may antecede the attack or persist for some time usually it is not long lived. Exhaustion and prostration in severer and more protracted forms are apt to appear with acute myocardial damage with or without acute coronary occlusion. Since the adrenal sympathetic upheaval primarily an emergency reaction is characterized by vigor and hyperactivity not by lassitude and fatigue it may therefore be inferred that prostration and fatigue are parasympathetic effects. However one cannot be too dogmatic on this point.

## 3 Cardiovascular Features

The action of the heart may remain surprisingly good, not perceptibly deranged or altered and the rate unchanged or moderately slowed, the cardiac output normal. Indeed cardiac disturbances during an attack of acute coronary insufficiency (angina pectoris) and even in rare cases of acute myocardial infarction with or without acute coronary occlusion may be minimal almost absent. The parasympathetic system appears to keep the heart and the gastrointestinal tract in line to hold these organs fast during the autonomic upheaval which accompanies the acute onslaught on the cardiac apparatus. It is accordingly not too surprising that bradycardia occasionally develops and its appearance has been interpreted clinically as a favorable sign in acute cardiac infarction.

Depressor manifestations may be very pronounced in acute myocardial infarction associated with coronary thrombosis of a major vessel. Severe collapse may quickly follow the initial infarction. When the heart has to combat the superadded effect of fresh or advancing myocardial damage before collateral coronary circulation has had an opportunity to bring aid to the heart the depressor effects may become irreversible and death imminent. The excessive

(depressor) effect on the circulation, manifested by very low blood pressure and other features of circulatory collapse, is too great a disability for the maimed heart and crippled coronary system to overcome. But there are instances as severe as this when, despite circulatory depression, the heart can make the grade if not mortally injured.

The arterial blood pressure is little if at all disturbed in uncomplicated acute coronary insufficiency but it will decline sharply, as a rule from a previous normal or hypertensive level following acute myocardial infarction. The systolic and diastolic pressures fall, the former markedly, and the pulse pressure is reduced. The prognosis becomes grave as the drop in blood pressure stays unrelieved for days or even hours, a systolic pressure of less than 70 mm Hg has an extremely grave import (Mintz and Katz<sup>1</sup>). Diastolic pressure held at a low level is also an extremely unfavorable sign. The hypertensive individuals will exhibit a greater fall in blood pressure than patients with normal levels, but in them a hypotension below 100 mm Hg which endures several days carries a very serious outlook. Eventually, if the patient lives for one or two years after the attack, the blood pressure is very likely to return to its previous level and this seems to be true for patients with normal or hypertensive levels. The depressor effect on blood pressure can, however, persist for months and even years, indicating that the hypotension from the beginning or at any rate after the subsidence of the attack, is not cardiogenic, i.e., produced by a diminished cardiac output associated with forward failure.

A first episode of angina pectoris or of acute myocardial infarction with acute coronary occlusion, even in victims who have been free of hypertensive cardiovascular disease can result in an early death, congestive heart failure having no opportunity to develop. An acute coronary occlusion it is claimed by Gilbert and his co-workers<sup>2, 3</sup> can set up reflex vagal constriction of unoccluded coronary vessels. The reflex is vagal, unless one agrees with Katz and Jochim<sup>10</sup> that the constriction of the coronary vessels is by sympathetic nerves. Constriction of the coronary vessels may lead to fresh or increased anginal pain and to other deleterious effects on the cardiovascular apparatus. The depressor effects on the circulation include the special activities of the carotid and aortic sinuses and the influence of the vagal innervations on the hepatic veins. The hepatic vein barriers' Venensperre (p. 91) have been shown to exercise a regulatory effect on water regulation of the body but their role in congestive heart failure is not known.

During the acute attack or very shortly thereafter the heart action may become weak and the sounds take on a muscular muffled quality and the rhythm, fundamentally sinus may become intercepted by single or by groups of extrasystoles. True pulsus alternans is not an accompaniment of angina pectoris, but is encountered in advanced long standing hypertension and in patients whose hearts have been weakened by repeated onslaughts of myocardial infarction. (The heart may stop in standstill or ventricular fibrillation. The

latter event in a manner of speaking is the way in which the heart signs off before it stops. Schwartz<sup>17</sup> has however described patients with myocardial damage and coronary occlusion who survived numerous attacks day after day.

*Reflex Coronary Constriction* It is claimed that in the dog acute infarction of the myocardium experimentally produced will give rise to stimuli which cause reflex coronary vasoconstriction and that the pathway of such a reflex is by afferent sensory fibers from the heart and by efferent vagal fibers to the coronary system (LeRoy and Snider<sup>18</sup>). Nervous impulses from the primary ischemic area of the heart caused by acute coronary occlusion are said to induce a temporary reflex spasm of other coronary arteries resulting in secondary ischemic areas. Furthermore the reflex coronary constriction can lead to fatal ventricular fibrillation (LeRoy and Snider<sup>18</sup>) the reflex is abolished by anesthesia (Manning et al.<sup>19</sup>) and xanthine derivatives and atropine help to reduce the secondary ischemic areas (LeRoy et al.<sup>18</sup>). The effect of anesthesia and drugs such as papaverine in this connection has recently been investigated again by Ojajärve and Selkurt.<sup>20</sup>

According to Creene<sup>12, 13</sup> and Gilbert et al.<sup>14, 15</sup> an acute cardiac infarction in man as well as in the dog can produce a similar train of events. Reflex vagal coronary constriction is an accompanying danger and the constriction may cause ventricular fibrillation and sudden death or the manifestation only of anginal pain.

#### 4 Respiratory Changes

The pulmonary arterial bed after initial sympathetic constriction may undergo parasympathetic dilatation. Generally speaking the pulmonary apparatus has to overcome two strong influences: sympathetic constriction of its vascular bed and parasympathetic constriction of the bronchial musculature. A depressor effect already alluded to is observed in the vagal slowing of the cardiac rate. This is often considered a favorable sign in the presence of severe myocardial damage. The heart is retarded because the pacemaker of the heart is slowed and not because as in heart block for instance the junctional tissues have been affected.

(a) *Apnea* True apnea must be distinguished from voluntary braking of the respiration as witnessed in a patient for example who strives to remain immobile during the excruciating agony of the attack. Breathing is here deliberately avoided or kept shallow. Osler<sup>21</sup> has described in this connection holding the breath as long as possible. An attack of angina pectoris seldom accelerates or diminishes ventilation. Although apnea is not unknown when the heart is severely damaged it is unlikely in uncomplicated acute coronary insufficiency.

(b) *Dyspnea* Shortness of breath. True dyspnea is not foreign to the picture. It can be produced by a coronary system incompetent to bring the quantity of oxygen needed by the heart to enable this organ to deliver adequate blood

(depressor) effect on the circulation, manifested by very low blood pressure and other features of circulatory collapse, is too great a disability for the maimed heart and crippled coronary system to overcome. But there are instances as severe as this when, despite circulatory depression, the heart can make the grade if not mortally injured.

The arterial blood pressure is little if at all disturbed in uncomplicated acute coronary insufficiency but it will decline sharply, as a rule, from a previous normal or hypertensive level following acute myocardial infarction. The systolic and diastolic pressures fall, the former markedly, and the pulse pressure is reduced. The prognosis becomes grave as the drop in blood pressure stays unrelieved for days or even hours, a systolic pressure of less than 70 mm Hg has an extremely grave import (Mintz and Katz<sup>7</sup>). Diastolic pressure held at a low level is also an extremely unfavorable sign. The hypertensive individuals will exhibit a greater fall in blood pressure than patients with normal levels, but in them a hypotension below 100 mm Hg which endures several days carries a very serious outlook. Eventually if the patient lives for one or two years after the attack, the blood pressure is very likely to return to its previous level and this seems to be true for patients with normal or hypertensive levels. The depressor effect on blood pressure can however persist for months and even years indicating that the hypotension from the beginning or at any rate after the subsidence of the attack, is not cardiogenic, i.e., produced by a diminished cardiac output associated with forward failure.

A first episode of angina pectoris or of acute myocardial infarction with acute coronary occlusion even in victims who have been free of hypertensive cardiovascular disease can result in an early death, congestive heart failure having no opportunity to develop. An acute coronary occlusion it is claimed by Gilbert and his co-workers<sup>8,9</sup> can set up reflex vagal constriction of unoccluded coronary vessels. The reflex is vagal unless one agrees with Katz and Jochim<sup>10</sup> that the constriction of the coronary vessels is by sympathetic nerves. Constriction of the coronary vessels may lead to fresh or increased anginal pain and to other deleterious effects on the cardiovascular apparatus. The depressor effects on the circulation include the special activities of the carotid and aortic sinuses and the influence of the vagal innervations on the hepatic veins. The hepatic vein "barriers," Venensperre (p. 91) have been shown to exercise a regulatory effect on water regulation of the body but their role in congestive heart failure is not known.

During the acute attack or very shortly thereafter, the heart action may become weak and the sounds take on a muscular muffled quality and the rhythm, fundamentally sinus, may become intercepted by single or by groups of extrasystoles. True pulsus alternans is not an accompaniment of angina pectoris, but is encountered in advanced long standing hypertension and in patients whose hearts have been weakened by repeated onslaughts of myocardial infarction. The heart may stop in standstill or ventricular fibrillation. This

latter event in a manner of speaking is the way in which the heart signs off before it stops. Schwartz<sup>12</sup> has, however, described patients with myocardial damage and coronary occlusion who survived numerous attacks day after day.

**Reflex Coronary Constriction** It is claimed that in the dog acute infarction of the myocardium experimentally produced will give rise to stimuli which cause reflex coronary vasoconstriction and that the pathway of such a reflex is by afferent sensory fibers from the heart and by efferent vagal fibers to the coronary system (LeRoy and Snider<sup>13</sup>). Nervous impulses from the primary ischemic area of the heart caused by acute coronary occlusion are said to induce a temporary reflex spasm of other coronary arteries resulting in secondary ischemic areas. Furthermore the reflex coronary constriction can lead to fatal ventricular fibrillation (LeRoy and Snider<sup>13</sup>). The reflex is abolished by anesthesia (Manning et al.<sup>14</sup>) and xanthine derivatives and atropine help to reduce the secondary ischemic areas (LeRoy et al.<sup>15</sup>). The effect of anesthesia and drugs such as papaverine in this connection has recently been investigated again by Opdyke and Belkurt.<sup>16</sup>

According to Greene<sup>17</sup> and Gilbert et al.<sup>18,19</sup> an acute cardiac infarction in man as well as in the dog can produce a similar train of events. Reflex vagal coronary constriction is an accompanying danger and the constriction may cause ventricular fibrillation and sudden death or the manifestation only of an anginal pain.

#### 4 Respiratory Changes

The pulmonary arterial bed after initial sympathetic constriction may undergo para-sympathetic dilatation. Generally speaking the pulmonary apparatus has to overcome two strong influences: sympathetic constriction of its vascular bed and para-sympathetic constriction of the bronchial musculature. A depressor effect already alluded to is observed in the vagal slowing of the cardiac rate. This is often considered a favorable sign in the presence of severe myocardial damage. The heart is retarded because the pacemaker of the heart is slowed and not because as in heart block for instance the junctional tissues have been affected.

(a) *Apnea* True apnea must be distinguished from voluntary braking of the respiration as witnessed in a patient for example who strives to remain immobile during the excruciating agony of the attack. Breathing is here deliberately avoided or kept shallow. Osler<sup>20,21</sup> has described in this connection holding the breath as long as possible. An attack of angina pectoris seldom accelerates or diminishes ventilation. Although apnea is not unknown when the heart is severely damaged it is unlikely in uncomplicated acute coronary insufficiency.

(b) *Dyspnea* Shortness of breath true dyspnea is not foreign to the picture. It can be produced by a coronary system incompetent to bring the quantity of oxygen needed by the heart to enable this organ to deliver adequate blood



to the respiratory centers, and the dyspnea can be aggravated by parasympathetic constriction of the bronchial musculature, producing asthma like paroxysms

Noncardiac dyspnea is not to be mistaken for the dyspnea just described. The former, an added and troublesome affliction during a cardiac attack, has a paroxysmal character of its own and is irregular in occurrence. It is associated with bronchial edema, emphysema, bronchiectasis or other pulmonary disorders or is caused by some antecedent cardiovascular disease not related to the acute cardiac episode. Heberden<sup>14</sup> claimed there is "no shortness of breath" in a cardiac attack, but he was mistaken. Libman<sup>15</sup> believed that dyspnea "covers" pain in hypersensitive subjects with angina pectoris and he meant by this that dyspnea could be a substitute or the equivalent of pain and that the dyspnea submerges or suppresses pain. Cheyne Stokes breathing is a tell tale of cerebral respiratory disturbance and an alarming complication but need not be a portent of an immediate fatal outcome. The Biot type of breathing is seldom seen.

(c) *Hemoptyses* To evaluate the specific influence of the parasympathetic or sympathetic division in relation to pulmonary hemoptyses is not simple. The parasympathetic supplies dilate the pulmonary vascular bed and so increase the pulmonary reservoir, but this does not mean that the parasympathetic innervations to the lungs are necessarily overactive in connection with hemoptysis. Hemorrhage from the lung is produced as a rule by thrombi which lodge in the pulmonary circulation. These thrombi are prone to form in the presence of fresh myocardial infarction especially if acute coronary occlusion has occurred, involving the septum or fairly large areas of the walls of the heart. Thrombi formed in the right heart are readily ejected into the lungs to produce pulmonary thrombi but thrombi which arise in varicose leg veins in the prostatic plexus or at other extracardiac sites can also cause pulmonary infarction and hemoptyses.

Pain associated with pulmonary embolus and hemoptyses is not infrequent. The pain may be intense involving the chest in general or it may be restricted to the left side or remain midsternal as in precordial anginal pain. Indeed, pulmonary embolization with hemoptysis may ape or even masquerade as an acute myocardial infarction, or both conditions may co-exist. Atypical forms of pericarditis may simulate an attack of acute coronary occlusion or even pulmonary embolization, when frank bleeding from the lungs is absent. The electrocardiographic picture usually distinct and almost specific in acute coronary occlusion with infarction of the posterior wall may have common and confusing features in acute pulmonary embolization and in acute pericarditis.

## 5 Gastrointestinal Features

The parasympathetic supplies to the gastrointestinal tract increase the tone of the alimentary musculature. Accordingly, autonomic effects would be

registered as increased peristalsis with diarrhea or colic (spasm). Constriction of the epigastric muscles or of the esophageal and pharyngeal structures has been attributed to parasympathetic effects associated with general autonomic reaction set off by an anginal seizure.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- ALBERT T C Diseases of the arteries including angina pectoris London Macmillan 1915
- AYERBACH S H Acute generalized postoperative peritonitis imitating coronary artery thrombosis J Mt Sinai Hosp 1942 8 33
- BING R L VAN DAM L D CRIGGOTT T HANDELSMAN J C COOPALE W T AND FLECHENOFF J L Catheterization of the coronary sinus in man Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1941 66 239
- BIRBAUM H L SCHLESINGER M J AND DAVIS D Studies on the relation of the clinical manifestations of angina pectoris, coronary thrombosis and myocardial infarction to the pathologic findings. Am Heart J 1940 19 1
- — AND ZOLL P Angina pectoris, coronary failure and acute myocardial infarction. The role of coronary occlusion and collateral circulation J A M A 1941 116 93
- COLMAN A Measurement of the cardiac output in man using the right heart catheterization Fed Proc 1943 4 20
- DANIELOVITZ D L Angine de poitrine et l'angine alvéolaire Paris Masson 1937
- GILBERT N C FENN G K AND LEBOY G V The effect of distention of abdominal viscera on the coronary blood flow J A M A 1940 115 1962
- — LEBOY G V AND FENN G K The effect of distention of abdominal viscera on the blood flow in the circumflex branch of the left coronary artery of the dog Am Heart J 1940 20 39
- GORDALE W T LUBIN M FLECHENOFF J E HAYKENSCHIL, J H AND BARNFIELD W C JR Coronary sinus catheterization for studying coronary blood flow and myocardial metabolism Am J Physiol 1939 152 340
- — — — — DURLACHER S H LANDING B H AND BARNFIELD W G Coronary sinus catheterization technique for studying coronary blood flow and myocardial metabolism in vivo Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1947 66 511
- GREENE C W The nerve control of the coronary vessels with new experimental evidence for the pathways of efferent constrictor and dilator neurones in the dog Am J Physiol 193 115 361
- — Control of the coronary blood flow by reflexes arising in widely distributed regions of the body Am J Physiol 1935 113 399
- HERBERT W Some account of a disorder of the breast Med Tr Coll Phys London 1 2 59
- HICKAM J B AND CAGGILL W H Effect of exercise on cardiac output and pulmonary arterial pressure in normal persons and in patients with cardiovascular disease and pulmonary emphysema J Clin Investigation 1948 27 10
- KATZ L V AND JOCHIM H Observations on the innervation of the coronary vessels of the dog Am J Physiol 1939 126 395
- LEBOY G V AND SAIDET S III The sudden death of patients with few symptoms of heart disease J A M A 1941 117 2019
- — FENN G K AND GILBERT N C The influence of xanthine drugs and atropine on the mortality rate after experimental occlusion of a coronary artery Am Heart J 1942 23 63
- LIVAN C La pne de poitrine Paris Masson 1937

- <sup>20</sup> LIBMAN, E Observations on individual sensitiveness to pain J A M A 1934 107 335
- <sup>21</sup> MANNING G W , McCLACHERN C G AND HALL G E Reflex coronary artery spasm following sudden occlusion of other coronary branches Arch Int Med 1939 64 661
- <sup>22</sup> McDOWALL R J ■ A vagopressor reflex J Physiol 1929 59 41
- <sup>23</sup> McCLACHERN C G MANNING G W AND HALL G E Effects of sudden occlusion of coronary arteries following removal of cardio-sensory pathways Arch Int Med 1940 65 661
- <sup>24</sup> McMICHAEL J AND SHARPEY SCHAEFER E P Cardiac output in man by a direct Fick method Brit Heart J 1941 6 33
- <sup>25</sup> MERRILL A J Edema and decreased renal blood flow in patients with chronic congestive heart failure evidence of forward failure as the primary cause of edema J Clin Investigation 1946 25 389
- <sup>26</sup> MILLER H R Central Autonomic Regulations in Health and Disease New York Grune & Stratton 1942
- <sup>27</sup> MINTZ S S AND KATZ L N Recent myocardial infarction an analysis of five hundred and seventy two cases Arch Int Med 1947 80 205
- <sup>28</sup> OPDYKE D F AND SELAURT E E A study of alleged intercoronary reflexes following coronary occlusion Am Heart J 1948 36 73
- <sup>29</sup> OBLER, W Lectures on Angina Pectoris and Allied States New York D Appleton & Co 1897
- <sup>30</sup> — Angina pectoris as an early symptom in aneurysm of the aorta Med Chron 1906 11 69
- <sup>31</sup> — Lumleian lecture Lancet 1910 1 697
- <sup>32</sup> PAL J Über die Innervation der Leber Med Jahrb 1888 3 67
- <sup>33</sup> — Gefasskrisen Leipzig Hirzel 1905
- <sup>34</sup> — Die Tonuskrankheiten des Herzens und der Gefasse ihre Biologie und Therapie Wien J Springer 1934
- <sup>35</sup> PARIN V V The role of pulmonary vessels in the control of the blood circulation Am J M Sc 1947 214 167
- <sup>36</sup> POSSELT A Die klinische Diagnose der Pulmonalarteriensklerose Munchen m l Wchn chr 1908 55 1625
- <sup>37</sup> PRINZMETAL M SIMKIN B BYRCMAN H C AND KRUGER H E Studies on the coronary circulation II The collateral circulation of the normal human heart by coronary perfusion with radioactive erythrocytes and glass spheres Am Heart J 1947 33 470
- <sup>38</sup> — BERGMAN H C KRUGER H E SCHWARTZ L SIMKIN B AND SONIN S S Studie on the coronary circulation III Collateral circulation of beating human and dog hearts with coronary occlusion Am Heart J 1948 35 689
- <sup>39</sup> PANDLES I ■ HIMWICH W A HOMBLERGER E AND HIMWICH H F The influence of vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency on the pyruvate exchange of the heart Am Heart J 1941 33 341
- <sup>40</sup> SAHLI H Verhand d Kongr f inn Med 1901 19 45
- <sup>41</sup> SCHIERP D AND SCHONBRUNNER E Über Herzbefunde bei Lungenembolien Zt chr f Klin Med 1935 128 455
- <sup>42</sup> — and — Über den pulmokoronaren Reflex bei Lungenembolien Klin Wchschr 1937 16 340
- <sup>43</sup> SCHWARTZ S P Transient ventricular fibrillation A study of the electrocardiograms obtained from a patient with A V dissociation Recurrent synopal attacks Arch Int Med 1932 50 450
- <sup>44</sup> SPIEGEL E A Über das Wesen des Bauchschmerzes und seine Begleiterscheinungen Wien med Wchnschr 1921 77 319
- <sup>45</sup> — Experimentelle Neurologie Berlin S Karger 1928
- <sup>46</sup> — Visceral and vascular pain Proc Soc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 1930 5 213

- <sup>1</sup> STEAD E A JR WARREN J V AND BRANNON E S Cardiac output in congestive heart failure *Am Heart J* 1948 35 579
- <sup>2</sup> STRUEFF V Zur Frage der bakteriellen Lungenembolie, *Virchow's Arch* 1909 105 231
- <sup>3</sup> TROUSSEAU A Clinique médicale de l'Hôtel Dieu de Paris 5th edition Paris J B Baillière et fil 1877
- <sup>4</sup> VAQUEZ H Diseases of the Heart Translated by C F Lauflaw London and Philadelphia W B Saunders Co 1934
- <sup>5</sup> VERDON W Angina Pectoris Brighton England W T Moulton & Co 1930
- <sup>6</sup> VILLARET M JUSTIN BESANÇON L AND BARDIN P Physio-pathologie des accidents mortels consécutifs aux embolies pulmonaires *Bull et mém Soc Méd d hôp de Paris* 1936 57 936
- <sup>7</sup> — — — AND — — — Recherches sur la prévention expérimentale des accidents consécutifs aux embolies pulmonaires *Bull et mém Soc méd d hôp de Paris* 1936 57 942
- <sup>8</sup> WARREN J V AND STEAD E A JR Fluid dynamics in chronic congestive heart failure *Arch Int Med* 1944 73 134
- <sup>9</sup> YANOF Z A Blood pyruvic acid in heart disease *Arch Int Med* 1943 69 1005



- <sup>20</sup> IIDMAN, F. Observations on individual sensitiveness to pain. *J A M A* 1934 107 33.
- <sup>21</sup> MANNING G W, McLACHERN C G, and HALL G F. Reflex coronary artery spasm following sudden occlusion of other coronary branches. *Arch Int Med* 1939 64 661.
- <sup>22</sup> McDOWALL R J S. A vagopressor reflex. *J Physiol* 1929 59 41.
- <sup>23</sup> McLACHERN C G, MANNING C W, and HALL G F. Effects of sudden occlusion of coronary arteries following removal of cardiosensory pathways. *Arch Int Med* 1940 65 661.
- <sup>24</sup> McMICHAEL J, and SHARLEY SCHATTER, F P. Cardiac output in man by a direct Fick method. *Brit Heart J* 1944 6 33.
- <sup>25</sup> MERRILL A J. Edema and decreased renal blood flow in patients with chronic congestive heart failure: evidence of forward failure as the primary cause of edema. *J Clin Investigation* 1946 25 389.
- <sup>26</sup> MILLER H R. *Central Autonomic Regulations in Health and Disease*. New York: Grune & Stratton 1942.
- <sup>27</sup> MINTZ S H, and KATZ I N. Recent myocardial infarction: an analysis of five hundred and seventy-two cases. *Arch Int Med* 1941 80 205.
- <sup>28</sup> OPDYKE D F, and SFLAKRT F E. A study of alleged intercoronary reflexes following coronary occlusion. *Am Heart J* 1948 36 73.
- <sup>29</sup> OSLER, W. *Lectures on Angina Pectoris and Allied States*. New York: D Appleton & Co 1897.
- <sup>30</sup> —. Angina pectoris as an early symptom in aneurysm of the aorta. *Med Chron* 1906 11 69.
- <sup>31</sup> —. Lumleian lecture. *Lancet* 1910 1 69.
- <sup>32</sup> PAL J. Über die Innervation der Leber. *Med Jahrb* 1898 3 67.
- <sup>33</sup> —. *Cefasskriven*. Leipzig: Hitzel 1905.
- <sup>34</sup> —. *Die Tonuskrankheiten des Herzens und der Gefässe ihre Biologie und Therapie*. Wien: J Springer 1934.
- <sup>35</sup> PARRIN V V. The role of pulmonary vessels in the control of the blood circulation. *Am J M Sc* 1947 214 167.
- <sup>36</sup> LOSSELT A. Die klinische Diagnose der Pulmonalarteriensklerose. *München m J Wehnschr* 1909 55 1625.
- <sup>37</sup> IRINZMILAL M, SIMKIN B, BERGMAN H C, and KRIEGER H L. Studies on the coronary circulation. II. The collateral circulation of the normal human heart by coronary perfusion with radioactive erythrocytes and glass spheres. *Am Heart J* 1941 33 470.
- <sup>38</sup> —, BERGMAN H C, KRIEGER H F, SCHWARTZ L, SIMKIN B, and SONIN S S. Studies on the coronary circulation. III. Collateral circulation of beating human and dog hearts with coronary occlusion. *Am Heart J* 1948 35 689.
- <sup>39</sup> RANDLES I S, HIMWICH W A, HOMBLERGER F, and HIMWICH H F. The influence of vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency on the pyruvate exchange of the heart. *Am Heart J* 1947 33 341.
- <sup>40</sup> SAHLI H. Verhandl Kongr f inn Med 1901 19 45.
- <sup>41</sup> SCHIEFF D, and SCHONBRUNNER F. Über Herzbefunde bei Lungenembolien. *Ztschr f Klin Med* 1935 128 455.
- <sup>42</sup> — and —. Über den pulmokoronären Reflex bei Lungenembolien. *Klin Wehnschr* 1937 16 340.
- <sup>43</sup> SCHWARTZ S P. Transient ventricular fibrillation. A study of the electrocardiograms of turned from a patient with A V dissociation. Recurrent syncope attacks. *Arch Int Med* 1932 50 450.
- <sup>44</sup> SLIEFEL L A. Über das Wesen des Bauchschmerzes und seine Begleiterscheinungen. *Wien med Wehnschr* 1927 77 379.
- <sup>45</sup> —. *Experimentelle Neurologie*. Berlin: S Karger 1928.
- <sup>46</sup> —. Visceral and vascular pain. *Proc Soc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 1930 5 213.

the possible development of the insufficiency in the absence of pre-existing, or simultaneous injury to the heart or coronary vessels. It is claimed that young marathon runners taxed to the breaking point may develop acute coronary insufficiency as a forerunner of acute cardiac dilatation but it is still a controversial matter whether excessive physical or emotional strain as commonly observed in routine living or work is a competent producing cause in young people possessing a sound unimpaired cardiovascular apparatus. The electrocardiographic records which follow have been selected with these problems in mind.

### 1. Acute Coronary Insufficiency in Subjects with Normal or Ostensibly Normal Cardiovascular Apparatus

The following cases of acute coronary insufficiency occurred in individuals in whom pre-existing cardiovascular disease was excluded with reasonable certainty.

#### *Bleeding from Peptic Ulcer*

A young man of 33 years developed an acute attack of coronary insufficiency following a loss of blood from a bleeding peptic ulcer. The hemoglobin dropped to 41 per cent.

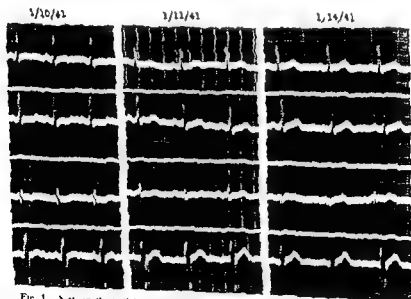


FIG. 1. Not in the first tracing a mild depression of RST in leads I and II and a reduction of the voltage and inversion of T in all leads. The RST depression disappeared the next day and the T waves began to be upright (second tracing). Three days later the T waves were practically of normal voltage. The ventricular rate was not increased (third tracing). This case demonstrates that changes in T waves may be the predominant feature.

## CHAPTER III

# Electrocardiographic Findings in Angina Pectoris, Acute Myocardial Infarction and Acute Extracardiac Conditions

EXCELLENT text books and reference sources are available for those interested in electrocardiography or the more highly specialized aspects of electrophysiology. The discussion in this chapter will therefore be limited to the findings which go with the cardiac and related conditions considered in this volume.

### I Acute Cardiac Conditions

#### A ACUTE CORONARY INSUFFICIENCY

The ST (or RST) segment is sharply depressed\* in one or more standard limb leads and in precordial leads an abnormal depression in one limb lead is often sufficient for the diagnosis. The T wave need undergo no change or it may be flattened or inverted. Q waves are absent. T wave changes alone, i.e., in the absence of RST changes are sufficient for the diagnosis. There are times when the diagnosis is reached only after several tracings.

Similar changes in RST and T are produced by digitalis. The RST depression in acute coronary insufficiency in the absence of myocardial involvement comes on abruptly with the onset of coronary derangement and disappears abruptly when the coronary circulation is righted, whereas the RST deformed by digitalis is restored more slowly, taking days or weeks after the drug is stopped. The effect of digitalis may be visible after an acute episode of coronary insufficiency is over, indicating that the electrocardiographic changes were independent of the coronary insufficiency. Frequently, however, it is not possible to determine whether the electrocardiographic signs are due to digitalis or to acute coronary insufficiency or to other factors.

Excepting cases induced by acute exsanguination or acute CO poisoning or other severe disabling causes from which even normal coronary vessels and heart muscle would not be expected to escape damage, acute coronary insufficiency is rare in young healthy individuals. A practical point for them concerns

\* The amount of ST shift which constitutes abnormal is not agreed upon by all authorities. According to Katz<sup>2</sup> it consists of an elevation of more than 2 mm. in the limb leads and in CF2, CF4 and CF5 or a depression of 0.5 mm. in leads I and II, 1.0 mm. in lead III or any degree in CF2 and CF4 or any amount greater than 0.5 mm. in CF5. Burch and Winsor<sup>3</sup> feel that a shift of 1 mm. above or below the isoelectric line in the standard leads is abnormal.

*Response to Nicotine*

A normal 24 year old woman D P who had limited herself to two cigarettes a week because smoking caused palpitations and heartburn received 2 mg of nicotine bitartrate intravenously

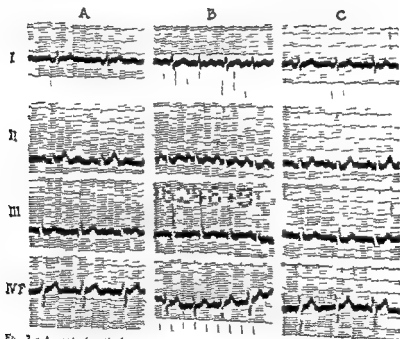


FIG. 2—A control with the needle in the vein. The heart rate was 88 and the blood pressure 110/65. B one minute after injection she became dizzy and faint, the heart rate was 136 and the blood pressure 130/80. The tracing shows tachycardia and a reduced voltage of the T waves in all leads and depression of the RST segment in leads I, II and III. C nine minutes after injection heart rate was 98 and blood pressure 110/65. (From *Am Heart J* 1947 34: 65)





*Acute Hypoxia with Marked Anemia*

A young male, aged 22, with chronic anemia, chronic persistent hook worm infestation, and marked secondary anemia (Hgb 6 Gm per 100 cc blood)

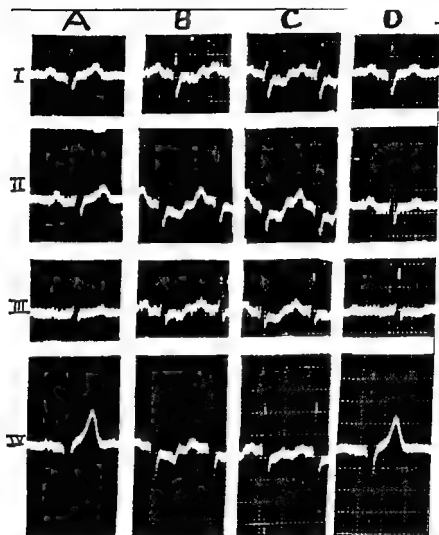


FIG 1a —Tracing A is the control and is normal indicating that the anemia had produced no coronary insufficiency B is the tracing after ten minutes exposure to 10 per cent  $O_2$ . Marked depression of RST in all leads the T wave is inverted in leads I II III and IV C is the record after twenty minutes exposure to 100 per cent  $O_2$  and shows practically the same findings as B D shows the recovery after breathing 100 per cent oxygen and then room air (From Ann Int Med 1947 26 :41)

*Post-operative Shock*

A 59 year old male M C developed acute coronary insufficiency with the onset of post-operative shock. Although he was not known to have pre-existing cardiovascular disease the possibility of its presence can not be excluded

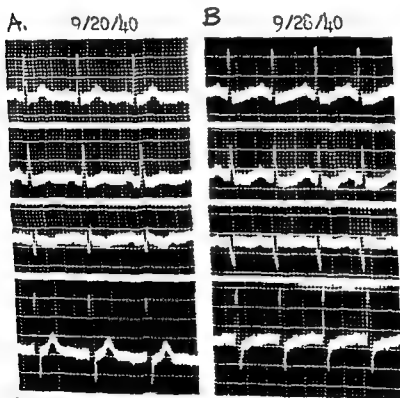


FIG 6 — Tracing II shows depression of RST and inversion of the T wave in leads I II and IV. The ventricular rate is increased

*Undue Exertion*

A woman of 52, E W , with hypertensive cardiovascular disease (coronary sclerosis) and diabetes mellitus, developed an acute attack of coronary insufficiency while undergoing the Master two step exercise test

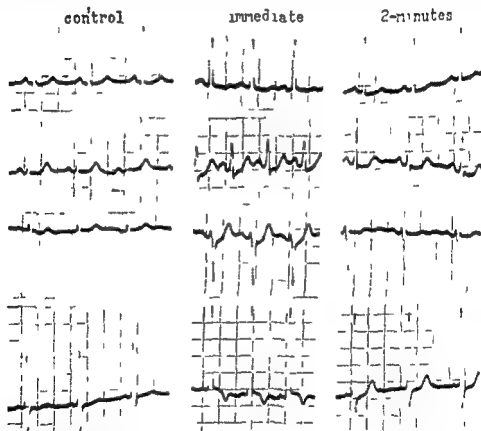


FIG 5 —Immediately after exertion RST became depressed in leads II and III T wave inversion appeared only in leads I and IV

*Post-operative Shock*

A 59 year old male M.C. developed acute coronary insufficiency with the onset of post-operative shock. Although he was not known to have pre-existing cardiovascular disease the possibility of its presence can not be excluded.

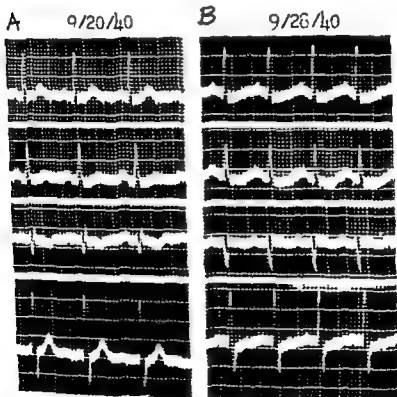


FIG 6—Tracing III shows depression of RST and inversion of the T wave in leads I II and IV. The ventricular rate is increased.

*Response to Nicotine*

G M a man 50 years old, a moderate smoker, with antecedent coronary and anginal pain, received 2 mg of nicotine bitartrate intravenously

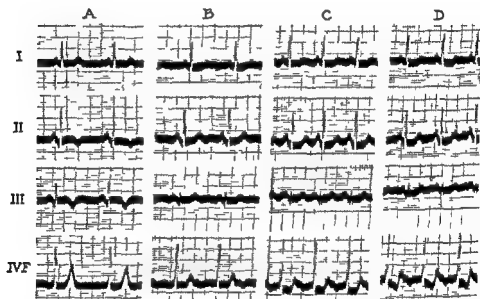


FIG 7—A Two weeks after cardiac infarction Nicotine study made three months later  
 B Control needle in vein Rate 90 blood pressure 140/80 C Two minutes after injection  
 Rate 120 blood pressure 144/86 E record shows acute coronary insufficiency depression of  
 RST segment in leads I II and IV and partial inversion of the T wave in the precordial lead  
 D Fifteen minutes after injection Rate 102 blood pressure 143/82 No anginal pain but  
 complained of dizziness and tingling The record shows little change from C (From Am Heart  
 J 1947 34 65)

*Undue Emotions*

A 36 year old male R J R, who had experienced previous anginal manifestations associated with hypertension and coronary sclerosis developed acute coronary insufficiency and acute myocardial damage brought on by grief over the death of his father. He succumbed seven weeks later. The autopsy revealed severe coronary sclerosis but not complete occlusion the left ventricle is severely infarcted but the pericardium and endocardium were intact.

2 Oct 1944      9 Oct 1944      11 April 1945

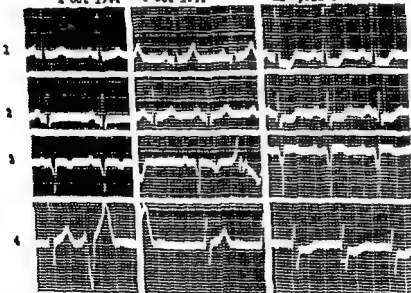


FIG 8—The electrocardiogram of October 2 1944 reveals myocardial involvement that of October 9 1944 resitution to practically normal state the last record April 11 1945 shows acute coronary insufficiency. RST depressions and semi inversion of T waves in leads I II and IV. The precipitating element in the attack occurred seven weeks before he expired on April 12 1945.

These electrocardiographic records depict a general agreement with the physiologic pathologic and clinical state in each case but striking exceptions occur. An acute violent attack of coronary insufficiency in the absence of corroborative electrocardiographic signs was a striking aspect in the following case.

The patient A. B. aged 48 after a very heavy large meal late at night developed within a very short time collapse with intense precordial pain radiating into the arm and shoulder, a fall in blood pressure from normal level 128/88 to 90/50, breathlessness and imperceptible pulse. The condition was diagnosed by trained observers as acute coronary insufficiency. The acute episode was over within a few hours, the blood pressure began to rise and was restored to normal within a day. The electrocardiogram was negative shortly after the attack, four days later and after ten days.

A similar discrepancy was exemplified in a case of rheumatic heart disease.

A young woman A. O. incapacitated with rheumatic heart disease since the age of 9 was admitted to Montefiore Hospital at the age of 32. She had ten to twenty attacks of typical incapacitating anginal pain every twenty-four hours during a long period of observation. The electrocardiogram during and between anginal attacks revealed no acute coronary insufficiency. There was however little doubt that the coronary circulation had been responsible for the repeated paroxysms of anginal pain; the attacks were completely arrested by aminopyrin.

#### B ACUTE MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION WITHOUT ACUTE CORONARY OCCLUSION

The electrocardiographic signs are sometimes indistinguishable from those of acute coronary insufficiency. As a rule, however, the findings last longer, the prominence and persistence of the RST depression and T wave inversion depend upon the extent and duration of the subendocardial damage. Elevation of the ST segment is rare but occurs if the epicardial layer of the heart is involved. Eventual recovery from the myocardial damage is usually accompanied by restoration of the electrocardiogram to a normal or almost normal state. Q waves are nearly always absent.

The electrocardiogram in about 5 per cent of cases of acute myocardial infarction unattended by coronary occlusion may show signs which are characteristic of acute myocardial infarction associated with acute coronary occlusion. This occurs when the myocardial lesion is no longer subendothelial but involves the endothelial as well as the epicardial layers of the heart. The lesion thus is in effect a massive through and through infarction and the associated electrocardiographic signs may then point to predominantly anterior or posterior wall involvement (Fig. 9).

#### C ACUTE MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION WITH ACUTE CORONARY OCCLUSION

Whereas in the type of acute myocardial infarction described above the lesion consists of scattered multiple focal necroses which comparatively seldom penetrate the endothelial lining of the heart, in acute myocardial infarction

*Acute Myocardial Infarction without Coronary Occlusion*

Acute myocardial infarction induced by severe emotional stress. A 46-year old male M. C. with hypertension of less than one year's duration (190/170) and polycythemia (Hgb 105 per cent), suddenly developed after an intense emotional altercation severe precordial pain, circulatory collapse, profuse sweating and prostration.

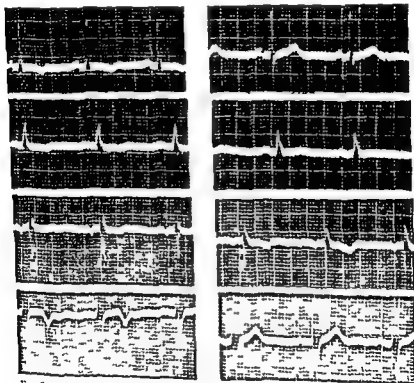


FIG. 9—Note the acute inversion of T waves in leads I, II and III in the record of 30-46 (left). This came on with the sudden collapse and was gone by 9-4-46 (right).



These electrocardiographic records depict a general agreement with the physiologic, pathologic and clinical state in each case but striking exceptions occur. An acute violent attack of coronary insufficiency in the absence of corroborative electrocardiographic signs was a striking aspect in the following case.

The patient A. B. aged 48 after a very heavy large meal late at night developed within a very short time collapse with intense precordial pain radiating into the arm and shoulder, a fall in blood pressure from normal level 128/88 to 80/50, breathlessness and imperceptible pulse. The condition was diagnosed by trained observers as acute coronary insufficiency. The acute episode was over within a few hours, the blood pressure began to rise and was restored to normal within a day. The electrocardiogram was negative shortly after the attack, four days later and after ten days.

A similar discrepancy was exemplified in a case of rheumatic heart disease.

A young woman A. O. incapacitated with rheumatic heart disease since the age of 8 was admitted to Montefiore Hospital at the age of 32. She had ten to twenty attacks of typical incapacitating anginal pain every twenty-four hours during a long period of observation. The electrocardiogram during and between anginal attacks revealed no acute coronary insufficiency. There was however little doubt that the coronary circulation had been responsible for the repeated paroxysms of anginal pain; the attacks were completely arrested by aminophyllin.

#### B. ACUTE MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION WITHOUT ACUTE CORONARY OCCLUSION

The electrocardiographic signs are sometimes indistinguishable from those of acute coronary insufficiency. As a rule however the findings last longer, the prominence and persistence of the RST depression and T wave inversion depend upon the extent and duration of the subendocardial damage. Elevation of the ST segment is rare but occurs if the epicardial layer of the heart is involved. Eventual recovery from the myocardial damage is usually accompanied by restoration of the electrocardiogram to a normal or almost normal state. Q waves are nearly always absent.

The electrocardiogram in about 5 per cent of cases of acute myocardial infarction unattended by coronary occlusion may show signs which are characteristic of acute myocardial infarction associated with acute coronary occlusion. This occurs when the myocardial lesion is no longer subendothelial but involves the endothelial as well as the epicardial layers of the heart. The lesion thus is in effect a massive through and through infarction and the associated electrocardiographic signs may then point to predominantly anterior or posterior wall involvement (Fig. 9).

#### C. ACUTE MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION WITH ACUTE CORONARY OCCLUSION

Whereas in the type of acute myocardial infarction described above the lesion consists of scattered multiple focal necroses which comparatively seldom penetrate the endothelial lining of the heart, in acute myocardial infarction

*Anterior Wall Infarction with Acute Coronary Insufficiency*

J J a man of 68 with generalized arteriosclerosis associated with moderate hypertension of several years standing developed an acute seizure of intense precordial pain radiating into the left arm this was accompanied by general collapse fever and leukocytosis

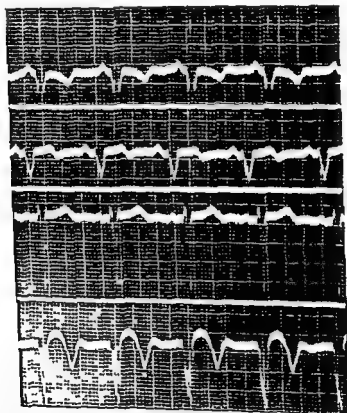


FIG 10a — Note the elevation of the RST segment in leads II III and IV T is inverted and inverted in lead I and IV and inverted in lead II Deep Q waves appear in leads I and IV

with coronary occlusion the lesion is practically always homogeneous massive and includes the inner and outer layers of the heart wall. The electrocardiographic signs differ as a rule with respect to localization of the myocardial lesion in the anterior or posterior wall.

When the anterior wall of the heart is damaged, the RST segment in leads I and IV\* is elevated and shows a high take off. The high take off is due to pericardial involvement (Scherf and Boyd<sup>9</sup>). The T waves in leads I and IV are inverted and soon assume a typical cove shape, Q waves are prominent in leads I and IV. The findings in leads I and III are often reciprocal. The precordial leads derived from the chest wall over the area of infarction disclose elevated RST segments and inverted T waves. The T waves in the precordial and limb leads may gradually become righted or remain inverted and smaller as permanent evidence of infarction, in some cases the IV lead will show an inverted or upright T of high voltage long after the acute episode of infarction. The RST changes in the standard and precordial leads tend eventually to reach the isoelectric line, but some degree of shift of the segment may persist or even remain permanent (Fig. 10a).

When the posterior wall of the heart is infarcted the RST segment is elevated in leads II and III, the T waves are inverted and become cove shaped and Q waves appear in leads II and III. Similar changes are noted in the precordial leads derived from the chest wall over the area of infarction. The RST segment in all leads tends to reach the isoelectric line, but as in the case of anterior wall infarction some degree of shift of the RST segment, together with some degree of T inversion, but with Q waves in leads II and III may remain for a long time or even permanently. Signs which strongly suggest posterior wall infarction are sometimes encountered in acute pulmonary embolization or acute pericarditis (Fig. 10b).

In both anterior and posterior wall infarction, the electrocardiogram frequently shows an accelerated heart rate, extrasystoles, paroxysmal tachycardia, heart block, etc. Goldberger<sup>8</sup> maintains that 'coronary' myocardial infarction may be diagnosed if the unipolar lead aVF shows a Q wave more than 0.4 second wide, is accompanied by an R wave and is greater than 5 to 8 twentieths of the depth of the R wave. The genesis of Q waves is not entirely clear but there is reason to believe that the wave, in precordial leads at least, is the result of involvement by the infarction of the endocardial lining of the ventricular wall. This forms a 'window' for the escape of negative electrical discharge from the ventricle. The negative discharge is inscribed as a Q wave.

## II Acute Extracardiac Conditions

The electrocardiogram in these conditions is normal even when a cardiac attack is simulated. A normal electrocardiogram however is no absolute guarantee of a normal cardiovascular apparatus. If the diagnosis therefore

\* Designated also as IVT or CF4

of an acute cardiac state is strongly suspected it should not be surrendered even if the electrocardiogram is negative. The electrocardiogram may not always reveal a fresh intramural infarction located strictly anterior or involving certain portions of the posterior heart wall but it can be depended upon in the greatest number of cases to show signs of previous cardiovascular damage or of an acute myocardial infarction with or without coronary occlusion.

To distinguish an acute cardiac episode from extracardiac conditions which simulate it may be very difficult. This difficulty arises because as already stated a generalized autonomic reaction and the manifestation of anginal pain are common to all the conditions (pp 2-19).

With respect to anginal pain the electrocardiogram registers electrical changes of cardiac conditions which are associated with pain. For instance it will disclose variations in myocardial action currents caused by the pathologic events which accompany acute coronary insufficiency or acute coronary occlusion. These events are associated with pain induced by anoxemia and ischemia of the heart muscle but the electrocardiogram bears no direct evidence of pain. Pain that arises in the heart, coronary vessels or aorta is transmitted by afferent visceral fibers to the left side of the cord at levels Th 1-4 and thence by the left 1-4 thoracic intercostal nerves into corresponding dermatomes or the pain may travel by accessory visceral pathways to other zones in the cord reaching into related extracardiac dermatomic territories.

Pain engendered in an extracardiac focus sometimes takes the same route as cardiac pain, the impulses of extracardiac pain passing chiefly through the cardiac cord levels (Th 1 to 4) on the left side and then into the cardiac dermatomic area (p 271). This is a simulation of anginal pain since not only is the pain of noncardiovascular origin but it is transmitted by pathways which have no connection with the coronary vessels, heart or aorta. The electrocardiogram is normal.

Let us assume however that the diagnosis of an acute extracardiac state is established, the accompanying pain acts like anginal pain and the electrocardiogram is not normal. Are we then dealing with (1) changes in the coronary circulation induced by the extracardiac disorder, (2) with pre-existing cardiovascular disease or (3) with a concurrent acute cardiac episode?

Libert and his associates have claimed that afferent impulses from upper abdominal organs (gall bladder, stomach) can cause vagal coronary constriction and thus initiate anginal pain. But although they noted a reduction in the dog's coronary flow when the gall bladder was artificially distended and made painful, it is not clear that a similar mechanism operates in man when his heart and coronary vessels are normal. Moreover it is not established whether this pain is anginal, i.e. produced by change in the coronary circulation or heart muscle or whether it simulates anginal pain by reaching cardiac dermatomes by pathways having no connection with the coronary vessels and heart.

A negative electrocardiogram in a young healthy subject who is stricken by an acute gall bladder attack, a perforated gastric ulcer or a similar catastrophe

*Acute Posterior Wall Infarction with Acute Coronary Occlusion*

L. M., a 68 year old male in good health for many years, was suddenly seized with agonizing epigastric and precordial pain. This was followed almost at once by shock and cyanosis. Bloody, frothy sputum, pointing to pulmonary infarction, appeared on the fourth day and mild jaundice on the fifth day. The jaundice deepened and the gall bladder became tender and enlarged. Fever and leukocytosis persisted for ten days. Autopsy disclosed a recently inflamed but healing gall bladder, extensive recent involvement of the posterior wall of the heart, and acute coronary thrombosis.

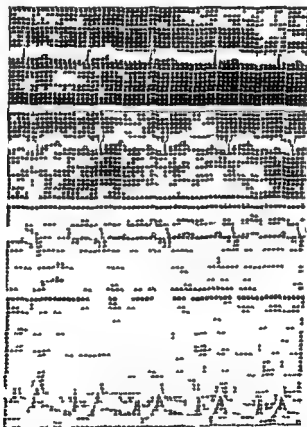


FIG. 10b.—The RST segment is elevated in leads I, II and III and depressed in lead IV. The T wave in I and III is reduced in voltage and a Q wave appears in lead II and III. The elevated JST segments are suggestive of pericardial involvement.

of an acute cardiac state is strongly suspected it should not be surrendered even if the electrocardiogram is negative. The electrocardiogram may not always reveal a fresh intramural infarction located strictly anterior or involving certain portions of the posterior heart wall but it can be depended upon in the greatest number of cases to show signs of previous cardiovascular damage or of an acute myocardial infarction with or without coronary occlusion.

To distinguish an acute cardiac episode from extracardiac conditions which simulate it may be very difficult. This difficulty arises because as already stated a generalized autonomic reaction and the manifestation of anginal pain are common to all the conditions (pp 2-19).

With respect to anginal pain the electrocardiogram registers electrical changes of cardiac conditions which are associated with pain. For instance it will disclose variations in myocardial action currents caused by the pathologic events which accompany acute coronary insufficiency or acute coronary occlusion. These events are associated with pain induced by anoxemia and ischemia of the heart muscle but the electrocardiogram bears no direct evidence of pain. Pain that arises in the heart, coronary vessels or aorta is transmitted by afferent visceral fibers to the left side of the cord at levels Th 1-4 and thence by the left 1-4 thoracic intercostal nerves into corresponding dermatomes or the pain may travel by accessory visceral pathways to other zones in the cord reaching into related extracardiac dermatomic territories.

Pain engendered in an extracardiac focus sometimes takes the same route as cardiac pain, the impulses of extracardiac pain passing chiefly through the cardiac cord levels (Th 1 to 4) on the left side and then into the cardiac dermatomic area (p 271). This is a simulation of anginal pain since not only is the pain of noncardiovascular origin but it is transmitted by pathways which have no connection with the coronary vessels, heart or aorta. The electrocardiogram is normal.

Let us assume however that the diagnosis of an acute extracardiac state is established, the accompanying pain acts like anginal pain and the electrocardiogram is not normal. Are we then dealing with (1) changes in the coronary circulation induced by the extracardiac disorder, (2) with pre-existing cardiovascular disease or (3) with a concurrent acute cardiac episode?

Gilbert and his associates<sup>4</sup> have claimed that afferent impulses from upper abdominal organs (gall bladder, stomach) can cause vagal coronary constriction and thus initiate anginal pain. But although they noted a reduction in the dog's coronary flow when the gall bladder was artificially distended and made painful, it is not clear that a similar mechanism operates in man when his heart and coronary vessels are normal. Moreover it is not established whether this pain is animal-like, produced by change in the coronary circulation or heart muscle or whether it simulates anginal pain by reaching cardiac dermatomes by pathways having no connection with the coronary vessels and heart.

A negative electrocardiogram in a young healthy subject who is stricken by an acute gall bladder attack, a perforated gastric ulcer or a similar catastrophe

lends support to the premise that, despite the development of sinistral pain which simulates angular pain, the coronary circulation and heart were not involved and the sensory impulses of pain passed through the neuraxis without touching the cardiovascular apparatus. Electrocardiographic signs of acute coronary insufficiency, on the other hand, would be open to the interpretation that the coronary circulation had been affected as in the case of the dog with a normal coronary circuit and a distended painful gall bladder.

Except in the cases of acute coronary insufficiency induced by severe generalized causes such as great loss of blood or acute CO poisoning, abnormal electrocardiographic findings in young healthy subjects afflicted by an acute extracardiac state are rare.

Acute pulmonary embolization can, however, produce acute coronary insufficiency with corresponding electrocardiographic signs in individuals who possess normal heart muscle and coronary vessels. This is illustrated by the case described in Figure 3.

Some observers<sup>1-13</sup> have explained the coronary disturbance following pulmonary embolization as a pulmono coronary reflex. Scherf and Schonbrunner<sup>10-11</sup> published records which appear to confirm this, Eckardt,<sup>8</sup> however, was unable to substantiate the existence of such a reflex, and more recently, Parn<sup>1</sup> has been unwilling to accept it. Be this as it may it may be inquired what mechanism and pathways play a part in producing angular pain in acute explosive conditions of an abdominal organ, for instance. Are there afferent vagal pathways which lead from an inflamed gall bladder or pancreas or from a perforated hollow viscus to the neuraxis and then to the coronary vessels? Do afferent vagal nerves from these and other organs go to the sympathetic ganglionated chain (to the superior cervical ganglion [Coffey and Brown]) where they may be related to efferent coronary constrictors? Are non reflexes involved? These questions cannot be answered at present since it is not universally accepted that afferent vagal fibers carry pain from the heart and coronary vessels, and that the latter are constricted by vagal nerves.

Older subjects are generally suspect of having some degree of cardiovascular impairment and this is usually confirmed by electrocardiographic findings. But suspect or not an acute extracardiac event will produce in the electrocardiogram no disturbance at all or no change beyond that associated with old cardiovascular events, or it will produce changes of acute coronary insufficiency or of a fortuitous concurrent acute coronary occlusion. The case record of L. M. (p. 22) is that of a man who suffered concurrently from acute coronary occlusion with myocardial infarction and an attack of acute cholecystitis.

Severe and recurrent angular pain may be accompanied by no electrocardiographic alterations. This is illustrated by the two cases described on p. 52. Or the electrocardiographic changes of angina pectoris with angular pain may appear only when the impulses of angular pain are summated by impulses of pain derived from some extracardiac focus. This is seen more especially in

patients with coronary sclerosis and old healed heart damage. Whereas prior to the extracardiac episode the cardiovascular apparatus may have produced only a small quantity of sensory impulses which were subclinical i.e. insufficient to initiate anginal pain after the extracardiac episode sensory impulses from the active noncardiac lesion join with the other group of impulses to produce anginal pain as an overt manifestation. A subacromial bursitis a smoulder in gall bladder and other extracardiac foci can act in this way.

The same phenomenon is indirectly illustrated in the improvement or disappearance of anginal pain in heart disease when a troublesome extracardiac lesion e.g. a diseased gall bladder is removed. Amelioration of anginal pain following local anesthetization of a local patch of skin on the left arm (Weiss and Davis)<sup>14</sup> is another example of the same principle.

The electrocardiogram may show no change at all with the onset development or disappearance of anginal pain under the circumstances described above unless produced by the coronary circulation.

### BIBLIOGRAPHY

- <sup>1</sup>ECHE G. AND WEINER T. A Primer of Electrocardiography Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1945
- <sup>2</sup>COPPEL W. B. AND BROWN P. A. The surgical treatment of angina pectoris Arch Int Med 1923 31 200
- <sup>3</sup>ECKARDT P. Zur Frage des pulmocoronaren Reflexes bei Lungenembolie Mflger's Arch 1939 241 224
- GILBERT V. C. FENN G. K. AND LEROY G. V. The effect of distention of abdominal viscera on the coronary blood flow J A M A 1940 115 1962
- LEROY G. V. AND FENN G. K. The effect of distention of abdominal viscera on the blood flow in the circumflex branch of the left coronary artery of the dog Am Heart J 1940 20 319
- <sup>5</sup>GOLDBERGER I. Unipolar Lead Electrocardiography Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1944
- KATZ L. V. Electrocardiography Philadelphia Lea and Febiger 1946
- <sup>7</sup>PARRY V. V. The role of pulmonary vessels in the control of the blood circulation Am J Sci 1947 217 16
- SCHIEFF D. AND BOYD L. J. Clinical Electrocardiography St Louis C. V. Mosby 1941 2nd edition Philadelphia Lippincott 1946
- <sup>9</sup>— AND SCHONBERGER E. Über Herzbefunde bei Lungenembolien Ztschr f Klin Med 1935 179 4
- <sup>10</sup>— AND — Über den pulmocoronaren Reflex bei Lungenembolien Klin Wchnschr 1935 16 340
- <sup>11</sup>STREIFF V. Zu Frage der bakteriellen Lungenembolie Virchows Arch 1909 198 211
- VILLARET M. JUSTIN BESANCON L. AND BARDIN I. Physiopathologie des accidents mortels consécutifs aux embolies pulmonaires Bull et mém Soc méd d hôp de Paris 1936 1 956
- AND — Recherches sur la prévention expérimentale des accidents consécutifs aux embolies pulmonaires Bull et mém Soc méd d hôp de Paris 1936 57 941
- WEINSTRUB H. J. AND BLIHOP L. F. JR The anoxemia test for coronary insufficiency Ann Int Med 194 26 41
- <sup>14</sup>WEISS S. AND DAVIS D. The significance of the afferent impulses from the skin in the mechanism of visceral pain Skin arthritation as a useful therapeutic measure Am J Sci 19 8 176 517





## SECTION TWO

# Physiological Aspects

---

### CHAPTER IV

## General Autonomic Regulations

### General Considerations

ALL BRANCHES of medicine and more especially internal medicine and neurology share a common territory which may be regarded as a repository of the autonomic regulations of the body. The study of this common ground is in effect the study of the autonomic nervous system. The many patterns of clinical disease are partially or wholly expressions of autonomic activity and this activity may or may not be associated with somatic alterations. These considerations will be better appreciated with an understanding of the general physiology of the autonomic nervous system.

To a very appreciable degree the autonomic and somatic nervous systems are interdependent although the autonomic system enjoys a considerable autonomy of its own. However this autonomy operating in a coordinated manner to maintain the intrabodily environment at an optimal functional level (Bernard <sup>16</sup> "milieu interieur" Cannon <sup>17</sup> "homeostasis" Jelliffe <sup>18</sup> "homeolinesis") is not entirely complete. By devices of its own the autonomic nervous system in general subservient to the cerebrospinal system exercises important regulations over intrabodily processes. Nature has seen to it that these regulations are not easily put out of commission. Man can partly influence these regulations but short of self-destruction he cannot deflect or stop their inherent automaticity.

Examples of independent reflex action and of the autonomic activities affected by psychic influences or by volitional factors are given below.

### A. PSYCHIC INFLUENCES AND AUTONOMIC REACTIONS

Autonomic acts may be modified by will power to a certain extent but in the main the autonomic activities remain outside volitional influences. On the other hand the vegetative functions are quite readily affected by emotional states. For the psychologist and the practicing physician the problem is still unsettled whether emotions are the consequence of somatic (including autonomic and endocrine) reactions or whether these reactions are initiated by emotional or psychic activities. This is a dispute beyond our immediate interest. However an allusion to the variations in the behavior of organs for example of the heart, stomach and intestines associated with abnormal play of emotions is within the province of our discussion. Palpitation, loss of

appetite, hyperchlorhydria and diarrhea are observed with many emotional derangements especially apprehension, fear, or excitement, other instances are blushing (as in shame), clammy, cold perspiration (as in sudden embarrassment), disturbances in sleep or in staying awake (in mental distress), the onset of jaundice (from intense anger or fright), and even imaginary pregnancy (Hoff<sup>70</sup>) (For a fuller discussion of this subject consult Wittkower,<sup>18</sup> Mc Gregor<sup>97</sup> Dunbar<sup>49</sup> Spiegel,<sup>16</sup> Kennard<sup>74</sup> and Kuntz<sup>79</sup>)

Cortical, i.e., psychic processes, can intensify and aggravate the clinical manifestations of disease Angina pectoris ulcers of the gastro intestinal tract, disease of the liver and bile ducts belong in this category, also autonomic manifestations associated with localized damage of a related area in the cortex, i.e., hemiplegia, jacksonian epilepsy, Quincke's edema, Raynaud like vascular peripheral changes, and scleroderma The cortex exercises an influence upon cardiovascular and metabolic activities, on temperature, and on gastro intestinal and other regulations The association of psychic states with the sudden onset of Graves' disease, glycosuria, diabetes mellitus, and diabetes insipidus is recognized

## B INTRINSIC REFLEX CENTERS

In contrast to the somatic innervations the autonomic system, it has been asserted, lacks peripheral centers in which reflexes take place but this is not altogether a valid premise The cells of the enteric system, for example, may be regarded as reflex centers, they mediate coordinated reactions of the intestines independently of the central nervous system Other organs possess intrinsic reflex centers

## C AXON REFLEXES

Another type of reaction the so called axon reflex known as the Sokolownin reflex is often cited as an illustration of an autonomic reflex although strictly speaking this is a pseudo not a genuine reflex The reflex is really an extraspinal 'shortcut' mediated between two structures or organs the efferent neuron to each structure coming off a common trunk Bruce<sup>5</sup> postulated the existence of such a reflex in connection with cutaneous blood vessels and in connection with inflammatory conditions The 'reflex' was at least suspected by Claude Bernard<sup>11</sup> Sokolownin<sup>13</sup> described the reflex Langley and Anderson<sup>44</sup> analyzed its mechanism, Speranskaja Stepanowa<sup>14</sup> <sup>15</sup> observed reactions analogous to the axon reflex in the frog and Wernke<sup>101</sup> in fishes Hryntschik and Spiegel<sup>77</sup> found that the reflex could be transmitted by the pelvic nerve while Breslau<sup>3</sup> drew attention to this reflex in man as a localized reaction in the skin

The bearing of axon reflexes upon many clinical manifestations deserves further study As is well known Lewis<sup>67</sup> and others invoke this reflex to explain the local response of the skin arterioles and capillaries to histamine But this type of reflex may underlie other autonomic manifestations For instance the

radiation and reference of gallbladder pain into the stomach or vice versa — perhaps mediated by nervous pathways which do not extend beyond an intra abdominal autonomic ganglion (Fig 11). A similar mechanism may hold for vasomotor and secretory activities within the abdomen or other territories of the body.

### Manifestations Projected by the Autonomic Nervous System

More significant than the problematic existence of an intrinsic reflex are the mass action (p 15) and the universal way in which the autonomic system

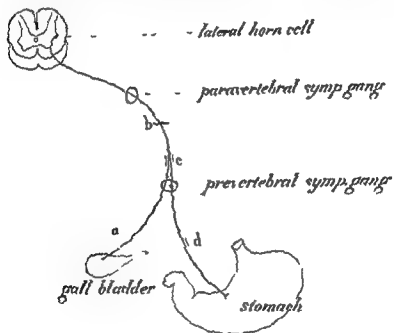


FIG 11 — Schema of an Axon Reflex Between Gall Bladder & Stomach — stimulus from a 'g' & a line goes no higher than b then descends along c and d to reach the stomach

response. The mass action is probably inaugurated at the sources of origin of the vast groups of efferent fibers — these sources are the nuclear condensations and other related structures situated in the brain stem (diencephalon, mesencephalon, pons and medulla) in the telencephalic region and even in the spinal cord itself. From these centers the discharge of impulses is constant but varies under abnormal conditions. Under all circumstances however these discharges are promptly transmitted through a multitude of efferent (centrifugal) neurons reaching into the tiniest recesses of the body and sympathetic (adrenal) or parasympathetic (cholinergic) manifestations are set off according to the autonomic division brought into play.

## A SYMPATHETIC INNERVATIONS AND THEIR MANIFESTATIONS

The sympathetic afferent (sensory) fibers are concerned primarily with the transmission of impulses of pain into the neuraxis. The efferent fibers emerge from the neuraxis and transmit efferent impulses into the viscera and peripheral structures.

1 *Peripheral To Blood Vessels, Sweat Glands, Erector Pili Muscles, and Structures of the Head*

Generally speaking, the peripheral manifestations consist of reactions on the part of the blood vessels, sweat glands, and erector pili muscles. As a result of constant discharge of constrictor impulses to the muscular walls of the arterioles, the peripheral vascular beds are kept in a sustained state of contraction i.e., tonicity.

Whereas the blood vessels of nearly all the internal organs possess sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves, the *peripheral blood vessels* appear to receive their innervation from the sympathetic division alone (Fig. 13). Parasympathetic nerves have not been definitely established (Kure<sup>80-81</sup> opposite contention in connection with skeletal blood vessels). At any rate, stimulation of the sympathetic fibers to vessels of the extremities causes constriction of arterioles (Bernard<sup>13</sup>), and capillaries (Doi<sup>14</sup>). Variation in the lumen of the vessels is supposed to be accomplished by an increase or diminution of sympathetic influences.

Similarly, the *sweat glands* also under sympathetic control apparently possess no parasympathetic nerves. The sympathetic nerve endings to sweat glands behave like parasympathetic (cholinergic) nerve endings; these endings and the sweat glands will not respond to adrenalin. This would seem to illustrate an exception to the rule that adrenalin always causes a sympathomimetic action. Erector pili muscles, too, are under motor sympathetic control and seem to have no parasympathetic nerves.

The *cephalic region* is supposed to be without sympathetic afferent fibers at least; none have been conclusively demonstrated. In the absence of sympathetic afferent communications, pain in this territory has been explained on the basis that afferent impulses which may reach the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion stimulate intraganglionic cells; from these efferent neurons go to the head region, causing constriction of blood vessels and other sympathetic manifestations. According to Livingston<sup>82</sup> constriction of the cerebral vessels, the middle meningeal artery, will cause pain; this presupposes the existence of an intracranial afferent nerve supply. Whether or not any of these explanations hold water, there is no doubt of the ground upon which physiologists stand with respect to the function of the efferent sympathetic neurons in the head region. The iris of the eye, Muller's muscle, the upper eyelid and

blood vessels sweat glands etc in the skin of the head are controlled by sympathetic supplies

To the sympathetic innervation of Muller's muscle and of the retrobulbar fat pad is attached a special interest in connection with experimental and clinical exophthalmos. Whether the sympathetic nerves actually participate in the production of exophthalmos is not clear bearing on this query are the studies of Miller and Taub<sup>39</sup> who by the intravenous injection of oxyquinoline, were able to induce acute and pronounced bilateral exophthalmos in rabbits a result which failed to appear when the animal was under anesthesia. Extirpation of the cervical sympathetic ganglion did not prevent the onset of exophthalmos (See Marine<sup>40</sup> and Marine and Roen<sup>41</sup> for studies on chronic exophthalmos induced experimentally.)

The persistence and even the aggravation of exophthalmos after thyrotoxicosis has also been noted in patients who remained greatly improved and apparently free of unusual autonomic manifestations. This type of persistent exophthalmos has been explained on the basis of an excessive sympathetic discharge through sympathetic nerves which supply the structures of the eye. However this concept is not altogether satisfactory.

The absence of exophthalmos in quite a number of instances of frank and advanced thyrotoxicosis is no less difficult to understand. While the cause of exophthalmos is still an enigma we should like to suggest that the occurrence of exophthalmos in man may be contingent upon the existence of an adequate quantity of Muller's fat behind the orbit. This fat in man is a vestigial structure and varies in amount from individual to individual. When it is scant to begin with even were it to hypertrophy as is often the case during the state of thyrotoxicosis it might not be able to hold the eyeball forward.

#### 3. Visceral To Bronchial Musculature Pulmonary Vessels Bronchial Arteries Coronary Vessels Heart Abdominal and Pelvic Viscera

The bronchial musculature is supplied by dilator fibers

The pulmonary vessels it is safe to say receive sympathetic nerves. The nerves to the lung vessels have long been a troublesome and confusing subject of study especially for the clinician. Even at the risk therefore of extending this discussion beyond our original intention the pulmonary innervation will be reviewed at some length. (For parasympathetic supplies see p. 69.)

In earlier investigations the existence of pulmonary vasomotor nerves was either denied or their function looked upon as slight or inconsequential. Bradford and Dean<sup>42</sup> obtained a rise in pulmonary blood pressure by stimulating the peripheral cut ends of thoracic nerves 3-4 and probably of 6 and 7. Wood<sup>106-107</sup> reported similar results. François-Franck<sup>43</sup> also confirmed this. Plumier<sup>108-109</sup> reported that stimulation of vasomotor nerves to the lungs of dogs led to an increase in pulmonary blood pressure but Brodie and Dixon<sup>44</sup>

### 1 SYMPATHETIC INNERVATIONS AND THEIR MANIFESTATIONS

The sympathetic afferent (sensory) fibers are concerned primarily with the transmission of impulses of pain into the neuraxis. The efferent fibers emerge from the neuraxis and transmit efferent impulses into the viscera and peripheral structures.

#### 1 *Peripheral To Blood Vessels, Sweat Glands, Erector Pili Muscles, and Structures of the Head*

Generally speaking, the peripheral manifestations consist of reactions on the part of the blood vessels, sweat glands, and erector pili muscles. As a result of constant discharge of constrictor impulses to the muscular walls of the arterioles, the peripheral vascular beds are kept in a sustained state of contraction, i.e., tonicity.

Whereas the blood vessels of nearly all the internal organs possess sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves, the *peripheral blood vessels* appear to receive their innervation from the sympathetic division alone (Fig. 13). Parasympathetic nerves have not been definitely established (Kure,<sup>30-33</sup> opposite contention in connection with skeletal blood vessels). At any rate stimulation of the sympathetic fibers to vessels of the extremities causes constriction of arterioles (Bernard<sup>13</sup>), and capillaries (Dor<sup>44</sup>). Variation in the lumen of the vessels is supposed to be accomplished by an increase or diminution of sympathetic influences.

Similarly, the *sweat glands* also under sympathetic control apparently possess no parasympathetic nerves. The sympathetic nerve endings to sweat glands behave like parasympathetic (cholinergic) nerve endings; these endings and the sweat glands will not respond to adrenalin. This would seem to illustrate an exception to the rule that adrenalin always causes a sympathomimetic action. Erector pili muscles too are under motor sympathetic control and seem to have no parasympathetic nerves.

The *cephalic region* is supposed to be without sympathetic afferent fibers at least none have been conclusively demonstrated. In the absence of sympathetic afferent communications pain in this territory has been explained on the basis that afferent impulses which may reach the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion stimulate intraganglionic cells from these efferent neurons go to the head region, causing constriction of blood vessels and other sympathetic manifestations. According to Livingston<sup>39</sup> constriction of the cerebral vessels, the middle meningeal artery will cause pain, this presupposes the existence of an intracranial afferent nerve supply. Whether or not any of these explanations hold water there is no doubt of the ground upon which physiologists stand with respect to the function of the efferent sympathetic neurons in the head region. The iris of the eye, Muller's muscle, the upper eyelid and

In a more recent study employing an innervated Starling heart lung preparation with separate perfusion of the heart Gollwitzer Meier and Kruger<sup>14</sup> found that stimulation of the sympathetics caused an increase in pulmonary blood pressure due to vasoconstriction whereas stimulation of the vagus produced a decrease in pulmonary blood pressure due to vasodilatation.

Although adrenalin became established as a useful chemical tool for the detection of the pulmonary vasomotor innervation the experimental results were not the same in all hands. Velich<sup>15, 16</sup> and Gerhardt<sup>17</sup> obtained no pulmonary vasoconstriction. Brodie and Dixon<sup>1</sup> published similar results they observed slight dilatation even with large doses of adrenalin. Heger and Philippon<sup>18</sup> Heymans and Vercoillie<sup>19</sup> in the rabbit and Tribe<sup>12, 13</sup> reported dilatation which followed constriction. Moller<sup>10</sup> Baehr and Lick<sup>4</sup> and Hirakawa<sup>20</sup> contended that vasoconstriction of the pulmonary vessels is absent after the introduction of adrenalin. Other authorities like Czulski<sup>21</sup> and Petitjean<sup>12a</sup> claimed that with adrenalin pulmonary vessels underwent a passive dilatation whereas Krawlow<sup>3</sup> and Weber<sup>10</sup> held that the pulmonary vessels exhibited a direct active dilatation from adrenalin.

The divergence in these results was laid to differences which characterize the reactions of various animals and to differences in the character of the perfusion fluids. The pH concentration and the quantity of calcium as well as the temperature of the fluids proved to be important factors and the quantity of adrenalin employed no less important. Variations in the amount of adrenalin was held to be the chief cause of the inconstant results (Tribe<sup>13</sup> Romm<sup>11</sup> and De Burgh Daly<sup>22</sup>).

A matter of some interest in the light of studies on experimental pulmonary embolization (Struett<sup>17</sup> Villaret et al.<sup>12, 13</sup> Scherf and Schonbrunner,<sup>17, 18</sup> and Eckardt<sup>23</sup> who was unable to substantiate the existence of a pulmonocoronary reflex) and on the clinical relationship between pulmonary and coronary circulations in man is that in practically all the experimental studies on pulmonary arterial pressure little attention was paid to the coronary dilatation which accompanied the use of adrenalin nor was the coronary dilatation associated with change in pulmonary tension considered to be of any import. Later on investigators working with adrenalin<sup>24</sup> perfusion experiments remedied this oversight.

The *bronchial arteries* it is held are constricted by thoracic sympathetic nerves and are alleged to be supplied by sympathetic vasodilators. Hovielacque<sup>25</sup> stated that in man sympathetic twigs which accompany the bronchial arteries usually arise from the ganglia of Th 3 and 4. Perfusing the lungs through the bronchial arteries with adrenalin will cause an increase in bronchial arterial pressure. Vasomotor sympathetic constrictor nerves to these vessels have been described and discussed by De Burgh Daly<sup>4, 22</sup> De Burgh Daly and von Euler<sup>26</sup> and Rjasanskij<sup>12a</sup>.

The *coronary arteries* are supplied by sympathetic nerves which are most



as well as Erikson<sup>41</sup> Weber<sup>46</sup> and Lohr<sup>91</sup> denied this. In Tribe's experience,<sup>124</sup> however, stimulation of the stellate ganglion induced constriction followed by dilatation, LeBlanc and van Wyngaarden<sup>42</sup> were able to cause constriction of pulmonary vessels by stimulating the stellate ganglion in the cat, and vasodilatation by stimulating the vagus nerve. Confirmatory proof of the existence of pulmonary vasomotor nerves was brought forward by DeBurgh Daly and von Euler.<sup>44</sup> Their results were not uniform but they demonstrated, nevertheless, that excitation of the thoracic vagosympathetic nerves in the dog produced vigorous constriction or weak dilatation, dilatation they attributed to a cholinergic effect. Others who turned to this problem were Dixon and Hoyle,<sup>45-47</sup> Berry, Brailsford and DeBurgh Daly,<sup>1</sup> and especially De Burgh Daly and von Euler. These last working with dogs and acting on the suggestion made by Berry et al., ingeniously maintained the blood supply to the nerve heads of the pulmonary vasomotor nerves by simultaneously perfusing the bronchial as well as the pulmonary arteries. This procedure kept alive the vasomotor nerves enabling them to function.

The evidence from all this research was definitely in accord with the belief of a nervous control of the lung vessels. Vasoconstriction for mammals at least it seemed reasonably certain, was a sympathetic reaction and it also became apparent that the pulmonary vessels were in a tonic state of constriction.

The proof of vasoconstrictor activity of nerves to the pulmonary vessels secured a broader and better foundation when adrenalin was added to the experimental procedure of investigations. Over fifty years ago this substance then designed as adrenal extract was known to produce an increase in pulmonary pressure. Cybulski<sup>36-37</sup> and Szymonowicz<sup>1-3</sup> believed that extracts of the adrenal gland caused a generalized vasoconstriction as a result of a central action. Later Pilcher and Sollmann,<sup>105</sup> as well as Kolm and Pick<sup>77</sup> showed this concept to be erroneous but the Polish investigators evidently understood that adrenal extract could produce pulmonary vasoconstriction. After them Plumier<sup>10</sup> Meyer<sup>93</sup> Langendorff<sup>84</sup> Wiggers<sup>103</sup> Barbour,<sup>6</sup> Petitjean,<sup>101</sup> Tribe<sup>123</sup> and Romm<sup>114</sup> recorded the constriction of lung vessels by adrenalin. Campbell<sup>6</sup> observed constriction in dogs and rabbits. Fuhner and Starling<sup>54</sup> constriction in the dog, Schafer and Lim,<sup>116</sup> Lohr<sup>91</sup> and Schlesinger<sup>119</sup> constriction in the cat which was occasionally followed by dilatation. Pick<sup>104</sup> and Petitjean claimed that the intravenous injection of nitrites produced pulmonary vasoconstriction but this was denied by Plumier.<sup>103-109</sup>

Gollwitzer Meier, Kramer and Kruger<sup>37</sup> published studies on denervated heart lung preparations, demonstrating that the increase in pulmonary pressure following adrenalin was in part due to increase in cardiac minute volume output. The prolonged rise in pulmonary pressure was due to vasoconstriction of the pulmonary vessels. Most of the investigators worked with Starling heart preparations a method which permits rather trustworthy analysis of the factors underlying pulmonary pressure since the element of venous return is excluded.

In a more recent study employing an innervated Starling heart lung preparation with separate perfusion of the heart Collwitzer Meier and Kruger<sup>24</sup> found that stimulation of the sympathetics caused an increase in pulmonary blood pressure due to vasoconstriction whereas stimulation of the vagus produced a decrease in pulmonary blood pressure due to vasodilatation.

Although adrenalin became established as a useful chemical tool for the detection of the pulmonary vasomotor innervation the experimental results were not the same in all hands. Velich<sup>125</sup> <sup>126</sup> and Gerhardt<sup>127</sup> obtained no pulmonary vasoconstriction. Brodie and Dixon<sup>4</sup> published similar results, they observed slight dilatation even with large doses of adrenalin. Heger and Philippon<sup>28</sup> Heymans and Vercoillie<sup>25</sup> in the rabbit and Tribe<sup>128</sup> <sup>129</sup> reported dilatation which followed constriction. Moller<sup>100</sup> Baehr and Lick<sup>4</sup> and Hirakawa<sup>41</sup> contended that vasoconstriction of the pulmonary vessels is absent after the introduction of adrenalin. Other authorities like Cybulski<sup>36</sup> and Petitjean<sup>129</sup> claimed that with adrenalin pulmonary vessels underwent a passive dilatation whereas Krawkow<sup>42</sup> and Weber<sup>110</sup> held that the pulmonary vessels exhibited a direct active dilatation from adrenalin.

The divergence in these results was laid to differences which characterize the reactions of various animals and to differences in the character of the perfusion fluids. The pH concentration and the quantity of calcium as well as the temperature of the fluids proved to be important factors and the quantity of adrenalin employed no less important. Variations in the amount of adrenalin was held to be the chief cause of the inconstant results (Tribe<sup>128</sup> Romm<sup>114</sup> and De Burgh Daly<sup>40</sup>).

A matter of some interest in the light of studies on experimental pulmonary embolization (Struett<sup>17</sup> Villaret et al.<sup>127</sup> <sup>128</sup> Scherf and Schonbrunner<sup>127</sup> <sup>128</sup> and Eckardt<sup>19</sup> who was unable to substantiate the existence of a pulmonocoronary reflex) and on the clinical relationship between pulmonary and coronary circulations in man is that in practically all the experimental studies on pulmonary arterial pressure little attention was paid to the coronary dilatation which accompanied the use of adrenalin nor was the coronary dilatation associated with change in pulmonary tension considered to be of any import. Later on investigators working with adrenalin in perfusion experiments remedied this oversight.

The bronchial arteries it is held are constricted by thoracic sympathetic nerves and are alleged to be supplied by sympathetic vasodilators. Hovelacque<sup>71</sup> stated that in man sympathetic twigs which accompany the bronchial arteries usually arise from the ganglia of Th 3 and 4. Perfusing the lungs through the bronchial arteries with adrenalin will cause an increase in bronchial arterial pressure. Vasomotor sympathetic constrictor nerves to these vessels have been described and discussed by De Burgh Daly<sup>4</sup> <sup>40</sup> De Burgh Daly and von Euler<sup>44</sup> and Rjasansky<sup>130</sup>.

The coronary arteries are supplied by sympathetic nerves which are most

probably dilator in nature (Fig 13) The existence of a coronary dilator innervation, in contrast to a sympathetic constrictor supply to peripheral vessels, is upheld by physiologists like Anrep and Segall, Hochrein and Keller,<sup>49</sup> Langendorff,<sup>51</sup> Rein,<sup>111</sup> and Wiggers<sup>141</sup> In general, they emphasize the significance of the vagal constrictors, whereas Katz and Jochim<sup>72a</sup> hold an opposite view Greene,<sup>59-6</sup> Gollwitzer Meier and Kruger,<sup>88</sup> and Hinrichsen and Ivy<sup>67</sup> especially, stress the predominant tonic action of sympathetic dilators on coronary arteries A number of authorities, however, claim that the coronaries are constricted by sympathetic nerves, and these nerves, it is alleged travel in the superior sympathetic cardiac nerves On the basis of this assumption section of these nerves has been carried out to interrupt and prevent constriction of the coronary vessels (Coffey Brown and Humber,<sup>3</sup> and Kerr<sup>75-6</sup>) But controversial and conflicting results (Richardson and White,<sup>11</sup> White<sup>14</sup>) have made it difficult to accept a sympathetic vasoconstrictor innervation to the coronary vessels, at least without strong reservations

The heart is supplied by cardio accelerator sympathetic fibers (Fig 18) Thoracic in location, these emerge from the upper thoracic spinal cord segments In addition to these cardio accelerator fibers of thoracic origin, Beattie Brow and Long<sup>7-9</sup> described a group of efferent sympathetic neurons which leave the posterior hypothalamic area and descend intraspinally to the upper thoracic segments of the cord where the neurons relay to the stellate ganglion and then to the cardiac plexus This newly discovered group of hypothalamo spinal fibers is an upper neuron pathway for cardiac regulation, with a direct influence on cardiac rhythm (Fig 24)

The abdominal viscera are innervated by a major portion of the sympathetics (Fig 3) This large abdominal sympathetic division sends (a) inhibitory fibers to the smooth muscles of the alimentary tract, (b) secretory fibers to the adrenals (c) constrictor and vasodilator fibers to the vast splanchnic vascular beds (see Tomb<sup>131</sup> for sympathetic vasoconstrictor effects on the splanchnics) (d) fibers to the adrenals kidneys spleen liver and pancreas In the case of the kidneys for example an autonomic supply to the vascular components is generally accepted but an autonomic innervation to the tubular apparatus is not established (Smith<sup>100</sup>)

Sympathetic vasoconstrictor fibers supply the blood vessels of the pelvic viscera for example causing rapid emptying of blood of the external genitalia Interesting is the reported absence of autonomic nerves to the placental blood vessels and their ability to become relaxed (dilated) in the presence of low O<sub>2</sub> or high CO<sub>2</sub> tension in the blood (Schmitt<sup>100-11</sup>)

### 3 General Effects\*

There are also central autonomic manifestations These appear as changes in metabolism, temperature water regulation and the sleep-waking mecha-

\* A brief remark on the central influence on leukocytosis is appended at this point Pose now<sup>115</sup> has reported leukocytosis following experimental injury to the diencephalon The in-

nism in emotionality etc. and in associated endocrine activities. Morphologic changes in the blood elements (an increase in the total number of leukocytes and of immature neutrophilic forms) have also been described.

## B PARASYMPATHETIC INNERVATIONS AND THEIR MANIFESTATIONS

In general these seem to be antipodal or antagonistic to the sympathetic manifestations (p. 64). The parasympathetic manifestations are also peripheral (regional) and general. The peripheral effects are discussed below.

### 1. Regional and Visceral Manifestations

The head has constrictor fibers which go to the ciliary body of the eye, the pupillary sphincter, and secretory fibers supply the submaxillary and parotid glands.

The thorax contains a large parasympathetic supply, constrictor fibers innervate the bronchial musculature and according to McDowall<sup>10</sup> these muscles also receive a vasodilator supply from the parasympathetic system. As a clinical illustration of an almost selective reaction on the part of the bronchial constrictor mechanism relieved by the effect of adrenalin acting on the bronchial sympathetic dilators, the following case is cited.

*Case 1:* A 60-year-old male at Montefiore Hospital had had hypertension for a number of years associated with repeated episodes of precordial distress and dyspnea. He was known to have had multiple cardiac infarctions associated with coronary occlusions and he exhibited developed signs of chronic circulatory failure. During a later episode of paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea accompanied by precordial pain, he developed diffuse rhonchi and moist rales over the entire chest. He seemed to breathe like a patient in an attack of asthma. He became cold and clammy and his dyspnea grew very severe. The blood pressure before and after this attack remained unchanged. Despite the background of his coronary and cardiac disease, he was given a dose of adrenalin; he was immediately relieved of his dyspnea and general distress and the signs in his chest cleared.

The parasympathetic supplies to the pulmonary vessels are still not clearly established. Henriques<sup>11</sup> suggested that the vagus carries vasomotor nerves to the lungs and von Euler<sup>12</sup> was reasonably certain these nerves were vasoconstrictors. When he stimulated the vagus nerve the blood vessels became constricted; this effect was increased by eserine and reduced by atropine. Together with De Burgh Daly<sup>13</sup> he demonstrated that excitation of the thoracic vagosympathetic nerves in dogs led to vigorous pulmonary vasoconstriction or to weak vasodilatation; the vasodilatation was considered a cholinergic effect. Vasodilator fibers that are parasympathetic have been described by Anderson<sup>14</sup> and Irevost and Saloz<sup>15</sup> and McDowall<sup>16</sup> has maintained that the pulmonary vessels probably receive parasympathetic vasodilators. In unpublished per-

created output of cells consisted of neutrophilic leukocytes and this response often but not always paralleled the elevation in temperature. Occasionally there was an increase in polychromatophilic red blood cells and an occasional normal last appeared. These results call for further investigation especially since the sites of damage are not clearly defined.

probably dilator in nature (Fig 13) The existence of a coronary dilator innervation, in contrast to a sympathetic constrictor supply to peripheral vessels, is upheld by physiologists like Anrep and Segall,<sup>2</sup> Hochrein and Keller,<sup>59</sup> Langendorff,<sup>81</sup> Rein,<sup>111</sup> and Wiggers.<sup>111</sup> In general, they emphasize the significance of the vagal constrictors, whereas Katz and Jochim<sup>72a</sup> hold an opposite view. Greene,<sup>59-6</sup> Gollwitzer Meier and Kruger,<sup>88</sup> and Hinrichsen and Ivy<sup>47</sup> especially stress the predominant tonic action of sympathetic dilators on coronary arteries. A number of authorities, however, claim that the coronaries are constricted by sympathetic nerves, and these nerves, it is alleged, travel in the superior sympathetic cardiac nerves. On the basis of this assumption section of these nerves has been carried out to interrupt and prevent constriction of the coronary vessels (Coffey, Brown and Humber,<sup>38</sup> and Kerr<sup>73-4</sup>). But controversial and conflicting results (Richardson and White<sup>11</sup>, White<sup>14</sup>) have made it difficult to accept a sympathetic vasoconstrictor innervation to the coronary vessels at least without strong reservations.

The heart is supplied by cardio accelerator sympathetic fibers (Fig 18). Thoracic in location, these emerge from the upper thoracic spinal cord segments. In addition to these cardio accelerator fibers of thoracic origin Beattie, Brow and Long<sup>7-9</sup> described a group of efferent sympathetic neurons which leave the posterior hypothalamic area and descend intraspinally to the upper thoracic segments of the cord where the neurons relay to the stellate ganglion and then to the cardiac plexus. This newly discovered group of hypothalamo-spinal fibers is an upper neuron pathway for cardiac regulation with a direct influence on cardiac rhythm (Fig 24).

The abdominal viscera are innervated by a major portion of the sympathetics (Fig 3). This large abdominal sympathetic division sends (a) inhibitory fibers to the smooth muscles of the alimentary tract (b) secretory fibers to the adrenals (c) constrictor and vasodilator fibers to the vast splanchnic vascular beds (see Tomb<sup>131</sup> for sympathetic vasoconstrictor effects on the splanchnics), (d) fibers to the adrenals, kidneys, spleen, liver and pancreas. In the case of the kidneys, for example, an autonomic supply to the vascular components is generally accepted but an autonomic innervation to the tubular apparatus is not established (Smith<sup>100</sup>).

Sympathetic vasoconstrictor fibers supply the blood vessels of the pelvic viscera, for example causing rapid emptying of blood of the external genitalia. Interesting is the reported absence of autonomic nerves to the placental blood vessels and their ability to become relaxed (dilated) in the presence of low  $O_2$  or high  $CO_2$  tension in the blood (Schmitt<sup>100-11</sup>).

### 3 General Effects\*

There are also central autonomic manifestations. These appear as changes in metabolism, temperature, water regulation and the sleep-waking mechanism.

\*A brief remark on the central influence on leukocytosis is appended at this point. Rose now<sup>112</sup> has reported leukocytosis following experimental injury to the diencephalon. The in-

in favor of the contention that the pulmonary vessels undergo cholinergic vasodilatation

The bronchial vessels are not known to possess parasympathetic nerves vasodilatation being attributed to sympathetic fibers (p. 67)

Inhibitory fibers go to the pacemaker of the heart (Fig. 18)

Vasoconstrictor fibers supply the coronary vessels (Anrep and Begall<sup>2</sup>; Rein<sup>111</sup>; Collwitzer Meier and Kruger<sup>112</sup> and Wiggers<sup>113</sup>)

The abdomen receives fibers which innervate the smooth muscles and glandular structures of the alimentary tract down to the ileocolic valve. Parasympathetic fibers go to the kidneys, spleen, pancreas and other abdominal organs (Fig. 17)

The pelvis contains motor fibers which regulate the evacuation activities of the colon, rectum and bladder. The external genitalia become engorged with blood (erection) as a result of parasympathetic vasodilatation of blood vessels to these organs (Fig. 12)

## 2. General Effects

General parasympathetic manifestations are induced by the action of central parasympathetic mechanisms. These manifestations may be noted as a generalized fall in blood pressure, depression of the respiration, disturbances of bladder, gastro-intestinal or other functions. The parasympathetic division also has an influence on metabolism, secretory activities, osmotic pressure of bodily fluids, and the regulation of blood elements (eosinophils and lymphocytes). It is probably an oversimplification to designate patients as vagotonic or sympathicotonic and a similar criticism may be leveled at any attempt to label central autonomic activities like temperature regulation, sleep-waking rhythm or water exchange as either parasympathetic or sympathetic in nature.

## Anatomic Pattern of Ganglia, Neurons and Plexuses as a Determinant of Physiologic Behavior of the Autonomic Nervous System\*

The anatomic origin of peripheral neurons is different for each division of the vegetative nervous system. The sympathetic efferent fibers arise in the spinal cord from bilateral parallel contiguous columns of cell bodies lying in the gray matter of the lateral horns from C 8 to L 2 (Fig. 12). On leaving the spinal cord the preganglionic neurons are soon relayed at a synaptic junction in a ganglion (lateral or collateral as a rule) from this point the distal postganglionic neurons continue for a considerable distance eventually arriving at a viscus or a peripheral effector.

The parasympathetic efferent fibers on the other hand originate in isolated clusters of cell bodies scattered through the cranio-bulbar and sacral cord levels (Fig. 11). The preganglionic neurons comparatively long continue until the

\* See Chapters VI through IX for description of the anatomy

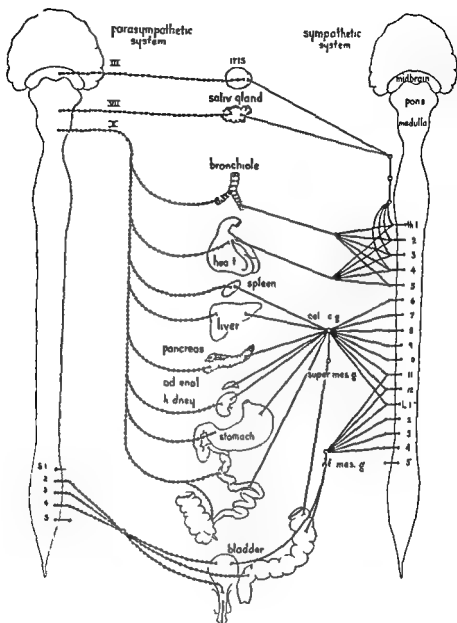


FIG. 12 — Autonomic Innervations to the Organs of the Body. For schematic purposes each autonomic division is represented as coming off a separate neuraxis. The parasympathetic cranial outflow is by way of the IIIrd, VIIth, IXth, Xth with cranial nerves; the sacral outflow by way of S2, S3, S4. Hair, sweat glands and blood vessels to the skin of each dermatomic area of the body are supplied by sympathetic fibers arising at the neuraxial levels related to each dermatome in question. These fibers are omitted. For innervations to the peripheral and visceral blood vessels see Fig. 13.

fusion experiments he found that acetylcholine constricted the pulmonary vessels in the cat. On the whole, all the evidence thus far seems to be strongly

reservations in some quarters Elliott<sup>38</sup> was the first to suggest that chemicals play a part in the propagation of nerve impulses. About three decades later Loewi<sup>39</sup> also Dale<sup>40, 41</sup> and Dale and his co-workers<sup>42</sup> were able to confirm this theory by factual evidence.

While it is not absolutely established that chemicals actually transmit impulses across synapses, no one disputes the presence and the general physiologic attribute of the chemicals—adrenalin and acetylcholine—in connection with the autonomic innervations.

#### 4. ADRENALIN

Adrenalin as we shall see has an important place in the activities of the autonomic nervous system. The physiologic and pharmacologic properties of this substance are well known. The adrenal glands are supplied by (sympathetic) preganglionic neurons but have no postganglionic neurons, for this lack adrenalin itself serves as a substitute or equivalent. Upon stimulation the medullary portion secretes adrenalin and delivered into the blood stream and carried through the body, this substance it is believed sets off adrenergic responses at adrenergic reacting nerve endings. At once and on a large scale the individual is provided with a fluid postganglionic acting agent and as a consequence the body acquires an ability to supplement and enhance its normal constant discharge of sympathetic impulses. The level of adrenalin however is regulated and kept within bounds. An excess is immediately halted by the readiness with which this substance is oxidized in the tissues and albeit somewhat more slowly even in the blood. Probably other endocrine substances contribute to autonomic activities but the action of adrenalin in this respect is understood best.

In many respects resembling adrenalin but not identical with it is a chemical product elaborated and liberated at the nerve endings of sympathetic postganglionic neurons. To this product Cannon<sup>3</sup> and Cannon and Rosenbluth<sup>27, 28</sup> have given the name sympathin. According to them two varieties exist: (a) sympathin F produced during sympathetic contraction of smooth muscles elsewhere causing only motor or excitatory reactions and (b) sympathin I produced in muscles relaxed by sympathetic stimulation elsewhere causing only inhibitory effects. Not all authorities accept this separation into two kinds of sympathin e.g. Loewi<sup>39</sup> Bacq<sup>1</sup>. The latter for example agrees with Elliott's opinion that sympathin and adrenalin are identical.

More recently again Cannon and Lissak<sup>30</sup> emphasized the difference between adrenalin and sympathin. Their view is that adrenalin is liberated at the ends of the adrenergic fibers and that sympathin which escapes from the stimulated region into the blood stream is this adrenalin modified in the affected cells. Furthermore they found that extracts of adrenergic fibers, whether from the mesenteric nerves or from organs containing these nerves acted like adrenalin.



reach a ganglion close to (or within) the very organ they supply. As a consequence, a postganglionic neuron has but a short distance to go in order to reach an organ or an effector. Sometimes the postganglionic neuron has its source, course and termination within a single organ or effector. This type of postganglionic fiber distribution makes it possible for this division to act on a single organ without at the same time affecting other organs. This discrete or fractional type of response differs from the diffuse and general action elicited by the sympathetic division, (Cannon<sup>7-9</sup>)

Very probably both divisions possess identical architectural arrangements with respect to the synaptic connections between the first or preganglionic neuron, and the second or postganglionic neuron. In the sympathetic division the synaptic connections have been carefully investigated in recent years by Billingsley and Ranson.<sup>10</sup> This general arrangement seems to have been known to Bidder and Volkmann.<sup>11</sup> Billingsley and Ranson were able to count in the superior cervical ganglion of the cat thirty-two postganglionic neurons affecting a contact with a preganglionic neuron. Furthermore, sympathetic preganglionic neurons in general have a dendritic arborization in multiple sympathetic ganglia of the paravertebral chain above or below the level of emergence of the preganglionic fibers reaching from six to nine ganglia. All this is conducive to an effective transfer of preganglionic impulses into a diffuse and profuse outlying galaxy of postganglionic fibers.

Whereas both divisions share commonly in the formation of numerous small plexuses and in more prominent plexuses as well, no actual fusion or anastomoses between the fibrils belonging to each division has ever been demonstrated. As a general rule the sympathetic network is carried by vascular channels but it has not yet been established whether the tiny fibrils of these circumvascular plexuses innervate the smallest capillaries of every circuit (see Woolard<sup>12</sup> in reference to coronary arterioles). On the whole, nerve fibers of both divisions supply every part of the body and are especially prominent in the celomic cavities.

### **Participation of Chemical Transmitter Substances in Physiologic Responses of the Autonomic Nervous System**

Just how the axons of the autonomic and somatic innervations carry impulses is still a matter of considerable mystery. The problem has been subjected to two lines of attack. The older view held that nerve excitation is transmitted by an action current in the nerve—in other words that a succession of excitatory impulses is initiated by a potential difference between an active and an inactive region of a segment of nerve. The newer school of physiologists claims that nerve impulses may be transmitted by chemical substances across synapses and at nerve endings. These two points of view are not necessarily irreconcilable but the second hypothesis—the concept of chemical transmitter agents—has in recent years received almost exclusive emphasis though not without raising

reservations in some quarters Elliott<sup>10</sup> was the first to suggest that chemicals play a part in the propagation of nerve impulses. About three decades later Loewi<sup>11</sup> also Dale<sup>12, 13</sup> and Dale and his co-workers<sup>14</sup> were able to confirm this theory by factual evidence.

While it is not absolutely established that chemicals actually transmit impulses across synapses, no one disputes the presence and the general physiologic attributes of the chemicals—adrenalin and acetylcholine—in connection with the autonomic innervations.

### A. ADRENALIN

Adrenalin, as we shall see, has an important place in the activities of the autonomic nervous system. The physiologic and pharmacologic properties of this substance are well known. The adrenal glands are supplied by (sympathetic) preganglionic neurons but have no postganglionic neurons; for this lack, adrenalin itself serves as a substitute or equivalent. Upon stimulation the medullary portion secretes adrenalin and delivers it into the blood stream and carried through the body, this substance, it is believed, sets off adrenergic responses at adrenergic reacting nerve endings. At once and on a large scale the individual is provided with a fluid postganglionic acting agent and as a consequence the body acquires an ability to supplement and enhance its normal constant discharge of sympathetic impulses. The level of adrenalin, however, is regulated and kept within bounds. An excess is immediately halted by the reactions with which this substance is oxidized in the tissues and, albeit somewhat more slowly, even in the blood. Probably other endocrine substances contribute to autonomic activities, but the action of adrenalin in this respect is understood best.

In many respects resembling adrenalin but not identical with it is a chemical product elaborated and liberated at the nerve endings of sympathetic postganglionic neurons. To this product Cannon<sup>15</sup> and Cannon and Rosenblueth<sup>16</sup> have given the name *sympathin*. According to them two varieties exist: (a) *sympathin E* produced during sympathetic contraction of smooth muscles elsewhere called *sympathin M*, only motor or excitatory reactions; and (b) *sympathin I*, produced in muscles relaxed by sympathetic stimulation elsewhere causing only inhibitory effects. Not all authorities accept this separation into two kinds of *sympathin*; e.g., Loewi<sup>17</sup>, Barq<sup>18</sup>. The latter, for example, agrees with Elliott's opinion that *sympathin* and adrenalin are identical.

More recently again Cannon and Lissak<sup>19</sup> emphasized the difference between adrenalin and *sympathin*. Their view is that adrenalin is liberated at the ends of the adrenergic fibers and that *sympathin*, which escapes from the stimulated organ into the blood stream, is this adrenalin modified in the affected cells. Furthermore, they found that extracts of adrenergic fibers, whether from the presympathetic nerves or from organs containing these nerves, acted like adrenalin.

or had the characteristics of adrenalin. By way of contrast, extracts of vagus nerves and skeletal muscle, or of the heart in which sympathetic fibers have been permitted to degenerate possessed none of the attributes of adrenalin as exemplified in its effect on blood pressure or on the iris of the eye. Over forty years ago, Lichtwitz<sup>29</sup> suggested that adrenalin may be transmitted in the axon cylinders in much the same way as tetanus toxin, for instance, and Elliott<sup>30</sup> at about the same time (1904), postulated that sympathetic nerve impulses released minute amounts of an epinephrine like substance, and he considered this release a chemical step in the process of stimulation.

With notable exceptions the terminal nerve endings of all sympathetic postganglionic neurons react to adrenalin and, according to the Harvard school of physiologists, to an adrenalin like substance sympathin. For fibers which behave in this way, Dale coined the term adrenergic.

## II ACETYLCHOLINE

This substance known to exist outside the body, is also endogenous. It has been found at all intraganglionic relays between the first or preganglionic neuron and the second, distal or postganglionic neuron. It has also been found at the terminal nerve endings of parasympathetic postganglionic fibers. Whereas its distribution in the efferent system of the autonomic is general the chemical has not been detected as yet in any of the afferent neurons or at the synaptic junction which these afferent neurons make within the gray matter of the cord. On the other hand acetylcholine has been found in somatic nerves and in sympathetic as well as in parasympathetic ganglia (de No<sup>31</sup>).

The identification of intrabodily acetylcholine is a comparatively new discovery. Loewi found that this substance was liberated by the vagus. Later it was identified not only at synaptic junctions in the parasympathetic division, but also at synaptic connections between pre and postganglionic neurons in the sympathetic divisions and in somatic nerves also (de No). As in the case of adrenalin a regulatory quantitative balance seems to prevail for acetylcholine. The drug is destroyed rapidly by an enzyme cholinesterase in the blood and tissues (Nachmansohn<sup>32</sup>) and the destruction of this chemical by esterase is checked or prevented by the action of physostigmine. Dale<sup>33</sup> has extended many of these observations. Acetylcholine has been identified not only during bodily (somatic) reactions but also it appears during emotional states of fright or fear (Bender<sup>34</sup>).

Neurons which react to acetylcholine have been designated by Dale<sup>33-40</sup> as cholinergic in contradistinction to the adrenergic acting neurons. As a rule, adrenergic and cholinergic fibers are confined respectively to the sympathetic or parasympathetic divisions. But anatomic interplacements or interlacings occur, that is to say cholinergic fibers have been discovered within the sympathetic division and quite probably adrenergic fibers exist within the parasympathetic division. Testut<sup>41</sup> found fibers of both divisions in the same tract

and the probability that vagal fibers (cholinergic) run in the sympathetic cord served Tigerstedt<sup>10</sup> as the basis for his explanation of the odd and rare observations by Wagner<sup>11</sup> and Bezold<sup>12</sup> that cardiac inhibition followed stimulation of the cervical sympathetic cord. Regardless of any anatomic dislocation of fibers from one division into another the inherent physiologic chemical identity of each type of fiber is retained. The fibers to sweat glands for instance are an example of sympathetic neurons whose postganglionic nerve endings have a cholinergic action.

Both chemicals adrenalin (including sympathin) and acetylcholine can exert a universal or mass effect acetylcholine through the parasympathetics adrenalin through the sympathetics. The likelihood or danger of an excessive accumulation or release in the body of either substance is nicely counterbalanced by the ease and rapidity with which each chemical is rendered inactive or destroyed by the tissues and the blood. The quantity of these chemicals is thus kept within bounds and their influences restricted. It seems to the media- tion and transmission of nerve impulses at the effector organs.

### Mass Action of the Autonomic Nervous System

The configuration of the anatomic elements and the general physiologic characteristics of the vegetative nervous system are in harmony with and indeed help support the concept of a mass action by which this system functions. The activity of the autonomic is constant uninterrupted generalized and aroused to greater vigor when the body is confronted by a sudden emergency may be ascribed chiefly to the following factors:

First the ceaseless stream of impulses in the autonomic is translated almost at once into peripheral and general manifestations. This speaks strongly for a neurogenic rather than a hormonal reaction. Were the latter the case more time would elapse before the effect achieved through the intervention of the circulation appeared the larger the animal the greater the interval of time. The total effect of the normal constant tonic autonomic discharge is to confer upon the body a coordinated dynamic equilibrium maintained at an optimal standard. Without this coordination the multitudinous and complex reactions of the autonomic nervous system would become incongruous and a kaleidoscopic helter skelter. Claude Bernard<sup>13</sup> envisioned this with the insight of genius. According to him the coordinated harmonious equilibrium of the body is the expression of an adjusted and balanced internal environment and he considered the constancy of this internal milieu a fundamental prerequisite to a free and independent existence. *la fin du milieu interieur est la condition de la vie libre*.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>14</sup> An extremely interesting exposition of the biologic adaptations of bodily temperature in vertebrates was set forth at considerable length as far back as 1802 by Teyrnus.

Second, the autonomic innervations, as a consequence of this functional dynamic state, are primed to react, when called upon, on a large scale and not piecemeal, in this way vital forces are quickly and fully marshalled to hold off the threat of catastrophe or annihilation. Starting at levels already raised, the animal, if necessary, will attain a higher degree of quantitative responses almost instantaneously. For example a normal blood sugar level of, let us say, 120 mg per 100 cc or a normal blood pressure plateau of 130/70 will mount respectively to perhaps 200 mg of sugar, and to 200 systolic blood pressure in considerably less time than if these figures to start with were well under the normal level. At these new high levels, quickly reached, he is better armed to combat any sudden onslaught, i.e., emergency.

### A PARTICIPATION OF CENTRAL REPRESENTATIONS

The central ramifications of the autonomic system in the brain contribute greatly to regulating the normal dynamic balance of the vegetative functions and they also play a significant role in bringing about sudden violent states of autonomic hyperactivity.\* It is generally held that these various functioning elements act in a coordinated and integrated manner. Marburg<sup>9</sup> however believed that the autonomic representations in the brain act by coordination rather than by integration. By this he implied that each suprasegmental and brain stem level is an autonomic unit per se and the combined actions of multiple levels are summated and not interlocked or integrated. Be this as it may the significant fact for the clinician is that the clinical expressions of generalized autonomic activity take a variety of clinical forms. Common to all these clinical forms is a generalized autonomic mass reaction. This is illustrated by the cases described in Chapter II.

### Emergency Function of the Autonomic Nervous System

To meet a threat of sudden disaster for instance as in combat the animal falls back upon physiologic reserves quickly mobilized by both divisions of the autonomic system (Cannon<sup>7, 28</sup>). Each division, differently equipped has its own type of response.

The full significance of these separated yet coordinated activities of both autonomic divisions has not yet been fully appreciated by the practicing physician. Many "explosive" conditions such as a sudden cerebral or coronary thrombosis or an acute perforation of an intra abdominal viscus, are ushered in with a pattern of manifestations which corresponds to the picture associated with a sudden generalized sympathetic discharge. cholinergic reactions are not

\* A striking form of a central autonomic discharge is the so called diencephalic autonomic seizure carefully described by Penfield<sup>102</sup>. The reaction was observed for instance in a woman of 41 who had periodic headaches and loss of consciousness. An aura was quickly followed by sudden vasomotor and pupillary changes, lacrimation, excessive sweating and salivation and often by loss of consciousness. gastro intestinal manifestations were absent.

lacking and may even be predominant or the adrenergic features may be to the fore

Generally speaking the clinical application of drugs and therapy in connection with these sudden disasters has centered mainly upon the degree and extent of the somatic damage sustained and an adequate appraisal of the significance of the associated autonomic disturbances has often been lacking. But these disturbances may demand management long before sequelae of the somatic damage ensue and often when somatic alterations are absent. The following case illustrates this point.

A man 47 63 years old with no previous known episode of heart illness was suddenly and unexpectedly stricken while walking in the street with acute coronary occlusion accompanied by intense recordable pain and shock. The feature of shock with its attendant aspects of cold gray skin, generalized profuse sweating, prostration and soon after marked hypotension dominated the picture. He died the next day conscious and clear-eyed with no signs of circulatory failure. This is an example of a profound autonomic hyperactivity chiefly depressor in character, the patient succumbing before the train of events contingent upon the somatic injury (of the heart muscle) could develop. The emphasis of therapy in this type of situation should be on bringing prompt aid to the greatly disturbed autonomic nervous system, the somatic damage requiring at this stage little attention.

#### ACTION OF THE SYMPATHETIC DIVISION

The sympathetic division by virtue of its particular autonomic design is able to set off a characteristic group of activities diffuse and wide flung. In the face of a danger menacing the stability or integrity of the internal environment (equilibrium) the blood pressure almost instantly leaps to a new level, the heart quickens, the bowels are inhibited, sugar is withdrawn from stored supplies, oxygen consumption is increased, the eyes are wide open, the skin is moist and resilient, the hairs of fur-bearing animals become erect, emotionally the animal is aroused and combative. His reserves tapped, his forces marshalled, the animal is arrayed in a newly won armamentarium. This he acquires as the result of the burst of activity of his entire sympathetic division, aided by an augmented outpouring of adrenalin caused by stimulation of his adrenal glands through preganglionic fiber paths.

Of much interest are the observations of Cannon et al.<sup>21</sup> on cats and dogs whose sympathetic ganglia had been removed. Unable to set off a sympathico-adrenal reaction to meet a sudden emergency, such animals, especially cats, nevertheless exhibit under undisturbed conditions rather well adjusted adrenergic manifestations, for example blood pressure and heart rate are held up to a normal level. Since the normal nervous (preganglionic) control of the adrenal glands will be lacking in such animals, we must account for the sustained level of adrenergic activity by assuming that adrenalin or its allied product, symphathin, is still elaborated in adequate quantity in the surviving adrenergic neurons and at nerve endings. The denervated adrenals may still be able to secrete

adrenalin, but its delivery to the body is ineffective (Cimicata<sup>21</sup>) However, animals especially cats, lacking a sympathetic nervous system cannot respond to new or unusual demands In other words under sheltered conditions the adrenergic reactions are still maintained and rather adequately, but in states of emergency these reactions cannot be made to display a range above their "quiet" levels It would appear, therefore, as if the adrenal glands may be a reservoir tipped when a sudden, urgent generalized sympathico adrenal response is provoked Throughout this upheaval, the other division of the autonomic system takes a subordinate and less spectacular, but none the less important part

### ROLE OF THE PARASYMPATHETIC DIVISION

This division, the parasympathetic, is fundamentally 'protective' or 'conservative,' in character (Cannon<sup>1</sup>) Comprising the major portion of this division the vagus nerve, an ancient cardiogastric nerve and in higher phyla also a pneumogastric nerve retains its primary conservative and guardian watchfulness over respiration, circulation and digestion The parasympathetic fibers running in the third seventh and ninth cranial nerves and in the sacral outflow subserve a similar guardian role over the structures they innervate By virtue of this supervisory function of the parasympathetics as a whole the animal enters the "fray," i.e., meets a sudden emergency, with his respiration, alimentary tract, and circulation disturbed comparatively little Moreover, when and if the parasympathetic division is provoked or stimulated by an abnormal burst of activity this division may be called upon to produce a fractional rather than a universal response The parasympathetics therefore, are likely to be responsible for an abnormally heightened reaction in but one organ or one system The absence of an integrated and universal response is quite characteristic and in keeping with the restricted anatomic distribution of the short postganglionic fibers of this division Were this division to react to its fullest potentiality it would only cause as Bird<sup>6</sup> has put it "responses that are not bound by physiological bonds of integration" However it must not be supposed that the parasympathetic division is incapable of producing wide spread reactions which simultaneously involve many systems of the body

### Antagonism Between the Autonomic Divisions

The unfailing stream of tonic discharge the mass action of the entire autonomic system and its capacity to evoke increased quantitative reactions are supposed to depend upon the interaction of counterpoised, antagonistic autonomic forces Exemplified as physiologic reactions in each division of the autonomic system these forces are easily identified as normal responses in the living body and are produced readily under experimental conditions

Whereas the vitality and the potential 'volatility' of the sympathetic division are well recognized, the parasympathetic system designated in a general

way as guardian and protective should not be looked upon as a passive or lethargic apparatus. Quite the contrary it may be quickly whipped into action inducing bodily changes which in the main appear to be antipodal or better antagonistic to those which characterize the sympathetic division.

This antagonism is observed in a number of examples. The parasympathetic fibers in the third cranial nerve constrict the pupil of the eye while the sympathetic innervation contrives to keep the pupil widely dilated. These opposed influences keep the pupil neither too constricted nor too dilated and what is equally important the pupil will react promptly in either direction between the poles of these opposite influences. A similar dynamic state is achieved by the opposition between the parasympathetic inhibitors and the sympathetic cardiac accelerator nerves to the heart and by the augmentor parasympathetic nerves to the gastro-intestinal musculature pitted as it were against the action of the inhibitory fibers in sympathetic nerve. When as in the case of the coronary vessels vasoconstriction is accomplished through the parasympathetic nerves and vasodilatation through the sympathetics the principle of opposed or antagonistic physiologic reactions is also in force.

The result in all these instances is a dynamic labile state regardless of the organ or structure in question: its heart, gut musculature, coronary or pulmonary vessels, etc. This fundamental principle of balanced or counterpoised physiologic reactions is exemplified even in those parts of the body where only one autonomic division seems to exist. Thus the smaller peripheral blood vessels, the sweat glands and the erector pili muscles are able to undergo a dual set of antipodal reactions by means of an increase or diminution of sympathetic influences transmitted along sympathetic nerves. The planchnic blood vessels appear to operate on a similar principle (Torib<sup>111</sup>).

### Mutual Cooperation or Synergism of the Autonomic Divisions

Although the divisional forces in the autonomic system often work in opposition to each other, the body is not at the capricious mercy of these antipodal activities. Rather a cooperation or mutuality of the autonomies as a whole underlies all the coordinated intrabodily functions, both in the smooth efficiency with respect to each organ or system of organs and with respect to the general integration of all important bodily processes. The duality of functions of the autonomic nervous system has therefore a stronger complementary than anticomplementary character.

This advantage to the body of a dynamic equilibrium cannot be overestimated and toward the production and maintenance of the equilibrium both divisions of the autonomic nervous system contribute a vital part. Accordingly the end result—a dynamic equilibrium—represents a fundamental, constructive achievement and this notwithstanding any antagonistic reactions set up in any portions of the autonomic system itself.

The role of a double and antagonistic innervation has many exceptions and



a cooperative durability in the autonomic system can be discerned even in a single division. For example, in some of the peripheral effectors supplied by the sympathetics, i.e., the cutaneous blood vessels vasoconstriction and vasodilatation are accomplished apparently without parasympathetic nerves.

In addition to local or peripheral examples, the principle of synergistic or mutual cooperation of the vegetative nervous system is witnessed in a single division of the autonomies, here, however, the action affects simultaneously more than one system of blood vessels, e.g., cutaneous blood vessels and those within the abdominal cavity, or cutaneous and coronary vessels. In the case of the cutaneous vessels, a viscerocutaneous reflex is established. During the ejection of blood from the cutaneous vessels, following sympathetic vasoconstriction, the splanchnic vessels in the abdomen become filled as a result of vasodilatation. The dilatation is probably also of sympathetic origin. Similarly, when under certain circumstances the cutaneous vascular bed is constricted and emptied of blood, the coronary vessels of the heart, as a result of sympathetic vasodilatation, will widen and up to a point enable the heart to secure an increased quantity of blood. These anatomic and functional relationships represent a synergistic or cooperative regulation which may be and often is protective and life saving.

The ease with which the activity of the sympathetic division becomes ascendant during emergency states is noteworthy. This is due not only to an increased stimulation or burst of activity on the part of the sympathetics, but in some measure to a supplemental parasympathetic cooperation accomplished by diminishing the tonus of those parts of the body innervated by the parasympathetics, in augmented tonic sympathetic effect is thus achieved.

Pharmacologic attributes and responses of each autonomic division also point to a mutuality or cooperation of both divisions. The reaction on the parasympathetic division induced by atropine may closely resemble the effects of adrenalin on the sympathetic division. Dilatation of the pupil, an accelerated heart rate and inhibition of peristalsis are pharmacologic responses which may be common to each autonomic division. Again certain drugs are amphotropic (Pick<sup>10</sup>, Drnicopolu<sup>11</sup>) possessing an almost equal influence on both divisions.

### Coordination and Integration of Central Autonomic Functions

The vast and complicated autonomic regulations in the body are accomplished by segmental reactions involving reflexes mediated at spinal cord level, and by activities which are controlled for the most part if not entirely at higher levels.

The higher representations comprise anatomic and physiologic elements of both autonomic divisions. These elements are also coordinated and integrated with others which govern somatic functions. The overlapping or intermingling of autonomic and somatic representations exists throughout the entire motor

cortex and probably in the sensory cortical territory also in the thalamic and striatal levels and less extensively, in the hypothalamus

The patterns of reaction of the various levels of autonomic representation of the brain are not identical. For example the group of effects set off at the hypothalamus is predominantly adrenergic and that at the medulla cholinergic. This differentiation with respect to brain levels may be observed in the clinical picture of hyperinsulinism. In man four clinical stages develop and each stage is claimed to be related to the total brain substance depressed and to the territory released from the influence of higher centers and rendered pre-dominant or hyperactive.

The levels of central autonomic functions in connection with the level of blood sugar and in relation to anoxia and the oxidation of carbohydrates have been studied by Gellhorn<sup>55</sup> and Humwich<sup>56</sup>

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- <sup>1</sup> ANDERSON H. K. The paralysis of involuntary muscle. II. On the action of pilocarpine, physostigmine and atropine on the paralyzed iris. *J. Physiol.* 1905, 33, 414.
- <sup>2</sup> AVERE G. V. AND SEGALL, H. V. The regulation of the coronary circulation. *Heart* 1927, 13, 239.
- <sup>3</sup> BACQ E. M. La pharmacologie du système nerveux autonome et particulièrement du sympathique d'après la théorie neurohumorale. *Ann. d. physiol.* 1934, 10, 46.
- <sup>4</sup> BAUER C. AND PICK E. I. Pharmakologische Studien an der Bronchialmuskulatur der überlebenden Meerschweinchenlunge. *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmacol.* 1913, 74, 41.
- <sup>5</sup> BARSKY H. G. Die Struktur verschiedener Abschnitte des Arteriensystems in Beziehung auf ihr Verhalten zum Adrenalin. *Arch. f. exper. Path. u. Pharmacol.* 1912, 68, 41.
- <sup>6</sup> DIXON F. In MacLeod J. J. R. *Physiology in modern medicine*. St. Louis, Mosby, 1941.
- <sup>7</sup> BEATTIE J. BROW G. R. AND LONG C. V. II. The hypothalamus and the sympathetic nervous system. Part One. The dependence of the extrasystolic arrhythmia of the heart produced by chloroform upon the integrity of the sympathetic nervous system, and the use of this arrhythmia as an indicator of sympathetic activity. *Res. Publ. Ls. nerv. ment. Dis.* 1930, 9, 219.
- <sup>8</sup> BEATTIE J. BROW G. R. AND LONG C. V. II. The hypothalamus and the sympathetic nervous system. Part Two. The higher connections of the sympathetic nervous system as studied by experimental lesions of the hypothalamus. *Res. Publ. Ls. nerv. ment.* 1930, 9, 294.
- <sup>9</sup> BEATTIE J. BROW G. R. AND LONG C. V. II. Physiological and anatomical evidence for the existence of nerve tracts connecting the hypothalamus with spinal sympathetic centres. *Proc. Roy. Soc. Series B* 1930, 106, 253.
- <sup>10</sup> BENDER M. B. Fright and drug contractions in denervated and ocular muscles of monkeys. *Am. J. Physiol.* 1938, 121, 609.
- <sup>11</sup> BENDER M. B. Set sized pupillary dilator and facial muscles as indicators of sympathetic and parasympathetic substances in blood. *Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. & Med.* 1938, 39, 67.
- <sup>12</sup> BERARD C. Influence du grand sympathique sur la sensibilité et sur la calorification. *Compt. rend. Soc. de biol.* 1881, 2, 163.
- <sup>13</sup> BERNARD C. Recherches expérimentales sur le grand sympathique et spécialement sur l'influence que la section de ce nerf exerce sur la chaleur animale. *Comp. rend. Soc. de biol.* 18.3, 5, 7.
- <sup>14</sup> BERNARD C. Leçons sur la physiologie du système nerveux. Paris, Baillière 18.8.

- <sup>15</sup> BERNARD C Du rôle des actions réflexes paralytiques J de anat et de la physiol 1861 1 507
- <sup>16</sup> BERNARD C Leçons sur les phénomènes de la vie commune aux animaux et aux végétaux Paris Baillière 1878
- <sup>17</sup> BERRY J L BRAILSFORD J I AND DE BURGH DALY I The bronchial vascular system in the dog Proc Roy Soc Series B 1931 109 214
- <sup>18</sup> BEZOLD In Tigerstedt K Physiologie des Kreislaufes Berlin de Gruyter 1921 23
- <sup>19</sup> BIDDER I H AND VOLLMANN A W Die Selbständigkeit des sympathischen Nerven systems durch anatomische Untersuchungen nachgewiesen Leipzig Breitkopf & Hartel 1842
- <sup>20</sup> BILLINGSLEY P P AND KANSON, S W On the number of nerve cells in the ganglion cervicale superius and of nerve fibres in the cephalic end of the truncus sympathicus in the cat and on the numerical relations of the preganglionic and postganglionic neurones J Comp Neurol 1918 29 339
- <sup>21</sup> BRADFORD J R AND DEAN H P On the innervation of the pulmonary vessels Proc Physiol Soc Feb 11 1889 In J Physiol 1889 10
- <sup>22</sup> BRADFORD J R AND DEAN, H P The innervation of the pulmonary vessels Proc Roy Soc Series B 1889 45 369
- <sup>23</sup> BRADFORD J R AND DEAN H P The pulmonary circulation J Physiol 1894 16 34
- <sup>24</sup> BRUNS ALFRED V Die Pathogenese der trophischen Gewebeschäden nach Nervenverletzung Deutsche Ztschr f Chir 1919 150 50
- <sup>25</sup> BRODIE T G AND DIXON W I Contributions to the physiology of lungs II On the innervation of the pulmonary blood vessels and some observations on the action of suprarenal extract J Physiol 1904 30 416
- <sup>26</sup> BRUCE A N Ueber die Beziehung der sensiblen Nervenendigungen zum Entzündungsvorgang Ztschr f exper Path u Pharmacol 1910 63 474
- <sup>27</sup> CAMPBELL J A The effects of certain animal extracts upon the blood vessels Quart J Exper Physiol 1911 4 1
- <sup>28</sup> CANNON W B Physiological regulation of normal states some tentative postulates concerning biological homeostasis In A Charles Richet p 91 Paris 1926
- <sup>29</sup> CANNON W B The sympathetic division of the autonomic system in relation to homeostasis Res Phil Ass nerv ment Dis 1930 9 181
- <sup>30</sup> CANNON W B Studies on the conditions of activities in endocrine organs XXXI A hormone produced by sympathetic action on smooth muscle Am J Physiol 1931 90 492
- <sup>31</sup> CANNON W B AND LISSAK I Evidence for adrenaline in adrenergic neurones Am J Physiol 1939 125 165
- <sup>32</sup> CANNON W B NEWTON H F BRIGHT J M MENKIN V AND MOORE R M Some aspects of the physiology of animals surviving complete exclusion of sympathetic nerve impulses Am J Physiol 1929 80 84
- <sup>33</sup> CANNON W B AND JOSEPHBLUTH A Sympathin I and sympathin II Am J Physiol 1933 104 557
- <sup>34</sup> CANNON W B AND ROSENBLUTH A Autonomic neuro effector systems New York Macmillan 1937
- <sup>35</sup> CIMONATA A Ueber Nebennierennervation und ihre Folgen für den Organismus Arb a d neurol Inst a d Wien Univ 1926 9 95
- <sup>36</sup> COFFEY W B BROWN I K AND HUMMER J D Angina pectoris The anatomy physiology and surgical treatment New Orleans Dickson 1927
- <sup>37</sup> CYBULSKI A Ueber die Funktion der Nebenniere Gazeta lekarska (Warsaw) 1895 12 299

- <sup>1</sup> CYBULSKI A Weitere Untersuchungen über die Funktion der Nebenniere Bull int Acc 1 Cracovie 1895
- DALE H H Chemical transmission of the effects of nerve impulses Brit M J 1931 1 835
- <sup>2</sup> DALE H H Transmission of nervous effects by acetylcholine Bull New York Acc 1 Med 1937 13 319
- <sup>3</sup> DALE H H AND FELDBERG W The chemical transmitter of nervous control to the sweat glands of the cat J Physiol 1934 81 40
- <sup>4</sup> DANIELOPOULU D Les trois lois fondamentales qui régissent le fonctionnement du système nerveux végétatif à l'état normal et pathologique Bull et mém Soc méd i hup le Bucarest 1928 10 13; Also in Klin Wchnschr 1928 7 1-18
- <sup>5</sup> DE BURGH DALY I Reactions of the pulmonary and bronchial blood vessel J Physiol Re 1933 13 149
- DE BURGH DALY I The physiology of the bronchial vascular system Harver Lect 1937 31 235
- <sup>6</sup> DE BURGH DALY I AND VON ELLER A The functional activity of the vasomotor nerves to the lungs Proc Roy Soc Series B 1932 110 97
- DE NÓ L Acetylcholine in superior cervical sympathetic ganglion Am J Physiol 1939 121 331
- <sup>7</sup> DIXON W E AND HOWLE J C Studies in the pulmonary circulation I The vasomotor supply J Physiol 1928 65 239
- <sup>8</sup> DIXON W E AND HOWLE J C Studies in the pulmonary circulation II The action of adrenaline and nicotine J Physiol 1929 67 17
- <sup>9</sup> DIXON W E AND HOWLE J C Studies in the pulmonary circulation III The action of histamine J Physiol 1930 70 1
- <sup>10</sup> DOI Y On the existence of antidromic fibers in the frog and their influence on the capillaries J Physiol 1920 34 227
- DUNBAR H F Emotions and bodily changes New York Columbia Univ Press 1915
- <sup>11</sup> ECKHARDT P Zur Frage pulmonärer Reflexe bei Lungenembolie Pflügers Arch 1938 241 224
- FELLIOTT T P The action of adrenalin J Physiol 1905 3 401
- ERIKSSON E Zur Kenntnis des kleinen Kreislaufes bei der Katze Skandin Arch f Physiol 1907 19 46
- VON ELLER L S A vaso-constrictor action of acetylcholine on the rabbit's pulmonary circulation J Physiol 1932 74 271
- <sup>12</sup> FRANÇOIS FRACCK C A Nouvelles recherches sur l'action vaso-constrictive pulmonaire du grand sympathique Arch de physiol 1895 7 744 816
- <sup>13</sup> FLINER H AND STARLING E H Experiments on the pulmonary circulation J Physiol 1913 47 286
- <sup>14</sup> GELLHORN F Fundamental principles in the adjustment reactions of the organism of anoxia Ann Int Med 1941 14 1515
- <sup>15</sup> Gerhardt D Ueber die Wirkungsweise der blutdrucksteigernden Substanzen der Nebennieren Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol 1900 44 161
- <sup>16</sup> GOLWITZER MEIER K KRAMER K AND KRUGER E Die Wirkung des Adrenalins auf die Energetik des Herzens Pflügers Arch 1936 237 639
- <sup>17</sup> GOLWITZER MEIER K AND KRUGER E Einfluss der Herzmetzen auf den Gasaustausch des Warmblüterherzens Pflügers Arch 1938 240 89
- <sup>18</sup> GREENE C W An analysis of the efferent pathways and vasomotor control of the coronary circulation of the dog Am J Physiol 1931 97 526
- <sup>19</sup> GREENE C W The nerve control of the coronary vessels with new experimental evidence for the pathways of efferent constrictor and dilator neurones in the dog Am J Physiol 1935 113 361

- <sup>11</sup> BERNARD C Du rôle des actions réflexes paralytiques J de l'anat et de la physiol 1861 1 507
- <sup>12</sup> BERNARD C Leçons sur les phénomènes de la vie commune aux animaux et aux végétaux Paris Baillière 1848
- <sup>13</sup> BERRY J L BRAILSFORD J F AND DE BURGH DALY I The bronchial vascular system in the dog Proc Roy Soc Series B 1931 109 214
- <sup>14</sup> BEZOLD In Tigerstedt II Physiologie des Kreislaufes Berlin de Gruyter 1911-23
- <sup>15</sup> BIDDER T H AND VOLKMANN A W Die Selbständigkeit des sympathischen Nerven systems durch anatomische Untersuchungen nachgewiesen Leipzig Breitkopf & Hartel 1842
- <sup>16</sup> BILLINGSLEY P H AND RANSON S W On the number of nerve cells in the ganglion cervicale superius and of nerve fibres in the cephalic end of the truncus sympathicus in the cat and on the numerical relations of the preganglionic and postganglionic neurones J Comp Neurol 1918 29 359
- <sup>17</sup> BRADFORD J R AND DEAN H P On the innervation of the pulmonary vessel Proc Physiol Soc Feb 9 1889 In J Physiol 1889 10
- <sup>18</sup> BRADFORD J R AND DEAN H P The innervation of the pulmonary vessels Proc Roy Soc Series B 1889 45 369
- <sup>19</sup> BRADFORD J R AND DEAN H P The pulmonary circulation J Physiol 1894 16 34
- <sup>20</sup> BRUESLAFER V Die Pathogenese der tropischen Gewebeschaden nach Verengerung Deutsche Ztschr f Chir 1910 150 50
- <sup>21</sup> BRODIE T G AND DIXON W F Contributions to the physiology of lungs II On the innervation of the pulmonary blood vessels and some observations on the action of suprarenal extract J Physiol 1904 30 476
- <sup>22</sup> BRUCE A N Ueber die Beziehung der sensiblen Nervenendigungen zum Entzündungsvorgang Ztschr f exper Path u Pharmacol 1910 63 474
- <sup>23</sup> CAMBELL J A The effects of certain animal extracts upon the blood vessel Quart J Exper Physiol 1911 1 1
- <sup>24</sup> CANNON W B Physiological regulation of normal states some tentative postulates concerning biological homeostasis In A Charles Richet p 91 Paris 1926
- <sup>25</sup> CANNON W B The sympathetic division of the autonomic system in relation to homeostasis Res Phil Ass nerv ment Dis 1930 9 181
- <sup>26</sup> CANNON W B Studies on the conditions of activities in endocrine organs VIII A hormone produced by sympathetic action on smooth muscle Am J Physiol 1931 96 392
- <sup>27</sup> CANNON W B AND LISA R Evidence for adrenaline in adrenergic neurones Am J Physiol 1939 125 765
- <sup>28</sup> CANNON W B NEWTON H F BRIGHT I M MENAÏN A AND MOORE R M Some aspects of the physiology of animals surviving complete exclusion of sympathetic nerve impulses Am J Physiol 1929 99 84
- <sup>29</sup> CANNON W B AND KOSENBLUTH A Sympathin C and sympathin I Am J Physiol 1933 104 551
- <sup>30</sup> CANNON W B AND KOSENBLUTH A Autonomic neuro effector system New York Macmillan 1934
- <sup>31</sup> CIMINATA A Ueber Nebennierenentnervung und ihre Folgen für den Organismus Arb a d neurol Inst a d Wien Univ 1926 28 95
- <sup>32</sup> COFFEY W B BROWN I K AND HUMBER J D Angina pectoris The anatomy physiology and surgical treatment New Orleans Dickson 1921
- <sup>33</sup> CYBULSKI N Ueber die Funktion der Nebenniere Gazeta lekarska (Warsaw) 1895 17 299

- \* LEBLANC, C AND VAN WYNGARDEY C DE L. Innervation der Lungengefäße Pflü et s Arch 1914 204 601
- \* LEWIS T Vascular disorders of the limbs New York Macmillan 1936
- \* LICHTWITZ L. Leber Wanderung des Adrenalins in Nerven Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol 1908 59 221
- \* LIVINGSTON W K. The clinical aspects of visceral neurology p 35 Springfield Ill Thomas 1935
- \* LOEWY O. Leber humorale Übertragbarkeit der Herzmervnenwirkung Pfleger s Arch 1921 189 239
- \* LÖHR H. Untersuchungen zur Physiologie und Pharmakologie der Lunge Ztschr f d ges exper Med 1924 39 61
- \* MARBURG O. Leber die neueren Fortschritte in der topischen Diagnostik des Pons und der Oblongata Deutsche Ztschr f Nervenhe 1911 41 41
- \* MARRET D. Studies on the pathological physiology of the exophthalmos of Graves disease Ann Int Med 1938 17 443
- \* MARRET D. Does the study of experimental exophthalmos offer any clue to the fundamental nature of Graves' disease? International Conter Conference (3rd) 1939 Transactions p 7
- \* MARRET D AND ROSEN S H. The exophthalmos of Graves disease its experimental production and significance Am J M Sc 1934 188 865
- \* McDOWALL, R J S. The control of the circulation of the blood London Longmans Green 1938
- \* MCGREGOR H G. The emotional factor in visceral disease London Milford 1939
- \* MEYER O B. Leber einige Eigenschaften der Gefassmuskulatur mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der Adrenalinwirkung Ztschr f Biol 1906 49 352
- \* MILLER H III AND TAYLOR H. Exophthalmos in rabbit produced by oxyquinoline sulphate Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med 1935 3 1207
- \* MÖLLER S. Kritisch experimentelle Beiträge zur Wirkung des Nebennierenextraktes (Adrenalin) Therap Monatschr 1905 19 64 672 1906 70 25
- \* NACHMANSOHN D. La transmission de l'infux nerveux dans le système nerveux central Compt rend Soc de biol 1931 126 193
- \* PENFIELD W G. Diencephalic autonomic epilepsy Arch Neurol & Psychiat 1929 22 358
- \* PETITJEAN G. Action de quelques médicaments vaso-moteurs (nitrite d'amyle et adrénaline ergot de seigle) sur la circulation pulmonaire J de physiol et de path gén 1908 10 403
- \* PICK E. P. Pharmacologie des v. gelativen Nervensystems Deutsche Ztschr f Nervenhe 1928 106 238
- \* PILCHER J D AND SOLLMAN T. Studies on the vasomotor center III The action of epinephrin J Pharmacol & Exper Therap 1915 6 339
- \* PLUMIER L. La circulation pulmonaire chez le chien Arch internat de physiol 1904 1 35 1 6
- \* PLUMIER L. Action de l'adrénaline sur la circulation cardio-pulmonaire J de physiol et de path gén 1904 6 665
- \* PLUMIER L. Action de la trinitrine III du nitrite d'amyle sur la circulation cardio-pulmonaire J de physiol et de path gén 1905 7 596
- \* PLUMIER L. Action du nitrite d'amyle sur la circulation pulmonaire Compt rend Soc de biol 1906 60 282
- \* PREVOST J L AND SALOZ J. Contribution à l'étude des muscles bronchiaux Arch internat de physiol 1909 8 326
- \* REIN H. Die Physiologie der Herz-Kranzgefäße Ztschr f Biol 1931-32 9 101
- \* RICHARDSON E P AND WHITE P D. Sympathectomy in the treatment of angina

- <sup>60</sup> GREENE C W Control of coronary blood flow by reflexes arising in widely distributed regions of the body *Am J Physiol* 1935 113 299
- <sup>61</sup> GREENE C W An analysis of the relations of coronary constrictor and dilator nerves in the cervical vagosympathetic of the dog *Am Heart J* 1936 11 592
- <sup>62</sup> HEGER I AND PHILIPPSON M Adrénaline et circulation pulmonaire *Bull Acad roy de méd de Belgique* 1912 26 335
- <sup>63</sup> HENRIQUES V Untersuchungen über den Einfluss des Nervensystems auf den respiratorischen Stoffwechsel der Lungen *Skandin Arch f Physiol* 1893 4 194
- <sup>64</sup> HEYMANS J T AND VERCOULLIEF J L adrénaline agit sur la petite comme sur la grande circulation *In Mélanges biologiques livre dédié à Ch Richet* p 199 Paris Impr de la Cour d'appel 1912
- <sup>65</sup> HIMWICH H F MARTIN S J ALEXANDER F A D AND GUFFAS J F PKC chan during hypoglycemia and anoxemia (cortical depression and autonomic release) *Endocrinology* 1939 24 536
- <sup>66</sup> HINRICHSSEN J AND IVY A C Effect of stimulation of visceral nerves on coronary blood flow in dogs *Arch Int Med* 1933 51 932
- <sup>67</sup> HIRAKAWA K A study of the contracting and dilating apparatus of the pulmonary blood vessels *Acta scholae med univ imp in Kyoto* 1925 7 467
- <sup>68</sup> HOCHREIN M AND KELLER J Untersuchungen am Koronarsystem *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 1931 159 300
- <sup>69</sup> HOFF I Vegetatives Nervensystem und innere Sekretion *In Lehrbuch der speziellen pathologischen Physiologie* Jena Fischer 1935
- <sup>70</sup> HOVFLACQUE A Anatomie des nerfs transiens et rachidiens et du système grand sympathique chez l'homme Paris Doin 1927
- <sup>71</sup> HRYNCHAK T AND SIEGEL I A Ueber den Mechanismus der autonomen Blase *Klin Wchnschr* 1924 40 1819
- <sup>72</sup> JILLIFFE E L Discussion of Cannon's The sympathetic division of the autonomic nervous system in relation to homeostasis *Physiol Rev* 1930 9 194
- <sup>73</sup> KATZ I N AND JOCHIM K Observations on the innervation of the coronary vessel of the dog *Am J Physiol* 1939 126 395
- <sup>74</sup> KENNARD M The cortical influence on the autonomic nervous system *In Handbuch der Neurologie (Bumke & Loewenstein)* II 476 Berlin Springer 1937
- <sup>75</sup> KERR H H Surgical treatment of angina pectoris *Ann Clin Med* 1925 4 30
- <sup>76</sup> KERR H H Operative treatment of angina pectoris *Ann Surg* 1925 82 354
- <sup>77</sup> KOLM R AND PICK I P Ueber das Vasomotorenzentrum des Kaltblüters *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 1920 87 135
- <sup>78</sup> KRAWKOW N I Ueber die Wirkung von Giften auf die Gefässe isolierter Lischkamen *Pflügers Arch* 1913 151 583
- <sup>79</sup> KUNTZ A The autonomic nervous system p 500 Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1934
- <sup>80</sup> KURÉ K Ueber den Spinalparasympathikus Basel Schwabe 1931
- <sup>81</sup> KURÉ K Spinalparasympathikus und Kreislauf *Cardiologia* 1937 1 95
- <sup>82</sup> KURÉ K, ICHIKO K I AND ISHIIKAWA K On spinal parasympathetic Physiological significance of spinal parasympathetic system in relation to digestive tract *Quart J Exper Physiol* 1931 21 1
- <sup>83</sup> KURÉ K, NITTA Y, TSUJI M, SHIRAIISHI K AND SUENOBA B Die histologische Darstellung der parasympathischen Fasern in den hinteren Rückenmarkswurzeln der Lumbarsegmente *Pflügers Arch* 1928 216 573
- <sup>84</sup> LANGENDORFF O Ueber die Innervation der Koronargefässe *Zentralbl f Physiol* 1907 21 551
- <sup>85</sup> LANGLEY J N AND ANDERSON H K On reflex action from sympathetic ganglia *J Physiol* 1894 16 410

- <sup>1</sup> WERNICKE T H Viscero-cutane Reflexe *Pflüger's Arch* 1925 210 1
- <sup>10</sup> WHITE J C The autonomic nervous system New York Macmillan 1935
- <sup>11</sup> WIGGERS C J The action of adrenalin on the pulmonary circulation *J Pharmacol & Exper Therap* 1909 1 341
- <sup>12</sup> WIGGERS C J In Diseases of the coronary arteries and cardiac pain S I L Y & LEVY New York Macmillan 1936
- <sup>13</sup> WITKOWER F Einfluss der Gemütsbewegungen auf den Körper Wien Senken Verlag 1936
- <sup>14</sup> WOOD H C A physiological study of the pulmonary circulation *Am J Physiol* 1902 6 283
- <sup>15</sup> WOOD H C The vaso motor supply of the lungs *J Pharmacol & Exper Therap* 1910 2 394
- <sup>16</sup> WOOD H C Studies on the pulmonary circulation *J Exper Med* 1911 14 376
- <sup>17</sup> WOOLLARD H H Innervation of the heart *J Anat* 1926 60 345



- pectoris Comparison with those from paravertebral alcohol injection *Am J M Sc* 1929 177 161
- <sup>112</sup> RJASANSKIJ A Zur Anteilnahme des Vagus und Sympathicus in der Innervation der Lungen *J sovrem Chir* 1928 3 1023 Abstracted in *Ber u d ges Biol Abt B* 1929 30 52 267
- <sup>113</sup> ROMM E O Die Wirkung der gefassverengenden und gefassweiternden Substanzen auf die Lungenkreislaufsdauer des Blutes *Pflüger's Arch* 1924 204 668
- <sup>115</sup> ROSFANOW G Hirnstichleukocytose Untersuchungen über die zentralvegetative Blutgulation *Ztschr f d ges exper Med* 1929 64 452
- <sup>116</sup> SCHIAFFR E S AND LIM R K S The effects of adrenaline on the pulmonary circulation *Quart J Exper Physiol* 1919 12 157
- <sup>117</sup> SCHIEFF D AND SCHONBRUNNER E Ueber Herzbefunde bei Lungenembolien *Ztschr f klin Med* 1935 128 455
- <sup>118</sup> SCHIEFF D AND SCHONBRUNNER E Ueber den pulmokoronaren Reflex bei Lungenembolien *Klin Wchnschr* 1937 16 340
- <sup>119</sup> SCHLESINGER R Ueber die Wirkung einiger lokaler Anästhetika auf die Lungengefäße *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 1931 160 419
- <sup>120</sup> SCHMITT W Untersuchungen zur Physiologie der Plazentargefäße *Ztschr f Biol* 1912 75 19
- <sup>121</sup> SCHMITT W Ueber den Einfluss der Wasserstoffionenkonzentration auf die Gefäße der menschlichen Placenta *Ztschr f Biol* 1923 79 45
- <sup>122</sup> SMITH H W *The physiology of the kidney* New York Oxford Univ Press 1931
- <sup>123</sup> SOKOLYIN M In Kowalevsky N and Arnstein C Bericht über die physiologischen und histologischen Mitteilungen der 4 Versammlung russischer Naturforscher *Pflüger's Arch* 1874 8 596
- <sup>124</sup> SIFRANSKAJA STEPANOWA F N Zur Physiologie der Hautdrüsen des Frosches I Sekretorische und hemmende Nerven der Froschhautdrüsen *Pflüger's Arch* 1925 209 1
- <sup>125</sup> SIFRANSKAJA STEPANOWA L N Zur Physiologie der Hautdrüsen des Frosches II Rolle des peripheren Neurons bei der Sekretion der Hautdrüsen *Pflüger's Arch* 1925 209 22
- <sup>126</sup> SIFFELL F A *Die Zentren des autonomen Nervensystems* Berlin Springer 1928
- <sup>127</sup> STRUEFF V Zur Frage der bakteriellen Lungenembolie *Virchow's Arch* 1909 198 211
- <sup>128</sup> SZYMONOWICZ L Die Funktion der Nebenniere *Pflüger's Arch* 1896 64 97
- <sup>129</sup> TFFSTLT L *Traité d'anatomie humaine* Paris Doin 1928
- <sup>130</sup> TIGERSTEDT R Physiologie des Kreislaufes Berlin de Gruyter 1921-23
- <sup>131</sup> TOMB J W Shock and allied conditions *Lancet* 1937 II 1416
- <sup>132</sup> TRFVIRANUS G R Biologie oder Philosophie der lebenden Natur für Naturforscher und Ärzte Göttingen Kowar 1802-22
- <sup>133</sup> TRIBE E M Effect of adrenaline on the pulmonary circulation *J Physiol* 1912 45 11
- <sup>134</sup> TRIBE E M Vasomotor nerves in the lungs *J Physiol* 1914 48 154
- <sup>135</sup> VELICH V Ueber die Einwirkung des Nebennierensaftes auf den Blutkreislauf *Wien med Bl* 1896 19 227 245 262 219 295 311 324
- <sup>136</sup> VELICH V Ueber die Einwirkung des Nebennierenextractes auf den Blutkreislauf *Wien med Wchnschr* 1898 48 1258
- <sup>137</sup> VILLARET M JUSTIN BESANÇON L AND BARDIN P Physiopathologie des accidents mortels consécutifs aux embolies pulmonaires *Bull et mém Soc méd d hôp de Paris* 1936 52 936
- <sup>138</sup> VILLARET M JUSTIN BESANÇON L AND BARDIN P Recherches sur la prévention expérimentale des accidents consécutifs aux embolies pulmonaires *Bull et mém Soc méd d hôp de Paris* 1936 52 941
- <sup>139</sup> WAGNER IN TIGERSTEDT R Physiologie des Kreislaufes Berlin de Gruyter 1921-23
- <sup>140</sup> WFFER C Ueber aktive Änderungen der arteriellen Blutfülle der Lungen *Arch f Anat u Physiol* 1910 Supplement 377



## CHAPTER V

# The Autonomic Regulation of Circulation

FROM the cardiac pump to the tiniest capillaries and back the circulation is governed by autonomic regulation. This regulation is accomplished largely by a nervous apparatus which is made up of central and peripheral components. Through highly organized reflex adjustments these components are coordinated to chemical, physical and mechanical processes which are also under the control of the autonomic system. Many factors contribute to the hemodynamics, e.g., arterial, capillary and venous pressures, blood velocities, cardiac rate and output, the tonicity of the vascular conduits, the quantity and quality of the blood mass, the osmotic pressure of the blood, the shunting of circuits or tapping of blood depots. But the primary determinant in regulating the circulation and its hemodynamics is the metabolic need of the tissues associated with the activity of external and internal respiration. Specialized chemicals and hormones—adrenalin, acetylcholine, pituitrin, histamine—have a prominent influence. So have variations in intrabodily temperature and water content, shifts in pH and in concentrations of minerals and electrolytes.

This galaxy of integrating processes has its anatomic representations in the neuraxis. At various levels from the telencephalon through the spinal cord regulatory devices exist, these are especially well developed in the brain stem. Of the central stations, the hypothalamus especially is dealt with in detail in this text, but the other control areas are not ignored.

To assess more accurately the significance of the central supervision of the circulation it will be useful to consider the autonomic circulatory controls as a whole, peripheral as well as central.

### Autonomic Peripheral Regulations

The peripheral regulations of the circulation are carried out by chemical, physical, mechanical and nervous activities. The latter are mediated by sympathetic and parasympathetic pathways, and by intrinsic and extrinsic reflexes. The extrinsic reflexes especially are closely bound up with metabolism and respiration. Neurohormonal influences play their part in all these processes.

#### A BY SYMPATHETIC NEURONS

Sympathetic efferent fibers innervate a large part of the peripheral vascular apparatus. Nerve fibrils have been demonstrated in arterial vessels whose walls

the liver will not retain excessive fluid for instance an inordinate quantity of blood reaching the liver will have its fluid constituents quickly expelled (Mautner<sup>40</sup>) It is interesting to note that many years ago Ikalowicz and I<sup>41</sup> and Pal<sup>42</sup> suspected that the liver possessed a specialized nervous regulation

*Innervation and Function of the Pulmonary Circulation* A generalized outburst of sympathetic activity probably entails the participation of practically all the vascular circuits in the body. In all this the pulmonary circulation possesses a special interest with regard to the dynamics governing the heart and lungs in situ as a single unit and with respect to the process of ventilation. Any tendency for the lungs to become overfilled with blood which is ejected out of the periphery as a result of vasoconstriction is guarded against by a synchronized vasoconstriction of the pulmonary vessels themselves. A concomitant relaxation of the bronchial musculature also takes place. At one and the same time therefore the danger of inundating the lesser circulation is prevented and the ventilating passages are opened more freely to permit the ingress of oxygen. Touched off simultaneously as a massive discharge these adjustments of the pulmonary circulation together with those instigated in the splanchnic coronary cerebral and other circuits remain orderly and coordinated. More over widespread and variegated as these peripheral responses are they spring in large part from the brain stem and other brain levels.

The nervous regulation of the pulmonary circulation (see p. 65 for innervation) seems to obey the same physiologic laws which obtain in many other circuits of the general circulation. The pulmonary blood vessels undergo sympathetic constriction and parasympathetic (vagal) dilatation and these effects operate with the synchronized effect of parasympathetic constriction and sympathetic dilatation exerted upon the musculature of the bronchi and upon the coronary tributaries of the heart. The lungs in reality consist of two organs—a ventilating apparatus and a circulatory system—and each organ is supplied by an independent group of sympathetic and parasympathetic fibers.

Many clinical affections remain confined largely and almost wholly to one organ. This may often be observed in emphysema, silicosis, tuberculosis and carcinoma where the alveoli and bronchi are primarily involved.<sup>43</sup> However in these pulmonary diseases the dynamics of the pulmonary circulation may eventually become disturbed. Conversely the pulmonary circulation may receive the brunt of the disturbance as in congenital heart disease, mitral disease and so called essential pulmonary hypertension (Eppinger and Wagner<sup>44</sup>) the ventilating apparatus continues to function fairly well until the respiratory membrane becomes greatly altered. The following case of chronic emphysema complicated by advanced pulmonary hypertension or long duration emphasizes the part played by involvement of both organs.

II. 45 years old a patient of Hentrich florid with emphysema during the greater part of his adult life developed pulmonary hypertension as a result of marked emphysema. The clinical manifestations of pulmonary hypertension marked cyanosis, polycythemia and

is an extension of the sympathetic supplies (Krogh<sup>11</sup>). Vasoconstriction and vasodilatation are carried out by means of this network. To a major degree the latter effect is also accomplished by chemicals, i.e., acetylcholine, histamine, metabolites, and probably even by extremely high dilutions of adrenalin. Specialized cells in the capillaries, the Rouget cells,<sup>123 124</sup> were at one time considered to be delicate extensions of the autonomic nervous system, but this is now doubted. The capillaries of the heart, according to Woolfard,<sup>98</sup> show no nerve fibrils. The intrinsic autonomic activity of the heart depends, however, upon a fine network of intracardiac nerve fibrils and ganglia (Hering<sup>78</sup>).

Of the chemical substances and of the special products of metabolism which join in the regulation of blood vessels we shall have more to say presently. Adrenalin which may be designated as a chemical postganglionic substance, acetylcholine, histamine, pituitrin, and a host of chemophysical factors—pH, concentrations of electrolytes, the quantity of CO<sub>2</sub>, of oxygen (oxygen lack), many hormones—all help to determine the tonicity of the capillary vessels. Other reactions such as the Snellen or the Ioven reflexes, the skin reflex (flinche reaction), and the local capillary reaction to cold, also constitute regulatory devices, probably sympathetic in character, which act on the capillaries.

*Sympathetic Efferent Fibers to the Cardiovascular Apparatus.* The sympathetic efferent supplies to various sections or districts of the cardiovascular system do not all cause identical regional reactions (Fig. 18) since the functions of these nerves are not all alike. Thus the cutaneous peripheral circulation receives sympathetic vasoconstrictors but it is not conclusively determined whether the vessels of the skin and muscles receive sympathetic vasodilators. The splanchnic vessels have sympathetic vasoconstrictors and perhaps vasodilators. (According to Dale<sup>41 42</sup> stimulating the splanchnic nerves after blocking the vasoconstrictors with ergotamine, produces a drop in blood pressure which is not checked by atropine. Wiggers<sup>96</sup> and others, however, deny the existence of sympathetic splanchnic vasodilators.) The coronary circulation possesses sympathetic vasodilators and similarly the hepatic veins according to Mautner<sup>125 126</sup> and Bauer et al.<sup>10</sup>

As a result of these differences in function of peripheral subdivisions of the sympathetic system a massive discharge of the entire sympathetic division is made up of a variety of local effects. A large volume of blood is diverted from the skin and the skeletal musculature and out of the blood depots to supply vital organs like the brain and the heart. On the other hand the musculature as a whole, the skin, the lungs, possibly the bone marrow and blood depot organs like the spleen are probably able to increase their capacity by virtue of nervous adjustments. The blood depot organs are able to hold large quantities of blood. The liver in this respect is an exception. Under normal circumstances

\*As a rule the impulses travel centrifugally but in efferent neurons they may sometimes be antidromic in direction (Bayliss<sup>127</sup>).

ventilating apparatus became greatly impaired and the patient succumbed to unrelieved congestive heart failure combined with pulmonary insufficiency.

The innervations and functions of the pulmonary circulation are important factors in these and other examples of cardiac and pulmonary disease.

*Sympathetic Cardio-Accelerator Fibers* A special group of fibers—the cardio-accelerator fibers (Figs. 18 and 35) with cell bodies at levels Th 1 to 5 exerts an excitatory effect on the heart. Stimulating these fibers produces a rise in the heart rate and an increased contraction of the auricles and ventricles. Sectioning these fibers or blocking them with ergotamine for example turns the heart over to the unhampered action of the cardio-inhibitory mechanism and the heart becomes slowed.

*Sympathetic Hypothalamo-Spinal Fibers* (Fig. 41) A sympathetic efferent tract arising from the posterior hypothalamus has been identified by Beattie Brown and Long<sup>16</sup>. Descending intraspinally to the lateral horn cells the fibers of this tract continue to the stellate ganglion and thence to the cardiac plexuses. Interrupting this fiber tract or destroying the posterior hypothalamic area will abolish the remarkable extrasystolic arrhythmia caused by chloroform inhalation. It is now advocated that this part of the brain participates in the regulation of the cardiac rhythm (p. 171) and that these hypothalamo-spinal fibers constitute an upper neuron pathway connecting with the sympathetic neurons which leave the spinal cord at the thoracic and lower levels.

## B BY PARASYMPATHETIC NERVOUS

As in the case of the sympathetic division the parasympathetic is also able to discharge in a massive or generalized manner. As a rule however the response is fragmentary, i.e. restricted to one or a few regions.

*Absence of Parasympathetic Fibers to Peripheral Vessels* The parasympathetic distribution to the cardiovascular system differs from that of the sympathetic. Despite the well established vasodilator action of acetylcholine on the capillaries of the skin and in the limb these capillaries as well as others are apparently devoid of parasympathetic nerves. As a matter of fact this lack probably also holds for the larger vessels. Enlargement of the lumen of these vessels is accomplished by vasodilator neurons within the sympathetic division by inhibition of sympathetic constrictors or by chemical substances with a dilator effect.

*Peripheral Parasympathetic Vasodilator Nerves to the Skeletal Musculature* More recently Kure<sup>17-18</sup> redirected attention to the existence of a so-called fourth group of parasympathetic efferent fibers with a vasodilator action on the vessels of the skeletal muscles (p. 134). Earlier publications by Stricker<sup>19-21</sup>, Grützner and Hasenham<sup>22</sup>, Morat<sup>23</sup>, Hasterlik and Biedl<sup>24</sup>, Werzilloff,<sup>25</sup> Ran-on and Wightman<sup>26</sup>, Bayliss<sup>27</sup> and Hartman, Blatz and Kilborn<sup>28</sup> dealt with these fibers.

enlargement of the right heart developed only in the final period of his life, about 4 years. He succumbed to the combined effects of unrelieved pulmonary hypertension and progressive loss of ventilating surface. The autopsy disclosed an extensive and diffuse fibrosis of the pulmonary capillary alveolar bed.<sup>180</sup>

Similar cases are met with in the diffuse, what might be termed the centrifugal, type of fibrosis, for example, in certain forms of silicosis or in diffuse parenchymatous fibrosis from any other cause. In all these instances, pulmonary hypertension is an accompanying feature but the dynamics of the general circulation may escape alteration for a long time.

Quite in contrast is the state of affairs in conditions of direct obstruction of the pulmonary circulation, as in chronic mitral disease. Here the parenchyma of the lungs suffers little or very late, whereas the pulmonary circuit is the site of marked hypertension.<sup>180</sup> The clinical features of pulmonary hypertension are not always present. Thus two groups are observed: (1) long standing mitral disease showing little if any clinical evidence of pulmonary hypertension, and (2) chronic mitral disease with marked manifestations of hypertension in the pulmonary circuit.

H. S., aged 32, had been admitted six times to Montefiore Hospital in the period from 1929 to 1942 for recurrent attacks of congestive heart failure. It was known that he had had rheumatic heart disease for at least fifteen years and for thirteen years his heart was greatly enlarged; the signs of mitral stenosis and insufficiency were unmistakable. He had never had an elevated arterial blood pressure. In January, 1942, the diagnosis of advanced buttonhole mitral valve disease was again confirmed. His heart was much rotated; the right ventricle was huge and the left ventricle greatly enlarged; auricular fibrillation persisted. Yet despite this advanced and long standing mitral obstruction, pulmonary hypertension had produced no clinical features such as cyanosis, polycythemia, clubbing of the fingers or other manifestations pointing to any marked impairment of the capillary alveolar bed.

A. A., a 53 year old female, was under observation for advanced rheumatic heart disease at Montefiore Hospital from February, 1933 until the time of her death in February, 1936. There was an intimation that she had had heart disease as a very young child. At the age of 24 a diagnosis of stenotic mitral valvular disease was established and she was started on digitalis. Her cardiac condition progressed very slowly, however, and she remained practically free of signs of heart failure. In her middle forties she developed a deep and steadily progressive cyanosis limited to the face, ears, lips and fingers and toes. By this time her heart had become large and showed the contour characteristic of advanced mitral obstruction. She began to exhibit other signs of progressive impairment of pulmonary ventilation, namely, intense polycythemia and dyspnea, but congestive failure was still not a feature. Marked cardiac insufficiency appeared toward the close of her life, in striking contrast to the relatively mild insufficiency of the preceding three decades. The autopsy disclosed a greatly enlarged heart with healed and recurrent rheumatic involvement of the mitral and pulmonary valves and in addition, marked arteriosclerosis of the pulmonary tree extending into the small arteries and arterioles.

In this case of long standing mitral stenosis, pulmonary hypertension was well borne over many years and with little if any cardiac failure. With the advent of extensive involvement of the pulmonary arterioles and capillaries, the

ventilating apparatus became greatly impaired and the patient succumbed to unrelieved congestive heart failure combined with pulmonary insufficiency.

The innervations and functions of the pulmonary circulation are important factors in these and other examples of cardiac and pulmonary disease.

*Sympathetic Cardio Accelerator Fibers* A special group of fibers—the cardio-accelerator fibers (Fig. 18 and 35) with cell bodies at levels Th 1 to 5 exerts an excitatory effect on the heart. Stimulating these fibers produces a rise in the heart rate and an increased contraction of the auricles and ventricles. Sectioning these fibers or blocking them with ergotamine for example turns the heart over to the unhampered action of the cardio-inhibitory mechanism and the heart becomes slowed.

*Sympathetic Hypothalamo-Spinal Fibers* (Fig. 41) A sympathetic efferent tract arising from the posterior hypothalamus has been identified by Beattie Brown and Long.<sup>14</sup> Descending intrapinally to the lateral horn cells the fibers of this tract continue to the stellate ganglion and thence to the cardiac plexuses. Interrupting this fiber tract or destroying the posterior hypothalamic area will abolish the remarkable extrasystolic arrhythmia caused by chloroform inhalation. It is now advocated that this part of the brain participates in the regulation of the cardiac rhythm (p. 121) and that these hypothalamo-spinal fibers constitute an upper neuron pathway connecting with the sympathetic neurons which leave the spinal cord at the thoracic and lower levels.

## B. BY PARASYMPATHETIC NEURONS

As in the case of the sympathetic division the parasympathetic is also able to discharge in a massive or generalized manner. As a rule however the response is fragmentary, i.e. restricted to one or a few regions.

*Absence of Parasympathetic Fibers to Peripheral Vessels* The parasympathetic distribution to the cardiovascular system differs from that of the sympathetic. Despite the well-established vasodilator action of acetylcholine on the capillaries of the skin and in the lungs these capillaries as well as others are apparently devoid of parasympathetic nerves. As a matter of fact this lack probably also holds for the larger vessels. Enlargement of the lumen of these vessels is accomplished by vasodilator neurons within the sympathetic division by inhibition of sympathetic constrictors or by chemical substances with a dilatory effect.

*Peripheral Parasympathetic Vasodilator Nerves to the Skeletal Musculature* More recently Kuo<sup>12-13</sup> redirected attention to the existence of a so-called fourth group of parasympathetic efferent fibers with a vasodilator action on the vessels of the skeletal muscles (p. 134). Earlier publications by Stricker<sup>15</sup> Grützner and Hardenham,<sup>16</sup> Morat,<sup>17</sup> Hasterlik and Biedl,<sup>18</sup> Werzloff,<sup>19</sup> Ranson and Wightman,<sup>20</sup> Bayliss,<sup>21</sup> and Hartman, Blatz and Kilborn<sup>22</sup> dealt with these fibers.



*Parasympathetic Cardio Inhibitory Fibers* Free of controversy, however, is the function of the parasympathetic cardio inhibitory fibers (Fig 18) Stimulating these nerves exaggerates the inhibitory or slowing action of the heart rate Removing the opposed influence of the sympathetic accelerators markedly retards the heart rate, but this is temporary The administration of atropine or severing the parasympathetic cardio inhibitory fibers releases the unrestricted action of the sympathetic cardio accelerators, and the heart beats faster For details on the finer distribution of sympathetic and parasympathetic fibers to the intrinsic cardiac structures see Otto,<sup>187</sup> Rothberger,<sup>111</sup> Wiggers<sup>96</sup> and Drury and MacKenzie<sup>50</sup>

*Parasympathetic Constrictor Fibers to the Vessels of the Heart* Although the nervous regulation of the coronary vessels of the human heart is still a subject of study and even controversy, the general consensus based on experiments in dogs is that these vessels are constricted by vagal fibers (Anrep,<sup>18</sup> Rein,<sup>166</sup> Wiggers<sup>208</sup>)

The parasympathetic as well as the sympathetic innervations to the coronary vessels have a direct bearing on the blood supply to the normal and abnormal heart The nervous controls of the heart as a whole are concerned with more than the regulation of its blood supply These controls operate also on the mechanics of the heart, e.g., changes in frequency, minute volume and arterial pressure and these are factors which influence the load imposed upon the heart and more especially the metabolism of the heart

The basis for judging the adequacy of the coronary circulation is not merely coronary flow in relation to the work of the heart but coronary flow in relation to the oxygen consumption of the heart This has been stressed by Gollwitzer Meier and Kruger<sup>47-49</sup> Their conclusions, the result of studies of the nervous influence on the metabolism of the dog's heart, may be summarized as follows The coarse adjustment of the coronary supply is accomplished by the aortic pressure, more delicate adaptation of the coronary flow is attained by the autonomic innervations to the coronary vessels Stimulation of the sympathetics and adrenalin injection greatly increase the metabolism of the heart However, both factors augment the coronary flow especially as a result of the elevation of arterial pressure This increased flow is marked enough to offset the danger of any insufficient supply of oxygen to the normal myocardium

Stimulation of the vagus and of the carotid and aortic inhibitory reflexes undoubtedly depresses coronary flow but even more markedly the metabolism of the heart, as a consequence, these inhibitory regulations never result in a deprivation of oxygen to the normal heart Two conditions in particular may threaten the essential oxygen supply to the normal heart a marked fall in systemic blood pressure causing an unfavorable disproportion between coronary flow and oxygen consumption, and an acceleration of the heart rate leading to an increased cardiac oxygen consumption without a parallel increase in coronary blood supply

These newly established experimental findings emphasize the important consideration that synergic activities of the sympathetic and parasympathetic innervations to the coronary vessels play their part in safeguarding the oxygen supply to the heart. The autonomic nervous controls of the coronary flow should also be taken into account in evaluating the concept that anoxemia of the heart muscle is the cause of anginal pain.

*Parasympathetic Constrictor Fibers to the Hepatic Veins* Mautner,<sup>127-40</sup> Mautner and Pick<sup>129-131</sup> and Mohr and Pick<sup>132</sup> believe that parasympathetic constrictor fibers supply the hepatic veins. It is of interest that the blood vessels of the pancreas are supposed to undergo parasympathetic constriction as in the case of the coronary vessels. (For a discussion of the innervation of the splanchnic vascular system see p. 121.)

### C. RECEPTOR APPARATUS FOR INTRINSIC CIRCULATORY REFLEXES

*Arterial or Sino-Aortic Receptors* A group of specially differentiated receptors (sinuses) in the aortic arch and at the bifurcation of the common carotid arteries are considered part of the autonomic nervous system. Variations in arterial pressure as well as chemical stimuli evoke reflex adjustments in the circulation at large through these receptors. Intrinsic reflexes are also initiated by receptors disseminated in the walls of many other vascular channels—the vena cava, the auricles, and the pacinian corpuscles of the mesentery. The carotid and aortic sinus receptors constitute two main stations for the initiation of intrinsic reflexes. Of these stations the aortic, situated in the aortic arch, is the major (Fig. 14).

*Aortic sinus* From this nerve plexus or sinus a nerve ascends to the vagal trunk; ganglia and nerve dendrites enter the medulla. In lower forms this nerve branch, known as the depressor or aortic nerve and clearly described in the rabbit by von and Ludwig<sup>28</sup> is readily identified. Its delineation in man is difficult. Some authorities are still in doubt about its origin and whether it is a sympathetic or parasympathetic structure. However, the present consensus holds the nerve to be vagal.

It is no longer doubted that the aortic sinus mechanism initiates depressor (parasympathetic) manifestations.\* Figure 15 depicts the depressor effect on blood pressure which follows excitation of the so-called aortic or depressor nerve. This nerve conveys afferent impulses registered at the aortic receptors. With

That depressor manifestations in general may sometimes have a sympathetic adrenergic origin is suggested by a marked decline in blood pressure seen to follow the cutting of both vagi (Pike<sup>31</sup>). The same phenomenon had been noted by von Brücke<sup>29</sup> in certain experimental animals; the hypotension was accompanied by a retarded heart rate (see p. 110 for other examples). A depressor adrenergic reaction, for example dilation of the denervated pupil induced by the intracereous injection of acetylcholine, was demonstrated by Bender.<sup>32-33</sup> These phenomena belong with the mechanism of reciprocal inhibition (Bayliss<sup>1</sup>) and open up an interesting vein of speculation (p. 110).

trigger like readiness, the aortic sinus reflexes can be touched off and alteration in systemic blood pressure, as well as other cardiovascular responses, follow. These responses are depressor in nature and therefore cholinergic, but it has been claimed that pressor (adrenergic) reactions are sometimes initiated by the

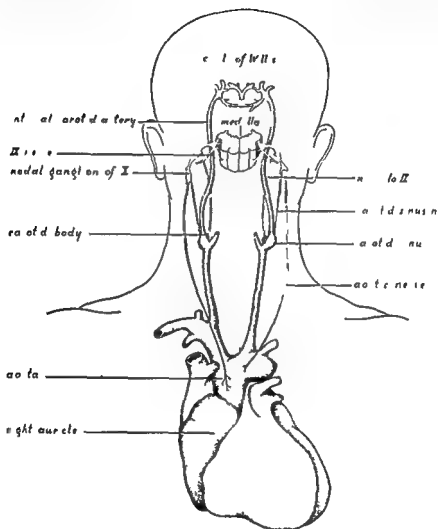


FIG 14 Sino Aortic Sinuses and Their Connections

aortic receptors (Danielopolu<sup>41</sup>). Because of its sensitivity in registering fluctuations of intra aortic pressure, the aortic arch may be compared to a sensitive tambour. Most physiologists agree that the variations in aortic pressure act as the chief provocative stimulus for the aortic sinus reflexes (Verworn,<sup>193</sup> Hering<sup>100</sup>, Bayliss<sup>14</sup>, Heymans and Liden<sup>93</sup>, Adrian<sup>1</sup>, Verzar and Peter,<sup>199</sup> DeBurgh Daly and Verney,<sup>45</sup>, Bronk<sup>77</sup>) but Lyster and Hooker<sup>56</sup> were not able to confirm this. An 'aortic body' or glomus reactive to chemical stimuli has been identified at the base of the heart (Nonidez<sup>150</sup>).

**Carotid sinus** Lying at the fork of the common carotid artery and giving rise to responses similar to those of the aortic receptors the carotid sinus (Fig. 14) also contains receptors sensitive to fluctuations in arterial distention and to chemical stimuli. Variations in arterial pressure affect the carotid sinus receptors. Receptors sensitive to chemical change are alleged to reside in a separate organ, the immediately adjacent carotid body. This arrangement does not hold for all species. The carotid body has been thoroughly described by Mering<sup>149</sup>

From this sinus or plexus a carotid nerve travels upward into the glossopharyngeal nerve and together with vagal connections reaches the medulla (Fig. 14). The superior cervical sympathetic ganglion sends an efferent nerve fil

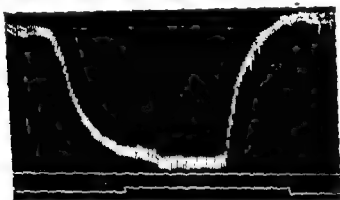


FIG. 14.—A typical depressor curve of blood pressure upon excitation of the aortic or depressor nerve. The drum was stopped in the middle of the curve and the excitation maintained for seventeen minutes. The line of zero pressure should be 30 mm. lower than shown here. Time in 12-second intervals. Record to be read from left to right. (Bayliss, *The Vasomotor System*, London: Longmans Green, 1913; reprinted from *Methods of Physiology in Modern Medicine*, 5th ed., St. Louis: Mosby, 1938.)

ament to the sinus. Described by Hering<sup>150</sup> later by his co-worker Koch<sup>151</sup> and by the Belgian group of investigators headed by Heymans<sup>152-154</sup> the carotid sinus as a regulator of circulation has been the object of a great deal of study. As we shall see in a moment, it can give rise to depressor or pressor manifestations.

A fall in carotid sinus pressure is followed by vasoconstriction of almost every vascular circuit in the body. The vasoconstriction is reputed to have been observed in the following structures: in the intestinal vessels, Moissejeff<sup>155</sup>; Heymans, Bouckaert and Dautrebande<sup>156-158</sup>; in the head, Heymans and Bouckaert<sup>159</sup>; in the liver, Heymans and Bouckaert<sup>160</sup>; in the retinal arteries, Collwitzer, Meier and Schulte<sup>161</sup>. (Michail and Laurens<sup>162</sup> claim that a lowered pressure in the carotid sinus produces no change in the retinal vessel, although a general

fall in blood pressure does alter the retinal vessels), in the femoral veins, Heymans and Bouckaert<sup>83</sup> in the intestinal veins, Fleisch<sup>80 81</sup> Vasoconstriction has also been reported in the coronary and pulmonary vessels, but this is questionable, since sympathetic stimulation and the consequent rise in blood pressure tend to augment coronary blood flow

The generalized effect of the carotid sinus on circulation also takes a depressor form, most of the vessels of the body undergoing vasodilatation, a fall in venous pressure may be marked Hering<sup>79</sup> elicited this type of vasodilator reaction by stimulating the carotid sinus

Differences in vasoconstriction and vasodilatation occur in different animals and under varied conditions of experimentation and this is also true for the reactions set off by the aortic sinus Both the carotid and aortic sinus reflex mechanisms are not only physiologically analogous but they possess common anatomic features Both sinuses do not arise from the heart but are developed from the primitive branchial arches, in both sinuses the nerve fibrils are alleged to be of a type found nowhere else (de Castro<sup>84 85</sup>) Tello<sup>(191)</sup> made it clear that the aortic nerves develop at a later state of embryonal life after the aortic arch derived from the smistral fourth branchial vessels, is well differentiated

*Cerebral Circulation* At first the cerebral vessels were not considered to be under the pressor influence of the carotid sinus (Heymans and Bouckaert<sup>84</sup>), but this original premise has given place to an opposite opinion established by Bouckaert and Jourdan<sup>85</sup> The circulation of the brain is profoundly affected by the general circulation, and vice versa It is therefore not surprising to find the arteries of the head involved in reactions associated with a drop in general blood pressure (Anrep and Starling<sup>86</sup> Heymans and Bouckaert<sup>87</sup>) Cuernsey, Weisman and Scott<sup>78</sup> observed that the effects of increased intracranial pressure were diminished by the carotid and aortic reflexes (For the blood supply to the brain consult *The Circulation of the Brain and Spinal Cord* A Symposium on Blood Supply Research Publ A Nerv & Ment Dis Vol 18 1937)

The circulation of the brain is protected by the reflexes of both the carotid and aortic sinuses A striking example of how the aortic sinus may guard the cerebral blood supply is illustrated by the ox, in whom this sinus lies at the origin of the vertebral artery which carries blood to the circle of Willis (de Castro<sup>84</sup> van Damme<sup>97</sup>) The significance of an adequate blood supply to the brain may be witnessed in experimental procedures on nonhuman species Where is bilateral ligation of the common carotid arteries in man is fatal this procedure in the goat merely produces a prompt though temporary loss of consciousness the vertebral arteries in this animal adequately supplying the brain The ancient Greeks were aware of this reaction in the goat Bilateral ligation in the cat hardly disturbs the animal the aortic nerve plexus and vertebral arteries protecting the cerebral circulation

The regulatory influence of the carotid sinus on the brain vessel in general, and surely in man is far from negligible. Indeed the carotid sinus may be called the watch dog of the cerebral circulation. However it is not the sole guardian. In man an important responsibility of this sinus is the compensation by reflex adjustments for the change in the force of gravity which accompanies the erect posture.

In many respects if not altogether, the carotid sinus may be said to be complementary to the aortic. This is borne out by the simple observation that bilateral denervation of the carotid sinuses still leaves the animal with practically all its vital and extensive cardiovascular regulations.

The carotid sinus reflexes are responsible for a variety of activities. These are expressed as changes in the cardio-inhibitory center in the center regulating blood pressure in the center controlling adrenalin discharge in the respiratory center and perhaps in some center or area which may govern the onset of syncope. As a rule all or most of these effects will occur at one time but in a number of instances only a few or even a single manifestation may be present.

*Depressor Manifestations of the Carotid Sinus.* A sudden elevation of local blood pressure either spontaneous or following compression at the site of the sinus will usher in depressor reactions (Fig. 16). The heart rate will very likely be retarded the general blood pressure will fall as a consequence of general vasodilatation the secretion of adrenalin becomes inhibited respirations will be inhibited and sudden syncope may be part of the picture.

In comparatively rare instances syncope alone appears after stimulation of the carotid sinus. The absence of concomitant cardiovascular reactions in this connection as reported by Ferris Capps and Wells<sup>48</sup> suggests that in some cases afferent impulses from the carotid sinus may be able to travel directly to an independent part of the brain concerned with consciousness.

Such a possibility raises the thought that syncope may not always be an expression of cardiovascular depressor phenomena and that it is perhaps mediated by a reflex arc well outside the centers associated with cardiovascular regulations. By the same token the isolated occurrence of cardiovascular manifestations i.e. bradycardia or a sudden hypotension following carotid sinus stimulation may perhaps point to the existence of individual groups of afferent neurons connecting the carotid sinus to specific medullary centers for each of these responses.

Clinical observations have established that mechanical stimulation of the normal carotid sinus brings on a prompt fall in systemic blood pressure of less than 10 mm Hg. This fall is exaggerated if the sinus is hypersensitive. Three types of clinical cases have been identified. (1) cases of asystole or sudden retardation of the pulse with or without a drop in systemic blood pressure. (2) cases of marked fall in systemic blood pressure without marked slowing of the pulse. (3) patients with a change in cerebral circulation associated with

fainting and sometimes with convulsions with or without a pronounced effect on the heart rate or blood pressure

The syndrome associated with hypersensitivity of the carotid sinus has been attacked surgically, or by applying a local anesthetic, and often with success. Denervation is carried out by resection or by chemical measures. In

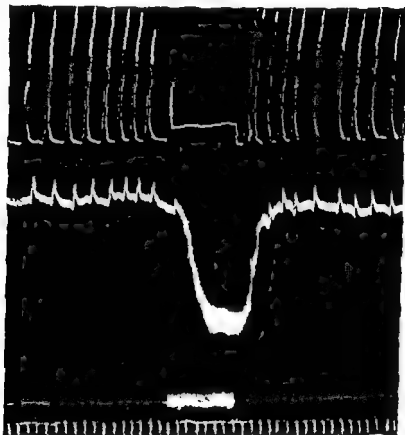


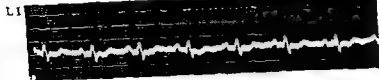
FIG. 16—The effects of external pressure on the left carotid sinus of a dog under chloralose anesthesia. Apnea and hypotension resulted (Macleod *Physiology in Modern Medicine* 8th ed. St. Louis: Mosby, 1938. Record made by C. F. Schmidt and reproduced with his kind permission.)

some cases it is necessary to remove the carotid body. The following are two cases with fairly characteristic reactions:

*A case of carotid sinus syndrome exhibiting asystole and vertigo.* M. R., a male patient at Montefiore Hospital, aged 52, had hypertension of at least seven years standing. His blood pressure ranged at levels of about 240 systolic and 140 diastolic. He also had emphysema and hyperactive reflexes, the latter as a residual manifestation of a right hemiplegia suffered in April, 1941. In August of the same year he was stricken with a left hemiplegia. In recent months he developed marked dizziness when lying flat in bed and turning his head to one side. The right carotid sinus became extremely sensitive, setting off asystole and dizziness

on slight pressure but without loss of consciousness. This reaction as a rule was accompanied by blanching of the skin of both sides of the face.

Lead 2—continuous strip Normal



Right carotid sinus pressure



Left carotid sinus pressure

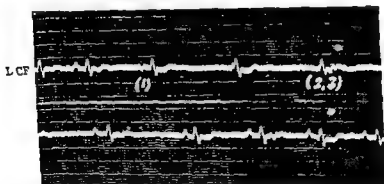


FIG. 17—Effect of External Carotid Sinus Pressure. Patient S. M. Note the placement of the pacemaker from the S-A node to the auricle (1) and A-A node (3) with depression of the S-A node (2,3) or sinus block. The PR interval (4) is increased.

A case of carotid sinus syndrome with depressor reaction of the blood pressure and pulse rate. L. S., a male aged 64 admitted to Montefiore Hospital in 1934 for acute polyarthritis and hypertension, was readmitted in 1935 for epigastric pain and for the recent onset of dizzy spells initiated without warning and of brief duration. In 1939 the hospital record states



he had an advanced generalized arteriosclerosis polyarthritis and hypertension Readmitted recently it was observed that he experienced numerous episodes of sudden vertigo often in conjunction with anginal seizures but without loss of consciousness Similar attacks were precipitated when the head was quickly turned to one side and also when external pressure was applied to either carotid sinus Pressure over the right carotid sinus for example induced a drop in the blood pressure from 162/88 to 130/66 and a lowering of the pulse rate from 118 to 60 but a rise in the respirations from 20 to 24 excursions per minute

*Pressor Manifestations of the Carotid Sinus* An abrupt fall in blood pressure at the site of the carotid sinus sets in motion pressor activities This sudden lowering of the local blood pressure is not to be interpreted as causing stimuli which call forth pressor effects On the contrary, the drop in blood pressure merely makes it impossible for the sinus to receive an adequate quantity or intensity of stimuli essential for preserving a normal level of systemic blood pressure or an increased local intravascular pressure essential for evoking a lowered systemic pressure A lowered blood pressure at the sinus brings about a cessation of depressor stimuli and as a consequence evokes a pressor response The pressor reactions are as follows the heart rate is quickened, the general systemic blood pressure mounts as a consequence of an increase in general peripheral constriction, the output of adrenalin is augmented, respirations are stimulated, and the blood reservoirs, as a result of contraction of the large veins are apt to become emptied In contrast to those called forth by stimulation of the carotid sinus these effects are adrenergic in nature

The primary function of the carotid and aortic sinus reflexes is to help preserve the fundamental the so called residual or resting vagal tone of the circulation But it would be more correct to look upon this residual tone as a normal state of function achieved by the activity of reciprocal innervations It is conceivable that in some individuals the carotid sinus reflexes may consist predominantly either of cholinergic or of adrenergic activities This might occur if the specific afferent neurons in question, from the sinus to the medullary centers were increased in absolute number or if the normal number of either group of fibers was reduced The possibility of interplacements or interlacing of adrenergic and cholinergic fibers has already been alluded to but this seems to be a very rare possibility in connection with the carotid sinus With regard to the depressor nerve however anatomic deviations leading to a preponderance of vagal or sympathetic neurons is not unknown Danicopolu<sup>44</sup> described combined vagal and sympathetic fibers in the depressor nerve of the dog, he attributed the retardation of the heart to the action of vagal fibers and the change in blood pressure to that of sympathetic fibers

#### D VENOUS INTRINSIC REFLEXES

The venous channels also contain receptors for initiating systemic circulatory changes Examples of this are the Bainbridge reflex<sup>45</sup> and the McDowall reflex<sup>46</sup> They are the equivalent of intrinsic arterial reflexes The Bainbridge reflex

is manifest when a sudden elevation of venous pressure, acting upon the receptors in the auricles and in the large veins causes an acceleration of the heart rate by contrast a depression of venous pressure causes slowing of the heart. High venous pressure is said to cause stimulation of the cardiac sympathetics.

The McDowall reflex also comprises vasomotor reactions attendant upon variations in venous pressure. A fall in venous pressure as after hemorrhage sets in motion a vagopressor reflex and the arterial blood pressure will begin to rise. In a later publication McDowall<sup>116</sup> went on to show that this vagopressor reaction is in evidence after severe hemorrhage even when the arterial as well as the venous pressure drops. With the return of a mounting level of venous pressure a reflex stimulation of the vasoconstrictor mechanism occurs and arterial tension rises. Venous hypertension therefore seems able to induce a reflex vasomotor constriction. The pressor pathway for this act probably begins in the right auricle. According to Reed and Layman<sup>117</sup> the McDowall reflex will not always come off.

A *labyrinth reflex* described by Spiegel<sup>118</sup> represents a specialized reflex. Stimulation of the labyrinth by caloric or galvanic stimuli or by rotation induces a fall in blood pressure by a mechanism similar to that evoked on stimulating the aortic (depressor) nerve. The labyrinth reflex acts on vasomotor centers and mainly on the splanchnic vessels. The afferent pathway is by way of the vestibular nerve (Fig. 18). An oculomotor reflex brought on by pressure on the eyeball also causes a generalized fall in blood pressure.

### E. PERIPHERAL REGULATION BY MEANS OF EXTRINSIC CARDIOVASCULAR REFLEXES

Extrinsic reflexes constitute a group and their activity is mediated without receptors and without any known neurons. Although possessing no anatomic receptors in the vascular apparatus the extrinsic type of reflex may nevertheless have to be grouped under the functions of the autonomic nervous system. A variety of reactions, largely chemical but also physical and mechanical takes place in the tissues of the body and the effects are reflected in the hemodynamics of the circulation. By their lability and their dependence on prerequisite levels of chemical and physical conditions reactions of this type in a very physiologic sense are rightly designated as reflexes. Whether these reactions however are ever completely independent of a direct control by the autonomic nervous system cannot be said.

Hormones and other chemicals act in the ever changing scene of biologic events going on in the tissues but for all we know they may act with or without the autonomic nervous system. Metabolites in denervated carotid and aortic preparations for instance can still influence the reactivity of brain centers, i.e. the sympathetic vasoconstrictor and the parasympathetic vasodilator centers. Since it is known that metabolic functions are regulated in

some manner by the hypothalamus, the suggestion is not out of place that the autonomic nervous system, especially the higher centers including the hypothalamus, may have a hand in governing the chemical reflexes of the circulation

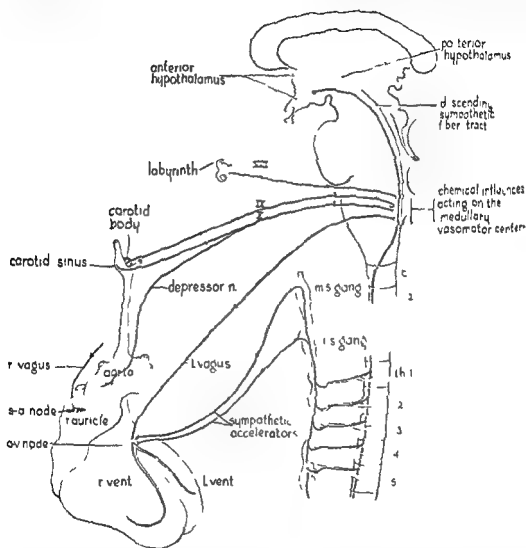


FIG. 18—Schema of the Autonomic Regulations of the Cardio Vascular Apparatus. Cortical and hypothalamic elements described in the text (p. 103) have not been included in this drawing. The basis for the intrinsic cardiac connections is drawn above rests almost wholly on pharmacologic evidence. The anterior and posterior hypothalamic regions appear to give rise to general cardiovascular effects.

The individual needs of the body must be satisfied by the delivery of appropriate amounts of blood to the various tissues and organs. All tissues and every organ obtains its allotment of blood while the blood stream as a whole with its complicated gradients of pressure, velocities, etc., pursues its course

at an optimal level of efficiency. All this is achieved by a large group of extrinsic and intrinsic cardiovascular reflexes and by the closely allied processes of respiration and metabolism.

Extrinsic and intrinsic reflexes confer upon the circulation an ability to preserve its normal internal equilibrium but also to meet abnormal conditions within and outside the body. For example, the circulatory changes ushered in by hemorrhage shock or the severe loss of fluids, consist of a correlated interaction of both sets of reflexes. Again the adaptation of the body to external temperature is largely the result of reflex activities of the circulation. The blood pressure and other hemodynamic states are preserved by a coordinated group of fractional or localized autonomic reactions acting upon the entire circulation.

### Autonomic Central Controls

Beautifully adjusted and interlocked all the features described above are coordinated into a smoothly moving chain of events. In this coordination central stations of the autonomic nervous system play a prominent part. Throughout the neuraxis—in the cortex in the spinal cord especially in the bulbar and pontine regions and in the diencephalon—spatial units for cardiac and vasomotor activities are found.

### A CORTICAL, BULBAR AND SPINAL CONTROLS

The concept of special centers in the brain for controlling blood vessels first came from Schiff.<sup>17, 18</sup> The credit of actually discovering such a central area belongs to Ludwig and his pupils especially to Ossjannikov<sup>19</sup> who identified a center in the medulla of the rabbit. It was located near the fourth ventricle above the tip of the calamus scriptorius. The classic studies of Ludwig and his pupils on rhombencephalic vascular control are almost universally accepted although a few like Müller and Glaser<sup>20</sup> and Scott and Roberts<sup>21</sup> disagree.

An animal with its intact rhombencephalon separated from the mesencephalon will preserve its fundamental cardiovascular responses practically undisturbed. Obviously the indispensable central regulation of the cardiovascular apparatus must lie below the mesencephalon. Though neither cortex nor even diencephalon are absolutely necessary<sup>22</sup> must not be concluded these regions are devoid of influence.

*Cortical Control.* As early as 1855 Schiff observed the acceleration of the heart rate following stimulation of the cerebral lobes and later Danilewsky<sup>23</sup> obtained the same result. Bochefontaine<sup>24</sup> also found changes in blood pressure and heart rate on stimulation of the cortex. He stated that his teacher Vulpian, was aware of this reaction even before he himself published his own result. Eulenburg and Landouzy<sup>25</sup> noted changes in the limb vessels on stimulation of the cortex and changes in blood pressure were reported by Bechterew and

some manner by the hypothalamus, the suggestion is not out of place that the autonomic nervous system, especially the higher centers including the hypothalamus, may have a hand in governing the chemical reflexes of the circulation

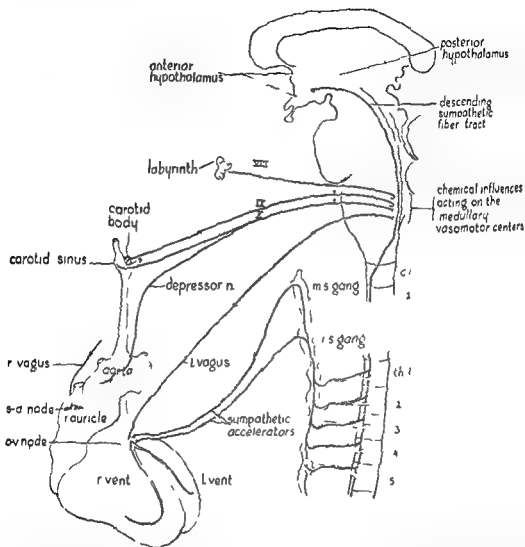


FIG. 18 — Schema of the Autonomic Regulations of the Cardio Aortic Apparatus Cortical and hypothalamic elements described in the text (p. 105) have not been included in this drawing. The basis for the intrinsic cardiac connections as drawn above rests almost wholly on pharmacologic evidence. The anterior and posterior hypothalamic regions appear to give rise to general cardiovascular effects.

The individual needs of the body must be satisfied by the delivery of appropriate amounts of blood to the various tissues and organs. All tissues and every organ obtains its allotment of blood while the blood stream as a whole, with its complicated gradients of pressure, velocities, etc., pursues its course

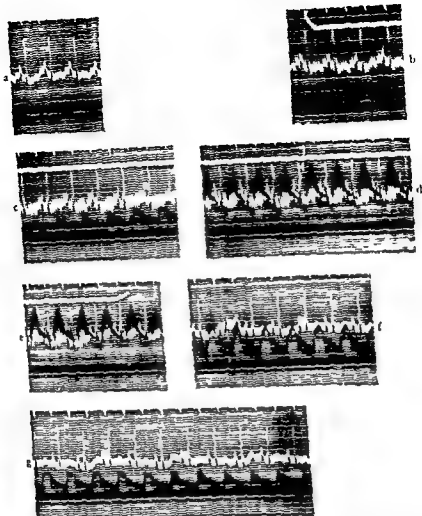


FIG. 19 Hypertension from Cerebral Stimulation. Blood pressure and electrocardiographic changes following electrical stimulation of the cerebral cortex of the cat. The cat was kept under light ether anesthesia, artificial respiration was instituted and the animal was then curarized. The dura has been incised and laid wide open, the left anterior sigmoid gyrus was stimulated by means of a Harvard inductorium with the coil at a distance of 2 cm and an injected current of 2 volt. The time is indicated on the records at intervals of 0.1 second. Lead II was taken through out.

- a Before stimulation. Blood pressure is 120 mm Hg. T wave negative.
- b Stimulation begun as indicated by the marker. Blood pressure is 120 mm Hg.
- c T wave during continuous stimulation of 8.3 seconds. Duration. Blood pressure rises to 240 mm Hg. T wave is negative at the termination of the stimulation (record e).
- d Three seconds after stimulation was stopped. Blood pressure is 190 mm Hg. T wave is still
- e 8.3 seconds after stimulation was stopped. Blood pressure is 160 mm Hg. T wave is still
- f
- g

From a study carried out by Spiegel, Miller, Krueger and Alper.)

Mislawsky,<sup>21</sup> and by François Franck.<sup>4-62</sup> Dusser de Barenne and Kleinknecht<sup>61</sup> observed a rise or fall in blood pressure on stimulating different areas in the region of the sigmoid gyrus. Although motor reactions usually accompanied these vasomotor effects, the latter sometimes were elicitable without the former. More recently, Fulton<sup>64</sup> obtained changes in arterial pressure on stimulation of the motor and premotor cortical areas. Hoff and Green<sup>91</sup> and Green and Hoff<sup>92</sup> described changes in blood pressure from cortical stimulation in curarized and noncurarized animals. These observations pointed to cortical effects on blood pressure and on muscular hyperactivity (convulsions) which were independent of each other. On stimulating the orbital surface of the frontal lobe in cats and monkeys at an area in the orbital gyrus near the olfactory tract, Bailey and Sweet<sup>5</sup> registered a rise in blood pressure, as well as inhibition of respiration and a decrease in the tone of the gastric musculature.

Clinicians long suspected that pathologic changes in the cortex might be accompanied by derangement of the systemic blood pressure. Observations on blood pressure in acute hemiplegias by Kahler<sup>109</sup> and Popper<sup>164</sup> did not furnish convincing evidence of such a relationship. On the other hand, Bucy<sup>9</sup> noted the absence of blood pressure and radial pulsation on the contralateral side promptly after cortical lesions, the unaffected side remaining normal in this respect. Such findings were absent in chronic cases of hemiplegia. According to Bucy, the vascular changes on the paralyzed side were due to a generalized constriction of the vessels on this side.

The effect of cortical stimulation on arterial blood pressure may be seen in Fig. 19.

**Bulbar Control.** The bulbar or medullary mechanisms for vasoconstriction and for vasodilatation are usually regarded as a single or common vasomotor center. However, the separate identity of each of these physiologic functions cannot be questioned, nor can their intimate and reciprocal interrelationships. The vasoconstrictor apparatus is characterized by a constant tonic discharge, the vasodilator nerves exhibit little or no tonic activity. In addition to this vasomotor region, the rhombencephalon contains the cell bodies of the parasympathetic cardioinhibitory fibers. Finally, whereas the lower neurons of the sympathetic accelerator cardiac fiber pathway arising in the grey matter of the lateral horns of the higher thoracic segments have long been identified, it now appears that the upper neurons of this pathway may consist of fibers which originate in the hypothalamus and descend intrinsically to the thoracic levels (Beattie et al.<sup>16-17</sup>).

The association of circulatory derangements with disturbances in the rhombencephalon and in the brain in general scarcely calls for extended comment. Bulbar involvement with its threat to respiratory and cardiovascular functions is a dread complication, very often fatal. On the other hand, chronic bulbar disorders may last for years, provided the repositories in the brain stem which regulate the activities of these vital functions remain intact or nearly so.

and Sheehan<sup>15</sup> Ranson et al.<sup>16</sup> Kabat et al.<sup>107</sup> and Masserman and Haertig<sup>108</sup>) On stimulating the tuber nuclei Beattie<sup>18</sup> obtained a lowered heart rate and a prolongation of the AV conduction time The identification of a circumscribed parasympathetic zone in the anterior hypothalamus, as proposed by Beattie and his collaborators has been controverted by Ranson and his school, and by Crouch and Elliott The latter could never obtain slowing of the heart constriction of the pupils abnormal salivation or other features of cholinergic excitation by stimulating a so-called parasympathetic area

(?) *Evidence of the existence of a parasympathetic zone from intra-ventricular experiments* A certain body of evidence however tends to support the contention of a parasympathetic zone in the hypothalamus Dixhut<sup>19</sup> claims the hypothalamus exercises a parasympathetic influence on the cardiovascular apparatus Upon injecting acetylcholine into the lateral and third ventricles he provoked a rise or fall of blood pressure depending upon the size of the dose employed Observations of a similar nature were made by Suh Wang and Lim<sup>109</sup> and by Silver and Morton<sup>110</sup> Much earlier Spiegel and Saito<sup>111</sup> had reported a lowered blood pressure from the introduction of pituitrin into the third ventricle of rabbits and Cushing<sup>97</sup> made pioneer observations on the parasympathetic effects in unanesthetized human beings following the intra-ventricular injection of pituitrin or pilocarpine Although certain cholinergic effects were manifested the blood pressure was not altered in Cushing's experiments but in a later paper<sup>112</sup> he mentions the onset of vasodilatation

While all these results constitute almost positive proof of a central parasympathetic mechanism they do not conclusively prove that the hypothalamus is necessarily a member of the brain stations responsible for this mechanism The introduction of foreign substances into the cerebral ventricles produces general and diffuse effects but precise localization of these (cholinergic) responses is scarcely feasible Moreover even though the cortex and the hypothalamus induce some effect it is possible that the bulk of the cardiovascular responses is mediated through centers no higher than the medulla or the mesencephalon Winkler<sup>113</sup> Waterman<sup>100</sup> van Bogaert<sup>114</sup> Fulton<sup>115</sup> and others showed that stimulation of the cortex causes a rise in blood pressure As is well known the hypothalamus influences blood pressure (Harplus and Kreck<sup>116</sup> 117 118) Spiegel and Yaskin<sup>119</sup> reported that elimination of the diencephalic centers in the cat produced only a transient fall of blood pressure soon compensated and that removal of the cortex alone had no effect on the level of blood pressure After transection caudal to the midbrain the blood pressure increased for four to ten minutes This increase of blood pressure was independent of muscular rigidity and was due to increased reactivity of lower centers to pressor stimuli and to the stimulating effect of the operation

A parasympathetic sphere of influence if we may employ such a designation in a general sense probably does exist in the hypothalamus but its ana-



For example a child stricken with a bulbar form of encephalitis or with bulbar involvement due to the effect of diphtheria toxin, or an adult with damage in the rhombencephalon from hemorrhage or inflammation is likely to survive if the central regulatory devices are still able to function adequately.

*Spinal Cord Centers* Important subsidiary vasomotor centers or, at least, anatomic areas for the mediation of vasomotor reflexes were identified in the spinal cord by Goltz et al.<sup>70-72</sup> Langley,<sup>73</sup> Tigerstedt,<sup>74</sup> and Bowen, Coombs and Pike.<sup>75</sup> These will not be dealt with in this text.

## B HYPOTHALAMIC CONTROL

This control is mediated through adrenergic and cholinergic fiber tracts, by hypothalamic hormonal regulations, by metabolic activities. A hypothalamic supervision over the sino aortic reflexes has not been established (For an exposition of the influence of the hypothalamus on circulation and respiration see Hess<sup>81, 82, 83b</sup>).

*Sympathetic (Adrenergic) and Parasympathetic (Cholinergic) Manifestations* Spatial elements in the hypothalamus responsible for cardiovascular effects are not easy to define accurately. A functional differentiation of these elements must exist, since totally different reactions stem from the posterior hypothalamus is compared, for instance with those from the anterior hypothalamus or the area just rostral to the latter. Beattie<sup>15</sup> has maintained that each district of the hypothalamus—the forward and the caudal—engenders a generalized or mass action, and he has gone so far as to assign to the posterior hypothalamus a sympathetic and to the anterior hypothalamus a parasympathetic character. Neither region, however, is entirely independent, for example the posterior may be influenced by the rostral (forward) area and inhibitory and augmentory impulses from the cortex and the thalamus probably act on both hypothalamic districts.

(1) *Evidence of adrenergic and cholinergic zones in the hypothalamus* Undoubtedly adrenergic and cholinergic manifestations are called forth by the hypothalamus under experimental conditions and there is sound reason for believing that the normal hypothalamus participates in the discharge of this dual set of responses. Attempts at identifying a specific anatomic locality as the site of origin for each set of reactions encounter difficulties. The pioneer investigations of Karplus and Kreidl<sup>131</sup> seemed to suggest a sympathetic zone or "sphere of influence." Later a region of this kind was delineated in the caudal hypothalamus by Bard,<sup>7-9</sup> by Beattie and his co-workers<sup>15, 17</sup> by Ranson and Wightman<sup>136</sup> and by Crouch and Elliott.<sup>38</sup>

From the anterior region of the hypothalamus the following cholinergic manifestations have been elicited: a fall in blood pressure with the heart seldom slowed (Ranson, Kabat and Magoun<sup>135</sup>), contraction of the bladder (Beattie and Kerr<sup>15</sup>), cholinergic effects on the gastrointestinal tract (Beattie

and Sheehan<sup>19</sup> Ranson et al.<sup>20</sup> Kabat et al.,<sup>21</sup> and Masserman and Haertig<sup>22</sup>) On stimulating the tuber nuclei Beattie<sup>23</sup> obtained a lowered heart rate and a prolongation of the AV conduction time The identification of a circumscribed parasympathetic zone in the anterior hypothalamus, as proposed by Beattie and his collaborators has been controverted by Ranson and his school and by Crouch and Elliott The latter could never obtain slowing of the heart constriction of the pupils abnormal salivation or other features of cholinergic excitation by stimulating a so-called parasympathetic area

(?) *Evidence of the existence of a parasympathetic one from intra-ventricular experiments* A certain body of evidence however tends to support the contention of a 'parasympathetic zone' in the hypothalamus Dikshut<sup>24</sup> claims the hypothalamus exercises a parasympathetic influence on the cardiovascular apparatus Upon injecting acetylcholine into the lateral and third ventricles he provoked a rise or fall of blood pressure depending upon the size of the dose employed Observations of a similar nature were made by Suh Wang and Lim<sup>25</sup> and by Silver and Morton<sup>26</sup> Much earlier Spiegel and Saito<sup>27</sup> had reported a lowered blood pressure from the introduction of pituitrin into the third ventricle of rabbits and Cushing<sup>28</sup> made pioneer observations on the parasympathetic effects in unanesthetized human beings following the intra-ventricular injection of pituitrin or pilocarpine Although certain cholinergic effects were manifested the blood pressure was not altered in Cushing's experiments but in a later paper<sup>29</sup> he mentions the onset of vasodilatation

While all these results constitute almost positive proof of a central parasympathetic mechanism they do not conclusively prove that the hypothalamus is necessarily a member of the brain stations responsible for this mechanism The introduction of foreign substances into the cerebral ventricles produces general and diffuse effects but precise localization of these (cholinergic) responses is scarcely feasible Moreover even though the cortex and the hypothalamus induce some effect it is possible that the bulk of the cardiovascular responses is mediated through centers no higher than the medulla or the mesencephalon Winkler<sup>30</sup> Waterman<sup>31</sup> van Bogaert<sup>32</sup> Fulton<sup>33</sup> and others showed that stimulation of the cortex causes a rise in blood pressure As is well known the hypothalamus influences blood pressure (Karplus and Areid<sup>34</sup> 113 114) Spiegel and Yashin<sup>35</sup> reported that elimination of the diencephalic centers in the cat produced only a transient fall of blood pressure soon compensated and that removal of the cortex alone had no effect on the level of blood pressure After transection caudal to the midbrain the blood pressure increased for four to ten minutes This increase of blood pressure was independent of muscular rigidity and was due to increased reactivity of lower centers to pressor stimuli and to the stimulating effect of the operation

A parasympathetic sphere of influence if we may employ such a designation in a general sense probably does exist in the hypothalamus but its ana-

For example, a child stricken with a bulbar form of encephalitis or with bulbar involvement due to the effect of diphtheria toxin, or an adult with damage in the rhombencephalon from hemorrhage or inflammation is likely to survive if the central regulatory devices are still able to function adequately.

*Spinal Cord Centers* Important subsidiary vasomotor centers or, at least, anatomic areas for the mediation of vasomotor reflexes were identified in the spinal cord by Goltz et al.,<sup>70</sup> Langley,<sup>17</sup> Tigerstedt,<sup>19</sup> and Bowen, Coombs and Pike.<sup>6</sup> These will not be dealt with in this text.

## B. HYPOTHALAMIC CONTROL

This control is mediated through adrenergic and cholinergic fiber tracts, by hypothalamic hormonal regulations, by metabolic activities. A hypothalamic supervision over the sino aortic reflexes has not been established. (For an exposition of the influence of the hypothalamus on circulation and respiration see Hess<sup>51</sup> 51a 511.)

*Sympathetic (Adrenergic) and Parasympathetic (Cholinergic) Manifestations* Spatial elements in the hypothalamus responsible for cardiovascular effects are not easy to define accurately. A functional differentiation of these elements must exist, since totally different reactions stem from the posterior hypothalamus as compared for instance, with those from the anterior hypothalamus or the area just rostral to the latter. Beattie<sup>15</sup> has maintained that each district of the hypothalamus—the forward and the caudal—engenders a generalized or mass action, and he has gone so far as to assign to the posterior hypothalamus a sympathetic and to the anterior hypothalamus a parasympathetic character. Neither region, however, is entirely independent; for example, the posterior may be influenced by the rostral (forward) area and inhibitory and augmentory impulses from the cortex and the thalamus probably act on both hypothalamic districts.

(1) *Evidence of adrenergic and cholinergic zones in the hypothalamus* Undoubtedly adrenergic and cholinergic manifestations are called forth by the hypothalamus under experimental conditions and there is sound reason for believing that the normal hypothalamus participates in the discharge of this dual set of responses. Attempts at identifying a specific anatomic locality as the site of origin for each set of reactions encounter difficulties. The pioneer investigations of Karplus and Kreidl<sup>111</sup> 112 seemed to suggest a sympathetic zone or sphere of influence. Later, a region of this kind was delineated in the caudal hypothalamus by Bard<sup>7-9</sup> by Beattie and his co-workers<sup>16</sup> 17 by Ranson and Wightman,<sup>108</sup> and by Crouch and Elliott.<sup>28</sup>

From the anterior region of the hypothalamus the following cholinergic manifestations have been elicited: a fall in blood pressure with the heart seldom slowed (Ranson, Kabat and Magoun<sup>105</sup>), contraction of the bladder (Beattie and Kerr<sup>18</sup>), cholinergic effects on the gastrointestinal tract (Beattie

## ( HYPOTHALAMO-HORMONAL CONTROL

Enough has already been stated to indicate that the hypothalamus alone hormonal elements in the posterior and anterior pituitary lobes or the interaction of all these factors (a hypothalamo-hormonal interaction) help govern the regulation of water exchange and metabolic processes. How far does such a neurohormonal (hypothalamo-hormonal) interaction affect the circulation?

It is quite possible that the hypothalamus may be able to act on the circulation by sending impulses to the endocrine organs directly, without the intervention of endocrine elements in the anterior pituitary lobe for example to the thyroid the adrenals the posterior pituitary lobe the gonads. We shall not enter into an exposition of these possibilities but any consideration of a hypothalamo-endocrine regulation of the circulation we feel should not gloss over a neurohormonal influence as exemplified by the action of adrenalin, pituitrin may possibly have a similar relationship.

**Adrenalin** This product constricts nearly all the blood vessels of the body (An exception is the vasodilator effect on the coronaries.) In very great dilution adrenalin will lead to vasodilatation of vessels usually constricted by greater concentrations of the drug. During the sympathetic upheaval which follows the freeing of the posterior hypothalamic region from the influence of the cortex and other parts of the diencephalon adrenalin output seems to be suddenly and inordinately augmented and the blood pressure level is raised. This sharp hypertension is in striking contrast to the undisturbed level in the oblongata animal. Just how the hypothalamus functions to increase the adrenalin output and elevate blood pressure is not understood. Several theoretic possibilities suggest themselves.

First the hypothalamus directly stimulates the secretion of adrenalin from the medulla of the adrenal glands or excites the elaboration of the allied product sympathin at adrenergic nerve endings. (In the former instance the hypothalamus would send impulses through preganglionic efferent neurons and the impulses could go no further than the adrenal glands in the second instance the impulses would be mediated through preganglionic and postganglionic neurons.) A second possibility it might be argued entails a change in adrenalin secretion due to sino-aortic reflexes acting through their related medullary centers and perhaps also through some as yet undiscovered hypothalamic centers. Lastly although no proof can be marshalled to support this point of view the hypothalamus may activate an adrenotropic element in the anterior pituitary lobe in this way augmenting the discharge of adrenalin. However the presence of an adrenotropic hormone in this lobe has not been conclusively demonstrated (Reiss<sup>109</sup>).

*Experimental Evidence of a Hypothalamo-Adrenalin Relationship* Bard<sup>110</sup> showed that the posterior hypothalamus presides over a complicated mechanism which removed from the influences of other parts of the hypothalamus and

tomic delineation is still obscure. It may prove to be that cholinergic manifestations arise in the hypothalamus not in any particular area but rather as a diffuse and generalized response by the hypothalamus as a whole.

Hypertension accompanied by an increase in heart rate has been reported by van Bogaert<sup>183-185</sup>, and by Jaegher and van Bogaert<sup>101-105</sup> after cutting the vagus. This type of elevated blood pressure was abolished by severing the sympathetics or by administering ergotamine. Disagreeing with Ranson et al.<sup>36</sup> Jaegher and van Bogaert insisted that the hypothalamus contains a depressor, not a pressor area, and that sectioning the vagus or blocking it with atropine merely removes the activity of the depressor zone, thus inducing a pressor effect passively. According to them, this depressor area lies in the caudal portion of the lateral hypothalamic area, and they would not subscribe to any hypothesis that so called "centers" for cardiovascular regulations exist as distinct zones or areas in the hypothalamus.

The Ranson school is in sharp disagreement with this point of view. Ritch and Brenner<sup>170</sup> reported that stimulation of the posterior hypothalamus of decorticated cats give similar results to those described by Ranson and his co-workers, no parasympathetic zone (depressor area) was made out.

The cholinergic discharge displays, as a rule, 'fragmentary' reactions (Canon<sup>21</sup>). This may take the form of accentuating a single function e.g., a fall in systemic blood pressure, or several functions may be involved.

*'Overlapping' of Adrenergic and Cholinergic Effects* An intriguing point in connection with a dual or divisional physiologic reaction of the hypothalamus revolves about the query: Are generalized cholinergic manifestations always depressor in nature, and are adrenergic reactions always pressor? This might seem a far fetched, even futile question, were it not for pressor manifestations occasionally taking the form of a cholinergic response, and depressor manifestations taking the form of an adrenergic response. Cutting the vagi in some animals (von Brucke<sup>3</sup>) has been known to cause a fall in blood pressure along with a slowing of the heart. Pike<sup>161</sup> has made similar observations. McDowall<sup>145</sup> found a vagopressor reflex came into operation when there was a marked drop in the venous pressure. In these examples, a depressor manifestation seems to be associated with adrenergic activity. Another example of a vagal (depressor) reaction seemingly adrenergic in nature is the slowing of the heart in man at the height of adrenergic reaction (Hume<sup>99</sup>). These paradoxical and unexpected results are perhaps due to nerve fibers of one chemical system being interlaced with neurons of the opposite division or the results may be explained as examples of the mechanism of reciprocal innervation (see footnote p. 95). On the other hand, it is possible, though no proof exists, that a common territory, perhaps the hypothalamus, is in a position to cause pressor responses by cholinergic activity as well as depressor reactions as an accompaniment of adrenergic activity.

activities are demonstrated without much difficulty. Pituitrin will slow the heart in man (Kountz<sup>1,2</sup>) it raises the mean blood pressure (Koll and Ceiling<sup>11</sup>) it constricts the coronary vessels (Anrep and Stacey and Goldenberg and Rothberger<sup>12</sup>). These last found the effect very marked in the rabbit. Holtz<sup>17</sup> obtained an increased coronary flow in the cat from pituitrin and it produces splanchnic constriction accompanied by a reduction of volume of the liver. The diminution of the size of the liver is associated with a dilatation in the hepatic veins in the dog (Mautner and Pick<sup>13</sup> Lampe and Mehes<sup>15, 16</sup> and Holtz).

Whereas the secretion of the antidiuretic principle of the posterior pituitary lobe depends upon the undisturbed continuity of a bundle of axons running between the hypothalamus and the posterior pituitary lobe no analogous tract of axons has been identified with respect to the secretion of the pituitary pressor substance. Yet it is tempting to speculate about a pituitary pressor ingredient which may function under hypothalamic supervision to regulate the large capillary bed and other cardiovascular structures. This would be analogous to the effect achieved by adrenalin on the arterioles and large vessels through the intervention of the hypothalamus. Experimental data appear to substantiate this hypothesis to some degree. Thus Schurmejer<sup>14</sup> witnessed melanophore expansion in frogs with hypothalamic puncture and he attributed this to a release of pituitrin. Karplus and Peczenik<sup>118, 119</sup> stimulated the hypothalamus and obtained the release of a substance alleged to be pituitrin in the cerebrospinal fluid capable of producing contraction of uterine stripes and expansion of melanophores of frog skin.

These observations however do not add up to convincing corroboration of a hypothalamo-hormonal control of the pressor ingredient of pituitrin.

*Acetylcholine.* A brief comment on acetylcholine and on histamine may not be out of place at this juncture. Acetylcholine in some respects the chemical counterpart of the transmitter product adrenalin and very likely histamine as well are associated with autonomic functions. This association however cannot be clearly defined with regard to the function of the hypothalamus. The controversy whether this portion of the brain is endowed with a circumscribed parasympathetic zone does not weaken the experimental evidence that some cholinergic manifestations arise in the anterior hypothalamus. These responses and whatever ability the hypothalamus as a whole may possess to produce cholinergic reactions are probably bound up with the liberation of acetylcholine at the nerve endings and effector organs and with the transportation of this chemical by the circulating blood stream.

Ben-Let<sup>120</sup> demonstrated an acetylcholine discharge in the frightened monkey. Fight and other explosive emotional states, sham rage for instance have been linked to hypothalamic hyperactivity. Thus the hypothalamus may after all turn out to be a central instigator of diffuse acetylcholine effects.

from the cortex, precipitates a generalized and violent upheaval, a sympathico-adrenal reaction. In his attempts at isolating the posterior hypothalamus from the rest of the diencephalon and from the cortex, Bard<sup>7</sup> inadvertently left a ventral and posterior segment of the thalamus in situ but attached no great functional significance to this small residual fragment.<sup>8</sup> A constant accompaniment of this upheaval or outburst was the occurrence of manifestations suggestive of a sudden increase of adrenalin discharge, 'sham rage'.

Upon stimulating the infundibular portion of the third ventricle Houssay and Molinelli<sup>9</sup> obtained a rise in adrenalin secretion. Electrical stimulation of the fiber pathway passing from hypothalamic nuclei through the lateral hypothalamic area also provoked a marked elevation in blood pressure as well as an increase in heart rate (Kabat,<sup>10</sup> Ranson, Kabat and Magoun<sup>11</sup> van Bogaert<sup>12</sup>) and although it could not be gainsaid that the adrenal glands were an important factor, the responses were elicited even in the absence of these glands (Fig. 22). Confirming the observations of the South American workers Magoun, Ranson and Hetherington<sup>13</sup> obtained evidence of an augmented discharge of adrenalin and a release of sympathin\* into the circulation when the hypothalamus was stimulated. The site of stimulation was the lateral hypothalamic area which consists of fibers of the medial forebrain bundle and except in the caudal part contains comparatively few cells.

On the basis of all this it seems safe to accept the hypothalamus as a station capable of exercising a control over the adrenal medullary substance. The stimulated secretion of adrenalin, as a rule, is registered by a rise in blood pressure and by an increase in oxygen consumption and an elevation of blood sugar (Beattie<sup>14</sup>). Sudden hypertension, an abnormal increase in adrenalin, and hypothalamic activity are therefore probably related.

It has been claimed the hypothalamus is also capable of sending impulses directly to blood vessels constricting or dilating them. Pentfield and Stravaky<sup>15</sup> believed they saw constriction of pial vessels in the meninges of cats when the posterior hypothalamus was stimulated. The vessels appeared to be dilated on stimulation of the ventral area of the tuber cinereum.

*Evidence of a Hypothalamo-Pituitary Relationship.* An analogy may be made between a neurohormonal effect on the action of adrenalin and that on the action of pituitrin in connection with water regulation. The antidiuretic principle of the posterior lobe is certainly under hypothalamic supervision. But what evidence is there that the pressor principle of the posterior lobe with its potent constrictor effect on the vast capillary beds of the body is controlled by the hypothalamus?

The question is more readily asked than answered. A pressor substance from the posterior pituitary lobe is easily identified and the sites of its cardiovascular

\* See Cannon and Lissak<sup>16</sup> for the interesting data on the extraction of adrenalin from neurons of the adrenergic system.

## D METABOLIC ACTIVITIES AND THE HYPOTHALAMUS

The effects of metabolic activity, reflected in the circulation are quite definite. Since the functions of the hypothalamus are not divorced from this activity we must recognize that a certain command over the circulation is achieved by the combined activities of the hypothalamus and metabolism. Extensive consideration of the interrelationships between metabolism, circulation and respiration is not within the scope of this volume.

## F THE HYPOTHALAMUS AND BLOOD PRESSURE

The hypothalamus as well as other subcortical areas and the cortex cooperate with the peripheral autonomic system in bestowing upon the blood

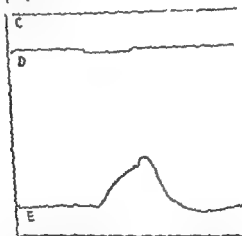


FIG. 20—Abrupt elevation in blood pressure upon stimulation of lateral hypothalamic area. *E* is the blood pressure tracing (Ranson, Katat and Maconn Arch Neurol & Psychiat 1933 31: 468).

vessel of the body a constant tonicity expressed as a stabilized range of systemic blood pressure. Accordingly we must look to the hypothalamus as a participant and perhaps in some cases even as an instigator of derangements in blood pressure. The hypothalamic region however is not to be considered as eclipsing in importance the cardiovascular regulations of the medulla. As a sympathetic (adrenergic) station the hypothalamus exercises functions which seem to overshadow its parasympathetic (cholinergic) activities. Many cardiovascular activities are influenced by the hypothalamus but of these chiefly three—blood pressure, cardiac rate and cardiac rhythm—will be dealt with below. Other activities such as the filling and emptying of blood depots, and perhaps the osmotic pressure may be under autonomic control but no definite role can be assigned to the hypothalamus.



at least in the monkey. Interesting in this connection are Bender's findings that acetylcholine is not so rapidly neutralized or destroyed in the tissues as has been generally believed.

Acetylcholine brings about widely distributed cardiovascular effects. The level and range of these effects are in proportion to the size of the dose and depend also upon the type of animal employed. In general, extensive dilatation of the blood vessels is the rule, except in the lungs, where it is absent and in the kidneys where it is slight (Hunt<sup>100, 101</sup>). Von Euler<sup>98</sup> produced a rise in pulmonary pressure in perfusion experiments with acetylcholine in dogs, and McDowall<sup>147</sup> obtained a similar result in the intact cat. The rise in pulmonary pressure has been ascribed to constriction of the pulmonary veins. The spleen, too, is supposed to exhibit a constrictor effect from acetylcholine (Farber<sup>97</sup>), and as we have already stated the introduction of this substance into the cerebral ventricles is attended by remarkable generalized cholinergic reactions.

**Histamine.** This chemical is considered an agent capable of modifying the peripheral circulation. It has the property of causing a remarkable fall in general blood pressure. When injected into an anesthetized animal a very extensive generalized dilatation takes place. Exceptions to this are the pulmonary vessels and, according to Mautner and Pick,<sup>144-145</sup> the hepatic veins. The latter vessels are said to become constricted in carnivora, but not in herbivora. As the liver veins undergo constriction according to these investigators it may be assumed the splanchnic vessels concomitantly dilate. An increased permeability of the capillaries and of the smaller arterioles is supposed to account for the generalized dilatation (Dale and Richards,<sup>4</sup> Bauer and Richards,<sup>11</sup> Burn and Dale<sup>10</sup>). The effects were observed in the dog, not in the cat.

Of special interest and perhaps pointing to a link between the hypothalamus and the action of histamine are the uncontroverted data connecting the action of this drug with the autonomic nervous system. Hogben, Schlapp and MacDonald<sup>46</sup> showed that histamine dilates the denervated pupil and Burn and Dale<sup>10</sup>, Lewin and Schif<sup>127</sup>, Feldberg,<sup>48</sup> and Mackay<sup>128</sup> demonstrated that histamine is responsible for an initial fall of blood pressure followed by a distinct rise. The latter effect has been interpreted as being due to a stimulated increase in adrenalin secretion. This sequence of events suggests that a continuing fall in blood pressure, after histamine is offset by an exaggerated compensatory output of adrenalin. The adrenal glands, therefore, may act to protect the animal against an excessive or protracted hypotension. However, it has been alleged that the adrenal cortex is more important than the medulla in affording this protection. On the other hand, there are physiologists who believe all these effects are specific for histamine. Practically all the reactions of the cardiovascular system attributed to histamine may be produced with potassium (Pike<sup>146, 163</sup>).

and 22) The greatest concentration of points yielding vasopressor reactions on hypothalamic stimulation was located in the lateral hypothalamic area in a plane directly in front of the mammillary bodies (Kabat et al<sup>105</sup>)

In addition to vasoconstriction Karplus and Kreidl observed cholinergic reactions i.e. bladder contraction and lacrimation. A dissenting point of view was offered by Hoff and Urban<sup>106</sup> who stated persistent hypertension came from destruction, not excitation of the mammillary bodies.

*Hypotension* Stimulation of the anterior hypothalamus the preoptic area and the septal region leads to a depression of blood pressure although the heart rate is not always slowed (Fig. 23) (Ranson Kabat and Magoun<sup>104</sup> and

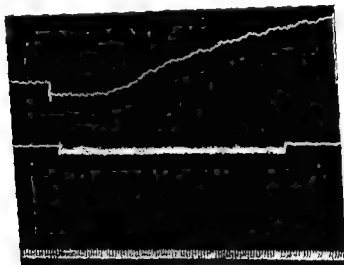


FIG. 22 ~ Rise in blood pressure of an adrenalectomized cat upon stimulation of the hypothalamus (Karplus and Kreidl, *Pflüger Arch* 1927 215 668)

Kabat Magoun and Ranson<sup>104</sup>) According to these workers the hypothalamic region for vasodilatation is influenced by the frontal lobe through corticoseptal fibers described by Wallerberg<sup>107 108</sup> Despite this localization of a depressor effect close to the anterior portion of the hypothalamus the Ranson investigators and Crouch and Elliott<sup>109</sup> were not able to verify the existence of parasympathetic centers in the hypothalamus.

In their recent survey of experimental investigations of stimulation of the hypothalamus Ranson Kabat and Magoun summarized the results of painstaking and systematic exploration of the hypothalamus carried out by Ranson and his associates. Electrodes were used for stimulation so constructed as to reduce to a minimum the spread of the effect of the current. More than 7 000 points in 50 cats were explored and the reactive points carefully plotted.

*Hypertension* Clinical observers conceived of some form of hypothalamic supervision of blood pressure Schrottenbach<sup>179</sup> <sup>180</sup> was probably the first, Leschke,<sup>1</sup> <sup>8</sup> and Castex<sup>33</sup> stressed the same point but substantial proof for such a concept came only with actual exploration of the hypothalamus The discovery that stimulation of the hypothalamus is accompanied by an increased adrenalin secretion fitted in well with the clinical assumption of a hypothalamic regulation of blood pressure Bechterew<sup>9</sup> knew of the relation of higher centers to blood pressure Aschner<sup>4</sup> had noted an elevated blood pressure when the

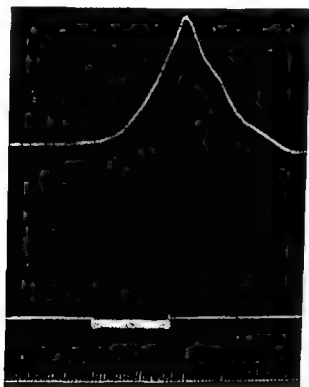


FIG 21 — Rise in blood pressure of a hypophysectomized cat upon stimulation of the hypothalamus (Karplus and Kreidl *Pflügers Arch* 1927 215 668)

hypothalamus was stimulated Others who laid the groundwork for the belief that sudden hypertension is an expression of excitation of the hypothalamus were Dresel<sup>49</sup> who claimed the mean blood pressure was controlled by hypothalamic centers, Houssay and Molinelli,<sup>98</sup> Karplus and Kreidl,<sup>116</sup> Wang and Richter,<sup>99</sup> Beattie, Brow and Long,<sup>18</sup> <sup>17</sup> Kabat Magoun and Ranson<sup>103</sup> Magoun, Ranson and Hetherington<sup>128</sup> and others associated with the Ranson group This type of hypertension was always transient and was held to originate in the caudal portion of the hypothalamus and, according to Karplus and Kreidl was independent of the function of the pituitary and adrenal glands (Figs 21

and 77) The greatest concentration of points yielding vasopressor reactions on hypothalamic stimulation was located in the lateral hypothalamic area in a plane directly in front of the mammillary bodies (Kabat et al.<sup>109</sup>)

In addition to vasoconstriction Karplus and Kreidl observed cholinergic reaction i.e. bladder contraction and lacrimation. A dissenting point of view was offered by Hoff and Urban,<sup>82</sup> who stated persistent hypertension came from destruction not excitation of the mammillary bodies.

*Hypotension* Stimulation of the anterior hypothalamus the preoptic area and the septal region leads to a depression of blood pressure although the heart rate is not always slowed (Fig. 23) (Ranson Kabat and Magoun<sup>108</sup> and

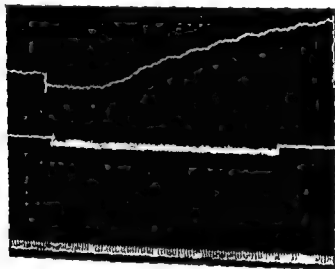


FIG. 22—Rise in blood pressure of an adrenalectomized cat upon stimulation of the hypothalamus. (Karplus and Kreidl *Pflüger's Arch.* 1921, 215-668.)

Kabat, Magoun and Ranson<sup>108</sup>) According to these workers the hypothalamic region for vasodilatation is influenced by the frontal lobe through cortico-optic fibers described by Wallenberg.<sup>110-111</sup> Despite this localization of a depressor effect close to the anterior portion of the hypothalamus the Ranson investigators and Crouch and Elliott<sup>82</sup> were not able to verify the existence of parasympathetic centers in the hypothalamus.

In their recent survey of experimental investigations of stimulation of the hypothalamus Ranson, Kabat and Magoun summarized the results of painstaking and systematic exploration of the hypothalamus carried out by Ranson and his associates. Electrodes were used for stimulation so constructed as to reduce to a minimum the spread of the effect of the current. More than 7,000 points in 56 cats were explored and the reactive points carefully plotted.

Many pressor points yielding a marked rise in blood pressure were elicited from the most rostral portion of the supraoptic portion of the hypothalamus, and depressor points in blood pressure were obtained from the preoptic area situated a little more dorsally in the same vicinity. Among the latter there were interspersed a number of pressor spots capable of setting off a moderate rise in blood pressure.

More caudally, about 2.1 mm. back of the zone just described and in a plane passing immediately behind the caudal border of the optic chiasm, a large number of pressor points were identified. These points were widespread through the hypothalamus and especially in the lateral hypothalamic area, in the subfornical element of the medial forebrain bundle, in an area corresponding to

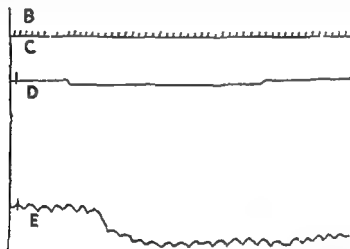


FIG. 21—Fall in blood pressure following stimulation of the anterior region of the hypothalamus. E is the blood pressure record (Ranson, Kabat and Magoun, *Arch. Neurol. & Psychiat.* 1935, 33, 411.)

the supraoptic commissures and along a line adjacent to the wall of the ventricle. The area of the paraventricular nucleus and the dorsomedial hypothalamic area contained no reactive points, except for a few at the border of the latter area. The aggregation of reactive pressor points suddenly grew much larger at the level of the posterior border of the optic chiasm; at the level of the supraoptic decussations the reactive zone touched the mid line.

Continuing still more caudally for about 4.3 mm. in the fresh brain—that is covering a distance between the level of the supraoptic decussation and the level of the supramammillary decussation, many points were found in the lateral part of the hypothalamus which upon stimulation induced a marked and abrupt hypertension. The medially placed nuclei—the ventromedial and the ventrolateral—contained only very few reactive points. The same pravity obtained for the rostral part of the posterior hypothalamic nucleus but at the

level of the tuber cinereum not quite 3 mm behind the level of the supraoptic commissure reactive points were considerably more numerous

Just caudal to this last level the zone of reactive points gradually extended dorsally and medially and invaded the Forel fields and the posterior hypothalamic nucleus as it lies caudal and medial to the *Vicq d'Azyr* tract. At the level of the supramammillary decussation many pressor points lay near the mid line. The medial mammillary nucleus contained no pressor points at this level (Ranson et al.<sup>164</sup>)

## F. HYPOTHALAMIC INFLUENCE ON CARDIAC RATE

The rate of the heart is not maintained solely by the cardio-accelerator and cardio-inhibitory fibers. The sino-aortic reflexes, the level of venous pressure operating through the Bainbridge reflex, and the metabolic states of the body are factors. The abnormalities in cardiac rate from disturbances set up in the vagal branches to the heart or in the sympathetic accelerator branches are too well known to require extended comment. The slow heart of an animal deficient in thyroid hormone or the rapid heart of a hyperthyroid individual is due to a series of metabolic events some of which may be under hypothalamic regulation. But in either case retardation or acceleration of the heart rate is accomplished by the transmission of adrenergic or cholinergic impulses to the cardiac pacemaker mechanism and as a rule through sympathetic and vagal cardiac nerves. Derangements of heart rate are readily produced by stimulating, blocking or severing the vagi; these nerves are largely, if not entirely, under medullary control. Similar procedures on the cardio-accelerator fibers also lead to abnormalities in cardiac rate. These fibers emerge from the upper thoracic segments of the cord; higher neurons, those travelling intraspinally from the brain stem to the intraspinal centers, are probably represented by the tract described by Beattie, Brown and Long.

As far as we can tell the variations in heart rate mediated by adrenergic and cholinergic impulses need involve no centers higher than the medulla. But we should not lose sight of the fact that variations in rate, i.e. an increase in rate may occur with sham rage and upon stimulation of the posterior hypothalamus.<sup>165</sup>

Hypothalamic impulses therefore may be transmitted to the cardiac pacemaker through the blood stream by means of autonomic chemicals—adrenalin (sympathin) and acetylcholine—or the impulses may be conveyed by hypothalamic fiber connections as yet undiscovered to established adrenergic or cholinergic neurons, i.e. the cardio-accelerator and cardio-inhibitory fibers and so to the pacemaker. Beattie's observation that stimulation of the tuber nuclei induces slowing of the heart rate and prolongation of the AV conduction time may be interpreted as probable evidence of some type of connection between the hypothalamus and the cardiac pacemaker. An effect on heart rate

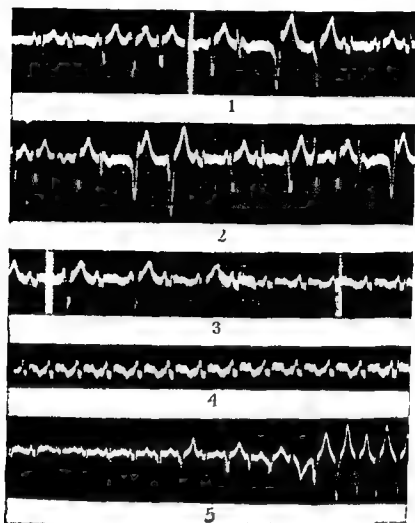


FIG 24 —Electrocardiographic tracings (Lead II) of a cat

- 1 Cat under chloroform anesthesia showing ventricular extrasystoles auricular rate 240 per minute
  - 2 After section of the anterior part of the hypothalamus Arrhythmia remains unchanged
  - 3 After section of the hypothalamus in the plane joining the anterior edge of the colliculi to the posterior edge of the pituitary fossa Extrasystoles are fading out and normal rhythm is appearing auricular rate 180 per minute
  - 4 One hour after the effective section showing persistence of regular rhythm
  - 5 Extrasystoles produced by stimulation of the hypothalamus
- (Beattie Brow and Long Proc Roy Soc Series B 1930 106 253)

following extensive experimental lesions in the hypothalamus was noted by Watts and Fulton<sup>64</sup>, and slowing of the heart rate upon stimulation of the anterior hypothalamus was reported by Ranson and his co workers<sup>185</sup>

Fluctuations in cardiac rate are frequently due to blood pressure changes induced by peripheral or central causes Since the hypothalamus is supposed

to affect peripheral constriction (Leschke<sup>13</sup> Penfield and Stavraky<sup>140</sup>) and to modify the output of adrenalin it may well be that a hypothalamic effect on heart rate is a consequence of hypothalamic influence on blood pressure. Changes in heart rate (sinus bradycardia or tachycardia) are associated with respiratory center disturbances (Heymans et al<sup>141-142</sup>). The heart rate also varies with the state of venous pressure.

### G. HYPOTHALAMIC INFLUENCE ON CARDIAC RHYTHM

The rhythm of the heart may be altered by a number of mechanisms. Of these we shall touch only upon those in which the hypothalamus is possibly implicated.

Until recently it was not suspected that the hypothalamus might have a part in preserving the normal rhythm of the heart or in initiating deviations of this rhythm. With the discovery by Beattie et al<sup>143-144</sup> of sympathetic efferent fibers which connect the cardiac plexuses to the posterior hypothalamus, a way was opened by which the hypothalamic supervision of rhythm of the heart could be studied. In addition to these fibers we shall also discuss, although somewhat briefly, the cardio-accelerator and cardio-inhibitory fibers, the carotid and aortic reflexes, the respiratory center, and metabolic factors, any or all of which may come under some type of hypothalamic supervision as far as the cardiac rhythm is concerned.

*By means of adrenergic neurons from the posterior hypothalamus* Levy<sup>145-146</sup> demonstrated that chloroform anesthesia produced extrasystolic activity of the heart, and Beattie et al<sup>143</sup> proved that this type of cardiac arrhythmia was readily abolished by placing destructive lesions in the posterior hypothalamus or by interrupting the sympathetic (adrenergic) tracts which emerge from this region. Damage or extirpation of the anterior hypothalamic area did not prevent or abolish extrasystolic arrhythmia. By demonstrating that electrical stimulation of the caudal portion of the hypothalamus brought on extrasystoles accompanied by a rise in blood pressure, the theory of an increased liberation of adrenalin as the cause of extrasystoles received corroboration at their hands. Inasmuch as similar results could be evoked in adrenalectomized animals, the deduction was made that stimulation of the hypothalamus directly enhances the liberation of an adrenergic substance.

*By means of the carotid and aortic reflexes* These reflexes are associated with cardiac irregularities. Intact, the sino-aortic neurons exert a tonic inhibitory action on the heart under resting conditions. Since a blocking or severance of these nerves is answered by a decided rise in heart rate, we may be permitted to assume that afferent impulses from the sino-aortic plexuses incite the cardio-inhibitory center (in the floor of the fourth ventricle) and so slow the heart reflexly.

Blocking or interrupting the afferent pathways of these reflexes sometimes



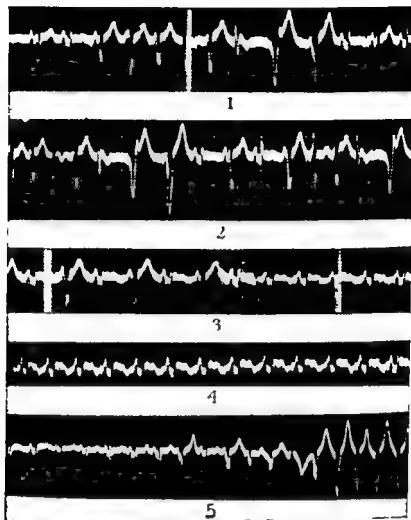


FIG. 24—Electrocardiographic tracings (Lead II) of a cat

1 Cat under chloroform anesthesia showing ventricular extrasystoles auricular rate 240 per minute

2 After section of the anterior part of the hypothalamus Arrhythmia remains unchanged

3 After section of the hypothalamus in the plane joining the anterior edge of the colliculi to the posterior edge of the pituitary fossa Extrasystoles are fading out and normal rhythm appearing auricular rate 180 per minute

4 One hour after the effective section showing persistence of regular rhythm

5 Extrasystoles produced by stimulation of the hypothalamus

(Beattie Brow and Long Proc Roy Soc Series B 1930 106 253)

following extensive experimental lesions in the hypothalamus was noted by Watts and Fulton<sup>61</sup>, and slowing of the heart rate upon stimulation of the anterior hypothalamus was reported by Ranson and his co workers<sup>165</sup>

Fluctuations in cardiac rate are frequently due to blood pressure changes induced by peripheral or central causes Since the hypothalamus is supposed

- \* BARD P On emotional expression after decortication with some remarks on certain theoretical views *Psychol Rev* 1934 41 309
- \* BAUER W DALE H H POLISSON L T AND RICHARDS D W The control of circulation through the liver *J Physiol* 1932 74 343
- \* BAUER W AND RICHARDS D W A vaso-dilator action of acetates *J Physiol* 1928 64 31
- \* BAYLISS W M On the origin from the spinal cord of the vasodilator fibers of the hind limb and on the nature of these fibers *J Physiol* 1900-01 26 173
- \* BAYLISS W M Further researches on autonomic nerve impulses *J Physiol* 1907 25 276
- \* BAYLISS W M The excitation of vaso-dilator nerve fibers in depressor reflexes *J Physiol* 1908 37 264
- \* BEATTIE J The relation of the tuber cinereum to gastric and cardiac function (A preliminary note) *Canad M A J* 1932 26 218
- \* BEATTIE J BROW G R AND LONG C N H For title see Chapter I reference (1) *Res Pbl Ass nerv ment Dis* 1930 9 249
- \* BEATTIE J BROW G R AND LONG C N H For title see Chapter I reference (8) *Res Pbl Ass nerv ment Dis* 1930 9 295
- \* BEATTIE J AND KERR A S The effects of diencephalic stimulation on urinary bladder tonus *Brain* 1936 59 307
- \* BEATTIE J AND SHYMAN D The effects of hypothalamic stimulation on gastric motility *J Physiol* 1934 81 218
- \* VON BECHTEREW W Die Funktionen der Nervencentra Vol III Jena Fischer 1911
- \* VON BECHTREW W AND VON MISLAWSKY N Ueber den Einfluss der Grosshirnrinde auf den Blutdruck und die Herztätigkeit *Neurol Centralbl* 1886 5 193
- \* BENDER M B Sensitized pupillary dilator and facial muscles as indicators of sympathetic and parasympathetic substances in blood *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1938 39 62
- \* BENDER M B Fight and drug contractions in denervated facial and ocular muscles of monkeys *Am J Physiol* 1938 121 609
- \* BOCHERONTAINE L T Etude expérimentale de l'influence exercée par la faradisation de l'écorce grise du cerveau sur quelques fonctions de la vie organique *Arch de physiol norm et path* 1876 3 140
- \* POCCKAERT J J AND JORDON F Effets de l'adrénaline et de l'excitation du sympathique cervical sur la circulation intracrânienne isolée *Compt rend Soc de Biol* 1935 120 84
- \* BRYAN R J COOMBS H C AND PINE F H The effect on blood pressure of removal of portions of the spinal cord in the thoracic region *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1922 19 181
- \* BROWN H W Afferent impulses in the carotid sinus and aortic nerves *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1931 28 1014
- \* VON BRUCKE F T Ueber die reziproke reflektorische Erregung der Herznerven bei Reizung des depressor *Ztschr f Biol* 1917 67 601
- \* BRYAN R J VASOMOTOR CHANGES ASSOCIATED WITH PARALYSIS OF CEREBRAL ORIGIN *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 1935 33 30
- \* BRYAN J H AND DALE H H The vaso-dilator action of histamine and its physiological significance *J Physiol* 1926 61 185
- \* CANNON W B The will of the body New York Norton 1932
- \* CANNON W B AND LISSAK R Evidence for adrenaline in adrenergic neurones *Am J Physiol* 1939 15 76
- \* CATTAN M R La hypertension artérielle Buenos Aires An fretta 1929
- \* DE CATELLI F Sur la structure et l'innervation du sinus carotidien de l'homme et des mammifères Nouveaux faits sur l'innervation de la fonction du glomus carotidum *Etudes*

brings on an extrasystolic irregularity, the extrasystoles originating in either or both ventricles, a terminal ventricular fibrillation sometimes occurs. Once established, the extrasystolic arrhythmia is quickly abolished by cutting the adrenergic fibers which descend from the posterior hypothalamus, or by sectioning or paralyzing with ergotamine the adrenergic cardiac innervations which leave the spinal cord. Abolishing extrasystoles by removing the influence of these adrenergic cardiac fibers implies that a hyperactivity of this innervation may be related to the cardiac irregularity. It has therefore been suggested that the afferent inhibitory (vagal) impulses, which are propagated by the sino-aortic nerves, contribute to maintaining a normal cardiac rhythm by opposing or in some other way influencing the adrenergic cardiac nerve fibers.

The sino-aortic reflexes, however, are mediated through the medulla, so that the arrhythmias of the heart associated with these reflexes include the participation of medullary centers connected with the sino-aortic nerves. No evidence has been adduced thus far of these reflexes passing through the hypothalamus, the arrhythmias of sino-aortic origin, therefore, cannot be ascribed to any hypothalamic intervention. However, since the posterior hypothalamus has a well defined efferent sympathetic fiber tract which participates in the provocation and prevention of extrasystoles, the question may be left open whether this tract or the hypothalamus itself may not be related to the neurons over which the sino-aortic reflexes are transmitted.

*Through metabolic activities* Cardiac arrhythmias accompanying abnormal metabolic states, auricular fibrillation in hyperthyroidism is an example of this. The hypothalamus in some indirect way may be involved by virtue of the role it plays in maintaining metabolic states but this again has yet no basis in fact.

*Through changes in respiration* Disturbances of cardiac rhythm associated with changes in the respiratory center are a matter of common observation. The hypothalamus, as we have observed, is related to metabolic processes and for this reason perhaps influences the respiratory center.

#### BIBLIOGRAPHY

- <sup>1</sup> ADRIAN, E. D. The impulse produced by sensory nerve endings. *J. Physiol.* 1926 61: 49.
- <sup>2</sup> ANREP, G. V. AND STARLING, E. H. Comparative effect of various drugs upon the coronary circulation. *J. Physiol.* 1921 64: 191.
- <sup>3</sup> ANREP, G. V., AND STARLING, E. H. Central and reflex regulation of the circulation. *Proc. Roy. Soc. Series B* 1925 97: 463.
- <sup>4</sup> ASCHNER, B. Ueber die Funktion der Hypophyse. *Pflügers Arch.* 1912 146: 1.
- <sup>5</sup> BAILEY, P. AND SWIFT, W. H. Effects on respiration, blood pressure and gastric motility of stimulation of orbital surface of frontal lobe. *J. Neurophysiol.* 1940 3: 216.
- <sup>6</sup> BAINBRIDGE, F. A. The influence of venous filling upon the rate of the heart. *J. Physiol.* 1915 50: 65.
- <sup>7</sup> BARD, P. A. A diencephalic mechanism for the expression of rage with special reference to the sympathetic nervous system. *Am. J. Physiol.* 1929 14: 490.
- <sup>8</sup> BARD, P. The central representations of the sympathetic system as indicated by certain physiologic observations. *Arch. Neurol. & Psychiat.* 1929 22: 730.

the mechanism of the unconscious state and convulsions study of 37 additional cases  
*Medicine* 1935 14 311

- \*FLEISCH A Venomotorenzentrum und Venenreflexe I *Pflügers Arch* 1930 225 26
- \*FLEISCH A Venomotorenzentrum und Venenreflexe II Blutdruckregler und Venenreflexe *Pflügers Arch* 1931 226 393
- \*FRANÇOIS FRANCH C A Leçons sur les fonctions motrices du cerveau et sur l'épilepsie cérébrale Paris Doin 1931
- \*FRANÇOIS FRANCH C A Influences des excitations simples et épileptogènes du cerveau sur l'appareil circulatoire *Compt rend Acad d sc* 1898 107 351
- \*FULTON J F Some functions of the cerebral cortex I Autonomic representation in the cerebral cortex *J Michigan Med Soc* 1934 33 115
- \*FULTON J F The interrelation of cerebrum and cerebellum in the regulation of somatic and autonomic functions *Medicine* 1936 15 241
- \*GOLDENBERG M AND ROTHEBERGER C J Experimentelle Beiträge zur Theorie der Anina pectoris I Pitressinversuche *Ztschr f d ges exper Med* 1931 76 1
- \*GOLLWITZER MEIER J AND KRUEGER F Sauerstoffverbrauch und Kranzgefäß durchblutung des innervierten Herzens in ihrer Beziehung zur Arbeit und Arbeitsform des Herzens *Pflügers Arch* 1938 240 263
- \*GOLLWITZER MEIER J AND KRUEGER F Einfluss der Herznerven auf den Ca wech sel des Warmblüterherzens *Pflügers Arch* 1938 240 89
- \*GOLLWITZER MEIER J AND SCHULTZ H Das Verhalten der Hirnfurchtiefen bei Reizung der Sinusnerven *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 1932 163 68
- \*GOLTZ F AND FREISBERG A Leber gefässerweiternde Nerven *Pflügers Arch* 18 4 9 14
- \*GOLTZ F AND FREISBERG A Leber d e Functionen des Len kenmarks des Hundes *Pflü get's Arch* 18 4 8 460
- \*GOLTZ F FREISBERG A AND GERGENS F Leber gefas erweiternde Nerven *Pflü er's Arch* 18 5 11 52
- \*GRIFFIN H D AND HOFF F C Effects of faradic stimulation of the cerebral cortex on limb and renal pulses in the cat and monkey *Am J Physiol* 1937 118 641
- \*GRUTNER P AND HIRSHENMAN R Leber die Innervation der Muskel el see *Pflügers Arch* 18 8 16 1
- \*GIERA EY C M WEI MAN S A AND SCOTT F H Effect on the reflexes of the carotid sinus from the intracranial pressure *Arch Int Med* 1933 52 301
- \*HARTMAN A BLATZ W E AND HILBORN L G Studies in the re generation of denervated mammalian muscle I Volume change and temperature change *J Physiol* 1919 53 97
- \*HUTTENLOCH P AND BIEDL A Leber die Innervation der Hautgefäße *Wien klin Wchnschr* 1903 6 43
- \*HERING H H Leber die Automatie des Säu ethierherzens *Pflü er's Arch* 190 116 143
- \*HERING H F Der Sinus caroticus an der Ursprungsstelle der Carotis interna als Ausgang s et cines hemmen den Herzreflexes und eines depressorischen Gefäßreflexes *München med Wchnschr* 1924 71 91
- \*HERING H F Zur Analyse d s arteriellen Hochdrucks beim Menschen mit Hilfe des beim Karotidruck ersuch auslösbaren drucksenkenden Gefas reflexes *Münch n med Wchnschr* 1925 72 33
- \*HESS W J Das Zwischenhirn und die Regulation von Kreislauf und Atmung in Beiträge zur Physiologie des menschlichen Leibes Thome 1938
- \*HES W R Die funktionelle Organisation des vegetativen Nervensystems Basel Schö ne 1948
- \*HES W R Das Zwischenhirn Basel Schwabe 1949

- anatomiques et physiologiques Trav du lab de recherches biol de l Univ de Madrid 1928 25 331
- <sup>35</sup> DE CASTRO F Ueber die Struktur und Innervation des Glomus caroticum beim Menschen und bei den Säugetieren Ztschr f d ges Anat Abt 1 1929 89 250
- <sup>36</sup> CROUCH R AND ELLIOTT W H Jr The hypothalamus as a sympathetic center Am J Physiol 1936 115 245
- <sup>37</sup> CUSHING H The blood pressure reaction of acute cerebral compression illustrated by cases of intracranial hemorrhage Am J M Sc 1903 125 1017
- <sup>38</sup> CUSHING H Papers relating to the pituitary body hypothalamus and parasympathetic nervous system Springfield Ill Thomas 1932
- <sup>39</sup> CYON L AND LUDWIG C Die Reflexe eines der sensiblen Nerven des Herzens auf die motorischen der Blutgefäße Ber u d Verhandl d sachs Gesellsch d Wissensch Leipzig 1866 18 307
- <sup>40</sup> DALE H H On some physiological actions of ergot J Physiol 1906 34 163
- <sup>41</sup> DALE H H On the action of ergotoxine with special reference to the existence of sympathetic vasodilators J Physiol 1913 46 291
- <sup>42</sup> DALE H H AND RICHARDS A N The vasodilator action of histamine and of some other substances J Physiol 1918 52 110
- <sup>43</sup> VAN DAMME J See ref 197
- <sup>44</sup> DAVILOPOLOU D L angine de poitrine et l angine abdominale Paris Masson 1927
- <sup>45</sup> DAVILFWSKY B Experimentelle Beiträge zur Physiologie des Gehirns Pflügers Arch 1875 11 128
- <sup>46</sup> DE BURGH DALY I AND VERNEY E B Cardiovascular reflexes J Physiol 1926 61 268
- <sup>47</sup> DE BURGH DALY I AND VERNEY E B The localisation of receptors involved in the reflex regulation of the heart rate J Physiol 1927 67 330
- <sup>48</sup> DIKSHIT B B The production of cardiac irregularities by excitation of the hypothalamic centres J Physiol 1934 81 382
- <sup>49</sup> DRESEL K Experimentelle Untersuchungen zur Anatomie und Physiologie des peripheren und zentralen vegetativen Nervensystems Ztschr f d ges exper Med 1923 37 373
- <sup>50</sup> DRURY A N AND MACKENZIE D W The influence of vagal stimulation through the branches of the A V bundle in the dog J Physiol 1934 80 329
- <sup>51</sup> DÜSSE DE BARENNE J G AND KALLINKECHT I Ueber den Einfluss der Reizung der Grosshirnrinde auf den allgemeinen arteriellen Blutdruck Ztschr f Biol 1924 87 13
- <sup>52</sup> EPPINGER H AND WAGNER R Zur Klinik der obliterierenden Endarteritis der Lunge (primäre Sklerose der Arteria pulmonalis) Wien Arch f inn Med 1920 1 88
- <sup>53</sup> EULENBURG A AND LANDOIS L Die thermischen Wirkungen lokalisierter Reizung und Zerstörung der Grosshirnrinde Virchow's Arch 1876 68 245
- <sup>54</sup> EULENBURG A AND LANDOIS L Note sur l'action calorifique de certaines régions du cerveau (appareils vasomoteurs situés à la surface hémisphérique) Compt rend Acad d c 1876 82 564
- <sup>55</sup> VON EULF U S A vasoconstrictor action of acetylcholine on the rabbit's pulmonary circulation J Physiol 1932 74 271
- <sup>56</sup> FLYSTER J A E AND HOOKER D R Direct and reflex response of the cardio-inhibitory centre to increased blood pressure Am J Physiol 1908 21 373
- <sup>57</sup> FARBER S The action of acetylcholine on the volume of the spleen of the dog Arch internat de pharmacodyn et de therap 1936 53 367
- <sup>58</sup> FELDBERG W Das Verhalten des Blutdruckes nach Injektion von Histamin und Pepton in den Kreislauf der Katze Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol 1929 140 156
- <sup>59</sup> FERRIS E B, JR CAPPS R B AND WISS S Carotid sinus syncope and its bearing on

the mechanism of the unconscious state and convulsions study of 32 additional cases  
*Medicine* 1935 14 311

- \* FLEISCH A Venomotorenzentrum und Venenreflexe I *Pflügers Arch* 1930 225 76
- \* FLEISCH A Venomotorenzentrum und Venenreflexe II Blutdruckregler und Venenreflexe *Pflügers Arch* 1931 226 393
- \* FRANÇOIS-FRANCK C A Leçons sur les fonctions motrices du cerveau et sur l'épilepsie cérébrale Paris Doin 1881
- \* FRANÇOIS-FRANCK C A Influences des excitations myéles et épileptogènes du cerveau sur l'appareil circulatoire *Compt rend Acad d sc* 1888 107 351
- \* FULTON J F Some functions of the cerebral cortex I Autonomic representation in the cerebral cortex *J Michigan Med Soc* 1934 33 117
- \* FULTON J P The interrelation of cerebrum and cerebellum in the regulation of somatic and autonomic functions *Medicine* 1936 15 241
- \* GOLDENBERG M AND ROYENBERGER C J Experimentelle Beiträge zur Theorie der Anina pectoris I *Pfeiffer'sche Zeitschr f d ges exper Med* 1931 76 1
- \* GOLLWITZER MEIER K AND KREFFER E Sauerstoffverbrauch und Kräftigkeit durch Blutung des innervierten Herzens in ihrer Beziehung zur Arbeit und Arbeitsform des Herzens *Pflügers Arch* 1932 240 263
- \* GOLLWITZER MEIER K AND KREFFER E Einfluss der Herznerven auf den Gasaustausch des Warmblüterherzens *Pflügers Arch* 1932 240 89
- \* GOLLWITZER MEIER K AND SCHULTE H Das Verhalten der Hirnblutleitung bei Reizung der Sinusnerven *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 1937 163 68
- \* GOLTZ F AND FREISBERG A Leber gefässerweiternde Nerven *Pflügers Arch* 1914 174
- \* GOLTZ F AND FREISBERG A Leber die Funktionen des Lendenmarks des Hundes *Pflügers Arch* 1814 8 460
- \* GOLTZ F FREISBERG A AND GERGENS E Leber gefässerweiternde Nerven *Pflügers Arch* 1814 11 3
- \* GREEN H D AND HOFF T C Effects of faradic stimulation of the cerebral cortex on limb and renal volumes in the cat and monkey *Am J Physiol* 1937 118 641
- \* GRITZER P AND HEIDENHAIN R Leber die Innervation der Muskulatur *Pflügers Arch* 1818 16 1
- \* GUERIN C M WISMAN S A AND SCOTT J H Effect on the reflexes of the carotid sinus of raising the intracranial pressure *Arch Int Med* 1933 57 307
- \* HARTMAN F A BLATT W E AND KILBORN L G Studies in the regeneration of denervated mammalian muscle I Volume changes and temperature changes *J Physiol* 1919 51 92
- \* HARTMANN P AND BIEDL A Leber die Innervation der Hautgefäße *Wien klin Wchnschr* 1903 6 43
- \* HERRING H F Leber die Automatie des Säugetierherzens *Pflügers Arch* 1901 116 143
- \* HERRING H F Der Sinus caroticus an der Ursprungsstelle der Carotis interna als Ausgangsort eines hemmenden Herzreflexes und einer depressorischen Gefäßreflexes *München med Wchnschr* 1924 71 101
- \* HERRING H F Zu Analyse des arteriellen Hochdrucks beim Menschen mit Hilfe des beim Karotidversuch auslösbaren drucksenkenden Gefäßreflexes *München med Wchnschr* 1925 72 339
- \* HESS W R Die Zwischenhirn und die Regulation von Kreislauf und Atmung in Beiträge zur Physiologie des Hirnstammes Leipzig Thieme 1938
- \* HESS W R Die funktionelle Organisation des vegetativen Nervensystems Basel Schwabe 1948
- \* HESS W R Das Zwischenhirn Basel Schwabe 1949

- <sup>82</sup> HEYMANS C AND BOUCKAERT J J Le sinus carotidien zone réflexogène régulatrice du tonus des vaisseaux céphaliques *Compt rend Soc de biol* 1929 100 207
- <sup>83</sup> HEYMANS C AND BOUCKAERT J J Sinus caroticus reflexes upon venous pressure liver volume and heart volume *J Physiol* 1930 69 xxviii
- <sup>84</sup> HEYMANS C AND BOUCKAERT J J Sinus carotidien et régulation réflexe de la circulation artérielle encéphalo bulbaire *Compt rend Soc de biol* 1932 110 996
- <sup>85</sup> HEYMANS C AND BOUCKAERT J J Les chémorécepteurs du sinus carotidien *Ergebn d Physiol* 1939 41 28
- <sup>86</sup> HEYMANS C BOUCKAERT J J AND DAUTREBANDE L Sinus carotidien et réflexes respiratoires II Influences respiratoires réflexes de l'acidose de l'alcalose de l'anhydride carbonique de l'ion hydrogène et de l'anoxémie Sinus carotidiens et échanges respiratoires dans les poumons et au delà des poumons *Arch internat de pharmacodyn et de therap* 1930 30 400
- <sup>87</sup> HEYMANS C BOUCKAERT J J AND DAUTREBANDE L Sinus carotidiens et modifications réflexes de la vitesse et du volume du sang circulant *Compt rend Soc de biol* 1931 106 48
- <sup>88</sup> HEYMANS C BOUCKAERT J J AND DAUTREBANDE L Au sujet du mécanisme de la stimulation respiratoire par le sulfure de sodium *Compt rend Soc de biol* 1931 106 52
- <sup>89</sup> HEYMANS C BOUCKAERT J J AND DAUTREBANDE L Sinus carotidien et réactions respiratoires au cyanure *Compt rend Soc de biol* 1931 106 54
- <sup>90</sup> HEYMANS C BOUCKAERT J J AND DAUTREBANDE L Sinus carotidiens et actions stimulantes respiratoires de la nicotine et de la lobéline *Compt rend Soc de biol* 1931 106 469
- <sup>91</sup> HEYMANS C BOUCKAERT J J AND REGNIERS P Le sinus carotidien et la zone homologue cardio tortique Paris Doin 1933
- <sup>92</sup> HEYMANS C BOUCKAERT J J AND SAMAN A Influence réflexe sinocarotidienne du CO<sub>2</sub> sur les centres cardio régulateurs *Compt rend Soc de biol* 1935 118 1246
- <sup>93</sup> HEYMANS C AND LADON A Recherches physiologiques et pharmacologiques sur la tête isolée et le centre vague du chien I Anémie asphyxie hypertension adrénaline tonus pneumogastrique hyperthermie *Arch internat de pharmacodyn et de therap* 1925 30 415
- <sup>94</sup> HOFF I C AND GREEN H D Cardiovascular reaction induced by electrical stimulation of the cerebral cortex *Am J Physiol* 1936 117 411
- <sup>95</sup> HOFF H AND URBAN H Experimentelle Studien zur Frage des essentiellen Hochdrucks *Klin Wchnschr* 1933 12 1366
- <sup>96</sup> HOGBERG L T SCHLAPP W AND MACDONALD A D Studies of the pituitary IV Quantitative comparison of pressor activity *Quart J Exper Physiol* 1924 14 301
- <sup>97</sup> HOLTZ P The action of pituitary posterior lobe extracts on different parts of the circulatory system *J Physiol* 1932 76 149
- <sup>98</sup> HOLLAND B A AND MOLINELLI F A Centre adrénalino sécréteur hypothalamique *Compt rend Soc de biol* 1925 93 1454
- <sup>99</sup> HUME W F The action of adrenalin chloride on the human heart *Quart J Med* 1928 21 459
- <sup>100</sup> HUNT I Vasodilator reactions I *Am J Physiol* 1918 45 197
- <sup>101</sup> HUNT R Vasodilator reactions II *Am J Physiol* 1918 45 231
- <sup>102</sup> HURTHLE K Die pulsatorischen Bewegungen der Aortenwand I *Flüger's Arch* 1935 236 385
- <sup>103</sup> IKALOWICZ C AND PAL J Ueber die Kreislaufverhältnisse in den Unterleibsorganen *Wien med Presse* 1884 28 696
- <sup>104</sup> DE JAEGER, M AND VAN BOGAERT A Régulation de la tension artérielle et hypothalamus *Compt rend Soc de biol* 1935 118 544

- DE JAEGER M AND VAN BOGAERT A Hyperglycémie provoquée par excitation électrique de l'hypothalamus *Compt rend Soc de biol* 1935 118 1035
- KABAT H Electrical stimulation of points in the forebrain and midbrain the resultant alterations in respiration *J Comp Neurol* 1936 64 187
- KABAT H ANSON H J MAGOUN H W AND KANSON S W Stimulation of the hypothalamus with special reference to its effect on gastrointestinal motility *Am J Physiol* 1935 11 714
- KABAT H MAGOUN H W AND KANSON H W Electrical stimulation of points in the forebrain and midbrain the resultant alterations in blood pressure *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 1935 34 931
- KAMMER H *Leber vasomotorische Störungen bei zerebralen Hemiplegien* *Wien klin Wchnsch* 1922 35 219
- KARPEL J P Die Physiologie der vegetativen Zentren (auf Grund experimenteller Erfahrungen) In *Handbuch der Neurologie* (Bumke & Foerster) II 407 Berlin Springer 1931
- KARPEL J P AND KREIDL A Gehirn und Sympathicus I Zwischenhirn III und Hals sympathicus *Pflügers Arch* 1909 129 138
- KARPEL J P AND KREIDL A Gehirn und Sympathicus II Ein Sympathicuszentrum im Zwischenhirn *Pflügers Arch* 1910 135 401
- KARPEL J P AND KREIDL A Gehirn und Sympathicus III Sympathicusleitung im Gehirn und Halsmark *Pflügers Arch* 1911 143 109
- KARPEL J P AND KREIDL A Gehirn und Sympathicus VII Leber Beziehungen der Hypothalamuszentren zu Blutdruck und innerer Sekretion *Pflügers Arch* 192 213 66
- KARPEL J P AND PECZENIA O Leber die Beeinflussung der Hypophysentätigkeit durch die Erregung des Hypothalamus *Pflügers Arch* 1930 225 604
- KARPEL J P AND PECZENIA O Leber die Beeinflussung der Hypophysentätigkeit durch Erregung des Hypothalamus II *Pflügers Arch* 1933 23 407
- KOCH F Die reflektorische Selbststeuerung des Kreislaufes *Ergebn d Kreislaufforsch* 1931 1
- KOCH E Die Irradiation der pressorezeptionischen Kreislaufreflexe *Klin Wchnsch* 1932 11 25
- KOLLS A C AND GEILING E M F Contributions to the pharmacology of extracts of the posterior lobe of the pituitary gland *J Pharmacol & Exper Therap* 1924 24 6
- KUHN W B Studies on the coronary arteries of the human heart *J Pharmacol & Exper Therap* 1932 45 65
- KURJAU I *The anatomy and physiology of capillaries* New Haven Yale Univ Press 1929
- KURZ K *Leber den Spinalparasympathikus* Basel Schwabe 1931
- KURZ K Spinalparasympathikus und Kreislauf *Cardiologia* 1931 1 95
- FLAT K NITTA T UJI M SHIBASHI K AND SCHLAGA M Die histologische Darstellung der parasympathischen Fasern in den hinteren Rückenmarkswurzeln der Lumbalsegmente *Pflügers Arch* 1929, 219 573
- LANGE W AND MEHRS J Gefäßstudien an der überlebenden Warmblüterleber II Der Einfluss der Lebergefäße durch Strophanthin und Diäthylglykoxide *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 1926 117 11
- LANGE W AND MEHRS J Gefäßstudien an der überlebenden Warmblüterleber III Die Wirkung von Hormonen auf die Lebergefäße *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 1927 119 65
- LANGE J N *The autonomic nervous system* Cambridge Heffer 1921
- ESCHKE L *Zur klinischen Pathologie des Zwischenhirns* *Deutsche med Wchnsch* 1920 2 959



- <sup>129</sup> LEVY A G The exciting causes of ventricular fibrillation in animals under chloroform anaesthesia *Heart* 1913 4 319
- <sup>130</sup> LEVY A G The genesis of ventricular extrasystoles under chloroform with special reference to consecutive ventricular fibrillation *Heart* 1914 5 299
- <sup>131</sup> LEVY A G Further remarks on ventricular extrasystoles and fibrillation under chloroform *Heart* 1919 7 105
- <sup>132</sup> LEWIN H AND SCHILF F Der Einfluss der sympathischen Innervation auf die rhythmischen Erweiterungen der Kaninchenohrgefässe *Pflüger's Arch* 1927 216 651
- <sup>133</sup> MACKAY M Histamine and adrenaline in relation to the salivary secretion *J Pharmacol & Exper Therap* 1929 37 349
- <sup>134</sup> MAGOUN H W RANSON B W AND HETHERINGTON A The liberation of adrenin and sympathin induced by stimulation of the hypothalamus *Am J Physiol* 1931 119 615
- <sup>135</sup> MASSERMAN J H AND HARTIG E W The influence of hypothalamic stimulation on intestinal activity *J Neurophysiol* 1938 1 350
- <sup>136</sup> MAUTNER H Die Bedeutung der Venen und deren Sperrvorrichtungen für den Wasserhaushalt *Wien Arch f inn Med* 1923 7 251
- <sup>137</sup> MAUTNER H Die Innervation der Venensperre in der Leber *Monatschr f Kinderh* 1924 27 385
- <sup>138</sup> MAUTNER H Wasserbewegung im Organismus *Monatschr f Kinderh* 1929 41 18
- <sup>139</sup> MAUTNER H Austritt von Flüssigkeit an der Leberoberfläche *Wien klin Wchnschr* 1929 47 1290
- <sup>140</sup> MAUTNER H AND PICK E P Ueber die durch Schockgifte erzeugten Zirkulationsstörungen *München med Wchnschr* 1915 62 1141
- <sup>141</sup> MAUTNER H AND PICK E P Das Verhalten der überlebenden Leber *Biochem Ztschr* 1922 127 12
- <sup>142</sup> MAUTNER H AND PICK E P Zur Analyse der Gefasswirkung des Pituitrins *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 1923 97 306
- <sup>143</sup> MAUTNER H AND PICK E P Ueber die Wirkung des Histamins auf den Kreislauf der Katze *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 1930 149 25
- <sup>144</sup> McDOWALL R J S A vago pressor reflex *J Physiol* 1924 59 41
- <sup>145</sup> McDOWALL R J S A cardio pressor nerve *J Physiol* 1934 93 31P
- <sup>146</sup> McDOWALL R J S The control of the circulation of the blood p 467 London Longmans Green 1938
- <sup>147</sup> MEIJLING H A Bau und Innervation von Glomus caroticum und Sinus caroticus *Utrecht* 1939
- <sup>148</sup> MICHAEL D AND VANCEA P L'influence des zones vaso sensibles réflexogènes du sinus carotidien sur la circulation oculaire *Comp rend Soc de biol* 1935 118 469
- <sup>149</sup> MILLER H R Sclerosis of the pulmonary artery and its branches *M Clin N Amer* 1925 9 673
- <sup>150</sup> MILLER H R Clinical observations on pulmonary blood flow in silicosis and other fibrotic conditions of the lungs *Am J M Sc* 1936 191 334
- <sup>151</sup> MOISSEJEFF L Zur Kenntnis des Carotissinusreflexes *Ztschr f d ges exper Med* 1926 53 696
- <sup>152</sup> MOLITOR H AND PICK E P Die Bedeutung der Leber für die Diurese *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 1923 97 317
- <sup>153</sup> MORAT J P Les fonctions vaso motrices des racines postérieures *Arch de physiol* 1897 4 689
- <sup>154</sup> MULLER L R AND GLASER W Ueber die Innervation der Gefässe *Deutsche Ztschr f Nervenh* 1913 46 325
- <sup>155</sup> NONIDIZ J I The aortic (depressor) nerve and its associated epitheloid body the glomus aorticum *Am J Anat* 1935 57 259

- 1 OTTO H L An experimental study of the extracardiac nerves *Am Heart J* 1918 3 601
- 10 OWSJANOW P Die tonischen und reflexionischen Centren der Gefässnerven *Arch d physiol Anstalt Leipzig* 1812 6 21
- 11 PAL J Ueber die Innervation der Leber *Med Jahrb* 1888 3 67
- 12 PENTFIELD W AND STARRAB C The response of intracranial blood vessels to electrical stimulation of the thalamus and the hypothalamic regions *Tr Am Neurol A* 1931 61 144
- 13 PILE F H Personal communication
- 14 PILE F H Studies in the physiology of the central nervous system I The general phenomena of spinal shock *Am J Physiol* 1909 21 124
- 15 PILE F H Studies in the physiology of the central nervous system II The effect of repeated injuries to the spinal cord during spinal shock *Am J Physiol* 1912 37 436
- 16 POPPER L Bleibende Pulsdifferenz nach Hirnindenlusion *Deutsche med Wchnschr* 1933 59 1163
- 17 RAY S W KIDAT H AND MACCOT H W Autonomic responses to electrical stimulation of hypothalamus preoptic region and optum *Arch Neurr & Psychiat* 1935 33 461
- 18 PAXSON S W AND WRIGHTMAN W D Vasodilator mechanisms II The vasodilator fibers of the dorsal roots *Am J Physiol* 1922 62 392
- 19 REED C J AND LAYMAN J A Effects of bilateral vagotomy on blood pressure and heart rate *Am J Physiol* 1930 97 215
- 20 REIN H Die Physiologie der Herz Franzgefasse *Ztschr f Biol* 1931 92 101
- 21 REIS M Hypophysenorderlappen und Stoffwechselfunktion *Klin Wchnschr* 1935 28 4
- 22 RUD H D M AND BRUNNER C Experiments on the corpus striatum and rhinencephalon *J Comp Neurol* 1938 69 431
- 23 ROTHEBERG R J Beitrage zur Kenntnis der Reizleitungsstörungen nach Verletzungen des Zerebrums *Acta med Scandinav* 1931 75 917
- 24 K. TUBERGER C J AND WINTERBERG H Ueber die experimentelle Erzeugung extravasculärer ventrikulärer Tachykardie durch Beschleunigung Ein Beitrag zur Herzerkrankung von Beryum und Calcium *Pflügers Arch* 1911 147 461
- 25 K. LECER F Mém sur le développement la structure et les propriétés physiologiques des capillaires sanguins et lymphatiques *Arch d physiol* 1873 5 603
- 26 RUI ET C Sur la contractilité des capillaires sanguins *Compt rend Acad Sci* 1849 916
- 27 SCHMIDT M Untersuchungen zur Physiologie des Nervensystems mit Berücksichtigung der Pathologie Frankfurt am Main Ritten 1855
- 28 SCHMIDT M Untersuchungen über die motorischen Functionen des Grosshirns *Arch exper Path u Pharmacol* 1815 3 171
- 29 SCHREITENMAIER A Die Motorik des intakten Venensystems I Methode der Venenokklu-sione *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 1935 118 731
- 30 SCHREITENMAIER A Die Motorik des intakten Venensystems II Nachweis und Bedeutung der Hirnvenenmotorik *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 1936 187 295
- 31 SCHROTTENBACH H Beiträge zur Kenntnis der Übertragung vasovegetativer Funktionen im Zwischenhirn I II *Ztschr f d ges Neurol u Psychiat* 1914 23 431 497
- 32 SCHROTTENBACH H Beiträge zur Kenntnis der Übertragung vasovegetativer Funktionen im Zwischenhirn III IV *Ztschr f d ges Neurol u Psychiat* 1916 33 279
- 33 SCHREMEYER A Ueber die Innervation der Pars intermedia der Hypophyse der Amphibien *Klin Wchnschr* 1926 5 2311
- 34 SCOTT J M D AND ROBERTS F The localisation of the vasomotor centre I *Physiol* 1923 58 168

- <sup>183</sup> SILVER, G A, AND MORTON H G The central action of acetylcholine J Pharmacol & Exper Therap 1936 56 446
- <sup>184</sup> SPIEGEL I A Experimentelle Analyse der vegetativen Reflexwirkungen des Labyrinths In Handbuch der Neurologie des Ohres III 631 Berlin Urban 1926
- <sup>185</sup> SPIEGEL I A AND SAITO S Ueber die hormonale Erregbarkeit vegetativer Zentren Arb a d neurol Inst a d Wien Univ 1924 25 247
- <sup>186</sup> SPIEGEL I A AND YASKIN J C Untersuchungen am zentralen vasomotorischen Apparat Ztschr f d ges exper Med 1928 63 505
- <sup>187</sup> STRICKER S Untersuchungen über die Gefässnerven Wurzeln des Ischiadicus Sitzungsber Akad d Wissensch Wien Math naturkl III Abt 1876 74 173
- <sup>188</sup> STRICKER S Entgegnung auf die Mitteilung des Herrn Vulpius Ueber die Gefässnerven in den sensiblen Rückenmarkswurzeln Med Jahrb 1878 8 409
- <sup>189</sup> STRICKER S Untersuchungen über Contractilität der Capillaren Sitzungsber d Akad d Wissensch Wien Math naturkl III Abt 1876 74 313
- <sup>190</sup> SUH T H WANG C H AND INN R K S The effect of intracisternal applications of acetylcholine and the localization of pressor centre and tract Chinese J Physiol 1936 10 61
- <sup>191</sup> TELLO J F Développement et terminaison du nerf depresseur Trav du lab de recherches biol de l Univ de Madrid 1924 22 219
- <sup>192</sup> TIGHEFDT R A A Die Physiologie des Kreislaufes Berlin de Gruyter 1923
- <sup>193</sup> VAN BOGAERT A Modifications de la fréquence du rythme et du volume systolique du coeur par excitation hypothalamique Compt rend Soc de biol 1935 119 1240
- <sup>194</sup> VAN BOGAERT A Action des extraits de l'hypophyse sur le diencéphale et sur la tension artérielle Compt rend Soc de biol 1935 120 450
- <sup>195</sup> VAN BOGAERT A Hypotension artérielle expérimentale d'origine centrale Compt rend Soc de biol 1935 120 1043
- <sup>196</sup> VAN BOGAERT A Hypothalamus et réactions cardio vasculaires d'origine centrale Arch internat de pharmacodyn et de therap 1936 53 137
- <sup>197</sup> VAN DAMME J Sensibilité réflexogène de la région de la bifurcation carotidienne du mouton vis à vis des modifications de pression et des substances chimiques Compt rend Soc de biol 1933 113 909
- <sup>198</sup> VERWORN M Zur Analyse der dyspnoischen Vagusreizung Arch f Anat u Physiol Physiol Abt 1903 65
- <sup>199</sup> VERZAR F AND PÉTER I Die tonische Erregungsvorgang im N. vagus Pflügers Arch 1926 212 24
- <sup>200</sup> WALLENBERG A Notiz über einen Schleifenursprung des Pedunculus corporis mammillaris beim Kaninchen Anat Anz 1899 16 156
- <sup>201</sup> WALLENBERG A Bemerkenswerte Endstätten der Grosshirnfaserung bei Säugern Jahrb f Psychiat u Neurol 1934 51 295
- <sup>202</sup> WANG G AND RICHTER C Action currents from the pad of the cat's foot produced by stimulation of the tuber cinereum Chinese J Physiol 1928 2 279
- <sup>203</sup> WATERMAN L Over de vasomotorische beteekenis der groote hersenen Nederl tijdschr v geneesk 1935 31 3806
- <sup>204</sup> WATTS J W AND FULTON J F The effect of lesions of the hypothalamus upon the gastrointestinal tract and heart in monkeys Ann Surg 1935 101 363
- <sup>205</sup> WERZILOFF N M Zur Frage über die vasomotorische Function der hinteren Wurzeln Centralbl f Physiol 1896 10 194
- <sup>206</sup> WIGGERS C J Physiology in health and disease Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1934
- <sup>207</sup> WINKLER F Die zerebrale Beeinflussung der Schweißsekretion Pflügers Arch 1908 125 584
- <sup>208</sup> WOOLLARD H H The innervation of the heart J Anat 1926 60 345

## SECTION THREE

# Autonomic Pathways for Cardiac Pain

---

## CHAPTER VI

# Peripheral Pathways for General Autonomic Reactions\*

REACHING into every recess of the body and consisting of an extensive inter connected system of ganglia and nerves the autonomic nervous system is characterized particularly by the formation of plexuses a feature absent in the somatic nervous system. All the smooth muscles and glandular epithelium of the body receive autonomic nerves. A minor supply goes to the striated (voluntary) skeletal muscles according to Boeke<sup>2</sup> but Hinsey<sup>4</sup> appears to have shown that skeletal muscles are not innervated by sympathetic fibers. The chief and predominant innervation of these muscles however is through the cerebrospinal system. The viscera on the other hand are supplied wholly by autonomic fibers the largest part of the entire autonomic system consisting of visceral nerves.

An autonomic efferent fiber has its cell body within the neuraxis. These cells are grouped as follows in the pars intermedia of the gray matter for the sympathetic system and the sacral autonomics in the rhombencephalon and mid brain for the cranial autonomics. Differing from afferent fibers as well as from somatic neurons autonomic efferent fibers whether sympathetic or parasympathetic always undergo interruption in a ganglion. Central to the point of intraganglionic interruption or relay the neuron is designated as preganglionic it is medullated (white). Some of the splanchnic nerves which are unmyelinated and some preganglionic vagal fibers are minor exceptions to this rule. Distal to the intraganglionic relay the neuron now termed postganglionic down to its termination is unmedullated (gray) some neurons as is the case of the finely medullated postganglionic fibers leaving the ciliary ganglion are white (Spiegel<sup>14</sup>).

The large numbers of afferent and efferent fibers make up two separate divisions of the autonomic system a sympathetic or thoraco-lumbar system and a parasympathetic or craniosacral system.

Diagrams illustrations etc of the peripheral autonomic nervous system have not been included since they are available in many textbooks and atlases on general anatomy and neurology.

## SYMPATHETIC EFFERENT (CENTRIFUGAL) FIBERS\*

*Preganglionic Neurons* The neurons originate in cells of the gray matter of the pars intermedia, these cells forming a single continuous column from C 8 to L 3. The preganglionic fibers emerge in the ventral roots of spinal nerves, then pass through white rami at corresponding levels and reach corresponding ganglia in the sympathetic paravertebral trunk. The trunk or ganglionated chain, containing afferent and efferent fibers, is marked off into cervical, thoracic, lumbar, and sacral divisions; there is one coccygeal ganglion. Most of the cervical and lumbar roots have no white rami and obviously no preganglionic fibers.

Lying on each side of and ventral to the bodies of the vertebra are the vertebral ganglia termed also central (ventral) ganglia. The paravertebral (also called collateral) ganglia are found at a distance from the main ganglionated chain, more in the mid line, in the abdominal and thoracic cavities; these ganglia are close to various plexuses.

Each neuron in the main ganglionated trunk pursues one of three courses: (1) it terminates in a vertebral ganglion corresponding to the level of its emergence, (2) it travels up or down in the vertebral ganglionated trunk, arborizing with dendrites of a ganglionic cell in a higher or lower ganglion, or (3) it traverses the ganglion corresponding to the level of its emergence and still unbroken, reaches a subsidiary collateral or paravertebral ganglion well beyond the ganglionated trunk. The stream of preganglionic fibers leaving the neuraxis receives practically no contribution from the cervical or lower lumbar segments of the spinal cord; there are therefore, no white rami at these levels.

The relationship of preganglionic to postganglionic neurons is important. Langley<sup>8-10</sup> demonstrated that not all preganglionic fibers coursing through a single white ramus are destined for one sympathetic segmental ganglion; on the contrary, fibers from one level pass to a series of about six to nine ganglia. Moreover, a single preganglionic neuron has dendritic connections with many postganglionic axons (Bidder and Volkmann<sup>1</sup>). According to Ranson and Billingsley,<sup>1</sup> in the superior sympathetic cervical ganglion of the cat each preganglionic neuron is in synaptic junction with about thirty-two postganglionic neurons. This seems to be an adaptation whereby a single efferent impulse is able to touch off a multitude of peripheral reactions and is probably the basis for "autonomic irradiation," a term used by Schweitzer<sup>12</sup> after Kisch<sup>4</sup> to denote the wide and varied autonomic effects which stem from the neuraxis.

*Postganglionic Neurons* Leaving the ganglion wherein a synaptic connection takes place, the postganglionic neuron courses through a gray communicating ramus at a corresponding level and then passes by way of a spinal somatic nerve either to the periphery or by way of a visceral sympathetic nerve to a viscus. The function of these postganglionic fibers is not the same for all organs. The regional distribution of this fiber system is depicted in Figure 12.

\* Consult Chapter IV for regional distribution of sympathetic innervations.

## SYMPATHETIC AFFERENT (CENTRIPETAL) FIBERS

The afferent neurons a large and diffuse group transmit sensory impulses from various structures and organs into the central nervous system. These fibers participate in the reflex nervous arc which connects well defined districts of the outer integument (dermatomes) to corresponding segmental levels of the cord. Unlike the efferent neurons these are without a relay for example a neuron travels directly from a viscus into the neuraxis and in so doing passes uninterruptedly through a sympathetic ganglion. Traversing the ganglion the neuron continues its way within a white communicating ramus at a corresponding level and in this manner reaches a spinal dorsal ganglion on the posterior root of a spinal nerve corresponding to the level of the white ramus. The cell body of origin of each neuron is in the dorsal ganglion from this cell body a central axon goes into the substantia gelatinosa of the spinal cord and establishes a synaptic contact with the spinothalamic tract or goes to the anterolateral portion of the gray matter in the cord to connect with efferent neurons at the same or adjoining levels.

The absence of any relay in afferent sympathetic fibers has raised the question whether these fibers are truly part of the sympathetic system. Furthermore certain physiologic and pharmacologic features of these neurons seem to place them outside or at least apart from the sympathetic efferent system of neurons. The afferent system conveys sensory impulses through the spinal cord to the higher brain centers and this system of fibers is distinguished anatomically by a predominance of spinal entry with reference to any viscus. Thus afferent neurons better termed visceral fibers when they innervate a viscus have a concentrated zone of entry into the cord for example at Th 1 to 4 on the left side from the heart. Like all other organs however the heart is connected to other spinal cord levels by accessory afferent fibers.

Accessory fibers may participate in the propagation of sensory impulses (pain) into multiple segments of the spinal cord or under certain circumstances they may take over the main burden of conduction. The general pattern of a preponderance of entry plus the arrangement of accessory fibers which gain an entry into the cord is a fundamental anatomic endowment exhibiting important variations however in some mammals including man. In individuals with such variations from the norm the afferent innervations may exist as a system of very diffuse fibers coming from widely separated organs and overlapping within common receptor levels in the spinal cord.

## PARASYMPATHETIC EFFERENT (CENTRIFUGAL) FIBERS\*

Almost as widely distributed as the sympathetic the parasympathetic division has a more limited origin in the cerebrospinal system. It too contains efferent and afferent fibers. Each efferent (centrifugal) fiber has a preganglionic and postganglionic component separated by a synapse within a parasympathetic ganglion.

Consult Chapter IV for regional distribution of parasympathetic innervations.

*Preganglionic Neurons* These arise in cell bodies grouped as isolated clusters or aggregations, not as a continuous column. Practically all these neurons are medullated, although some vagal fibers have no myelin sheaths. The preganglionic neurons have several levels of emergence.

1. A midbrain outflow includes fibers in the third cranial nerve for the ciliary ganglion.

2. A rhombencephalic group. Of these one set travels as the intermediate or Wrisberg's nerve to form the chorda tympani, the tympanic nerve joins the lingual nerve which ends in the submaxillary ganglion. Another set of fibers travels with the facial nerve and forms the great superficial petrosal nerve (the motor part of the Vidian nerve) which ends in the sphenopalatine ganglion. A third set joins the ninth cranial nerve and forms the tympanic nerve (Jacobson's nerve) and then forms the lesser superficial petrosal nerve ending in the otic ganglion. A fourth set consists of the vagus with its wide distribution of fibers to ganglionic cells lying in the walls of organs innervated by this large nerve system.

3. The sacral outflow carries preganglionic fibers in the anterior rami of the second, third, and fourth sacral nerves. These nerves run to the ganglia in the pelvic plexuses or to the ganglia in the pelvic organs.

4. The so called posterior root outflow (Kure?).

*Postganglionic Neurons* As a rule, these neurons are unmedullated although the fibers leaving the ciliary ganglion are medullated. As in the case of the preganglionic neurons the postganglionic also make up several groups.

1. The midbrain outflow leaves the ciliary body and supplies the pupillary sphincter and the ciliary muscles of the eyeball.

2. The rhombencephalic outflow contains the following subdivisions. Fibers from the submaxillary ganglion go to the submaxillary and sublingual glands. Fibers from the sphenopalatine ganglion go to the lachrymal glands and to the glands in the mouth and nose. Fibers from the otic ganglion go to the parotid gland. Fibers from the ganglion cells of the vagus system form an extensive innervation to the chest, abdomen and other parts, providing inhibitory neurons to the myocardium, vasoconstrictors to the coronaries, vasodilators to the pulmonary vessels, constrictors to the bronchial musculature, motor and secretory neurons respectively to the smooth muscles and glands of the alimentary tract down to the ileocolic valve and visceral fibers to the liver, pancreas, kidneys, adrenals.

3. The postganglionic fibers of the sacral division leave the ganglia of plexuses in this region and supply fibers to the distal colon, rectum, and the genito-urinary organs.

4. A fourth division, recently the subject of special study by Kure, is to be found in the so called posterior root outflow. This division is supposed to contain parasympathetic fibers. However, the support for the contention that these fibers are parasympathetic is largely, if not wholly, indirect and is based

on the fact that these fibers behave in a way analogous to that which characterizes parasympathetic fibers namely, they are cholinergic in function and the injection of acetylcholine brings on responses identical with those induced by electrical excitation of these fibers. Another argument advanced for grouping these fibers as parasympathetic rests on the fact that vasodilation in certain regions of the body is known to be parasympathetic for example the effect noted on stimulating the chorda tympani. Kahr and Sheehan<sup>3</sup> have offered histologic proof of the existence of efferent fibers in the posterior spinal roots and Matthews<sup>4</sup> on the basis of action currents supports these findings.

The alleged existence of a supply of parasympathetic postganglionic neurons to the periphery namely to blood vessels sweat glands and pilo-erector muscles is not well founded on anatomic evidence.

### PARASYMPATHETIC AFFERENT (CENTRIPETAL) FIBERS

Elsewhere (p. 169) we have suggested that although the vagal fibers seem to transmit sensory impulses from the bronchial and gastro-intestinal musculature the parasympathetic afferent innervation probably may not be a true conductor of pain at least from the heart. In the third and seventh cranial nerves afferent parasympathetic fibers have not been demonstrated. In the vagus nerve afferent fibers from peripheral nerve endings travel to cells within the trunk ganglia (jugular and nodose) and from these cells of origin central axons penetrate the medulla and reach the lateral part of the dorsal nucleus of the vagus. (This will be recognized as a general arrangement similar to that already noted in connection with the dorsal spinal ganglion for afferent sympathetic fibers.) Afferent vagal fibers arise from the ascending aorta and the heart also from the lungs the bronchial system the abdominal viscera stomach small gut proximal colon liver spleen pancreas kidneys and adrenals. They are also found within the pelvic nerves related to the sacral levels of the cord.

A double innervation sympathetic and parasympathetic supplies the majority of internal organs. There are however some exceptions. In certain peripheral structures a dual autonomic set of reactions operate through a single division of the autonomic innervations for example cutaneous blood vessels are able to dilate or contract by means of their sympathetic supplies, and similar observations have been made with respect to the salivary glands and uterine muscles. The reaction of the latter is influenced by their state of contraction or relaxation and by conditions bound up with the virginity of the animal.

### BIBLIOGRAPHY

- RUDOLF F. H. AND VOLLMANN, I. H. Die Selbständigkeit des sympathischen Nerven systems durch anatomische Untersuchung nachgewiesen. Leipzig: Breitkopf & Härtel 1842.
- \* BOEKE, J. Die motorische Endplatte bei den höheren Vertebraten. Anat. Anz. 1909, 35, 193.



- <sup>1</sup> BOFKE, J Die doppelte efferente Innervation der quergestreiften Muskelfasern Anat Anz 1913 44 343
- <sup>2</sup> HINGSFY J C Some observations on the innervation of skeletal muscle of the cat J Comp Neurol 1927 44 87
- <sup>3</sup> KAHR S AND SHIFFMAN D The presence of afferent fibers in posterior spinal roots Brain 1933 56 265
- <sup>4</sup> KISCH B Die irradiation autonomer Reflexe und ihre Beziehung zu gewissen pathologischen physiologischen Erscheinungen Ztschr f d ges exper Med 1926 52 499
- <sup>5</sup> KURÉ K Spinal parasympathetics Quart J Exper Physiol 1931 21 1
- <sup>6</sup> LANGLEY J N Notes on the cervical sympathetic and chiefly on its vasomotor fibers J Physiol 1893 14 2
- <sup>7</sup> LANGLEY J N The autonomic nervous system Brain 1903 26 1
- <sup>8</sup> LANGLEY J N The autonomic nervous system Cambridge Hesser 1921
- <sup>9</sup> MATTHEWS B H C Impulses leaving the spinal cord by dorsal nerve roots J Physiol 1934 91 xxix
- <sup>10</sup> RAYSON S W AND BILLINGSLEY P K Studies on the sympathetic nervous system J Comp Neurol 1918 29 359
- <sup>11</sup> SCHWITZER A Die irradiation autonomer Reflexe Basel S Karger 1937
- <sup>12</sup> SPIEGEL I A The autonomic nervous system In Practice of Pediatrics Ed by J Brenemann IV chap 19 Hagerstown Md Prior 1937

VS JAN 1

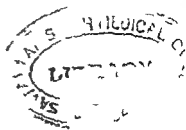
## CHAPTER VII

# The Sympathetic Pathways for Anginal Pain

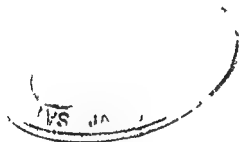
**A**N INTRODUCTORY group of five drawings is presented to help the reader in general orientation. This is followed by a progressive series of drawings designed to depict step by step the sympathetic cardiac innervations which bear upon the clinical and physiological problems which go to make up the main theme of this volume.

The practical division of the cardiac sympathetics into afferent and efferent groups draws special interest to the question of whether the afferent fibers are truly part of the sympathetic apparatus. Attention has been paid to this problem in this text but of greater significance is the fact that the afferent fibers unquestionably conduct sensory impulses from the heart into the neuraxis. Of equal import is the circumstance that cardiac pain may enter the neuraxis by accessory afferent routes and that conversely the cardiac apparatus may be the recipient of pain which travels along extracardiac afferent pathways. These considerations it is hoped will take on an increased practical value as the reader becomes familiar with anatomic details. A similar familiarization with respect to the vagal supplies and the dermatome innervations set forth in Chapters VIII, IX and X will complement the information obtained in Chapter VII.

This entire section dealing with the autonomic pathways for pain has been planned to give the student an enlarged basis for understanding the clinical significance of the varying aspects of anginal pain and allied manifestations. For those unfamiliar with the anatomic details it is suggested that particular attention should be paid to the legends and their corresponding figures. To help concentrate on these physiologic as well as clinical aspects have as far as possible been omitted from this section.



- <sup>2</sup> BOEKE, J Die doppelte efferente Innervation der quergestreiften Muskelfasern Anat Anz 1913 44 343
- <sup>4</sup> HINSEY J C Some observations on the innervation of skeletal muscle of the cat J Comp Neurol 1927 44 87
- <sup>5</sup> KAHR S AND SHEEHAN D The presence of afferent fibers in posterior spinal roots Brain 1933 56 265
- <sup>6</sup> KISCH II Die irradiation autonomer Reflexe und ihre Beziehung zu gewissen pathologisch physiologischen Erscheinungen Ztschr f d ges exper Med 1926 57 499
- <sup>7</sup> KURÉ K Spinal parasympathetics Quart J Exper Physiol 1931 21 1
- <sup>8</sup> LANGLEY J N Notes on the cervical sympathetic and chiefly on its vasomotor fibers J Physiol 1893 14 2
- <sup>9</sup> LANGLEY J N The autonomic nervous system Brain 1903 26 1
- <sup>10</sup> LANGLEY J N The autonomic nervous system Cambridge Heffer 1921
- <sup>11</sup> MATTHEWS II H C Impulses leaving the spinal cord by dorsal nerve roots J Physiol 1934 81 xix
- <sup>12</sup> KANSON S W AND BILLINGSLEY P R Studies on the sympathetic nervous system J Comp Neurol 1918 29 359
- <sup>13</sup> SCHWIFITZER A Die irradiation autonomer Reflexe Basel S Karger 1937
- <sup>14</sup> SPIEGEL I A The autonomic nervous system In Practice of Pediatrics Ed by J Brenemann IV chap 19 Hagerstown Md Prior 1932



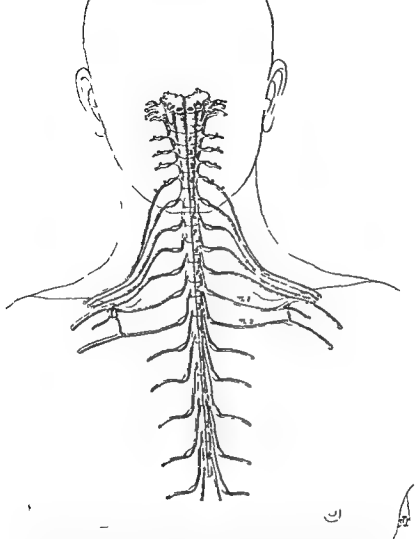


FIG. 26 The Spinal Cord and the Emergence of the Spinal Nerves at Their Respective Cord Levels. For the sake of simplicity the anterior nerve roots have been omitted. Observe that although there are but seven cervical vertebral bones there are eight cervical spinal cord segments from each of which a pair of spinal nerves emerges. Note also the bundle of nerve strands (the brachial plexus) formed by the confluence of the 4th, 5th, 6th, 7th, 8th cervical nerves and the 1st thoracic. This is the so-called prefixed brachial plexus. In some individuals the plexus is shifted downward one cord level beginning with the 5th cervical nerve and ending with the second thoracic nerve. This is called the post fixed plexus.

Brachial plexus fibres go to each side of the neck, down each arm, and over part of the pectoral areas. In connection with cardiac disorders two points deserve special emphasis: (1) the left brachial plexus practically always is the one involved and (2) as a rule only a particular portion of the plexus carries animal pain, namely the portion limited to the first and second thoracic nerves.

The drawing of the left brachial plexus has been extended toward the arm in order to show the manner in which the left first and second thoracic nerves pass into the plexus.

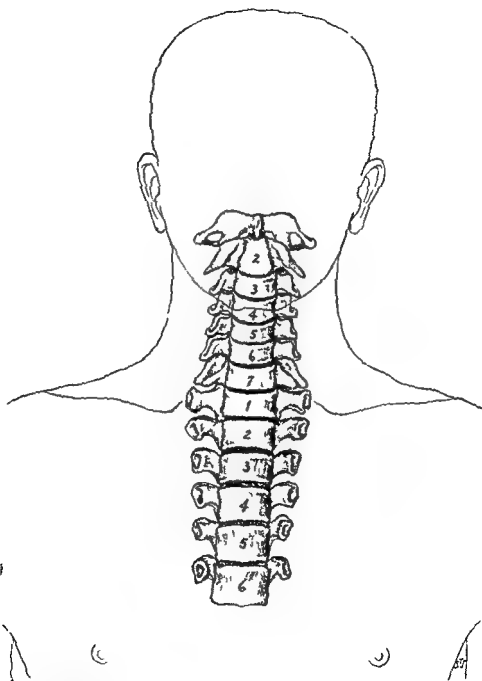


FIG. 25 The Vertebrae. This drawing shows the vertebral bones from the base of the skull to the eighth thoracic level inclusive.

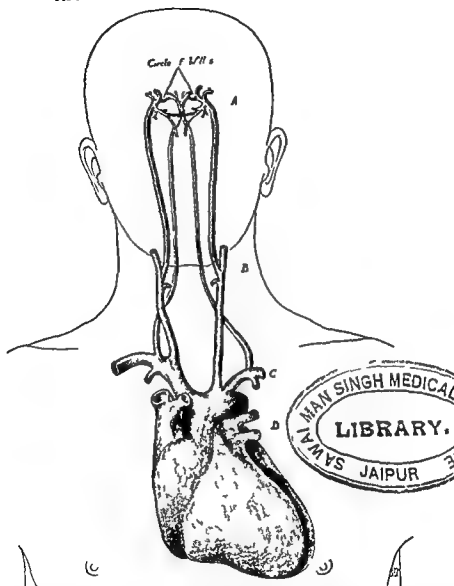


FIG. 28 The Heart and the Arterial Tree from the Heart to the Circle of Willis in the Brain. In order to facilitate the localization of special portions of the cardiac nerve supply several levels are designated on this vascular tree at points of vessel bifurcation as a rule. These levels are: A at the circle of Willis, B at the point of bifurcation of the common carotid arteries, C at the subclavian artery at the emergence of the vertebral artery, and D at the bifurcation of the pulmonary artery.

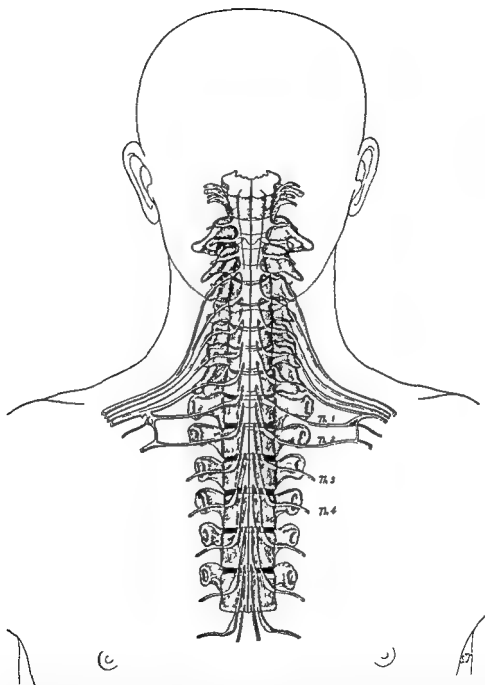


FIG 27 The Two Preceding Drawings 1 and 2 Are Superimposed The vertical bone levels are seen to lie slightly below their corresponding cord segments Because of this each spinal nerve emerges through an intervertebral foramen at a level below its point of origin

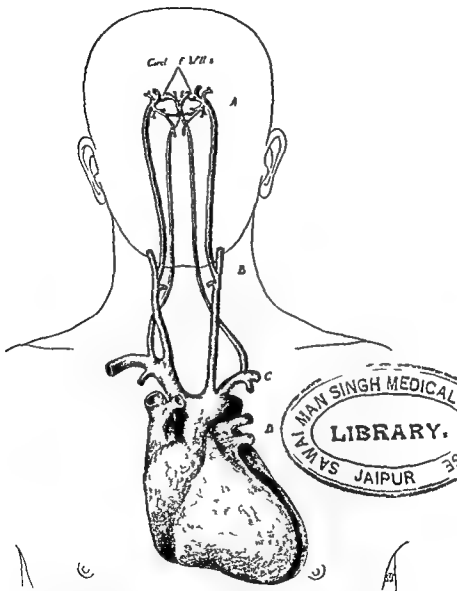


FIG. 28 The Heart and the Arterial Tree from the Heart to the Circle of Willis in the Brain. In order to facilitate the localization of special portions of the cardiac nerve supply several levels are designated on this vascular tree at points of vessel bifurcation as a rule. These levels are A at the circle of Willis B at the point of bifurcation of the common carotid artery C at the subclavian artery at the emergence of the vertebral artery and D at the bifurcation of the pulmonary artery.



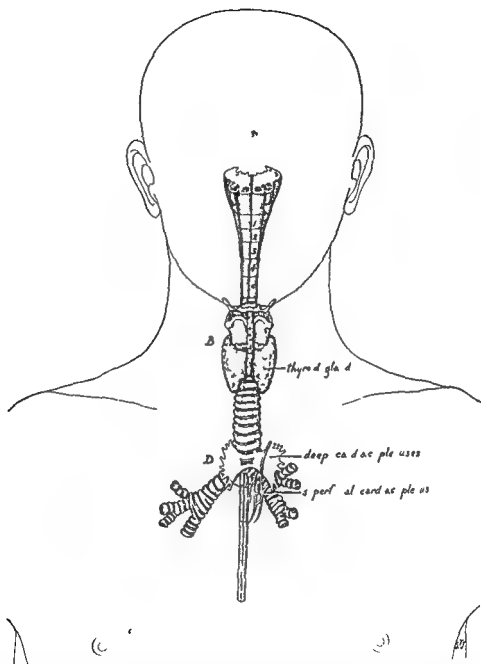


FIG 29 The Thyroid Gland at Level B and the Cardiac Plexuses at Level D The thyroid gland is at level B a region of convergence for many sympathetic and vagal fibres The superficial and deep cardiac plexuses lie at level D There is only one superficial cardiac plexus and it rests in the concavity of the aortic arch in front of the bifurcation of the left pulmonary artery There are two deep cardiac plexuses each is behind the aortic arch on either side of the trachea just above its bifurcation considerably larger than the superficial plexus (For the cardiac plexuses and relations to other plexuses see Fig 40 p 163)

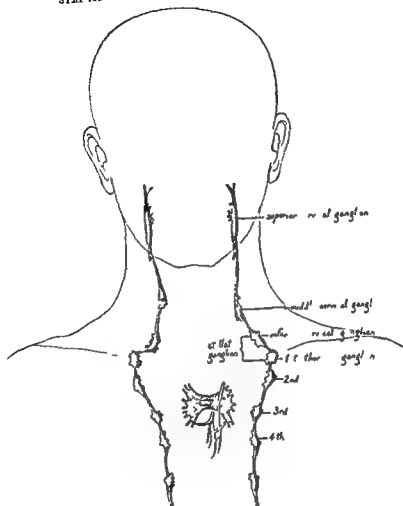


FIG. 30 The Sympathetic Cardiac Innervation. This is the first of a series of drawings to illustrate the sympathetic component of the cardiac innervation. It is part of the large sympathetic division that supplies the rest of the body and this division together with the parasympathetic (or cranio-sacral) division forms the autonomic nervous system for the entire body. As in other organs this dual innervation exists in the case of the cardiovascular structures. A description of the parasympathetic or vagal system will follow later (Chapter VIII).

**The cervical trunk and ganglia.** The upper or cervical part of the sympathetic supply to the heart consists of a lateral longitudinal sympathetic trunk in which three cervical ganglia and

four sometimes five thoracic ganglia stand out on each side. This ganglionated trunk is behind the carotid sheath. The three cervical ganglia represent the fusion of eight ganglia: the upper ganglion is the fusion of four, the middle of two and the inferior of two.

The superior cervical ganglion is about two to three cm. long and oval or fusiform in shape. It lies in front of the transverse processes of the second and third cervical vertebrae and behind the upper portion of the sheath of the great vessels of the neck. Sometimes it is double or split so that one portion may lie before and another behind the carotid sheath, sympathetic filaments bridging the gap.

The middle cervical ganglion is smaller, tends to be triangular in outline, and is sometimes absent. Its position is variable but it is usually found at the level of the transverse portion of the sixth cervical vertebra, about the level of the cricoid cartilage anterior to the head of the inferior thyroid artery.

The inferior cervical ganglion, larger than the middle and irregular in shape, is found deeper in the neck, at the level of the transverse process of the seventh cervical vertebra, lateral to its body, and anterior to the neck of the first rib and posterior to the vertebral or the first portion of the subclavian artery. It is important to recognize that this large ganglion is directly blended with (or else connected by a short stout trunk to) the first thoracic ganglion. The combination of these two is known as the stellate ganglion.

*The thoracic trunk and ganglia.* There are ten or eleven ganglia in this thoracic trunk but only the upper four or five are commonly concerned with anginal pain. The ganglia are smaller than the cervical; they are irregularly angular or fusiform in shape, joined by a common cord or trunk, quite thick. These upper ganglia are united to the corresponding thoracic spinal nerves on each side. Each nerve, excluding possibly the first, has a visceral branch, the white ramus, which connects it with the corresponding sympathetic thoracic ganglion. The upper four or five white rami are important bridges, as we shall see.

The second thoracic nerve usually communicates with the first thoracic nerve.

*The cardiac plexuses.* (See Fig 40 p 163.)

Not all the structures mentioned above are featured in this drawing. They are described, however, in order to give the reader some idea of their dimensional relationship. This will be clearer with the development of other drawings.



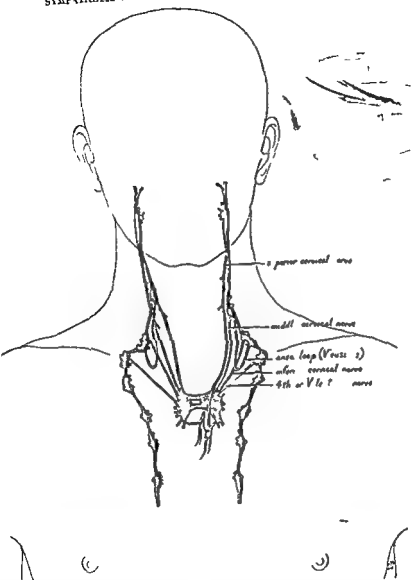


FIG 31 The Cardiac Nerves Between the Sympathetic Cervical Ganglia and the Cardiac Plexuses. The superior middle and inferior cardiac nerves act as direct longitudinal strands for the transmission of impulses between the cervical sympathetic ganglia and the cardiac plexuses. Each ganglion sends a nerve to the deep cardiac plexus of the same side with the exception of the left superior cervical ganglion whose nerve enters the superficial cardiac plexus situated on the left side.

The superior nerve crosses the inferior thyroid artery on its dorsal aspect and before reaching the cardiac plexus runs toward the innominate artery on the right side and the common

four sometimes five thoracic ganglia stand out on each side. This ganglionated trunk is behind the carotid sheath. The three cervical ganglia represent the fusion of eight ganglia: the superior ganglion is the fusion of four, the middle of two, and the inferior of two.

The superior cervical ganglion is about two to three cm. long and oval or fusiform in shape. It lies in front of the transverse processes of the second and third cervical vertebrae and behind the upper portion of the sheath of the great vessels of the neck. Sometimes it is double or split so that one portion may lie before and another behind the carotid sheath, sympathetic filaments bridging the gap.

The middle cervical ganglion is smaller, tends to be triangular in outline, and is sometimes absent. Its position is variable but it is usually found at the level of the transverse portion of the sixth cervical vertebra, i.e., about the level of the cricoid cartilage anterior to the bend of the inferior thyroid artery.

The inferior cervical ganglion, larger than the middle and irregular in shape, is found deeper in the neck at the level of the transverse process of the seventh cervical vertebra, lateral to its body and anterior to the neck of the first rib and posterior to the vertebral or the first portion of the subclavian artery. It is important to recognize that this large ganglion is directly blended with (or else connected by a short stout trunk to) the first thoracic ganglion. The combination of these two is known as the stellate ganglion.

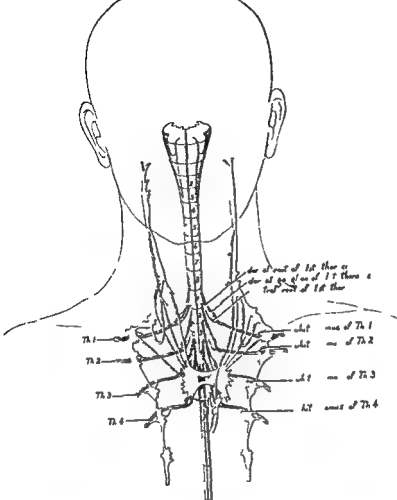
*The thoracic trunk and ganglia.* There are ten or eleven ganglia in this thoracic trunk but only the upper four or five are commonly concerned with anginal pain. The ganglia are smaller than the cervical; they are irregularly angular or fusiform in shape, joined by a common cord or trunk, quite thick. These upper ganglia are united to the corresponding thoracic spinal nerves on each side. Each nerve, excluding possibly the first, has a *visceral* branch, the *white ramus*, which connects it with the corresponding sympathetic thoracic ganglion. The upper four or five white rami are important bridges, as we shall see.

The second thoracic nerve usually communicates with the first thoracic nerve.

*The cardiac plexuses.* (See Fig 40 p 163.)

Not all the structures mentioned above are featured in this drawing. They are described however in order to give the reader some idea of their dimensional relationship. This will be clearer with the development of other drawings.





**FIG 32 The Anterior and Posterior Divisions of the Spinal Thoracic Nerves** The anterior and posterior divisions of the upper four or five thoracic spinal nerves are depicted. On each posterior division, close to its entry into the cord, is a root ganglion. The sympathetic fibres that enter the neuraxis pass through these upper four or five posterior divisions and their respective spinal root ganglia. The bulk of afferent sympathetic fibres from the heart and aorta takes this course.

**B The Communicating White Rami** Four (or five) white rami running as transverse bridges connect the corresponding four (or five) thoracic ganglia to corresponding segments in the spinal cord. These rami carry afferent fibres (they also carry efferent fibres) which enter the spinal root ganglion of the posterior division of each thoracic nerve. Each root ganglion lies close to the cord. Since there are no white rami above the level of the first thoracic sympathetic ganglion, impulses above this level destined for the central nervous system must descend; it is claimed to this level before crossing into the cord.

carotid artery on the left side. On each side the nerve finds an anastomosis with the superior cardiac branches of the vagus and with both laryngeal nerves. Sometimes a smaller pectoral ganglion, the superior cardiac ganglion, appears along the course of this nerve below the point of crossing of the inferior thyroid artery. At its points of entry into the cardiac plexus, the left superior cardiac nerve contains another small ganglion (ganglion of Wrisberg or magnum); the ganglion is sometimes divided. This nerve may be lacking on one side and even on both sides.

The middle magnus nerve and the middle sympathetic ganglion as well may be absent; the nerve arising from the trunk at about the site where the latter crosses the inferior thyroid artery. The nerve anastomoses with the recurrent laryngeal nerve (vagus) and reaches the subclavian artery. Below the thoracic aperture level the nerve occasionally has a ganglion of its own, the middle cardiac ganglion.

The inferior or small sympathetic nerve leaves the inferior cervical sympathetic ganglion (or stellate ganglion formed by the lowermost cervical and the first thoracic ganglia). As it continues downward on the right side it lies behind the innominate artery; on the left side behind the aortic arch. The nerve on each side anastomoses with the recurrent laryngeal nerve; it joins with the middle or magnus nerve to form the *nervus cardiacus crassus*.

Another nerve is sometimes present, a fourth or accessory sympathetic cardiac nerve, the nerve of Valentine or nerve minus; it goes to the deep cardiac plexus. The nerve is given off by the first thoracic ganglionic component of the stellate ganglion.

A special strand or loop, the *ansa Vircussens*, connects the middle and the stellate ganglia. This loop is clearly seen at the level of the emergence of the vertebral artery from the subclavian artery (see Fig. 34, Insert A, p. 149).

Some anatomists, Schuhmacher<sup>22</sup> for instance, claim that the sympathetic fibres from the right side supply the right heart, the left sympathetic fibres the left heart.

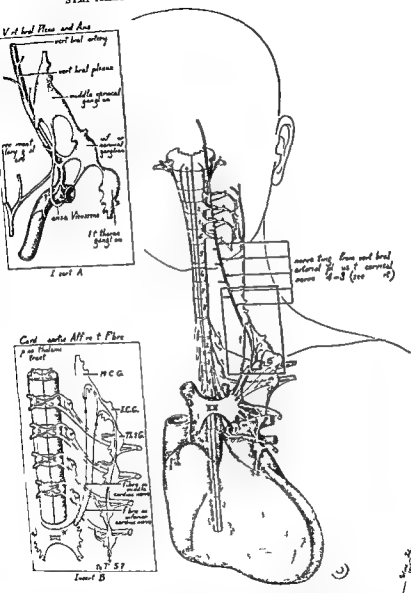
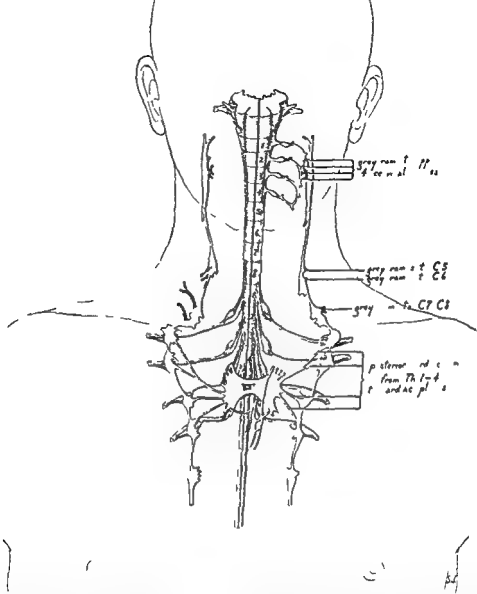


FIG 34 The Afferent Sympathetic Cardiac Fibres

FIG 34 The Afferent Sympathetic Cardiac Fibres The course of an impulse in the sympathetic system from the cardiac plexuses to the brain will now be traced

It is controversial whether impulses from the superficial cardiac plexus ascend along the vagus nerve the weight of evidence is against the existence of afferent fibres in this nerve. Impulses from the deep cardiac plexus however ascend along the middle and

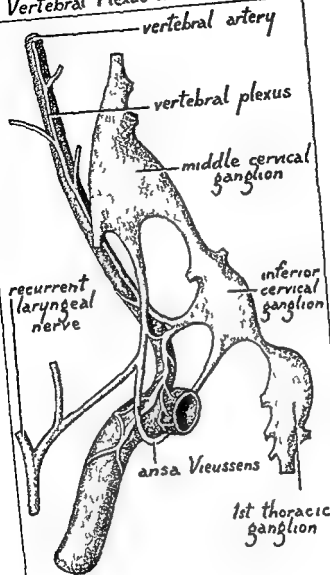




**FIG 33 The Posterior Sympathetic Cardiac Fibres** A recently discovered set of grey rami on each side travels from the cardiac and pulmonary plexuses backward through the posterior mediastinum to the 2nd 3rd and 4th occasionally the 1st and the 5th and 6th thoracic sympathetic ganglia (See lateral view Fig 37 p 158) These rami represent an anatomic bridge between the upper thoracic sympathetic chain and the pulmonary and cardiac plexuses As in the case of the white rami they are absent in the cervical region These posterior rami have been demonstrated by Jonesco and Gnachesco<sup>12</sup> by Brauecker<sup>13</sup> by Kuntz<sup>12 13</sup> Cannon Lewis and Britton<sup>14</sup> Mixer and White<sup>15</sup> also Singer and Spiegel<sup>16</sup> have written of their significance It is claimed that these rami contain afferent and efferent fibres from the heart and aorta to the central nervous system

**The Communicating Grey Rami** A different set of rami is depicted here the grey rami in the cervical and upper thoracic regions The cervical are arranged four rami arising from the superior cervical ganglion two from the middle three from the stellate The thoracic rami emerge from each ganglion by either one or two strands From each ganglion the rami pass into the posterior division of the corresponding thoracic spinal nerves These arrangements are very much the same on each side

# Vertebral Plexus and Ansa



## Insert A

FIG. 34. Insert A. Vertebral Plexus and Ansa.

FIG. 34. Insert A. *The sympathetic vertebral network.* The stellate ganglion, or better its first thoracic component, gives off the vertebral nerve which forms a network plexus around the vertebral artery. Beginning at the origin of this vessel from the subclavian artery and extending upward to the skull, the network or plexus in its course sends connecting branches to the 5th, 6th, 7th (in lower mammals the 8th also) cervical nerves, very rarely to the 4th. The plexus is quite variable in the dog, cat, fox, and horse, but in man comparatively more constant. By some authorities, notably Dandelopolis, the plexus is looked upon as a separate deep communicating system from the stellate ganglion to the lower cervical nerves, in contrast to the more superficially placed communicating system that traverses the distance between all three cervical sympathetic ganglia and the 8th cervical and 1st thoracic nerves.

inferior cardiac nerves to their respective cervical sympathetic ganglia. To reach the brain from these ganglia several possible routes lie open.

1 The best understood and by all means the most probable pathway continues from these ganglia down the sympathetic trunk to the levels between the first and the fourth thoracic ganglion sometimes the fifth. From this region fibres pass across the corresponding four or five communicating loops the white rami. Each of these rami carries afferent fibres into a corresponding thoracic spinal dorsal root ganglion lying on a posterior division of a thoracic nerve. The afferent nerve filament that begins in a portion of the heart for example and passes through the cardiac plexus to reach a cell in the posterior root ganglion is but the peripheral process of that cell. The central process or fibre of this cell enters the spinal cord through the proximal portion of the posterior root nerve and has its ending in the posterior horn of the grey matter the substantia gelatinosa Rolandi. In the grey matter the central fibre comes into contact with the fibres of the spinothalamic tract thus forming its first and as far as we know its only synaptic connection. The synapsis is not altogether well defined (see insert A Fig 34 p 151).

2 A second possible route to the brain leads through the cephalic network developed out of the prolongation from the upper cervical ganglion the internal carotid nerve. This cephalic network consists however as far as we know of efferent and not of afferent fibres (Danielopolu is practically a lone authority in maintaining that the cerebral sympathetic system contains afferent fibres (see Chapter XI).

To explain afferent effects in this network of efferent fibres the action of the vagus nerve is invoked. The vagus it is contended brings afferent impulses to the superior sympathetic ganglion where motor cells are stimulated. These cells in turn send impulses along the efferent brain fibres and produce effects such as constriction of facial and cerebral vessels (or coronary vessels in the thorax) disturbances in perspiration pain in the fifth cranial nerve and painful manifestations along the upper cervical plexus. This conception as we shall see is based on clinical experience. Patients in whom the cervical ganglionated chain was severed completely were able nevertheless to experience features of pain etc. as described above. Inasmuch as impulses could not pass through the interrupted cervical ganglionated chain it has been inferred that the vagal route acts as an accessory route and that a cephalic pathway for pain exists apart from the cerebrospinal axis. For a fuller discussion of other relevant material see p 207.

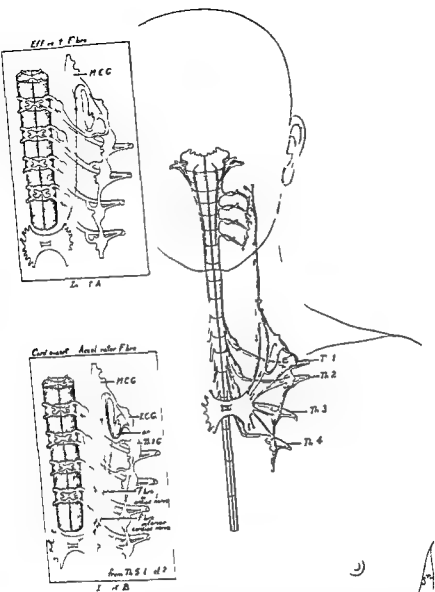
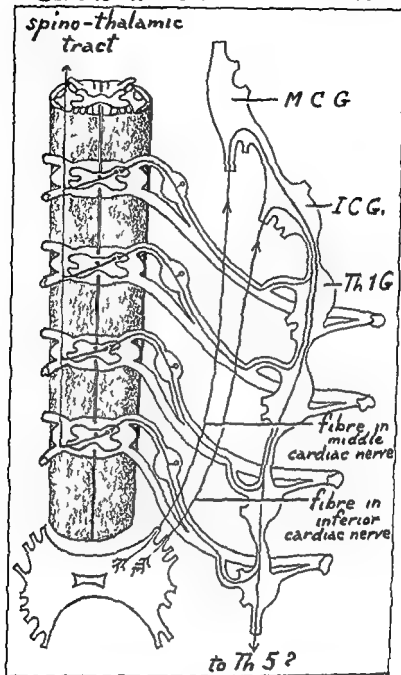


FIG 33 The Efferent Sympathetic Fibres

FIG 3 The Efferent Sympathetic Fibres Almost nothing definite is known of the intraspinal origin of the sympathetic efferent fibres cephalad to the upper thoracic levels. At these levels and at corresponding lower levels these fibres emerge from the antero-lateral portion of the grey matter of the spinal cord and from each spinal cord level the fibres pass by way of white rami to corresponding ganglia in the sympathetic chain. From this chain the efferent fibres form two groups (1) one group continues to peripheral structures (2) the other group to viscera — thus case the heart. The fibres of each group have a relay in the ganglia of the sympathetic chain or in ganglia within collateral plexuses or in the organs themselves. Among the second group there are special fibres the accelerators with a regulatory action on the heart rate.

# Cardio-aortic Afferent Fibres



## Insert B

FIG. 34 Insert B Cardio aortic Afferent Fibres

*b The ansa subclavia (Wassers)* The ansa or loop between the middle and lower cervical ganglia is a nerve strand that leaves the middle cervical sympathetic ganglion and runs downward. It emerges from behind the common carotid artery and crosses the subclavian artery in front, sending nerve twigs to it and to its vascular branches. The loop turns around the subclavian artery lateral to the recurrent nerve receiving a few filaments from this nerve and ending in the inferior cervical (stellate) ganglion.

In rare cases according to Danielopolu's description when the two components of the stellate ganglion have failed to fuse and are well separated as in the dog, the ansa remains as an anterior and posterior division each acting as a connecting bridge between the two unfused components. This loop contains afferent fibres from the heart and aorta. Danielopolu believes afferent fibres run in the vertebral plexus and reach the loop. The ansa also contains some cardio-accelerator (efferent) fibres.

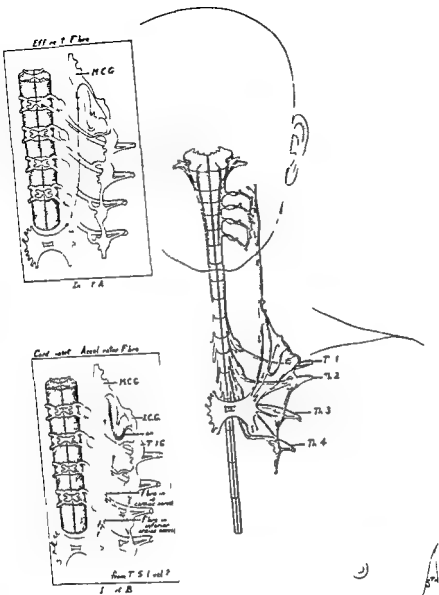
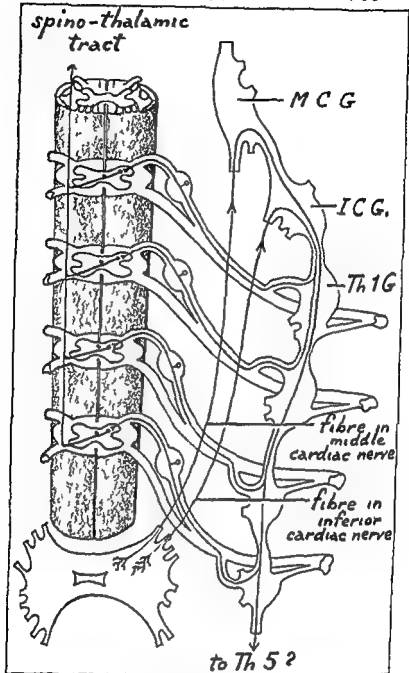


FIG. 30 The Efferent Sympathetic Fibres

FIG. 30 The Efferent Sympathetic Fibres. Almost nothing definite is known of the intra spinal origin of the sympathetic efferent fibres cephalad to the upper thoracic levels. At these levels and at corresponding lower levels these fibres emerge from the antero-lateral portion of the grey matter of the spinal cord and from each spinal cord level the fibres pass by way of white rami to corresponding ganglia in the sympathetic chain. From this chain the efferent fibres form two groups (1) one group continues to peripheral structures (2) the other group to viscera, in this case the heart. The fibres of each group have a relay in the ganglia of the sympathetic chain or in ganglia within collateral plexuses or in the organs themselves. Among the second group there are special fibres the accelerators with a regulatory action on the heart rate.

# Cardio-aortic Afferent Fibres



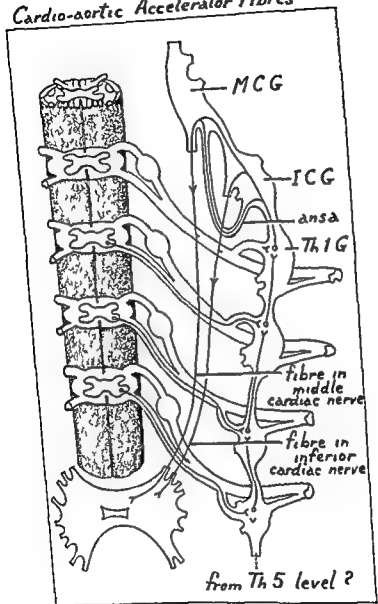
## Insert B

FIG 34 Insert B Cardio aortic Afferent Fibres

*b The ansa subclava (Lussens)* The ansa or loop between the middle and lower cervical ganglia is a nerve strand that leaves the middle cervical sympathetic ganglion and runs downward. It emerges from behind the common carotid artery and crosses the subclavian artery in front, sending nerve twigs to it and to its vascular branches. The loop turns around the subclavian artery lateral to the recurrent nerve receiving a few filaments from this nerve and ending in the inferior cervical (stellate) ganglion.

In rare cases according to Danielopolu's description when the two components of the stellate ganglion have failed to fuse and are well separated as in the dog the ansa remains as an anterior and posterior division each acting as a connecting bridge between the two unfused components. This loop contains afferent fibres from the heart and aorta. Danielopolu believes afferent fibres run in the vertebral plexus and reach the loop. The ansa also contains some cardio accelerator (efferent) fibres.

# *Cardio-aortic Accelerator Fibres*



## *Insert B*

FIG 35 Insert B Cardio-aortic Fibres

FIG 35 Insert B The Efferent Cardio accelerator Fibres These fibres leave the spinal cord at Th 2 3 4 levels sometimes Th 1 and Th 5 and pass through ventral roots of the



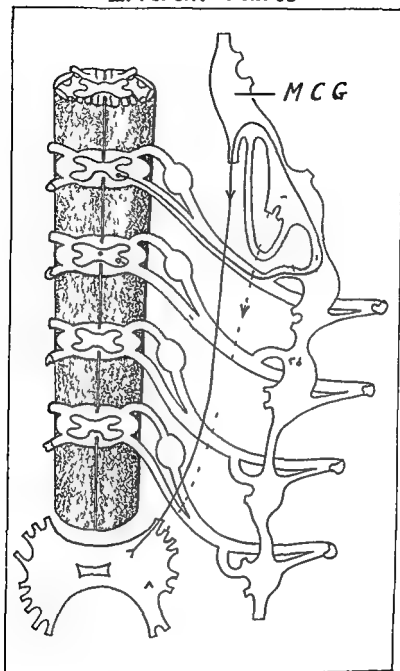
*Efferent Fibres**Insert A*

FIG 35 Insert A Efferent Fibres

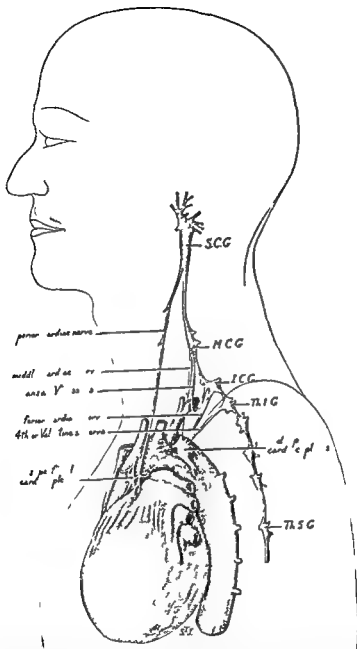


FIG 36 A Left Lateral View of the Sympathetic Cardiac Innervation. The left sympathetic chain is clearly outlined, also its three cardiac nerves, one from each cervical ganglion to the cardiac plexuses; the infrequent fourth (Vagus) nerve is also included. The left superficial cardiac plexus is placed more ventrally, the left deep cardiac plexus lies behind it and at a slightly higher level. On the right side only a deep plexus exists. The left superior cardiac nerve is connected with the superficial cardiac plexus; the nerves of the other two sympathetic cervical ganglia with the deep plexus. The three cardiac nerves communicate with one another; the fourth, the nerve of Vagus, is not constant. The peculiarly differentiated loop, the ansa vasalis, connects the middle and inferior (stellate) ganglia; the loop curves under the subclavian artery.

thoracic nerves and associated white rami to corresponding ganglia in the upper thoracic sympathetic chain. Many fibres relay here: those that emerge from the stellate or middle cervical sympathetic ganglion arrive at the cardiac plexuses by the inferior and middle cardiac nerves. The presence of accelerator fibres in the superior cervical ganglion and superior cardiac nerve is disputed.

Before reaching nerve endings in the heart, sympathetic efferent fibres are broken by a relay in a ganglion of the upper thoracic or lower two cervical sympathetic ganglia as already indicated above, or the relay takes place in a collateral ganglion, i.e. in the cardiac plexuses or in an intracardiac ganglion. In any event, efferent fibres have a preganglionic and postganglionic component: the former is myelinated and passes through white rami; the latter is unmyelinated and, in the case of non-visceral fibres, passes through grey rami.

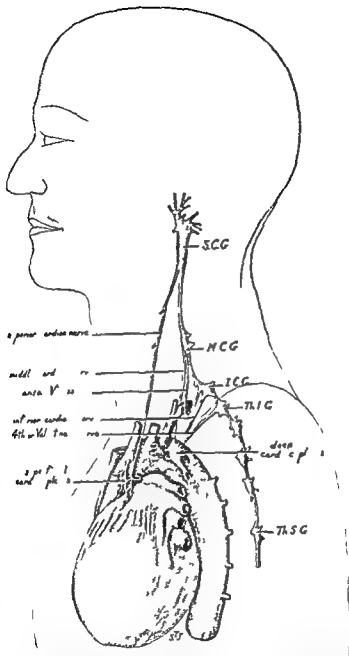
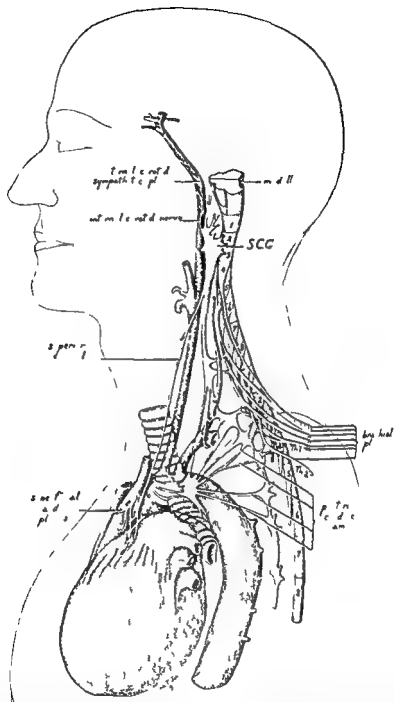


FIG. 36. A Left Lateral View of the Sympathetic Cardiac Innervation. The left sympathetic chain is clearly outlined, also its three cardiac nerves, one from each cervical ganglion to the cardiac plexuses, the infrequent fourth (Valentine's) nerve is also included. The left superficial cardiac plexus is placed more ventrally, the left deep cardiac plexus lies behind it and at a slightly higher level. On the right side only a deep plexus exists. The left superior cardiac nerve is connected with the superficial cardiac plexus, the nerves of the other two sympathetic cervical ganglia with the deep plexus. The three cardiac nerves communicate with one another, the fourth, the nerve of Valentine, is not constant. The specially differentiated loop, the ansa Vasculans, connects the middle and inferior (stellate) ganglia, the loop curves under the subclavian artery.



**FIG 37 Left Lateral View (continued)** This view illustrates the relations to the spinal cord to the brachial plexus and to the sympathetic distribution cephalad to the superior cervical ganglion. The posterior cardiac sympathetic rami already depicted in a previous view (Fig 33 p 148) are readily seen in this drawing. They connect the cardiac (aortic pulmonary) and aortic plexuses to the sympathetic ganglia of Th 1 2 3 4. Preferred pain into the left arm is transmitted by means of a small portion of the brachial plexus. This portion consists of the first and second thoracic nerves. There are special but rarer circumstances when anginal pain enters the lower cervical nerves of the brachial plexus.

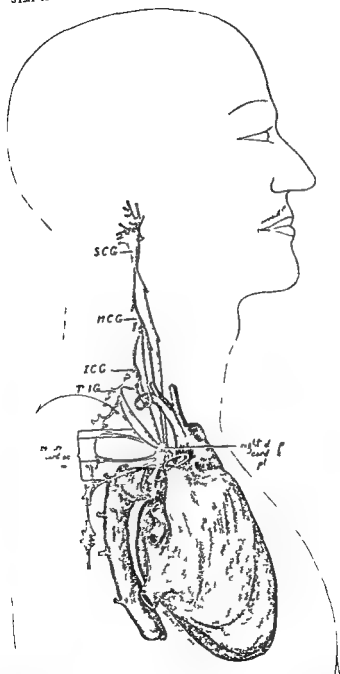


FIG 38 The Cardiac Sympathetic Innervation Viewed from the Right Side Only one cardiac plexus exists on this side a deep one into which all three cardiac sympathetic branches enter

**FIG 39 The Cephalic Portion of the Sympathetic System** The cephalic portion of the sympathetic system begins at the upper pole of the superior cervical ganglion ■ a distinct upward prolongation this prolongation evolved as an upward extension of the primitive sympathetic trunk develops an extensive network that follows the course of the cranial vascular supply (Fig 37 p 158) The network grows very diffuse (Fig 39 p 161) in it lie many tiny ganglia and plexuses and among these almost numberless ganglia and plexuses some are clearly defined practically constant in location and possess a special significance

Four macroscopic ganglia are prominent namely the ciliary or ophthalmic the sphenopalatine or Meckel's the otic and the submaxillary Of equal importance are the sympathetic components present in the nodosal petrosal geniculate and semilunar ganglia In many of the smaller plexuses minute nameless ganglia are imbedded

The upward extension of the superior cervical ganglion known as the internal carotid nerve forms two main plexuses The first is the internal carotid plexus and is developed by two branches that emerge from this internal carotid nerve A coarse plexus is formed that surrounds most but not all of the circumference of the internal carotid artery This internal carotid plexus sends shoots to the internal carotid artery and by fine filaments communicates with the semilunar (fifth nerve) ganglion and with the sixth nerve The plexus receives branches from the tympanic plexus through the inferior carotico tympanic nerve known also as the deep small petrosal nerve and from the sphenopalatine ganglion via the deep petrosal nerve The internal carotid plexus with the same named artery pass through the carotid canal and reach the cavernous sinus At this point the plexus is called the cavernous plexus

The cavernous plexus sends communicating filaments to the third and fourth cranial nerves and to the ophthalmic division of the fifth nerve (According to some anatomists Toldt ■ also Spalteholz ■ the cavernous plexus is connected to the tympanic plexus by the small deep petrosal nerve) The cavernous sinus is connected to the ciliary ganglion by means of the long sensory root and also by a sympathetic motor root of the ciliary ganglion The plexus also gives off twigs to the carotid artery plexus and to the plexus on the small arterial branches that enter the pituitary gland and the dura mater The cavernous plexus finally breaks up into delicate terminal filaments which anastomose freely forming fine plexuses on the terminal arterial twigs On these terminal divisions of the internal carotid artery nerves branches and plexuses take the name of the artery on which they lie the four largest forming the plexuses of the anterior and middle cerebral arteries

From the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion posterior branches reach the ninth the tenth and the eleventh cranial nerves and branches also go to the muscles and bones of the head and to the external carotid plexus with its arterial extensions and finally to the pharynx esophagus and larynx According to Danielopolu ■ François Franck demonstrated that the anastomoses between the superior cervical ganglion and the cranial nerves contain cardiac aortic sensory fibres which influence the blood pressure through the bulbar vasomotor centers According to Danielopolu ■ also the anterior branch of the superior cervical ganglion together with the carotid plexus and cavernous plexus with its anastomosing branch for the Cerebral ganglion are of special importance in connection with the spread of trigeminal pain into the head

According to most authorities Danielopolu is an exception the cranial sympathetic supply contains efferent fibres only In order to explain sensory effects that are registered in the structures supplied by these efferent fibres it is held that afferent paths in the vagus (see footnote to the text for Fig 34 p 150) reach the upper cervical sympathetic ganglion stimulating its motor cells into action The effects of this are then distributed along the sympathetic cranial innervation We shall see however that afferent pathways in the vagus are able to go directly to the medulla (see Chapter VIII)





**Fig 39 The Cephalic Portion of the Sympathetic System** The cephalic portion of the sympathetic system begins at the upper pole of the superior cervical ganglion as a distinct upward prolongation this prolongation evolved as an upward extension of the primitive sympathetic trunk develops an extensive network that follows the course of the cranial vascular supply (Fig 37 p 158) The network grows very diffuse (Fig 39 p 161) in it lie many tiny ganglia and plexuses and among these almost numberless ganglia and plexuses some are clearly defined practically constant in location and possess a special significance

Four macroscopic ganglia are prominent namely the ciliary or ophthalmic the sphenopalatine or Meckel's the otic and the submaxillary Of equal importance are the sympathetic components present in the nodose petrosal geniculate and semilunar ganglia In many of the smaller plexuses minute nameless ganglia are imbedded

The upward extension of the superior cervical ganglion known as the internal carotid nerve forms two main plexuses The first is the internal carotid plexus and is developed by two branches that emerge from this internal carotid nerve A coarse plexus is formed that surrounds most but not all of the circumference of the internal carotid artery This internal carotid plexus sends shoots to the internal carotid artery and by fine filaments communicates with the semilunar (fifth nerve) ganglion and with the 11th nerve The plexus receives branches from the tympanic plexus through the inferior carotico tympanic nerve known also as the deep small petrosal nerve and from the sphenopalatine ganglion via the deep petrosal nerve The internal carotid plexus with the same named artery pass through the carotid canal and reach the cavernous sinus At this point the plexus is called the cavernous plexus

The cavernous plexus sends communicating filaments to the third and fourth cranial nerves and to the ophthalmic division of the fifth nerve (According to some anatomists Toldt<sup>28</sup> also Spalteholz<sup>29</sup> the cavernous plexus is connected to the tympanic plexus by the small deep petrosal nerve) The cavernous sinus is connected to the ciliary ganglion by means of the long sensory root and also by a sympathetic motor root of the ciliary ganglion The plexus also gives off twigs to the carotid artery plexus and to the plexuses on the small arterial branches that enter the pituitary gland and the dura mater The cavernous plexus finally breaks up into delicate terminal filaments which anastomose freely forming fine plexuses on the terminal arterial twigs On these terminal divisions of the internal carotid artery nerves branches and plexuses take the name of the artery on which they lie the four largest forming the plexuses of the anterior and middle cerebral arteries

From the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion posterior branches reach the ninth the tenth and the eleventh cranial nerves and branches also go to the muscles and bones of the head and to the external carotid plexus with its arterial extensions and finally to the pharynx esophagus and larynx According to Danielopolu<sup>3</sup> François Franck demonstrated that the anastomoses between the superior cervical ganglion and the cranial nerves contain cardio-aortic sensory fibres which influence the blood pressure through the bulbar vasomotor centers According to Danielopolu<sup>3</sup> also the anterior branch of the superior cervical ganglion together with the carotid plexus and cavernous plexus with its anastomosing branch for the Gasserian ganglion are of special importance in connection with the spread of anginal pain into the head

According to most authorities Danielopolu is an exception the cranial sympathetic supply contains efferent fibres only In order to explain sensory effects that are registered in the structures supplied by these efferent fibres it is held that afferent paths in the vagus (see footnote to the text for Fig 34 p 150) reach the upper cervical sympathetic ganglion stimulating its motor cell into action The effects of this are then distributed along the sympathetic cranial innervation We shall see however that afferent pathways in the vagus are able to go directly to the medulla (see Chapter VIII)

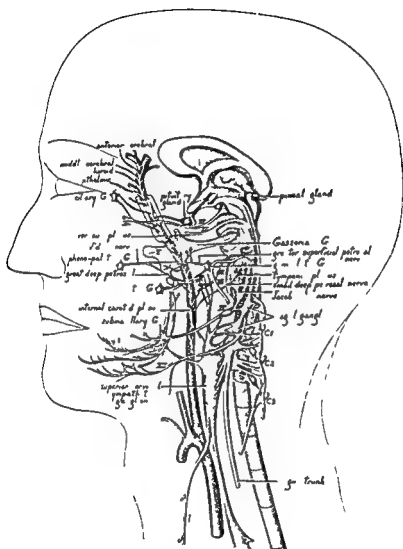


FIG. 39 The Cephalic Portion of the Sympathetic System

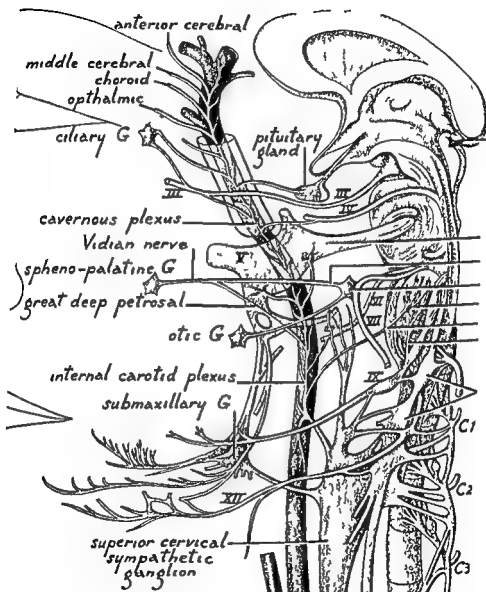


FIG 39A Enlargement of Part of Fig 39

FIGS 40A and 40B The Cardiac Plexuses and Related Plexuses The location of these plexuses a deep one on each side and a superficial one on the left side only has already been mentioned They are made up of numberless fibers from the vagus and sympathetic cardiac nerves all three plexuses form one free anastomosing network. Ta. Herf claims the plexuses receive an unconscious nerve from the ansa hypoglossus.

The superficial cardiac plexus is located below the aortic arch immediately above the right pulmonary artery It is formed by the following structures (1) the left upper vagal cardiac branches from the vagus trunk (some texts Cunningham, etc mention the lower x group of these upper cardiac branches) (2) the left superior sympathetic nerve from the left superior cervical sympathetic ganglion (3) branches that communicate with the deep plexus on the

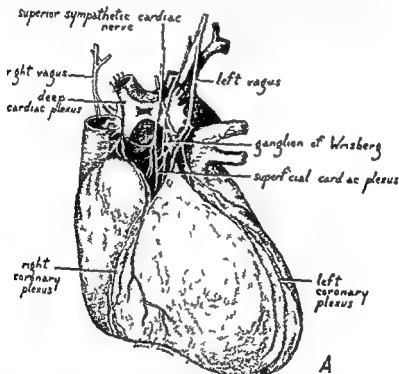


FIG 40A Front View of Cardiac Plexuses

left side (4) the circumferential ganglion (of Wrisberg) in this superficial plexus (5) and according to Tandler the plexus occasionally receives fibers from the left inferior cardiac nerve and from the right cardiac inferior nerve and from rami from this nerve

From this superficial plexus branches go to the deep cardiac plexus to the right anterior coronary plexus and to the left anterior pulmonary plexus

The deep cardiac plexuses one on each side lie behind the aortic arch and anterior to the tracheal bifurcation Both plexuses communicate freely and may be looked upon as one network made up of (1) the right sympathetic cardiac superior middle and inferior nerves (2) the left sympathetic middle and inferior cardiac nerves (3) all the cervical and thoracic cardiac branches of the vagus except the left superior cardiac branch (4) the nerve of Valentine

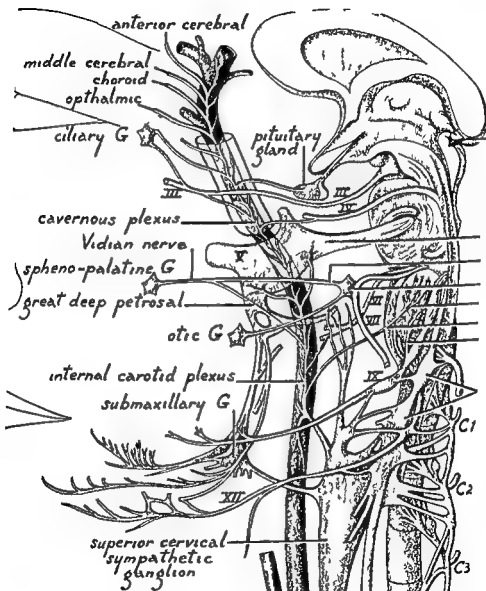


FIG 39\ Enlargement of Part of Fig 39

FIGS 40A and 40B The Cardiac Plexuses and Related Plexuses The location of these plexuses a deep one on each side and a superficial one on the left side only has already been mentioned They are made up of numberless fibers from the vagus and sympathetic cardiac nerves all three plexuses form one free anastomosing network Tandler<sup>17</sup> claims the plexuses receive an inconstant nerve from the ansa hypoglossus

The superficial cardiac plexus is located below the aortic arch immediately above the right pulmonary artery It is formed by the following structures (1) the left upper vagal cardiac branches from the vagus trunk (some texts Cunningham etc mention the inferior group of these upper cardiac branches) (2) the left superior sympathetic nerve from the left superior cervical sympathetic ganglion (3) branches that communicate with the deep plexus on this

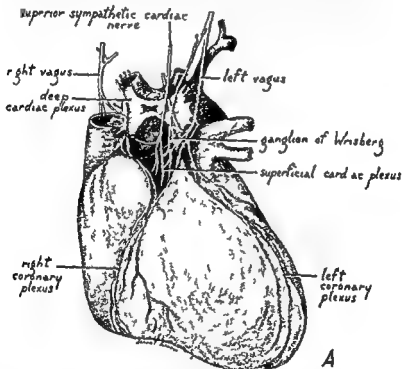


FIG 40A Front View of Cardiac Plexuses

left side (4) the cardiac ganglion (of Wrisberg) in this superficial plexus (5) and according to Tandler<sup>17</sup> the plexus occasionally receives fibres from the left inferior cardiac nerve and from the right cardiac inferior nerve and from rami from this nerve

From this superficial plexus branches go to the deep cardiac plexus to the right anterior coronary plexus and to the left anterior pulmonary plexus

The deep cardiac plexuses are on each side lie behind the aortic arch and anterior to the thoracic bifurcation Both plexuses communicate freely and may be looked upon as one network made up of (1) the right sympathetic cardiac superior middle and inferior nerves (2) the left sympathetic middle and inferior cardiac nerves (3) all the cervical and thoracic cardiac branches of the vagus excepting the left superior cardiac branch (4) the nerve of Valentine

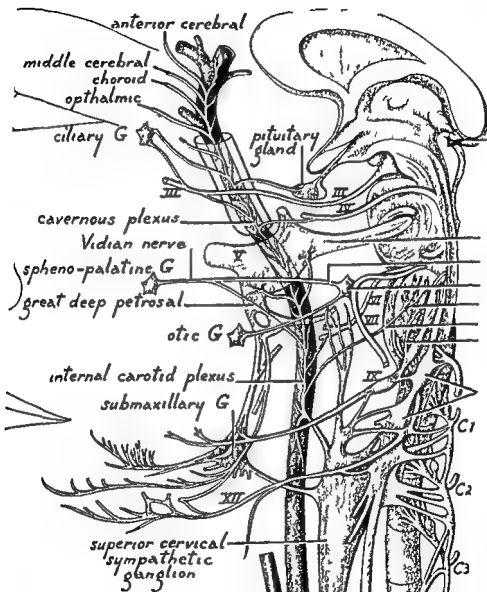


FIG 39A Enlargement of Part of Fig 39

In each layer these terminating nerve fibres have somewhat different arrangements. In the epicardium they may or may not have a capsule Michailow<sup>11</sup> in the myocardium only the middle portion of the musculature receives plexal fibres the superficial musculature is innervated by the epicardial plexus close to it the inner musculature by an endocardial plexus A subendocardial layer exists also and consists of very fine fibres that penetrate the subendocardial layer Toldt<sup>12</sup> and extend to the ventricles auricles papillary muscles and papillary tendons

Fine ganglia probably exist in the heart substance Stöhr<sup>13</sup> In lower forms the calf for example they are plentiful Remak<sup>14</sup> first described them in man their presence is controversial Authorities like Smirnov<sup>15</sup> Valedensky<sup>16</sup> described tiny ganglia in the wall of the ventricles down to the apex Jacques<sup>17</sup> Vignal<sup>18</sup> and Dogiel<sup>19</sup> in the upper one third or one half of the ventricular wall only others limited to the sulcus area The ganglia in all instances appear to be placed superficially on the myocardium Wilson<sup>20</sup> is authority for finding them as multipolar ganglionated cells in the bundle of His and Tandler<sup>21</sup> in the posterior auricular wall terminal sulcus and interauricular septum There is no unanimity of opinion on the existence or location of motor nerve endings in the heart (Retzius<sup>22</sup>) it has been stated that only the myocardium contains them

Sensory nerve endings have been described in all three heart layers and Tandler stresses this pancardial arrangement The heart and large vessels have a rich sensory innervation Koldfer<sup>23</sup> Jegorow<sup>24</sup> Dogiel<sup>19</sup> described rich supplies especially in the adventitia of the large vessels Manouelian<sup>25</sup> described sensory nerve endings in the aortic wall also Smirnov<sup>15</sup> who believed the plexal network he saw represented the origin of the depressor nerve The heart possesses an extensive supply of nerve endings according to Dogiel<sup>19</sup> Michaelow<sup>11</sup> Schmidt<sup>26</sup> Jacques<sup>17</sup> Demoor<sup>27</sup> Woodward<sup>28</sup>

The pulmonary plexuses Branches from the 1st 2nd 3rd 4th thoracic ganglia and pulmonary branches of the vagus nerves unite to form a network behind the tracheal bifurcation The network surrounds the trachea anteriorly and posteriorly and nerve fibres leave this network to accompany the pulmonary artery to the right and left hilus At the hilus anterior and posterior pulmonary plexuses are formed

The esophageal plexuses receive supplies from the cardiac plexuses



the fourth cardiac nerve arising from the 1st thoracic ganglionic component of the stellate ganglion, and (5) communicating twigs from the superficial plexus. From these deep plexuses branches go to (1) the left and right antrum of the heart (2) to the left and right anterior pulmonary plexuses (3) to the left and right coronary plexuses (4) and to the superficial cardiac plexus. The deep cardiac plexuses as a whole separate into two good sized coronary plexuses, one to the right and the other to the left side.

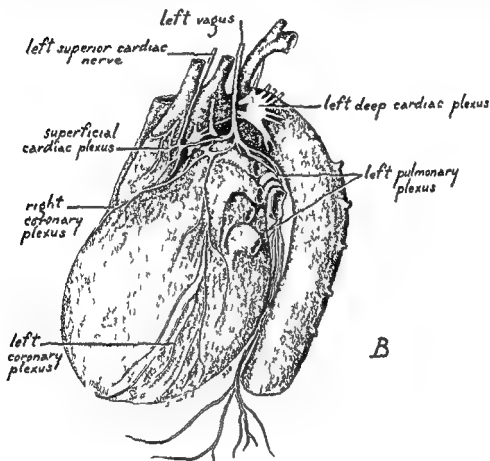


FIG. 40B Lateral View of Cardiac Plexus

The right coronary plexus consists of fibres from the deep cardiac plexuses and from the superficial cardiac plexus and surrounds the aorta and the orifice of the right major coronary vessel. This plexus follows chiefly the right ventricle and the right auricle.

The left coronary plexus is formed mainly from the deep cardiac plexus, but the superficial cardiac plexus also sends fibres to it. This coronary plexus runs downward behind the pulmonary artery to reach the origin of the left coronary artery and continues its ramifications so that one part of the plexus accompanies the course of the descending ramus of the coronary artery in this way reaching the anterior surface of the heart down to the apex; the other portion of the plexus runs to the margo obtusus of the heart. A very small part of this plexus reaches the posterior surface of the heart; this surface is supplied mainly by the right coronary plexus.

Spreading along perivascular connective tissues, nerves from these plexuses form a fine network, and this in turn a delicate fibrillar network that ends in the epi-myocardial layers.

In each layer these terminating nerve fibres have somewhat different arrangements. In the epicardium they may or may not have a capsule. Michailow<sup>22</sup> in the myocardium only the middle portion of the musculature receives plexal fibres the superficial musculature is innervated by the epicardial plexus close to it the inner musculature by an endocardial plexus. A subendocardial layer exists also and consists of very fine fibers that penetrate the subendocardial layer. Toldt<sup>23</sup> and extend to the ventricles auricles papillary muscles and papillary tendons.

Fine ganglia probably exist in the heart substance. Stohr<sup>24</sup> in lower forms the calf for example they are plentiful. Renak<sup>25</sup> first described them in man their presence is controversial. Authorities like Smirnov<sup>26</sup> Valedensky<sup>27</sup> described tiny ganglia in the wall of the ventricles down to the apex. Jacques<sup>28</sup> Vignal<sup>29</sup> and Dogiel<sup>30</sup> in the upper one third or one-half of the ventricular wall only others limited to the sulcus area. The ganglia in all instances appear to be placed superficially on the myocardium. Wilson<sup>31</sup> is authority for finding them as multipolar ganglionated cells in the bundle of His and Tandler<sup>32</sup> in the posterior auricular wall terminal sulcus and interauricular septum. There is no unanimity of opinion on the existence or location of motor nerve endings in the heart (Retzius<sup>33</sup>) it has been stated that only the myocardium contains them.

Sensory nerve endings have been described in all three heart layers and Tandler stresses this plexocardial arrangement. The heart and large vessels have a rich sensory innervation. Kolliker<sup>34</sup> Jegorow<sup>35</sup> Dogiel<sup>36</sup> described rich supplies especially in the adventitia of the large vessels. Manouelian<sup>37</sup> described sensory nerve endings in the aortic wall also Smirnov<sup>38</sup> who believed the spreading network he saw represented the origin of the depressor nerve. The heart possesses an extensive supply of nerve endings according to Dogiel<sup>39</sup> Michailow<sup>40</sup> Schmidt<sup>41</sup> Jacques<sup>42</sup> D. Moor<sup>43</sup> Woolward<sup>44</sup>.

*The pulmonary plexuses.* Branches from the 1st 2nd 3rd 4th thoracic ganglia and pulmonary branches of the vagus nerves unite to form a network behind the tracheal bifurcation. This network surrounds the trachea anteriorly and posteriorly and nerve fibres leave this network to accompany the pulmonary artery to the right and left hilus. At the hilus anterior and posterior pulmonary plexuses are formed.

The bronchopulmonary plexuses receive supplies from the cardiac plexuses.

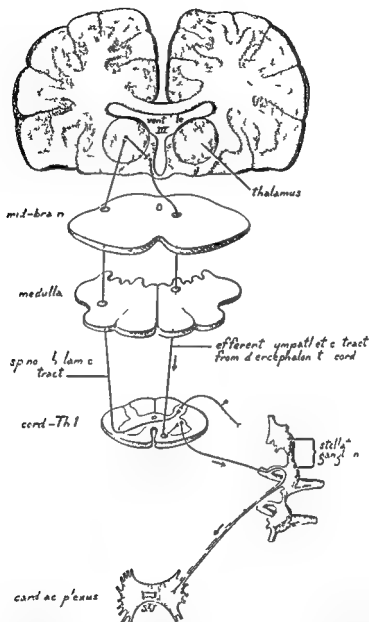


FIG 41 Fibres from the Hypothalamus to the Cardiac Plexuses This diagram is slightly modified after that of Beattie Brow and Long<sup>1</sup> It illustrates that fibre tracts pass down from the nuclei in the posterior part of the hypothalamus to the spinal cord The fibres emerge at the upper thoracic level reach the sympathetic stellate ganglion and thence the heart Experimental study on these tracts by these investigators is based on the earlier observations of Levy<sup>15</sup> who discovered that ventricular extrasystoles from chloroform anesthesia were abolished by extirpation of the stellate ganglion or by removal of the posterior hypothalamic nuclei Beattie Brow and Long not only confirmed this but they were able to trace spino-hypothalamic tracts that underwent degeneration when nuclei in the posterior portion of the hypothalamus were experimentally damaged

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- BEATTIE J, BROWN G K AND LONG C A H Proc Roy Soc London 1930 106 (ser B) 253-255
- BRAECCKER W Der Brustteil des vegetativen Nervensystems und seine klinisch-chirurgische Bedeutung Beitr z Klin d Tuberk 1927 66 1
- CANNON W B, LEWIS J T AND BRITTON S W A lasting preparation of the denervated heart, with evidence for accessory accelerator fibres from the thoracic sympathetic chain Amer J Physiol 1929 7: 326
- CUNNINGHAM D J Textbook of anatomy 10th ed. edit. by Braith J C and Jamieson J B Oxford University Press 1931
- DANIELOPOLO D L'angine de poitrine et l'angine abdominale Paris, Masson et Cie 1927
- DEMOOR ET HEYMAN'S Etude d'innervation du coeur des vertebres à l'aide de la methode de Golgi Arch d Biol 1894 13
- DOUGLASS A S Die sensiblen Nervenendigungen im Herzen und in den Blutgefasse der Säugetiere Arch f mikroskop Anat 1893 57 44 Zur Frage über den feineren Bau der Herzganglion der Menschen und der Säugetiere Arch f mikroskop Anat 1897 53 237
- FRANCE F Quoted by Danielopolu D L'angine de poitrine et l'angine abdominale Paris Masson et Cie 1927
- JACQUES P Recherches sur les nerfs du coeur chez la grenouille et les mammifères. J d L Anat et d la Physiol 1894 30 67
- JEGOROFF I Zur Lehre von der Innervation der Blutgefasse Du Bois Arch Supplementary volume 1892 69
- JONESON B AND FANCHESCO M Comp Rend Soc d Biol 1927 97 977 an 1980
- VON KOLLIKER A Untersuchungen über die letzten Endigungen der Nerven Zeitschr f wiss Zool 1863 17 149
- KUNTZ A Distribution of sympathetic rami to the brachial plexus Arch Surg 1927 15 811
- KUNTZ A AND MOREHEAD E A Arch Surg 1930 20 607
- LEVY A G The exciting causes of ventricular fibrillation in animals under chloroform anesthesia Heart 1913 1 319
- The genesis of ventricular extrasystoles under chloroform with special reference to consecutive fibrillation Heart 1914 5 799
- Further remarks on ventricular extrasystoles and fibrillation under chloroform Heart 1919 7 105
- MAGNAN L Recherches sur le plexus cardiaque et sur l'innervation de l'aorte Ann d l'Inst Pasteur 1912 28
- MICHAELSON S Ein neuer Typus eines eingekapselten sensiblen Nerven en l'apparat Anat Anz 1906 31 81
- Das intrakardiale Nervensystem des Frosches und die Methode von Ramon y Cajal Internat Monatschr f Anat u Physiol 1908 25 352
- Die Nerven des Ferkardiums Anat Anz 1908 3 8
- Zur Frage über den feineren Bau des intrakardialen Nervensystems der Säugetiere Internat Monatschr f Anat u Physiol 1908 25 43
- Innervation des Herzens im Lichte der neuesten Forschungen Zeitschr f wiss Zool 1912 99 532
- MYER B J AND WHITE J C Pain pathways in the sympathetic nervous system Clinical evidence Arch Neurol and Psychiat 1931 25 996
- REMARK R Neurologische Experimenten an Müllers Arch 1844 5 463
- REIZERS G Zur Kenntnis der motorischen Nervenendigungen Biol Unters 1892 3 41
- SCHMIDT A Sur la question de l'innervation du coeur de mammifères Arch. russ. de path et de Méd Clin et de Bactér 1837

- <sup>22</sup> VON SCHUIMACHER S Zur Frage der Herzinnervation bei den Säugetieren Anat Anz 1902 21 1 430  
Die Herznerven der Säugetiere und der Menschen Sitzungsber d Akad Wien Mathem naturw Klin 1903 Abt 3  
Beitrage zur Kenntnis des Baues und der Funktion der Lamellenkörperchen Arch f mikroskop Anat 1911 77 157
- <sup>23</sup> SINGER R AND SPIEGEL I A Der Weg des Herz und Aortenschmerzes über die Hinterwurzeln zum Zentral Nervensystem Zeitschr f d ges exp Med 1921 55 607
- <sup>24</sup> SITTAU A Über die sensiblen Nervenendigungen im Herzen bei Amphibien und Säugetiere Anat Anz, 1895 10 731  
Zur Frage von der Endigung der motorischen Nerven in den Herzmuskeln der Wirbeltiere Anat Anz 1900 18 105
- <sup>25</sup> SPALTEHOLZ W Handatlas of human anatomy Translated 6th ed Philadelphia and London J B Lippincott & Co vol 3
- <sup>26</sup> STÖHR P JR Mikroskopische Anatomie des vegetativen Nervensystem Berlin J Springer 1928
- <sup>27</sup> TANDLER J Anatomie des Herzens In Bardelebens Handb d Anat 1913
- <sup>28</sup> TOLDT C Anatomische Atlas 16 Aufl Berlin u Wien Urban u Schwarzenberg 1934 vol 3
- <sup>29</sup> VALENTINSKY A Zur Frage über die Nervenknoten im Herzventrikel einiger Säugetiere Anat Hefte 1905 27 287  
Linige Ergänzungen zur Frage nach der Gegenwart und der Verteilung der Herzganglion in den Herzkammern einiger Säugetiere und des Menschen Anat Anz 1910 37 365
- <sup>30</sup> VIGVAL W Recherches sur l'appareil ganglionnaire du coeur des vertébrés Arch d Physiol 1881 vol 3 (ser 2)
- <sup>31</sup> WILSON J G The nerves of the atrio ventricular bundle Proc Roy Soc London vol 81 (ser B)
- <sup>32</sup> WOOLWARD H H Innervation of the heart J Anat 1926 60 345

Other references and hand atlases consulted in the preparation of this chapter are listed below

- BOURCPRY J M AND JACOB N H Traité complet de l'anatomie de l'homme comprenant la médecine opératoire avec planches d'après nature Paris C A Delaunay 1831 and 1854
- BRAUS H Anatomie des Menschen Centrales Nervensystem von Curt Flitz Berlin J Springer 1925
- DEJERINE J J Semiologie des affections du système nerveux Paris Masson et Cie 1924
- GRAY H Text book of anatomy 1935
- MAXIMOW A A text book of histology Completed and edited by Bloom W Philadelphia Wm Saunders Co 1930
- MORRIS H Human anatomy 1933
- PENSA A AND FAVARO G Tratto di anatomia sistemica Torino Unione tip edit Torinese 1933
- PIERSOL G A Human anatomy 9th ed 1930
- PITRES A AND TESTUT L Les nerfs en schémas anatomie et physiopathologie Paris G Doin et Cie 1925
- SABOTTA J Atlas der deskriptiven Anatomie des Menschen J F Lehmann 9 auf München 1937
- TESTUT L Traité d'anatomie humaine 8th ed l'évée par Lajaret A Paris G Doin et Cie 1928
- WALDREN J AND GREEN R M Handbook of anatomy Harvard University Press Cambridge Mass 1934

## CHAPTER VIII

# The Vagal Supply to the Heart and Aorta

THE VAGUS nerve consists of a large and extensive system of which the cardio-aortic innervation is but a smaller part. To understand the anatomic and physiologic relations of the cardioaortic innervation other portions of the vagus system are included. At the onset the question is relevant: is the vagus truly an afferent conductor of cardio-aortic pain? That it transmits pain from the musculature for example of the bronchi the intestines is not disputed but a similar activity with respect to the cardiovascular structures is not as definite. In its primitive form the vagus is a cardio-gastric nerve later in higher animal forms it assumes a pulmonary function but it retains always its primary character as a supervisor and regulator of the heart and aorta of the gastro-intestinal tract and of the lungs. For the transmission of cardio-aortic pain the sympathetic nerves are adequate in every way and many experimental and clinical observations are on hand to demonstrate that severing of sympathetic routes will abolish pain. Similar conclusive data on the cardio-aortic vagal innervation does not exist as far as we know.

A description of the vagal supply to the heart and aorta however cannot be omitted first because vagal manifestations of angina pectoris are part of the mass action of the autonomic system second because dramatic *constructive* features in the throat in the epigastrium and in the chest itself are induced by motor nerves which belong to this system third the vagus regulates the heart rate influences the amplitude of heart muscle contraction and through the aorta controls changes in blood pressure lastly the vagus in some portions and under some circumstances acts in a way to permit the interpretation that it may be an accessory conductor of pain.

The vagal cardio-aortic innervation possesses a large number of fibers that enter the cardio-aortic plexuses connecting with many other plexuses in the thorax (Fig. 46-48 also Chapter IX). In all these plexuses vagal fibers mingle freely but effect no anastomoses with similar plexal fibers of the sympathetics. The tracts for the heart and aorta from the vagus spring from the trunk ganglia and in the cervical region from the trunk and the right recurrent laryngeal nerve in the thorax from the trunk and the left recurrent laryngeal nerve. From the cardiac and aortic plexuses afferent fibers are described as running upward to the trunk ganglia and thence into the medulla where the fibers reach vagal nuclear structures and where they may intersect cranial nerve fibers notably those in the sensory component of the fifth nerve. Afferent

fibers run between the trunk ganglia and the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion. In these ganglia lie nuclei of (motor) efferent fibers that supply cranial structures.

A special nerve strand, the depressor nerve, is considered by some authorities as a separate distinct afferent pathway. A description of this nerve will be found in Chapter IX.

The vagus has many anatomical connections with other nerve structures (Fig. 45, p. 176). In the chest and neck, its cardiac branches communicate freely with the branches of all the cervical sympathetic ganglia. It sends connections into the ansa Vieussens and shares richly in the formation of many plexuses in the chest and neck. In the cervical region it anastomoses with the 1st and 2nd cervical nerves, bringing pain into the structures supplied by these nerves. Its cephalad connections into the superior cervical ganglion and its entry and termination into the medulla have already been mentioned. Vagal fibers have also been discovered in the sympathetic innervation, for example in the superior sympathetic cardiac nerve. Such fibers have been traced to the vagal trunk ganglia and are an example of the presence of fibers of one autonomic division within the other division. This interlacement is not of great moment according to our present understanding, since the fibers of each division retain their inherent physiological character: cholinergic or adrenergic. The anastomoses between the vagus and various portions of the sympathetic system and the profuse mingling of end fibers of both systems in many plexuses is probably of anatomic interest only and without any implication that impulses from one autonomic division actually pass into the other autonomic division.



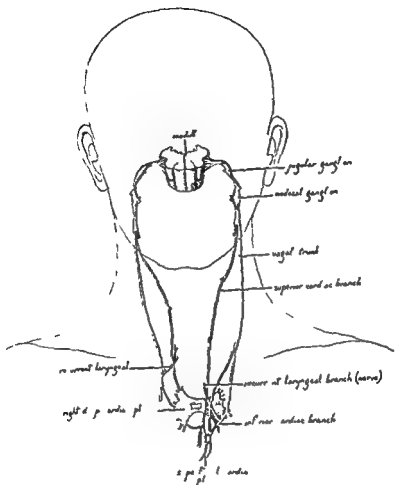


FIG. 42. The Vagus Nerve from the Brain to the Cardiac Plexuses

FIG. 42. The Vagus Nerve from the Brain to the Cardiac Plexuses. The heart and related structures receive a vagal as well as sympathetic innervation. With exceptions to be noted later, the vagus nerve has a general symmetrical distribution.

In the medulla, the vagus has two effector nuclei and one receptor tract. The nuclei consist of (1) the dorsal motor nucleus which is purely sympathetic in its action, and (2) the nucleus ambiguus which is somatic (motor) in function and is therefore under voluntary control.



Fibres from the second nucleus (ambiguus) go to other cranial nerves and in connection with angina pectoris, are of special interest by virtue of their innervation of laryngeal muscles. The receptor station the nucleus of the tractus solitarius is a longitudinal column of cells with which dendrites of the tractus solitarius make connections. The visceral afferent fibres that run in the vagus system have their cell bodies in the trunk ganglia chiefly in the nodosal. The central extensions of these fibres proceed to the nucleus of the tractus solitarius and form synaptic connections with it.

From the upper ganglion of the trunk, the jugular ganglion smaller and higher than the nodosal, two branches emerge (1) a meningeal to the dura mater in the posterior fossa of the base of the skull and (2) an auricular branch the so called Arnold's nerve. This latter communicates with (a) the tympanic branch of the glossopharyngeal nerve (IX) and with the facial nerve within the aqueduct of Fallopius. The auricular nerve supplies the back of the pinna of the ear, the bony part of the external auditory canal and the outer surface of the lower portion of the tympanic membrane. The nerve communicates superficially with the posterior auricular nerve. The jugular ganglion anastomoses with (1) the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion, (2) the spinal accessory nerve and (3) the petrous ganglion of the glossopharyngeal nerve (not constant).

The nodosal ganglion is larger, lower and has the following branches: (1) A pharyngeal nerve which forms the pharyngeal plexus with the pharyngeal branch of the glossopharyngeal nerve and with the branch from the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion. This plexus preads to the muscles of the pharynx and soft palate excepting the stylopharyngeus and tensor palati muscles. (2) A superior laryngeal nerve which divides into two unequal divisions: (a) a large internal laryngeal nerve and (b) a small external laryngeal nerve. The former is distributed to the mucous membranes of the larynx, reaches the epiglottis and the base of the tongue and communicates with the inferior laryngeal nerve. The small external laryngeal nerve supplies the inferior constrictor muscles of the pharynx and ends in the cricothyroid. The nodosal ganglion communicates with (1) the superior cervical ganglion, (2) the hypoglossal nerve, (3) the loop that connects the first and second cervical nerves and (4) the accessory portion of the spinal accessory nerve.

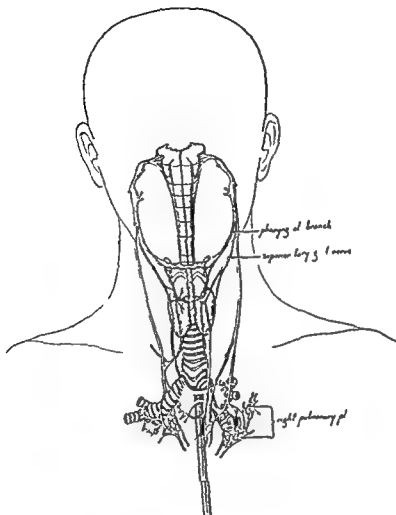


FIG 43 The Vagus Nerve (continued)

FIG 43 The Vagus (continued) *The cervical branches* These arise in the neck and consist of (1) cardiac branches and (2) the right recurrent laryngeal nerve

(1) The cardiac branches come off the trunk. There are upper and lower groups or divisions of these fibres. On the right side both sets, upper and lower, descend into the thorax behind the subclavian artery and then proceed along the side of the trachea to enter the deep cardiac plexus. On the left side both groups separate as they enter the thorax. The superior division (or nerve) descends along the trachea and goes to the left deep cardiac plexus; the inferior

division (or nerve) runs alongside the vagus trunk to the aortic arch and thence to the superficial cardiac plexus

(2) The right recurrent laryngeal (*inferior laryngeal*) nerve springs from the trunk of the vagus at the root of the neck, as the trunk crosses the first part of the subclavian artery. This recurrent nerve swings around this artery and then travels obliquely upward inward and behind this vessel as well as the common carotid, the inferior thyroid arteries and the thyroid gland. The innervation of the laryngeal muscles represents the termination of this nerve. The following branches leave it in its course:

(a) Branches to the cardiac plexus. These fibres emerge as the nerve proper curves around the subclavian artery; they descend along the trachea and as thoracic branches end in the deep cardiac plexus. (b) The other branches of the right recurrent nerve have at most an indirect relationship to the cardio-aortic innervation. They are as follows: communication fibres to the inferior cervical sympathetic ganglion; these emerge from the nerve behind the subclavian artery; muscular branches to the trachea, esophagus and the inferior constrictor muscle to the pharynx; terminal fibres that supply all the laryngeal muscles excepting the crico-thyroid; and fibres that communicate with the internal laryngeal nerve.

*Thoracic branches.* The thoracic cardiac nerves consist of the left recurrent laryngeal nerve and its branches to the heart and thoracic cardiac branches.

The left recurrent laryngeal nerve leaves the vagus trunk as the latter crosses the aortic arch. The recurrent nerve winds around the aorta external to the ligamentum arteriosum and lying between the trachea and esophagus; it ascends the superior mediastinal space to the neck. The course and relation of both recurrent laryngeal nerves is the same in the neck. The branches of the left nerve are larger and having a shorter distance to travel to join the left deep cardiac plexuses they are accordingly much shorter. Thoracic branches leave the vagus trunk in the superior mediastinal compartment and descend along the trachea to the right deep cardiac plexus.

On the left side the thoracic branches consist of those that leave the loop of the left recurrent laryngeal nerve.

In addition to these left recurrent fibres there are other thoracic vagal fibres for the heart. These spring directly from the vagus trunk in the superior mediastinal compartment and descend along the trachea to the right deep cardiac plexus. The thoracic fibres on the left side are the continuation of the cervical branches that emerge from the loop of the left recurrent laryngeal nerve.

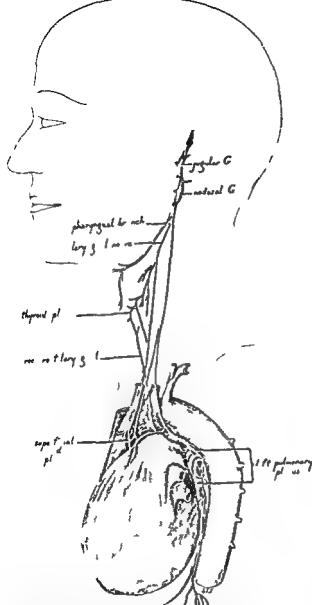
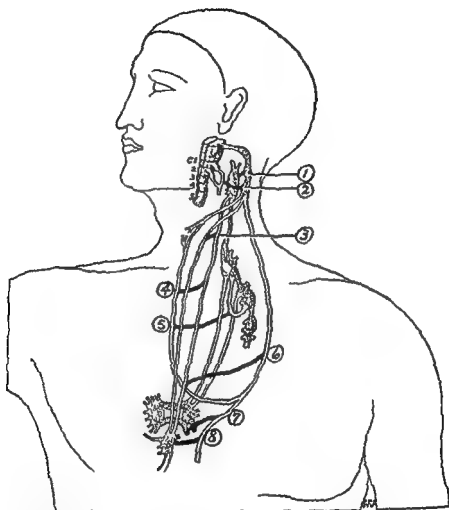
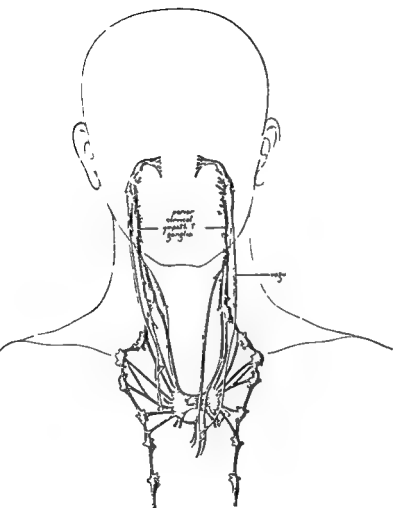


FIG. 44. A Lateral View of the Left Vagus Nerve. The upper divisions of cervical vagal branches converge upon the pharynx, larynx and thyroid regions. A lower division descends to the superficial cardiac plexus on this side as already stated. The recurrent laryngeal (inferior laryngeal) nerve on this side winds around the aortic arch and then ascends alongside the deeper part of the trachea finally communicating with branches of internal laryngeal nerve. It has an anastomosis with the branch of the inferior cervical sympathetic ganglion. The cardiac fibres that leave the loop of this recurrent nerve form a thicker, larger and shorter bundle compared with the right side. The other branches of this nerve have already been described.



**FIG. 45** *Connections between the Vagal and Sympathetic Systems in Relation to Anginal Pain* 1 Connections between the superior sympathetic cervical and the vagal ganglia 2 Vagal connections to C1 and C2 3 6 Connections between the superior branches of both systems—similar communications connect the middle and inferior branches 4 Anastomoses between the recurrent laryngeal nerve and the superior sympathetic branch 5 Connections between the recurrent laryngeal nerve and the ansa 7 Anastomoses between the vagal and sympathetic fibres at the cardiac plexus 8 Vagal connections into the superficial cardiac plexus

Note particularly these relationships and how they lend support but no proof that stimuli from one system might overflow into the other system especially at the level of the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion and of the trunk ganglia of the vagus. This would make it possible for afferent vagal impulses to reach the brain structures through the superior sympathetic cervical ganglion even if the cervical ganglionated chain below this level were interrupted.



The Sympathetic and Vagal Cardiac Innervations

FIG 46

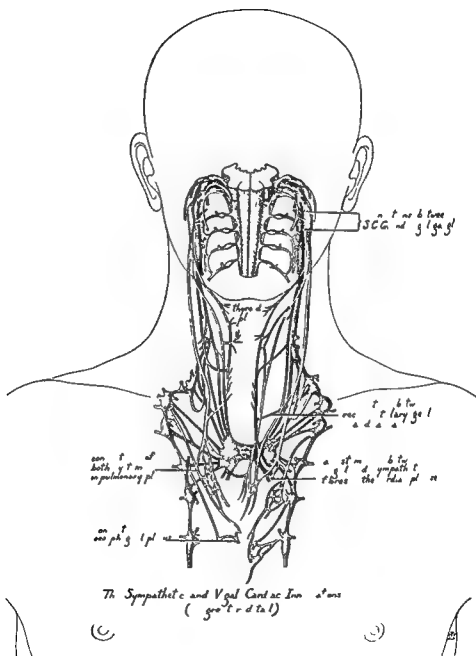


FIG 47

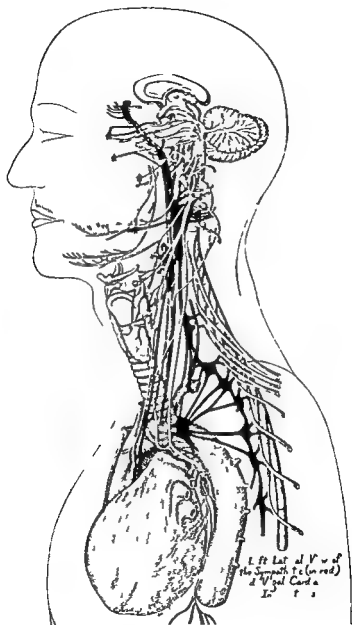


FIG 48



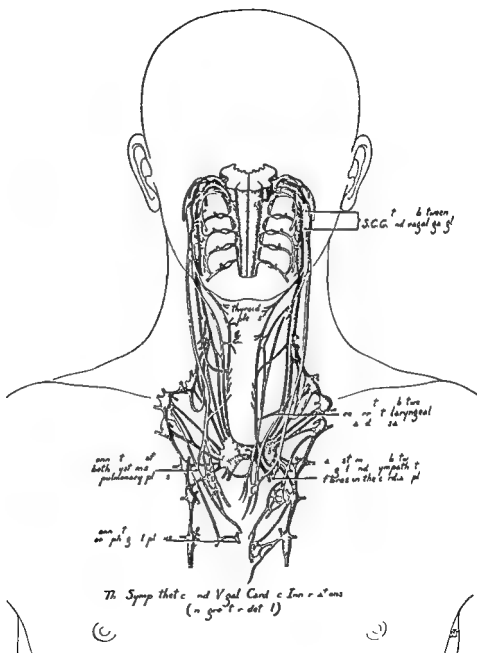


FIG 47

cation has an additional and speculative interest. The ansa loop is brought into relation with the sympathetic vertebral plexus and if it be accepted as some maintain that the plexus contains afferent cardio-aortic fibers this relationship would point to another afferent cardio-aortic pathway with which the recurrent nerve of the vagus would have anatomic contact. The third anastomosis between the trunk ganglia of the vagus and the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion is well defined anatomically but has failed to reveal any afferent cardiac fibers for the transmission of impulses except those alluded to in Chapter VI traversing the superior cervical ganglion but destined for the vagal ganglia Henkecker.<sup>8</sup>

In addition there are a number of other anatomic connections between vagal and sympathetic nerves which are inconstant and variable. Murray<sup>17</sup> found that the superior sympathetic cardiac nerve sometimes entered the vagal trunk. Braeucker<sup>2</sup> described connections between the superior sympathetic ganglion and the superior laryngeal nerve and Tandler<sup>23</sup> between the sympathetic cardiac branches and the superior laryngeal nerve. The superior cardiac nerve has been observed to have one vagal root, a superior laryngeal derivation and the other sympathetic. Danielopolus<sup>6</sup> quoted Brock<sup>4</sup> as having seen the nerve arise from the inferior laryngeal and glossopharyngeal nerves. Into the pharyngeal and laryngeal plexuses go branches of the vagus nerve and branches from the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion, a possible connection is implied here. Hirschfeld<sup>12</sup> found anastomoses from the vertebral nerve to the middle sympathetic ganglion and to the cervical sympathetic trunk (this unusual anastomosis is entirely sympathetic). From the inferior cervical sympathetic ganglion occasionally there are branches to the recurrent laryngeal nerve. Fibers of both systems sometimes lie in the same tract or bundle Testut<sup>22</sup> and the probability that vagal fibers (cholinergic) run in the sympathetic cord served Tigerstedt<sup>14</sup> as the basis for his explanation of the odd and rare observation by Wagner<sup>27</sup> and Bezold<sup>26</sup> that cardiac inhibition followed stimulation of the cervical sympathetic cord.<sup>8</sup>

All these anastomoses unusual and usual are decidedly more numerous in man than in animals; the variability is also greater in man. The rich intercommunicating arrangement of all the connections described above seems to suggest two possibilities: one a better and more readily integrated physiologic control over aortic and cardiac functions and two a readily accessible means for short-circuiting centripetal impulses from one system into another. The second possibility might be especially useful in emergencies that result from interruption or permanent damage to important routes in the cardiac innervation.

This assumption of Tigerstedt and similar observations by others anticipated the discovery in very recent years that cholinergic fibers usually in the vagal system occur also in the sympathetic innervation and that adrenergic fibers usually in the sympathetic system run with the vagal nerves. The mass action of the autonomic system (see Chapter VI) requires itself as cholinergic or adrenergic reactions regardless of the location of these fibers.

## CHAPTER IX

# The Anastomoses between the Sympathetic and Vagal Systems

THE SYMPATHETIC and vagal nerves to the heart have uncountable numbers of fine twigs and fibers that form plexuses (Fig 47, p 178) These plexuses of which the cardiac are an example consist of masses of closely interwoven fibers but with no synaptic arrangements and with no interfusion or anastomoses of nerve fibrils from one system into another. No physiologic proof exists that this mingling is more than an anatomic relationship. We have, therefore, no basis for believing that impulses in one system pass to the other in the vast network of the cardiac and other plexuses. Both systems in general are linked to many similar networks in the thorax, neck and head and it is more than probable that by means of the cardiac innervation of each system reflex activity is registered in almost any of the non cardiac plexuses (Fig 47, p 178). On this basis it is possible to assume that cardio-aortic afferent impulses are brought into relation with esophageal, laryngeal, pharyngeal, thyroid and pulmonary plexuses and with those in the brain also. Some of the results that follow from this are described in Chapter XI among them the prevention of anginal pain by thyroid ablation and unavoidable disruption of the thyroid plexus.

The anatomic independence\* of both cardiac innervations is clearly preserved yet there are a number of places where both systems anastomose. Three, at least, deserve special mention: (1) the rather extensive web of communicating fibers between the cervical sympathetic and vagal cardiac nerves (these nerves descend in the neck and chest and their anastomoses are in the neck and chest, Figs 31-45, p 145 and p 176); (2) the anastomoses between the recurrent laryngeal nerve and the ansa loop (Fig 34, Insert A, Fig 45, p 176); (3) and the connections between the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion and the jugular and nodosal ganglion of the vagus (Figs 45-47, p 176 and p 178). We cannot say whether these anastomoses in general are more pronounced on the left side although it is recognized that the cardiac innervation in toto is fuller and more extensive on this side. This has been attributed to the greater development, size and work of the left heart.

These anastomoses are richer in man than in animals and more variable. The three communicating arrangements cited above, however, are fairly constant. The first is a rather coarse and extensive interbranching web or network and unlike other networks is not primarily perivascular. The second communi-

\* For a discussion of the unitary physiological action of both divisions see Chapter IV.

have produced a sharp decline in blood pressure by sectioning the depressor nerve but already in 1868 Aubert and Koeber<sup>1</sup> had obtained a similar result by stimulating the caudal end of the cervical sympathetic chain François Franck<sup>2</sup> obtained the same effect attributing it to a sudden dilatation of peripheral as well as splanchnic blood vessels These physiologic responses suggested that the action of the depressor nerve may be sympathetic in nature and mediated perhaps through intimate anatomic connections with the sympathetic innervation Although similar anatomic connections in man have not yet been established there is no question of the occurrence of similar human cardiovascular manifestations identical with those attributable to the action of the depressor nerve in lower forms

Our interest in the depressor nerve in man is twofold first as a pathway for the transmission of impulses that regulate the cardiovascular phenomena just described These impulses are set off primarily in the proximal portion of the aorta (see Chapter XI) According to Hering<sup>10</sup> Koch<sup>11</sup> and Heymans<sup>12</sup> the carotid sinus at the bifurcation of the common carotid artery functions in a similar manner Second the depressor nerve has been the object of surgical attack for the relief of anginal pain (see Chapter XII)

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- AUBERT H AND KOEBER G Quoted by Danilopolu D in *L'angine de poitrine et l'angine abdominale* Paris Masson et Cie 1927
- BERNHARDT E *Anat u phys Untersuchungen über den Nervus Depressor bei der Katze* Med Diss Dorpat 1868
- BEZOLD A V In Tigerstedt R *Physiologie des Kreislaufes* Berlin de Gruyter 1921 23
- BRAUER W Beitr z Klin d Tuberk 1927 66 1
- BROCK Quoted by Danilopolu D in *L'angine de poitrine et l'angine abdominale* Paris Masson et Cie 1927
- DE CYON E AND LEWIS C *Berichte der K Sachs Ges d Wiss* 1866 Jour d An et de Ph 1866 4 412 *Gesammelte physiologische Arbeiten* Berlin 1888
- DANILEPOLU D *L'angine de poitrine et l'angine abdominale* Paris Masson et Cie 1927
- FINKELEIN A *Der Nervus Depressor beim Menschen Kaninchen Hunde bei der Katze und dem Pferd* Arch f Anat Hist 1880 245
- FRANCK F *Signification physiologique de la resection du sympathique dans la mala lie leprose idiotie et le glaucome* Bull de l Acad de Med 1899 41 565
- HEINBECKER P *Anatomic and physiologic criteria for surgical relief of cardiac pain* J Thoracic Surg 1937-33 2 317
- HERING H f *Die Karotissinusreflexe auf Herz und Gefasse* Dresden u Leipzig 1927 *Pflüger's Arch* 1924 206 21
- HEYMANS C BOCKAERT J J AND REGNIERS P *Le sinus carotidien* C D in et Cie Paris 1933
- HILKEFELD F G *Angina pectoris saturnina* Inaug Diss Berlin 1926 *Zeitschr f klin Med* 104
- HITZ G *Die chirurgische Behandlung der Angina Pectoris* Wien klin Wchnschr 1924 3 Suppl (July 10) 1974 1
- KOCH I *Die reflektorische Selbststeuerung des Kreislaufes* Erg d Kreislaufforsch 1931 1 1 *Klin Wchnschr* 1937 11 225

tion. But these possibilities have not as yet received physiologic or experimental confirmation.

We include in this chapter on anastomoses between both divisions of the cardiac innervation a consideration of the so called depressor nerve because it is not known whether this structure functions as a vagal or sympathetic pathway or by its anatomic connections brings both types of fibers into action. In all likelihood a pathway corresponding to that of the depressor nerve in lower forms exists also in man. In animals, at least, the nerve runs as a separate and independent vagal strand between the aorta and the upper part of the vagus trunk or the ganglia of the trunk. Only a few anatomists have claimed that the depressor nerve in man is a well defined structure. Viti<sup>6</sup> maintained it existed as an isolated nerve resembling the condition in the rabbit. Koster and Tschermack<sup>1</sup> believed the nerve ran from the aorta to the upper part of the vagus (they called it the aortic nerve), but Vanesco<sup>23</sup> as well as Danielopolu, was able to follow the nerve to the posterior cardiac plexus and even to the heart itself. Vanesco claimed the depressor nerve, or, at least a structure that resembled it, often replaced an absent left superior vagal cardiac nerve and he agreed with Hofer<sup>13</sup> that this sinistral frequency was greater and that the nerve was seldom present on both sides in the same subject. Other authorities: Scarpa<sup>10</sup> Sappey,<sup>11</sup> Bernhardt<sup>2</sup> found the depressor arising from the laryngeal nerve of the vagus and Finkelstein<sup>7</sup> Schwalbe<sup>1</sup> Hofer reported that the depressor had its origin in or else replaced, the cardiac branches of the vagus. Kreidemann<sup>14</sup> stated the depressor nerve was made up of variable nerve filaments. The lack of agreement on the anatomy of the nerve has made it a subject of considerable study and still more controversy, but the consensus at present is that in man the nerve does not exist as a well defined macroscopic structure.

In animals, however, there are apparently a number of authentic identifications of the nerve. The original publication of Cyon and Ludwig<sup>5</sup> is authoritative and describes a separate strand in the rabbit the excitation of which caused a prompt fall in blood pressure. In this animal too anatomic deviations were encountered: the depressor receiving connections from the sympathetic system but its predominant character as a vagal nerve was not questioned. Danielopolu in the dog, discovered combined vagal and sympathetic fibers in the depressor nerve and he ascribed the slowing of the heart to the part played by vagal fibers and the change in blood pressure to that of the sympathetic fibers. He published experimental proof of the sympathetic pressor action of the nerve.

The physiology of the nerve has received extensive study in animals chiefly in rabbits and dogs. Distal stimulation of the cut nerve produces a prompt fall in the general blood pressure and a slowing of the heart rate. This effect was described by Cyon and Ludwig in their original publication, repeated by Koster and Tschermack, and confirmed later by Osborne<sup>22</sup> Figerstedt is reputed to

have produced a sharp decline in blood pressure by sectioning the depressor nerve but already in 1868 Aubert and Roever<sup>1</sup> had obtained a similar result by stimulating the caudal end of the cervical sympathetic chain François Franck<sup>2</sup> obtained the same effect attributing it to a sudden dilatation of peripheral as well as splanchnic blood vessels These physiologic responses suggested that the action of the depressor nerve may be sympathetic in nature and mediated perhaps through intimate anatomic connections with the sympathetic innervation Although similar anatomic connections in man have not yet been established there is no question of the occurrence of similar human cardiovascular manifestations identical with those attributable to the action of the depressor nerve in lower forms

Our interest in the depressor nerve in man is twofold first as a pathway for the transmission of impulses that regulate the cardiovascular phenomena just described These impulses are set off primarily in the proximal portion of the aorta (see Chapter XI) According to Hering<sup>10</sup> Koch<sup>11</sup> and Heymans<sup>12</sup> the carotid sinus at the bifurcation of the common carotid artery functions in a similar manner Second the depressor nerve has been the object of surgical attack for the relief of anginal pain (see Chapter XII)

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- AUBERT H. AND ROEVER G. Quoted by Danielopolu D. in *L'angine de poitrine et l'angine abdominale* Paris: Masson et Cie 1927
- <sup>2</sup> BERNHARDT E. *Anat u phys. Untersuchungen über den Nervus Depressor bei der Katze* Med Diss Dorpat 1868
- <sup>3</sup> BEZOLD A. In *Erstedt III Physiologie des Kreislaufes* Berlin de Gruyter 1911 23
- BRACKEN W. *Beitr z Klin d Tuberk* 1927 66 1
- BROCK Quoted by Danielopolu D. in *L'angine de poitrine et l'angine abdominale* Paris: Masson et Cie 1927
- <sup>4</sup> DE CLON E. AND LEDWIG C. *Berichte der k. Sachs Ges d Wiss* 1866 Jour d An et de Phys. 1866 477 *Gesammelte physiologische Arbeiten* Berlin 1889
- DANIELOPOLU D. *L'angine de poitrine et l'angine abdominale* Paris: Masson et Cie 1927
- FUNKELSTEIN A. *Der Nervus Depressor beim Menschen Kaninchen Hund bei der Katze und dem Pferd Arch f Anat Abt.* 1880 245
- <sup>5</sup> FRANCK F. *Signification physiologique de la resection du sympathique dans la maladie lepreuse l'idiotie et le glaucome* Bull de l'Acad de Med 1899 41 565
- HEINRICHER I. *Anatomie and physiologic criteria for surgical relief of cardiac pain* J Thoracic Surg 1932 33 2 217
- HERING H. E. *Die Karotissinusreflexe auf Herz und Gefasse* Dresden u Leipzig 1927
- HEYMAN'S A. Ch. 1924 206 121
- HEYMAN'S C. BOUCLAERT J. J. AND REGNIERS P. *Le sinus carotidien* G. Dron et Cie Paris 1933
- HILCHFIELD E. G. *Angina pectoris saturnina* Inaug Diss Berlin 1926 *Zeit-schr f klin Med* 104
- <sup>10</sup> HIRZ C. *Die chirurgische Behandlung der Angina Factoris* Wien klin Wchnschr 1924 3 Supl (July 10) 1924 1
- KOCH E. *Die reflex tonische Selbststeuerung des Kreislaufes* Erg d Kreislauffors II 1931 11 Klin Wchnschr 1932 11 225

tion But these possibilities have not as yet received physiologic or experimental confirmation

We include in this chapter on anastomoses between both divisions of the cardiac innervation a consideration of the so-called depressor nerve because it is not known whether this structure functions as a vagal or sympathetic pathway or by its anatomic connections brings both types of fibers into action In all likelihood a pathway corresponding to that of the depressor nerve in lower forms exists also in man In animals, at least, the nerve runs as a separate and independent vagal strand between the aorta and the upper part of the vagus trunk or the ganglia of the trunk Only a few anatomists have claimed that the depressor nerve in man is a well defined structure Viti<sup>6</sup> maintained it existed as an isolated nerve resembling the condition in the rabbit Koster and Tschermack<sup>15</sup> believed the nerve ran from the aorta to the upper part of the vagus, (they called it the aortic nerve), but Vanesco,<sup>8</sup> as well as Danielopolu, was able to follow the nerve to the posterior cardiac plexus and even to the heart itself Vanesco claimed the depressor nerve, or, at least a structure that resembled it, often replaced an absent left superior vagal cardiac nerve and he agreed with Hofer<sup>13</sup> that this sinistral frequency was greater and that the nerve was seldom present on both sides in the same subject Other authorities Scarpa<sup>9</sup> Sappey<sup>19</sup> Bernhardt, found the depressor arising from the laryngeal nerves of the vagus, and Finkelstein<sup>7</sup> Schwalbe<sup>21</sup> Hofer, reported that the depressor had its origin in, or else replaced, the cardiac branches of the vagus Kreidemann<sup>16</sup> stated the depressor nerve was made up of variable nerve filaments The lack of agreement on the anatomy of the nerve has made it a subject of considerable study and still more controversy but the consensus at present is that in man the nerve does not exist as a well defined macroscopic structure

In animals however there are apparently a number of authentic identifications of the nerve The original publication of Cyon and Ludwig<sup>5</sup> is authoritative and describes a separate strand in the rabbit the excitation of which caused a prompt fall in blood pressure In this animal too anatomic deviations were encountered, the depressor receiving connections from the sympathetic system, but its predominant character as a vagal nerve was not questioned Danielopolu in the dog discovered combined vagal and sympathetic fibers in the depressor nerve and he ascribed the slowing of the heart to the part played by vagal fibers and the change in blood pressure to that of the sympathetic fibers He published experimental proof of the sympathetic pressor action of the nerve

The physiology of the nerve has received extensive study in animals chiefly in rabbits and dogs Distal stimulation of the cut nerve produces a prompt fall in the general blood pressure and a slowing of the heart rate This effect was described by Cyon and Ludwig in their original publication repeated by Koster and Tschermack, and confirmed later by Osborne<sup>18</sup> Tigerstedt is reputed to

have produced a sharp decline in blood pressure by sectioning the depressor nerve but already in 1868 Aubert and Roever<sup>1</sup> had obtained a similar result by stimulating the caudal end of the cervical sympathetic chain. François Franck<sup>2</sup> obtained the same effect attributing it to a sudden dilatation of peripheral as well as splanchnic blood vessels. These physiologic responses suggested that the action of the depressor nerve may be sympathetic in nature and mediated perhaps through intimate anatomic connections with the sympathetic innervation. Although similar anatomic connections in man have not yet been established, there is no question of the occurrence of similar human cardiovascular manifestations identical with those attributable to the action of the depressor nerve in lower forms.

Our interest in the depressor nerve in man is twofold: first as a pathway for the transmission of impulses that regulate the cardiovascular phenomena just described. These impulses are set off primarily in the proximal portion of the aorta (see Chapter VI). According to Hering<sup>10</sup>, Koch<sup>11</sup> and Heymans<sup>12</sup> the carotid sinus at the bifurcation of the common carotid artery functions in a similar manner. Second, the depressor nerve has been the object of surgical attack for the relief of anginal pain (see Chapter XVII).

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- AUBERT H AND ROEVER G. Quoted by Danielopolu D. in *L'angine de poitrine et l'angine abdominale*. Paris: Masson et Cie 1927.
- <sup>2</sup> BERNHARDT E. *Anat u phys Untersuchungen über den Nervus Depressor bei der Katze*. Med Diss Dorpat 1868.
- <sup>3</sup> BEROLD A. In Tigerstedt III. *Physiologie des Kreislaufes*. Berlin: de Gruyter 1921: 23.
- <sup>4</sup> BRÄCKEN W. *Beitr z Klin d Tuberk* 1927: 66: 1.
- BROCK. Quoted by Danielopolu D. in *L'angine de poitrine et l'angine abdominale*. Paris: Masson et Cie 1927.
- DE CLOÏ F AND LUDWIG C. *Berichte der 3 Sachs Ges d Wiss* 1866: Jour d An et de Phy 1866: 147. *Gesammelte physiologische Arbeiten*. Berlin 1898.
- <sup>6</sup> DANIELOPOLU D. *L'angine de poitrine et l'angine abdominale*. Paris: Masson et Cie 1927.
- FRANKELSTEIN A. *Der Nervus Depressor beim Menschen Kaninchen Hund bei der Katze und dem Pferd*. Arch f Anat Abt 1890: 245.
- FRANK F. *Signification physiologique de la resection du sympathique dans la maladie epileptique idiote et le glaucome*. Bull de l'Acad de Med 1899: 41: 56.
- HEYMAN'S P. *Anatomic and physiologic criteria for surgical relief of cardiac pain*. J Thorac Sur 1932: 33: 517.
- HERING H E. *Die Karotissinnsreflexe auf Herz und Gefässe*. Dresden u Leipzig 1927. *Pflügers Arch* 1923: 206: 7: 1.
- HEYMAN'S C, BOCCAERT J J AND REGNIERS P. *Le sinus carotidien*. G D in et Cie Paris 1933.
- HINSHLID F G. *Anomia pectoris saturni*. Inaug Diss Berlin 1926. *Zeitschr f klin Med* 104.
- <sup>10</sup> HOFFER G. *Die chirurgische Behandlung der Angina Pectoris*. Wien: Klin Wchnschr 1924: 3. *Seite* (Juli 10) 1924: 1.
- KOCH E. *Die reflektorische Steuerung des Kreislaufes*. *Erg d Kreislaufforsch* 1931: 1: 1. *Klin Wchnschr* 1932: 11: 225.



- <sup>15</sup> KOSTER G AND TSCHERMAK A Über den Nervus Depressor als Reflexnerv der Aorta Arch f d ges Physiol 1902, 93 24 Über Ursprung u Endigung des N Depressor u N laryngeus superior beim Kaninchen Arch f Anat u Physiol Anat Abtlg, Suppl 1902 255
- <sup>16</sup> KRUIDEMANN A Anatomische Untersuchungen über den Nervus Depressor beim Menschen und Hunde Arch f Anat u Physiol Anat Abtlg 1878 405
- <sup>17</sup> MURRAY Quoted by Danielopolu D in L'angine de poitrine et l'angine abdominale Paris Masson et Cie 1927
- <sup>18</sup> OSBORNE H Medical Times and Gazette 1862 1 317
- <sup>19</sup> SAPPEN M P C Traité d'anatomie desc, 1877 388 Paris V Adrien Delahaye et Cie vol 3 3rd ed
- <sup>20</sup> SCARPA A Tabulae neurologicae ad illustrandam historiam anatomicam cardiacorum nervorum Ticini 1894 also quoted by Danielopolu D in L'angine de poitrine et l'angine abdominale Paris Masson et Cie 1927 Gesellschaft der Aerzte in Wien 20 April 1913 Wien Med Wchnschr 1923 73 891
- <sup>21</sup> SCHWALBE C A Lehrbuch d Neur 2 Aufl in C I E Hoffmann's Lehrb d Anat d Menschen Erlanger F Bezold 1881 287
- <sup>22</sup> TANDLER J Anatomie des Herzens Jena G Fischer 1913
- <sup>23</sup> TESTUT L Traité d'anatomie humaine 8th ed Revue by A Latarjet Paris G Doin et Cie 1928
- <sup>24</sup> TIGERSTEDT R Physiologie des Kreislaufes vol 4 Berlin and Wien 1923 Lehrb d Physiol des Kreislaufes vol 2 W de Gruyter Co Leipzig Veit & Co 1893
- <sup>25</sup> VANESCO E Quoted by Danielopolu D (6)
- <sup>26</sup> VITI A Atti de la Soc Tosc di Science 1883 4
- <sup>27</sup> WAGNER In Tigerstedt R Physiologie des Kreislaufes Berlin de Gruyter 1911-23

## SECTION FOUR

# Reference, Distribution and Simulation of Anginal Pain

---

## CHAPTER V

### The Dermatomes Concerned with Anginal Pain

FOR THE mediation of referred anginal pain the visceral afferent fibers from the heart and aorta are brought into relation with somatic afferent fibers at a common entry i.e. the upper thoracic levels as a rule of Th1-Th4 on the left side. We have already noted that the exact location of a common entry or locus of convergence is not definitely established. According to some authorities the mediation and transfer of pain impulses is accomplished in the dorsal grey matter substantia gelatinosa Rolando; others again maintain that the mediation takes place in the dorsal ganglia or roots.

The segmental myomeres of the body have an intrinsic reflex established early in embryonal life. This reflex passes through the spinal cord well below the brain stem. The reflex appears to be extra rather than intraspinal and is related probably to the dorsal roots. The sensory supply to each trunk myomere (or dermatome) consists at least of three consecutive dorsal roots and in the case of limb dermatomes of about five dorsal roots. This plurisegmental character of innervation persists even though in the case of the extremities the ring formation of myomeres is not easily distinguished.

The usual or common dermatomes for anginal pain are supplied by nerves from Th1-Th4 levels; occasionally C8 and Th5 are included. This territory and its innervation are described. The uncommon districts also with their innervations are delineated. The special physiological and clinical considerations on the subject of referred pain are discussed in Chapters VI and VIII.

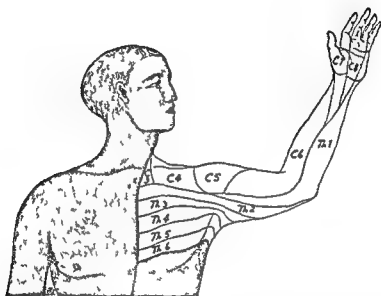


FIG. 49 Ventral View. This is a schematic representation of the anterior dermatome segments from C 3 to Th 6 inclusive. Of these only Th 1 to 4 and possibly C 4 and Th 5 are concerned with anginal pain as a rule. The dermatome segments on the thorax are in series of almost parallel girdle like stripes or bands encircling the entire thorax. This pattern of segmental dermatome distribution above the thorax is readily recognized when the human being assumes the quadrupedal position; the segments running down the fore limbs instead of encircling them.

In this illustration the left fore arm is raised and extended in order to show the arrangement of dermatome segments on the ventral aspect of the hand, forearm, arm, and shoulder in relation to those on the thorax.

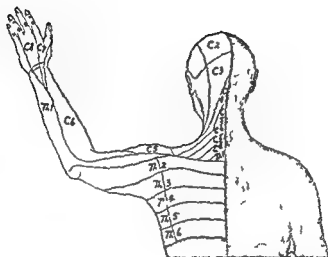


FIG. 50. Posterior view. This posterior view of the same region exhibits the same general arrangement. It is of some interest that the dermatome band of Th 2, 3, 4 and 5 segments are continuous as encircling bands around the thorax, whereas above this level all dermatome stripes are interrupted and are followed from the posterior median spinal line on to the posterior aspect of the left arm only after skipping intervening areas belonging to other segmental cord levels.

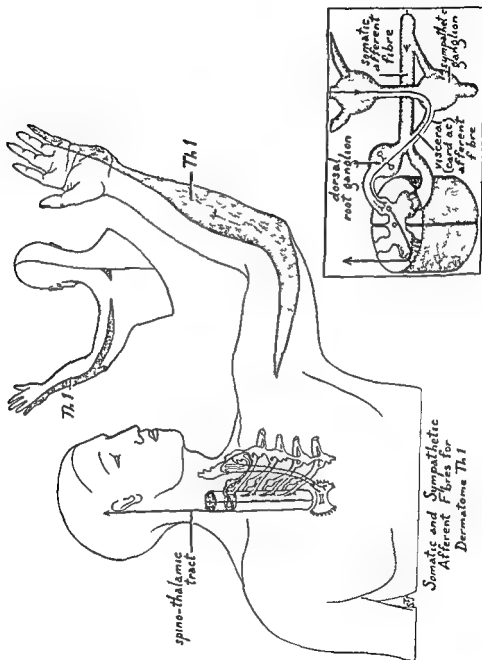
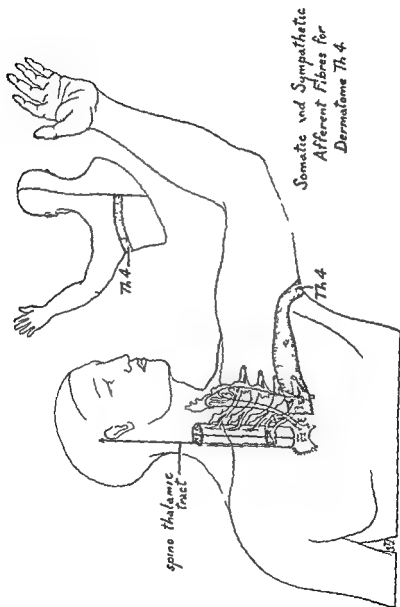


FIG 51



**Figs 51 and 52 The Spinal Cord Levels and the Dermatomes of Th 1-4** The relationship of the dermatomic surface areas supplied by Th 1 2 3 4 to the pathways of referred cardiac pain is illustrated in these drawings

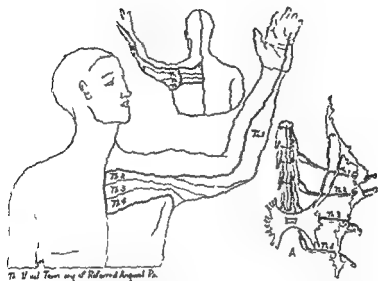
The upper figure (Fig 51 p 188) is of the first thoracic level. Afferent somatic fibres from the corresponding dermatomic surface in this instance from the ventral aspect of the forearm travel to the posterior spinal ganglion of the posterior division of the spinal thoracic nerve. Within this ganglion a cell receives each centrifugal fibre and then sends forth a centripetal extension or fibre into the spinal cord. This intraspinal afferent somatic fibre reaches a junction in the substantia gelatinosa Rolando.

A second pathway is necessary for referred pain. This is made up of afferent sympathetic visceral fibres that leave the cardiac plexuses and ascend in the inferior and middle cervical cardiac nerves. Passing unbroken through the stellate and middle cervical ganglia these fibres traverse the white communicating ramus of Th 1 and enter the posterior division (roots) of this first thoracic nerve. Still uninterrupted the fibres enter the spinal cord and reach the junction in the substantia gelatinosa already mentioned in connection with the somatic afferent fibres. The afferent visceral fibres from the cardiac plexuses to the spinal synaptic junctional zone are continuous and have no relay station.

It is claimed that the substantia gelatinosa is the locus of convergence of somatic afferent and sympathetic afferent visceral impulses and that from this locus impulses are picked up by the spino thalamic tract and conveyed contralaterally to the thalamus and cortex. These pathways somatic and sympathetic are the anatomic structures on which Martyn Hilton, Ross, Head and Mackenzie (for references see Chapter XI) built their cutaneous visceral conception of referred pain (see Chapter XI). Each dermatomic area is considered an external patch capable of announcing pain from a segmentally related insensitive organ in this case the heart.

A similar description holds for the spinal cord segments of Th 2 3 4 etc. for each segment there is a related dermatome (Fig 52 p 189 for Th 4).

The enlarged drawing (insert A of Fig 51 p 188) of the nerve structures at the Th 1 level for example enables the student to visualize the sympathetic and somatic pathways. The afferent somatic fibre is represented as a dotted line, the afferent sympathetic visceral fibre is drawn as a continuous unbroken line, the spino thalamic tract is visible as a dark line ascending toward the thalamus.



To: U. S. Trust Co. of N. Y.

FIG. 3 The Usual Territory of Referred Visceral Pain. This drawing is in the nature of an outline or map of the dermatome area involved in the common distribution of referred visceral pain. The area is sensistal 2. 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192, 193, 194, 195, 196, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239, 240, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 331, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 353, 354, 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, 372, 373, 374, 375, 376, 377, 378, 379, 380, 381, 382, 383, 384, 385, 386, 387, 388, 389, 390, 391, 392, 393, 394, 395, 396, 397, 398, 399, 400, 401, 402, 403, 404, 405, 406, 407, 408, 409, 410, 411, 412, 413, 414, 415, 416, 417, 418, 419, 420, 421, 422, 423, 424, 425, 426, 427, 428, 429, 430, 431, 432, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 440, 441, 442, 443, 444, 445, 446, 447, 448, 449, 450, 451, 452, 453, 454, 455, 456, 457, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462, 463, 464, 465, 466, 467, 468, 469, 470, 471, 472, 473, 474, 475, 476, 477, 478, 479, 480, 481, 482, 483, 484, 485, 486, 487, 488, 489, 490, 491, 492, 493, 494, 495, 496, 497, 498, 499, 500, 501, 502, 503, 504, 505, 506, 507, 508, 509, 510, 511, 512, 513, 514, 515, 516, 517, 518, 519, 520, 521, 522, 523, 524, 525, 526, 527, 528, 529, 530, 531, 532, 533, 534, 535, 536, 537, 538, 539, 540, 541, 542, 543, 544, 545, 546, 547, 548, 549, 550, 551, 552, 553, 554, 555, 556, 557, 558, 559, 560, 561, 562, 563, 564, 565, 566, 567, 568, 569, 570, 571, 572, 573, 574, 575, 576, 577, 578, 579, 580, 581, 582, 583, 584, 585, 586, 587, 588, 589, 590, 591, 592, 593, 594, 595, 596, 597, 598, 599, 600, 601, 602, 603, 604, 605, 606, 607, 608, 609, 610, 611, 612, 613, 614, 615, 616, 617, 618, 619, 620, 621, 622, 623, 624, 625, 626, 627, 628, 629, 630, 631, 632, 633, 634, 635, 636, 637, 638, 639, 640, 641, 642, 643, 644, 645, 646, 647, 648, 649, 650, 651, 652, 653, 654, 655, 656, 657, 658, 659, 660, 661, 662, 663, 664, 665, 666, 667, 668, 669, 670, 671, 672, 673, 674, 675, 676, 677, 678, 679, 680, 681, 682, 683, 684, 685, 686, 687, 688, 689, 690, 691, 692, 693, 694, 695, 696, 697, 698, 699, 700, 701, 702, 703, 704, 705, 706, 707, 708, 709, 710, 711, 712, 713, 714, 715, 716, 717, 718, 719, 720, 721, 722, 723, 724, 725, 726, 727, 728, 729, 730, 731, 732, 733, 734, 735, 736, 737, 738, 739, 740, 741, 742, 743, 744, 745, 746, 747, 748, 749, 750, 751, 752, 753, 754, 755, 756, 757, 758, 759, 760, 761, 762, 763, 764, 765, 766, 767, 768, 769, 770, 771, 772, 773, 774, 775, 776, 777, 778, 779, 780, 781, 782, 783, 784, 785, 786, 787, 788, 789, 790, 791, 792, 793, 794, 795, 796, 797, 798, 799, 800, 801, 802, 803, 804, 805, 806, 807, 808, 809, 810, 811, 812, 813, 814, 815, 816, 817, 818, 819, 820, 821, 822, 823, 824, 825, 826, 827, 828, 829, 830, 831, 8

Referred anginal pain as a rule is confined within the borders of this area. There are however important and significant exceptions. The corresponding posterior area is not drawn because unusually known posterior reference of cardiac referred pain is comparatively uncommon.

At A we have a diagram of the particular portion of the cardiac sympathetic innervation concerned with the reference of p. 2 of the cutaneous dermatomatic areas depicted also. It includes the final segments Th 1, 2, 3 and 4 and the corresponding final nerves which emerge from the spinal cord as anterior and posterior divisions to unite and continue as one trunk behind the corresponding sympathetic ganglia. Communicating white rami and grey rami connect each spinal nerve to its corresponding sympathetic ganglion. Only the middle and lower thoracic sympathetic ganglia are shown because it is generally accepted that sensory impulses do not reach the upper cervical ganglion.





FIG. 54 The Uncommon Territories of Preferred Anginal Pain. Above and below the dermatome district into which anginal pain is commonly referred lie smaller areas. The upper zone is supplied by the brachial plexus and upper cervical nerves. C 2, 3, 4, 5 innervate the surface area of the upper chest and shoulder region. C 6, 7, 8 the ventral outer aspect of the arm. The lower zone receives its innervation from Th 5 and 6, sometimes from still lower thoracic nerves. These uncommon distributions of pain are far more often sinister than dextral.

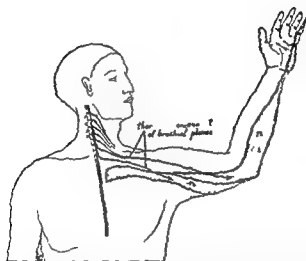


FIG. 55. The Left Sympathetic Cardiac Innervation in Relation to the Brachial Plexus of the Same Side. Only a small portion of the brachial plexus is commonly brought into relation with the nerve supply in the heart. This small portion consists of the first and second spinal thoracic nerves which act as somatic pathways in the reference of anginal pain. Other portions of the brachial plexus are known to participate in uncommon distributions of anginal pain (for fuller discussion see Chapter VI).

## CHAPTER XI

# The Distribution or Reference of Anginal Pain

PAIN that has its origin in the heart, coronary vessels or aorta is generally referred to other regions of the body and these regions are related to the heart by nerve pathways. The term referred pain as employed in this discussion signifies that pain is experienced in areas other than the sites of origin. In many cases it will coincide with referred pain as explained by Martin<sup>33</sup> Hilton,<sup>37</sup> Ross,<sup>46</sup> Head,<sup>19</sup> and Mackenzie,<sup>34</sup> and in other instances it will represent a distribution along routes not included in the description of these authors. We shall discuss the subject of referred pain under four headings: (1) the sites of its origin, (2) the distribution into the common territory through pathways which are well recognized, (3) the distribution into uncommon areas by pathways which are not so clearly understood, and finally (4) the characteristics of referred cardiac pain.

### I Sites of Origin\*

Pain is often centered in the heart or heart region and this includes the first or proximal, supraventricular, portion of the aorta. Some authorities have maintained that the point of origin, aorta or heart, determines the specific character and manifestations of the pain. Allbutt<sup>1</sup> and Wenckebach<sup>38</sup> argued that the aorta was the principal, if not the sole seat of anginal pain. Allbutt wrote that anginal pain was produced by irritation of the nerve endings in the first portion of the aorta, and Wenckebach, also Fpinger and Hofer<sup>14, 15</sup> and Hofer<sup>21</sup> emphasized the role played by the changes in blood tension within the aorta that affected the aortic or depressor nerve. This school correlated with anginal pain not only intra aortic alterations but primarily actual pathologic changes in the aorta itself.

However, the attempts to explain anginal pain on this limited basis proved unsatisfactory largely because many discrepancies were noted between the autopsy findings in the aorta and the antecedent clinical picture. Arterio-sclerotic changes in the aorta were frequently not associated with pain in rheumatic aortic disease pain was more often absent than present and even in luetic aortitis anginal pain was by no means an invariable occurrence. The coronary vessels that supply the aorta were held responsible for the aortic changes that produced anginal pain.

\* See Chapter XIII on the physiology of pain.

In an analogous manner the coronary vessels of the heart came to be regarded as the primary site of pain. This point of view was of course not new (Jenner<sup>2</sup> had already written to Heberden<sup>3</sup> about the "ossification of the coronary vessels of the heart in angina pectoris" and Parry<sup>4</sup> held the same view) and although it had much apparent validity it could not overcome certain objections. It was observed for example that although many individuals with anginal pain had arteriosclerosis of the coronary vessels there were anginal victims without such involvement furthermore many of advanced age remained free of anginal pain though they showed pronounced chronic arteriosclerotic changes in the aorta and in the cardiac vessels.

Since pathologic change in these structures so frequently failed to correlate with anginal pain or the rest of the syndrome of angina pectoris or acute myocardial infarction many observers concluded that the most probable explanation of the clinical manifestations of pain was spasm of these coronary vessels (Chapter XIII). Wenckebach contended that stasis and distention took place in the coronary vessels and that the distention produced pain or similarly that depressor reflexes in the coronary vessels brought on alterations in blood pressure in these vessels and so led to pain. In these points of view the emphasis was on the physiologic not anatomic function of the coronary vessels and this emphasis still holds with respect to genesis of anginal pain and angina pectoris as propounded by later writers.

The heart itself rather than the aorta or the nutrient coronary system came to be looked upon as the actual seat of the anginal pain. The heart muscle of anginal sufferers is often damaged the extent and nature of the damage depending upon the nature and duration of the disease that attacks it. Yet as in the case of the aorta and coronary vessels the myocardium may be markedly diseased and cause no pain. Despite this the myocardial etiology found many adherents some of whom modified it. For example Danielopolu has written that the metabolites of muscular action have a toxic effect and produce heart failure and pain also that anginal pain is an expression of myocardial impairment that follows from inadequacy of coronary circulation in the face of untolerated physical strain. The commoner one of the concept of anginal pain for nearly all students of the problem is the inadequacy of the coronary circulation and the ensuing effect i.e. anoxemia of the heart muscle (Chapter I).

From a practical point of view and our present knowledge it does not seem possible to localize anginal pain more accurately than in the heart or the region of the heart. In many respects it would be of advantage to discover the exact point of origin of cardiac pain. We have however until now not succeeded in doing so.

#### REFERRED ANGINAL PAIN

The mechanism and pathways of referred anginal pain are complicated and to comprehend them at all we must first have a clear understanding of the

## CHAPTER XI

# The Distribution or Reference of Anginal Pain

**P**AIN that has its origin in the heart, coronary vessels or aorta is generally referred to other regions of the body and these regions are related to the heart by nerve pathways. The term referred pain as employed in this discussion signifies that pain is experienced in areas other than the sites of origin. In many cases it will coincide with referred pain as explained by Martyn,<sup>15</sup> Hilton,<sup>16</sup> Ross,<sup>16</sup> Head,<sup>19</sup> and Mackenzie,<sup>21</sup> and in other instances it will represent a distribution along routes not included in the description of these authors. We shall discuss the subject of referred pain under four headings: (1) the sites of its origin, (2) the distribution into the common territory through pathways which are well recognized, (3) the distribution into uncommon areas by pathways which are not so clearly understood, and finally (4) the characteristics of referred cardiac pain.

### I Sites of Origin\*

Pain is often centered in the heart or heart region and this includes the first or proximal, supraventricular, portion of the aorta. Some authorities have maintained that the point of origin aorta or heart, determines the specific character and manifestations of the pain. Allbutt<sup>4</sup> and Wenckebach<sup>22</sup> argued that the aorta was the principal if not the sole seat of anginal pain. Allbutt wrote that anginal pain was produced by irritation of the nerve endings in the first portion of the aorta and Wenckebach also Eppinger and Hofer<sup>14</sup> and Hofer,<sup>4</sup> emphasized the role played by the changes in blood tension within the aorta that affected the aortic or depressor nerve. This school correlated with anginal pain not only intra aortic alterations but primarily actual pathologic changes in the aorta itself.

However the attempts to explain anginal pain on this limited basis proved unsatisfactory largely because many discrepancies were noted between the autopsy findings in the aorta and the antecedent clinical picture. Arterio-sclerotic changes in the aorta were frequently not associated with pain in rheumatic aortic disease pain was more often absent than present and even in luetic aortitis anginal pain was by no means an invariable occurrence. The coronary vessels that supply the aorta were held responsible for the aortic changes that produced anginal pain.

\* See Chapter VIII on the physiology of pain.

of pain are then 'picked up' by the spino-thalamic tract and conveyed into consciousness as referred pain. According to a large number of authorities the area of convergence, this meeting place is established in the spinal cord; a similar zone has not been discovered in the brain.

It is known of course that anginal pain is often reflected into non cardiac usually peripheral or dermatome districts and that the reflection or radiation is achieved by the cooperation of somatic nerves that lead from dermatomes. The connection between the integument of the body and the central nervous system is laid down in the early days of embryonal life; a portion of the integument develops into the central nervous system and the skin itself never loses its neurogenic property. This early intrinsic reflex between body somites including skin and the central nervous system below the brain stem persists during life and is the basis of referred pain into dermatomes. The sensory innervation of each trunk myomere (or dermatome) consists of three adjacent dorsal roots and of about five dorsal roots in the case of the limbs. We shall see that this pluri-segmental arrangement has a practical bearing in studying clinical features of referred pain. The capacity to experience referred pain in dermatomes is probably a biological endowment and exists in all likelihood in many species. In man this type of pain together with intralimbic pain becomes a grim but beneficent danger signal. There are occasions when the skin alone is the announcer of visceral pain.

From Heberden's day if not earlier we have been confronted with the problem of explaining the mechanism of referred anginal pain. As early as 1864 there is a clear description by Martyn<sup>23</sup> of referred cardiac pain and the pathways for it. He recognized that upper thoracic spinal cord segments also sympathetic and intercostal nerves as well as dermatome zones participate in the reflection of cardiac pain. Inframammary pain is a referred neuralgic expression of some distress in the heart, he wrote. A sagacious English surgeon Hilton<sup>24</sup> who was a contemporary of Martyn knew this also. Ross<sup>25</sup> wrote on the same subject and argued for an irritabile locus in the spinal cord where diffusion of referred pain took place. Later Head<sup>26</sup> and after him Mackenzie<sup>27</sup> extended and developed the concept of referred pain. It was Mackenzie who laid down the following premises as of major importance: (a) viscera are insensitive to pain; (b) dermatomes have their source of pain in a related organ; and (c) the mediation of referred pain takes place as we have already commented in the spinal cord. These premises however are open to challenge.

Concerning the first premise it would not be accurate to leave the impression that Mackenzie may not have been aware of the inherent sensitivity of visceral organs. As a matter of fact it was known to Ross in 1897 and to Head in 1893 that somatic pain from an organ differs from splanchnic pain in that within the very organ that is the source of this sensation. Although Mackenzie must have known that organs are sensitive to pain he excluded this as

nervous supply to the heart, coronary vessels and aorta. This consists essentially of a vagal innervation arising in the brain stem supplying the aorta and heart and a separate sympathetic innervation between the same cardiovascular structures and the spinal cord. At many points the vagal and the sympathetic nerves join anatomically, but this juncture does not mean that the impulses carried by one system flow into the other.

The first to the fourth thoracic segments, sometimes the eighth cervical above and the fifth thoracic below, are the usual receptors for the visceral sympathetic nerves. But the pathways of referred anginal pain include also somatic or peripheral fibers going to the same receptor zone. The exact location of the mediation of referred pain is still unsettled, the dorsal grey matter, probably the substantia gelatinosa Rolandi, as well as the dorsal ganglia and the dorsal roots have been considered sites of mediation.

Although it is held generally that afferent impulses from the heart, coronary vessels and aorta travel by sympathetic and vagal routes, the latter routes are not included in the usual reference of pain. Indeed it may be questioned if the vagus is a significant afferent conductor of pain under any circumstances. Yet although the existing proof is not entirely convincing it would not be wise to deny categorically in our present knowledge that the vagus is an afferent route. From the smooth muscle of the intestines, bronchi and similar structures the vagus is known to carry impulses of pain, but a similar role for the other viscera including the heart, it seems to us is not so well established. The tenth cranial nerve in lower forms is a guardian and regulator of the gastrointestinal tract and the heart. In higher phyla, with the evolution of a separate breathing apparatus to meet the needs of a respiration carried on in free not dissolved atmosphere, the vagus develops nerves for the breathing organs (Pike<sup>41-43</sup>). These newly developed nerves and other parallel evolutionary changes in the central nervous system are designed to control the mechanism of this higher type of respiration. But here again the vagus is chiefly guardian or supervisory in character and conduction of pain is not part of its function. To a great extent a similar evolutionary process is followed by the vagus in connection with the heart, the nerve assuming and exercising chiefly if not wholly a regulatory function.

The sympathetics, on the other hand, are unquestioned conductors of pain. Cardiothoracic impulses of pain ascend in sympathetic fibers that converge upon the left upper thoracic levels of the spinal cord, in the dorsal grey matter probably in the substantia gelatinosa Rolandi. Here afferent somatic neurons from related dermatomic zones also converge. Impulses of pain, therefore, that originate either in the heart, coronary vessels or the aorta and those from the dermatomic or surface areas supplied by the spinal nerves of the upper thoracic region, Th 1 to Th 4 triangulate so to speak upon common points of convergence in these four levels and in these levels it is claimed the mediation of referred pain takes place. From these common loci, sensations

the dorsal grey matter probably in the substantia gelatinosa Rolandi of the upper thoracic spinal cord levels. This hypothesis dominates the literature on the subject. As the theory stands however it has to overcome important objections. To begin with and as far as can be ascertained no one has defined anatomically the central connections for pain as exclusively in the entry zone of the dorsal grey matter of the spinal cord (Chapter XIII). Pikelis<sup>11-12</sup> in this country and Danielopolu<sup>13</sup> in Romania have suggested that the mediation of reference is quite likely to be extraspinal. According to Pike the concept of an intraspinal mediation ignores the observation that referred pain is nearly always radicular in character and this type of distribution could hardly be inscribed within the cord where impulses would be expected to undergo diffusion through several segmental levels by plurisegmental connections. Pike feels that the actual mediation may be accomplished by a transfer of impulses or their effects from afferent visceral to afferent somatic fibers both types of fibers in the dorsal root lying juxtaposed and without meningeal sheaths.

Another objection to the theory of mediation within the spinal cord is based on the fact that the common neurons in the cord receiving a converging group of sensory impulses from multiple foci on the surface of the body, frequently fail to produce anginal pain. This renders it difficult to accept uncritically that the general difference in the acuity and in the localization of referred pain and of touch derives from the circumstance that touch sensations are carried by fibers each of which makes a contact with an individual central neuron whereas the impulses of painful sensations transmitted along multiple fibers converge upon a common central neuron.

Reuben Morley<sup>14</sup> in England has expressed his reluctance to accept the Ross<sup>15</sup> theory of the mediation of pain based on a diffusion in an irritable focus in the spinal cord. Danielopolu had already published several articles on the subject of extra spinal mediation. With Hirstide<sup>16</sup> in earlier publications and again in 1938<sup>17</sup> alone he viewed the meeting point of somatic and visceral afferent neurons as an articulation situated in the posterior spinal ganglia and he believed this junction could be disturbed by severing the somatic neuron. He cut the intercostal nerve from Th 1 to Th 4 leaving the visceral afferent fibers intact. This brought relief and abolition of pain a result confirmed by Lemaire<sup>18</sup> according to Danielopolu. The underlying principle of this method would seem to be akin to that at work in the procedure of Weiss and Davis<sup>19</sup> who relieved sufferers of referred pain by locally anesthetizing the related and involved skin dermatomes. Both methods are designed to lessen the number of somatic afferent impulses of pain delivered to the synaptic junction (or dorsal roots). The result of such a reduction might be explained on the ground that referred anginal pain is caused by a summated effect of charges of energy metabolic or electrical transmitted along the afferent somatic and visceral fibers and that the necessary quantitative threshold for this effect is unattainable when an adequate number of somatic sensory impulses are elimi-



having no part in the mechanism of reference and went even further by saying that all visceral pain is referred. The ability of an organ to "feel" pain was held as an activity separate from its capacity to project pain into cutaneous areas of the body. While the viscerocutaneous theory of Mackenzie helped clarify many aspects of visceral referred pain and was of special use in accounting for intense surface pain and the occurrence of hyperalgesia of the skin with sudomotor, pilomotor, and vasomotor manifestations, the theory failed to recognize that the cause of a peripherally distributed pain is to be sought often in a local peripheral lesion and that pain has other than a single possibility of reference into related dermatomes. Furthermore, in Mackenzie's scheme there was no room for the possibility that pain of one viscus may be transferred into other viscera.

Beginning with Hurst's<sup>3</sup> observation in 1911 on the pain of hollow viscera a growing mass of experimental and clinical evidence and a closer analysis of the mechanism of referred pain strengthened the belief that viscera themselves are often the sites of pain and that dermatomic pain is not the sole expression of visceral referred pain. These studies demonstrated also that it is fallacious (Chapter XIII) to draw inferences of visceral insensitivity from the effect of artificial extraneous trauma, it is essential for the experimental injury or stimuli to be more nearly of the same nature and magnitude as those that naturally induce pain, i.e. obstructions in hollow viscera, increased tension beneath a tight capsule of a solid organ, augmented tension in the muscular layers of blood vessels. These kinds of stimuli are frequent and natural occurrences and induce pain in the organ affected. Similar deductions hold for the heart, and the following observations bear witness to the inherent sensitivity of various organs and structures. Pain results from contractions of hollow organs (Hurst,<sup>3</sup> Schrager and Ivy,<sup>49</sup> Pollock and Davis,<sup>44</sup> Ashkenaz,<sup>3</sup> Ryle,<sup>47</sup> Goldscheider<sup>16-18</sup>). The intravascular injection of sodium iodide produces visceral arterial pain (Moore, Moore and Singleton<sup>50</sup>). Leriche<sup>50</sup> also Livingston,<sup>53</sup> produced pain by crushing arteries, while Odermatt,<sup>53</sup> also Spiegel and Wassermann,<sup>54</sup> found that distending the larger arteries notably the aorta was painful. Sutton and Lueth<sup>55</sup> developed proof that an abrupt anoxemia of heart muscle precipitated heart pain.

The second premise namely that dermatomes have their source of pain in related organs while a useful hypothesis and in agreement with many if not most examples of peripheral radiations is too inclusive. Obviously, it is stronger than coincidence that anginal radiations are nearly always sinistral yet this does not exclude the existence of local lesions to account for peripheral pain in these parts. Indeed, peripheral nerves, blood vessels, or lymphatics may have such lesions that come to light only after long and diligent search. This aspect of the problem has been emphasized in the critical observations of Hilton<sup>56</sup> Pike,<sup>41-43</sup> and Livingston.<sup>53</sup>

The third premise of Mackenzie<sup>31</sup> assumed that the reference is mediated in

The radiation often fails to cover all of the usual area outlined above but any portion experiencing pain or any other sensory disturbance will form an orderly pattern in accordance with the nerve distributions. There are therefore in most cases no isolated bizarre or unrelated patches of painful sensation. The general rule is that radiation follows the course of nerves and blood vessels and thus radiation is radicular in type and therefore related to the nerve roots. The pain is seldom of the diffuse type that is related to the nerve trunks but when it occurs it assumes the characteristics that belong to diffuse pain and not the patchy distribution of the radicular variety.

Whereas in most instances the distribution is a left sided unilateral one very occasionally it is right sided or else bilateral. These atypical distributions need not be too disconcerting a factor in making a correct diagnosis since the other aspects of the anginous picture will ordinarily confirm it. Further more diagnostic perplexities will be solved if in right sided pain the history or the character of the illness will lead one to uncover lesions on the right side of the body for example right supra or infra-diaphragmatic troubles. In the case of bilateral chest pain extending into both arms confusion with anginal pain exists when there are overlapping clinical features attributable to disorders of structures like the spinal cord, spinal nerves or inflammation or tumors of chest viscera. As a general rule but this is not always a dependable matter the anginal pain is recognized even when it is referred to the right or to the right and left by its special characteristics viz the character of the pain, the *angor animi* etc. These unusual distributions therefore as well as the absence of distribution and the absence of centrally localized pain do not necessarily militate against arriving at the correct diagnosis of anginal pain.

The right sided distribution as well as the bilateral are similar to left sided distribution in this important respect namely that all three are limited to the sympathetic and somatic nerve supplies that converge upon the 1st to the 4th thoracic levels the vagal supply as we have already observed probably taking no or a subordinate part. The right and bilateral spreads are limited to areas that are supplied by the spinal cord at levels corresponding to those that deal with sinistral spread alone.

### III The Uncommon Distributions

The reference of anginal pain however is not confined always within these limits. In addition to the more common left sided reference pain is known to move into contiguous areas above or below the usual territory, or into combinations of above and below (Figs 54 and 56). These comparatively uncommon zones may even be the sole areas registering pain.

#### A THE UPPER ZONE FOR UNCOMMON RADIATION

The upper zone comprises the head, scalp, face, neck, the supra and infra clavicular regions, the shoulder and the ventral aspect of the arm including

nated or blocked (Chapter XVII) On the basis of careful experiments on dogs Spiegel and Hashimoto<sup>53</sup> reached a view contrary to Danielopolu's According to these investigators, "pain from the stellate ganglion could still be produced after the degeneration of the corresponding somatic elements of the spinal ganglia" (Spiegel) \*

## II The Common Territory of Reference

From its locality, the heart or the region of the heart,† the left precordium, or the anterior chest wall of the left side, pain spreads into a well recognized area This area as a rule, is confined within well defined borders (Fig 53) With the left arm extended at right angles to the chest, this region forms a band, broader at the midsternum where it extends from the 3rd or 4th to the 6th and 7th intercostal spaces It continues anteriorly outward across the upper axilla, almost bisecting the ventral aspect of the arm and remains limited to the inner area, narrowing rather suddenly as it approaches the wrist to taper off on the ventral surface of the fifth finger In actuality dermatomic areas are not defined as sharply as in this description

Except for a small axillary territory this area is almost entirely ventral and practically always sinistral The posterior divisions of the left 1st, 2nd, 3rd and 4th thoracic nerves also supply a similar posterior dermatomic area of the chest This posterior surface, however seems to be as a rule untouched by pain ‡ This is an interesting phenomenon and is, perhaps, a practical point in the differential diagnosis of anginal pain In most cases pain is substernal or close to the sternum next in frequency is involvement of the left pectoral region but spread and diffusion of pain can augment or supplant the more circumscribed localization Accordingly, the pectoral region and the inner surface of the arm down to the fifth finger may pain and smart while the deep pain in the heart is still present or has subsided The radiation into the pectoral region is through the lower cervical and upper thoracic nerves the pectoral muscles receiving their supply from C 5, 6, 7, 8 and Th 1 The radiation into the left arm passes along the 1st and 2nd thoracic nerves the former supplying chiefly the inner aspect of the upper arm Both these thoracic nerves are part of the brachial plexus and in this way this particular part of the plexus shares in the propagation of anginal pain (Fig 55) As this propagated pain subsides or disappears the cutaneous areas are left numb or tingling or weak " Sometimes this is not the rule tenderness to pressure is elicited along the nerves which conveyed the pain the ulnar and the four intercostal nerves

\* Personal communication

† For the purpose of this discussion the coronary vessels as a seat of anginal pain are included when the heart is mentioned

‡ Danielopolu says pain into the back is frequent but he seems to mean thoracic pain as in thoracic visceral disease and not cutaneous manifestations

the first four fingers. Into these areas with a few exceptions to be noted, pain is transmitted by accessory sympathetic afferent fibers. The exceptions are the neck and occiput, the cervical nerves of which are reached through the intervention of the vagus. The rest of this entire region feels pain through the cervical plexus impulses of pain reaching the plexus through accessory afferent sympathetic fibers. Hembeker<sup>1</sup> found a limited number of cervical afferent sympathetic fibers and it is possible that these are already developed sufficiently in some individuals to act as an accessory route.

#### *Accessory Afferent Cardio-aortic Fibers*

These accessory fibers in general are an anatomic endowment forming a pattern for each individual. With regard to the heart and aorta the following groups (Fig. 6) of fibers probably exist and the number and extent of their participation determine the distribution and the design of referred anginal pain especially into uncommon regions.

(a) Afferent fibers in the cervical regions serving as white rami along which as White<sup>22, 23</sup> has suggested any cardiac afferent impulses that were carried would have to achieve a summation in the central nervous system before registering a sensation of pain.

(b) Afferent fibers passing through the white rami of Th 5 Th 6.

(c) Afferent fibers in the vertebral plexus entering the ansa Vieussens and connecting with the lower cervical nerves. The presence of such afferent fibers is denied by Langley<sup>24, 25</sup> but accepted by Danielopolu.

(d) Afferent fibers on the right side corresponding to the usual and uncommon groups of the left side. The heart and aorta have a bilateral nerve supply and the right sided nerves could carry and localize painful impulses to the heart with or without radiation into the right side.

(e) Afferent fibers passing between the vagal ganglia of the trunk and the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion.

(f) Afferent pathways in the vagus trunk entering in the medulla.

(g) Posterior rami from the 2nd 3rd 4th thoracic sympathetic ganglia to the cardiac plexuses containing afferent as well as efferent fibers.

Any of the fibers of a b c e f and g may be predominant dextrally. In most cases all the accessory routes are subordinate but when the usual left sided innervation is interrupted or destroyed as after alcohol paravertebral block for example any or all of these accessory pathways may take over the main burden of transmission of sensory impulses.

#### *Cephalic Distributions*

The tracts that transmit pain into the head and intracranial parts the uppermost district of this upper zone are more difficult to comprehend. The arrangement of somatic and sympathetic neurons described in connection with

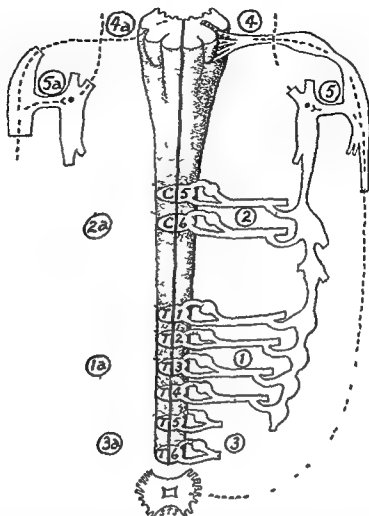


FIG. 56—A Schema of Groups of Afferent Fibres Capable of Transmitting Referred Anginal Pain 1 represents the usual well recognized sinistral group entering the Th 1-4 cord segments through corresponding white rami (1a); a similar dextral group much less frequently involved 2 represents upper left cervical fibres going from upper cervical ganglia to corresponding cervical cord segments (2a) similar dextral fibres 3 represents lower thoracic fibres going from the lower thoracic ganglia to corresponding cord levels (3a) dextral fibres 4 represents the pathway of cardiac afferent fibres in the left vagus destined for the medulla (4a) a similar pathway on the opposite right side 5 represents the pathway of vagal cardiac afferent fibres that ends in the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion (a) a similar pathway of the opposite right side 6 not included in the drawing is the posterior group of rami connecting the upper thoracic sympathetic chain to the cardio-aortic plexus; also not included are the sympathetic fibres from the vertebral plexus entering the cervical plexus and sending communications to the ansa Vieus ens The vertebral plexus is generally not accepted as an afferent pathway for cardio-aortic pain

the first four fingers. Into these areas with a few exceptions to be noted pain is transmitted by accessory sympathetic afferent fibers. The exceptions are the neck and occiput the cervical nerves of which are reached through the intervention of the vagus. The rest of this entire region feels pain through the cervical plexus impulses of pain reaching the plexus through accessory afferent sympathetic fibers. Heinbecker<sup>21</sup> found a limited number of cervical afferent sympathetic fibers and it is possible that these are already developed sufficiently in some individuals to act as an accessory route.

#### *Accessory Afferent Cardio-aortic Fibers*

These accessory fibers in general are an anatomic endowment forming a pattern for each individual. With regard to the heart and aorta the following groups (Fig. 6) of fibers probably exist and the number and extent of their participation determine the distribution and the design of referred anginal pain especially into uncommon regions.

(a) Afferent fibers in the cervical regions serving as white rami along which as White<sup>22-24</sup> has suggested any cardiac afferent impulses that were carried would have to achieve a 'summation' in the central nervous system before registering a sensation of pain.

(b) Afferent fibers passing through the white rami of Th 5 Th 6

(c) Afferent fibers in the vertebral plexus entering the ansa Vieussens and connecting with the lower cervical nerves. The presence of such afferent fibers is denied by Langley<sup>25-27</sup> but accepted by Danielopolu.

(d) Afferent fibers on the right side corresponding to the usual and uncommon groups of the left side. The heart and aorta have a bilateral nerve supply and the right sided nerves could carry and localize painful impulses to the heart with or without radiation into the right side.

(e) Afferent fibers passing between the vagal ganglia of the trunk and the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion.

(f) Afferent pathways in the vagus trunk entering in the medulla.

(g) Posterior rami from the 2nd 3rd 4th thoracic sympathetic ganglia to the cardiac plexuses containing afferent as well as efferent fibers.

Any of the fibers of a b c e f and g may be predominant dextrally. In most cases all the accessory routes are subordinate but when the usual left sided innervation is interrupted or destroyed as after alcohol paravertebral block for example any or all of these accessory pathways may take over the main burden of transmission of sensory impulses.

#### *Cephalic Distributions*

The tracts that transmit pain into the head and intracranial parts the uppermost district of this upper zone are more difficult to comprehend. The arrangement of somatic and sympathetic neurons described in connection with

referred pain that converges through the upper thoracic spinal cord or upper thoracic dorsal roots, is lacking here. The superior cervical sympathetic ganglion by its upper prolongation, the internal carotid nerve, develops an extensive intricate sympathetic network that follows the blood vessels and their ramifications and twigs, sending communications to the cranial nerves reaching special cranial sympathetic ganglia and in fact, supplying a vast variety of cranial structures. This cephalic sympathetic system is, however, supposedly entirely efferent and therefore, presumably not active in the distribution of anginal pain when referred to this "upper zone." Danielopolu maintains that afferent sensations pass along this cephalic sympathetic system but there are not many who concur. Livingston,<sup>33</sup> too, claims that an afferent supply to the head exists and is evidenced by reactions of pain when, for example, the middle meningeal artery is ligated. In the absence of afferent sympathetic fibers<sup>34-36</sup> we are hard pressed to explain satisfactorily why anginal pain and related manifestations are felt in head structures. We present several possibilities.

(a) The cranial nerves act as afferent pathways. Although the cranial nerves bear a certain analogy to spinal (somatic) nerves they fail in general to fulfill the role played by the latter as an arc for referred pain. The sensory component of the fifth nerve transmits anginal pain and it is quite possible that the tenth, seventh, and ninth do so also. In the case, at least, of the sensory component of the fifth nerve, vagal fibers intersect it (Fig. 57) and in this way inaugurate pain and other features in the head. A sensory component of the seventh nerve provides a pathway for deep sensation from the face and a sensory component of the ninth nerve does the same from the posterior third of the tongue and from the pharynx.

(b) *Cranial sympathetic (efferent) fibers register anginal pain in the head region.* In the absence of cranial afferent sympathetic fibers and since head structures are known to experience pain, Pollock and Davis<sup>41</sup> developed the hypothesis that pain in the head region is the result of sympathetic motor (efferent) effects upon the skin and blood vessels in this region. Similarly, Penfield<sup>42</sup> asserted that referred anginal pain into the head depended upon the action of cranial efferent sympathetic fibers. He accepted the assumption that the vagus and its depressor nerve carry afferent impulses of pain to the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion. Within the ganglion efferent cells are stimulated and inaugurate efferent impulses along cranial efferent sympathetic fibers (Fig. 58). In this way a reaction is registered in the vessels of the head and localized sweating (also in the face and neck) and other manifestations appear e.g. a general rise in blood pressure and perhaps even spasm of the coronary vessels.

The foregoing was the actual course of events in a patient reported by Penfield with luetic aortitis and severe angina pectoris in whom the middle and inferior (stellate) ganglia were removed on both sides thus isolating the supe-

rior ganglia. Nine days after the operation the patient developed pain which started around his neck like a collar spreading into the gums and to the top of the head. Perspiration covered both sides of the forehead and the systolic blood pressure rose to over 100. This effect, according to Penfield<sup>10</sup> was the result of a reflex within the autonomic system. I enclosed points out that similar

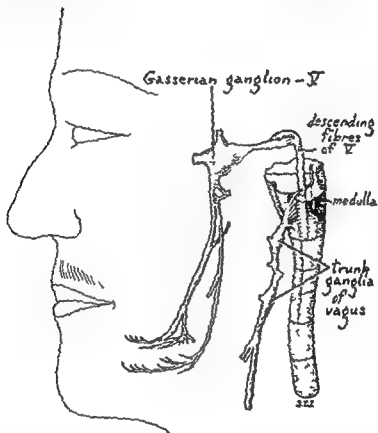


FIG. 1. The Vagus Nerve & its Fibres From the Heart to the Medulla. These fibres are observed ascending in the vagus trunk to the trunk ganglia then entering the medulla where they intersect the sensory limb of the fifth cranial nerve. In this way anginal pain could be referred into the district supplied by this portion of the 5th nerve.

reflexes are encountered in other areas of the body and are known as axon reflexes (Sokolow reflex) described by Langley<sup>11</sup> and by Langley and Anderson.<sup>12</sup> Invoking this reflex as the sole basis for referred anginal pain to the head however fails to recognize that sensory impulses in the vagus nerve need not leave it for the sympathetic system but are free to go to the medulla directly there to reach cranial nerves and perhaps other structures.



Whereas in the case of the distribution of pain along the sensory component of the fifth cranial nerve we hold responsible a mechanism that depends upon the intervention by the vagus or intervention by cranial efferent sympathetic

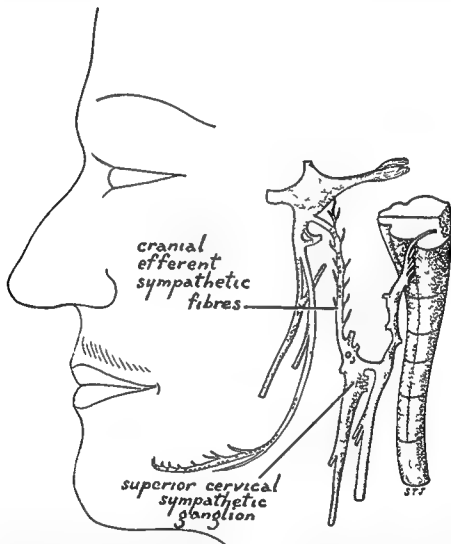


FIG 58 —Vagal Afferent Fibres to the Superior Cervical Sympathetic Ganglion (The Autonomic Reflex (Sokolow) in the Vagus) From the cardiac plexuses afferent fibres ascend in the vagus and cross into the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion. In these ganglia efferent (motor) cells are supposedly stimulated to set off efferent effects along cranial efferent sympathetic fibres and into cranial nerves of which the sensory component of the fifth nerve is an example

fibers in the case of other cranial nerves, for instance the seventh and ninth, we are forced to explain their involvement without any intervention of the vagus and upon the action of efferent fibers only

(c) The cephalic manifestations are an expression of a Ritter Valli reaction. The induction of post-operative pain and other sympathetic features after extirpation of cervical ganglia as observed for example in Fenfield's case may have a totally different explanation namely the Ritter Valli reaction. According to this, an excitatory stage follows the severance of a nerve and physiological effects specific for this nerve continue until degeneration of the peripheral nerve sets in whereupon its physiological action is abolished. The phenomenon however has a bearing only during the early weeks after injury to the nerves.

#### *The Vagus Nerve as a Route for Anginal Pain*

The opinion and reasons to support it have already been expressed that the vagus nerve is perhaps a subordinate or inconsequential conductor of anginal pain. There exist nevertheless a number of clinical instances where the anatomic course followed by the vagus and the location of its anastomoses to other nerve structures and systems (Fig. 52) would best explain the occurrence of atypical radiations. The vagus nerve therefore is included in this text as a possible route for anginal pain.

Through the vagus nerve sensory impulses are supposed to reach the back of the head along the second and sometimes the first rudimentary cervical nerve (Danielopolu) or the ear through the second cervical nerve. The jugular ganglion of the vagus in the jugular foramen gives off an auricular branch which supplies the external auricle, the bony portion of the external auditory canal and the lower part of the external ear drum. Through this nerve anginal pain may lash any of these structures and by some this nerve is held responsible for similar pain in the side of the neck arriving through the third cervical nerve and for pain, tenderness and hyperalgesia at the points of insertion of the trapezius muscle and even through lower cervical nerves to other neck and shoulder muscles. Furthermore by its connection with the fifth cranial nerve as already described the vagus carries referred pain into the lower jaw or into the teeth. Vagal together with sympathetic fibers form an extensive thyroid plexus; the sympathetic fibers run to the middle cervical ganglion, the vagal fibers to the laryngeal nerves. Although manifestations of referred pain through this plexus are not established it is possible that a disturbance, as after thyroidectomy, of this plexus as well as of the superior and middle sympathetic cardiac nerves close to the posterior surface of the thyroid gland contributes to the alleviation of anginal pain. The tenth nerve is also a sensory nerve to the pharynx, esophagus and to the stomach and lungs.

The vagus also has motor nerves for the palate, pharynx, trachea, esophagus and lungs. The motor branches to the pharynx transmit the horrible gripping spasm to the throat, a fairly common and extremely distressing manifestation during an anginal attack and not to be confused with the sensation of suffocation. This pharyngeal spasm allegedly is more frequent in anginal pain of

**aortic origin** The motor component of the tenth nerve also supplies the stomach and duodenum, and referred pain into these organs is not rare. The spinal accessory nerve has sensory but also predominantly motor fibers which join the vagus at its nodal ganglion, but these accessory motor fibers have no great significance.

Nearly all authorities agree that sensory sensations from the heart or aorta cannot reach the sympathetic system above the level of the middle cervical ganglion. The upper cervical sympathetic trunk contains no afferent cardio-aortic fibers, and although Heinbecker found that the superior sympathetic cardiac nerve transmits sensory impulses, these are destined for the vagal ganglia. In any event interruptions in the sympathetic system above the middle sympathetic ganglion in all likelihood, and above the superior ganglion unequivocally, would have to bring high cervical afferent sympathetic fibers or the vagal system into action to permit the registration of pain in the uncommon areas innervated by the left cervical nerves or by cranial nerves. The vagal route is not necessarily reserved for emergencies as in Penfield's post-operative case; it is supposed to function as we have already intimated even when the cervical sympathetic system is intact, providing an ascending tract for afferent impulses.

## B THE LOWER ZONE FOR UNCOMMON RADIATION

In contrast to the upper zone, the lower zone for the uncommon registration of anginal pain is much less clearly understood. Generally speaking, the reference of anginal pain into these lower regions, i.e. below the level of the 4th or 5th thoracic spinal cord segment, is less frequent than upper radiations. The lower reference has a special interest and significance, however, in connection with the reception of pain into abdominal or pelvic regions where anginal pain would seem improbable and where extra-cardiac disease either obscures the true nature of the malady or vicariously and misleadingly takes on the clinical form of heart or aortic pain. In exceptional cases, pain from the cardiac and aortic plexuses possibly passes through the lower thoracic intercostal nerves as far down as the 5th, less likely the 6th, sometimes even as low down as the 12th, and, corresponding zonal bands or stripes on the left chest innervated by these intercostals become the dermatomic sites of referred pain, their pathways somatic and sympathetic, are identical with those found in the upper thoracic levels.

### *Clinical Examples of Atypical Radiations*

Anginal pain can have very unusual radiations. With a knowledge of the accessory groups of afferent fibers these clinical occurrences are more readily followed and better understood.

Reliable observers have described puzzling radiations to the left shoulder

with or without radiations to the rest of the limb (Edenken and Wollerth "Libman" Boas and Levy<sup>23</sup>) The mechanism for this in our opinion is similar to that in the case of other peripheral radiations. In the presence for instance, of a peripheral lesion at the shoulder afferent impulses that originate in it

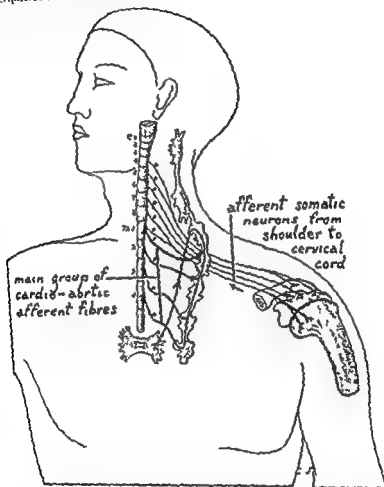


FIG. 9.—The Routes for Referred Anginal Pain to the Shoulder. The afferent somatic neurons from the shoulder may enter the spinal cord by accessory fibres as low as the 1st or even 2nd thoracic levels a region which receives cardiac afferent impulses. Anginal pain could thus be referred through the lowermost (accessory) somatic neurons into the shoulder.

would find an entry not only into the spinal cord or dorsal ganglia at the levels of C4 to C6 but also into the upper thoracic levels by means of accessory somatic fibers travelling through lower cervical or upper intercostal nerves (Fig. 59). But even in the absence of a peripheral lesion at or near the shoulder this

region and its surrounding tissues would be capable of acting as the equivalent of a dermatomic area or as the equivalent of an extra cardiac organ or structure. The shoulder, therefore, is able to feel referred impulses from the heart, either by the route already described in connection with a peripheral lesion in

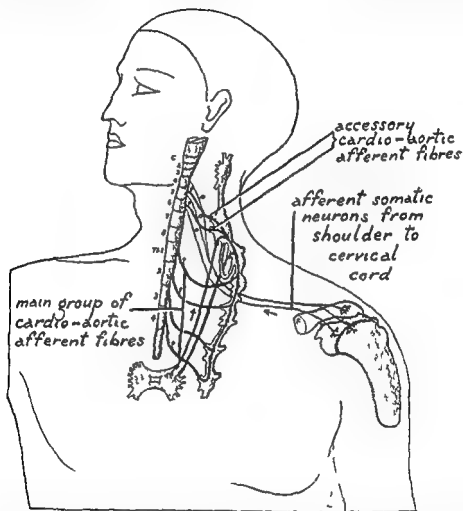


FIG. 60—The Routes for Referred Anginal Pain to the Shoulder. The 4th, 5th, 6th cervical nerves connect the shoulder to corresponding cervical segments of the spinal cord. Visceral afferent fibres from the cardiac plexus reach the upper thoracic segments Th 1-4 of the spinal cord by means of corresponding upper thoracic white rami. In this drawing a group of cervical rami is portrayed that would be capable of carrying afferent impulses from the heart into the cervical cord segments that receive afferent neurons from the shoulder. Anginal pain could thus be referred into the shoulder.

this neighborhood i.e. through accessory somatic neurons or through the intervention of accessory cervical sympathetic fibers (Fig. 60) such accessory fibers as we have already observed have been described by Heinbecker.<sup>1</sup>

Other illustrations of the possibility of transmission of painful sensations by

means of accessory sympathetic afferent fibers are not lacking. For instance a case of severe anginal crisis relieved by surgical attention to a postoperative stump in the left arm (Aronowitch), the persistence of pain after many dorsal spinal nerves were cut (Spiegel<sup>21</sup> &), pain from peritonitis after a high transverse myelitis (Livingston<sup>22</sup>), the distribution of pain into a subacromial bursa after a coronary thrombosis (Libman<sup>23</sup>), and anginal pain referred to a carious tooth (Markenziel<sup>24</sup>). The projection of anginal pain into abdominal viscera also constitutes an example of the functioning of numerous visceral afferent fibers in addition to the more common groups that pass through the upper four thoracic levels. To this last problem the propagation of pain from one organ into another we now turn.

In all these references we have postulated the existence of a pattern of afferent pathways wherein impulses from the heart, coronary vessels or aorta and from non-cardiac regions converge upon the dorsal grey matter or dorsal roots concerned with heart pain. This pattern is an anatomic endowment, so to speak, and it may exhibit individual differences in its multiple or localized predominance of entry into the spinal cord.

#### *The Reference of Anginal Pain to Noncardio-vascular Viscera*

In an attempt to understand the mechanism and follow the pathways of referred anginal or any other type of cardiac pain to regions that are related to the spinal cord below the lowermost level described thus far in this text. Thus or 6 we are led to believe that afferent impulses in the ganglionic trunk descend to this level also lower. To accept such a postulation however has seemed unwarranted and unwarranted. It has been argued in the first place that no proof exists that cardiac impulses of pain descend so low in the sympathetic trunk and in the second place even if there were such evidence we would still be confronted with the difficulty of knowing what eventual destination such impulses could have except to enter corresponding spinal cord levels where if perchance afferent tracts were hit nonradicular peripheral references would follow instead of the radicular type actually seen in cardiac referred pain.

Similar and other objections have been marshalled in connection with the distribution of cardio-aortic referred pain into organs other than the heart. This type of reference has been ascribed to a mechanism of peripheral distribution having such an explanation on the well known phenomenon that pain is announced at or referred to the end of the peripheral distribution of an afferent nerve regardless of the site of the lesion or excitation along that nerve. In the domain of the somatic nervous system an excellent example is the pain brought to the knee along the obturator nerve that is initiated at the hip as from tuberculosis of the hip. But strictly speaking, this is not referred pain in

region and its surrounding tissues would be capable of acting as the equivalent of a dermatomic area or as the equivalent of an extra cardiac organ or structure. The shoulder, therefore, is able to feel referred impulses from the heart, either by the route already described in connection with a peripheral lesion in

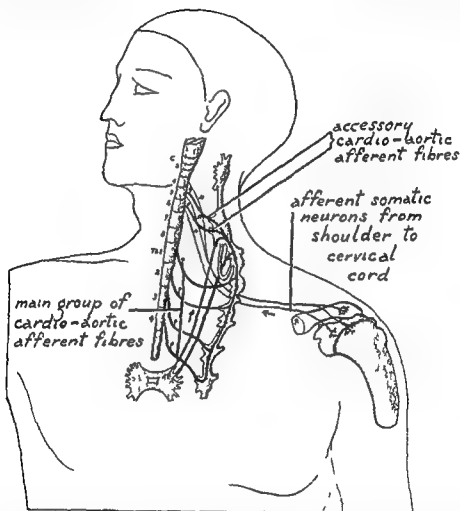


FIG. 60 —The Routes for Referred Anginal Pain to the Shoulder. The 4th, 5th, 6th cervical nerves connect the shoulder to corresponding cervical segments of the spinal cord. Visceral afferent fibres from the cardiac plexus reach the upper thoracic segments Th 1-4 of the spinal cord by means of corresponding upper thoracic white rami. In this drawing a group of cervical rami is portrayed that would be capable of carrying afferent impulses from the heart to those cervical cord segments that receive afferent neurons from the shoulder. Anginal pain could thus be referred into the shoulder.

this neighborhood, i.e., through accessory somatic neurons or through the intervention of accessory cervical sympathetic fibers (Fig. 60), such accessory fibers as we have already observed have been described by Heinbecker.<sup>1</sup>

Other illustrations of the possibility of transmission of painful sensations by

means of accessory sympathetic afferent fibers are not lacking. For instance a case of severe anginal crisis relieved by surgical attention to a postoperative stump in the left arm (Zonowitsch<sup>21</sup>) the persistence of pain after many dorsal spinal nerves were cut (Spiegel<sup>21, 22</sup>), pain from peritonitis after a high transverse myelitis (Livingston<sup>23</sup>) the distribution of pain into a subacromial bursa after a coronary thrombosis (Libman<sup>24</sup>) and anginal pain referred to a carious tooth (Mackenzie<sup>25</sup>). The projection of anginal pain into abdominal viscera also constitutes an example of the functioning of numerous visceral afferent fibers in addition to the more common groups that pass through the upper left four thoracic levels. To this last problem the propagation of pain from one organ into another we now turn.

In all these references we have postulated the existence of a pattern of afferent pathways wherein impulses from the heart, coronary vessels or aorta and from non-cardiac regions converge upon the dorsal grey matter or dorsal roots concerned with heart pain. This pattern is an anatomic endowment so to speak and it may exhibit individual differences in its multiple or localized predominance of entry into the spinal cord.

#### *The Reference of Anginal Pain into Noncardio-vascular Viscera*

In an attempt to understand the mechanism and follow the pathways of referred anginal or any other type of cardiac pain to regions that are related to the spinal cord below the lowest level described thus far in this text. Thorpe<sup>26</sup> or G. we are led to believe that afferent impulses in the ganglionic trunk descend to this level also lower. To accept such a postulation however has seemed unsatisfactory and unwarranted. It has been argued in the first place that no proof exists that cardiac impulses of pain descend so low in the sympathetic trunk and in the second place even if there were such evidence we would still be confronted with the difficulty of knowing what eventual destination such impulses could have except to enter corresponding spinal cord levels where if perchance afferent tracts were but nonradicular peripheral references would follow instead of the radicular type actually seen in cardiac referred pain.

Similar and other objections have been marshalled in connection with the distribution of cardio-splenic referred pain into organs other than the heart. This type of reference has been ascribed to a mechanism of peripheral distribution basing such an explanation on the well known phenomenon that pain is announced at or referred to the end of the peripheral distribution of an afferent nerve regardless of the site of the lesion or excitation along that nerve. In the domain of the somatic nervous system an excellent example is the pain brought to the knee along the obturator nerve that is initiated at the hip as from tuberculosis of the hip. But strictly speaking, this is not referred pain in



the sense of the term applied to referred visceral pain. The impulses of pain along the obdurator nerve undergo no mediation in any locus of convergence. It would be well, therefore, to omit the use of the term "referred pain" for manifestations of this kind.

Referred cardiac pain, in contrast, depends upon a summated effect between converging streams of impulses that arrive at a zone of mediation or transfer. According to this concept, cardiac impulses at the upper thoracic levels are supposed to initiate referred pain along tracts or fibers with which they come in contact in the spinal cord or in any other locus of convergence. With regard to the projection of cardiac pain into some other organ, a sensory disturbance in the heart would be transmitted to the central nucleus of a fiber that carried this impulse of disturbance and would be referred into a peripheral distribution other than the heart. In other words, afferent impulses of cardiac pain on reaching the spinal cord (or the dorsal roots or ganglia) may terminate in the cord or medullary nucleus of a nerve that receives afferent fibers from some other unrelated viscus.

#### *The Propagation of Referred Pain from One Viscus into Another*

There is in our opinion an explanation of the propagation of referred pain from one viscus into another which is in harmony with the known anatomic, physiologic and experimental facts. Considerations of referred angular pain bearing upon its distribution to various abdominal viscera and vice versa abdominal visceral pain referred to the heart, as well as other relevant material will be more clearly grasped, we believe, after the discussion of this explanation. The concept of a mass action of the entire autonomic nervous system is an essential part of this discussion. For the rest we hold that all abdominal organs pelvic and thoracic probably as well possess multiple afferent autonomic pathways that may enter practically all the dorsal spinal roots and through these multiple afferent fibers as we shall attempt to show angular and abdominal visceral references are mediated.

#### *The Multiplicity of Visceral Afferent Pathways*

We alluded to the difficulty of understanding the pathway of visceral afferent sensations that reach dermatomic levels and viscera connected to the spinal cord below the 5th or 6th thoracic levels. This however is an example of but one part of the problem. The other is to account for the registration into the heart and its vicinity of pain that arises in distant organs or other non cardiac structures (Fig 56). To illustrate a paroxysm of angular pain due to an abrupt coronary occlusion occasionally simulates acute gall bladder or pancreatic disease or sudden perforation of a peptic or duodenal ulcer and the pain and its references are located below the diaphragm, even penetrating into the pelvic region. Conversely the pain of any of these abdominal or pelvic conditions is

focused in the heart and its immediate neighborhood and even overflows into the brachial and cervical plexuses. We have then clinically bi-directional references and with the heart as the focal point, the registration is centripetal or centrifugal. This state of affairs raises the suggestion that mediation, after all, may be intraspinal and accomplished by intraspinal collaterals connecting the somatic and sympathetic systems. The 'clinical storm' so often an accompaniment of anginal pain is probably governed by higher centers most probably in the medulla, diencephalon and cortex. Indeed without laboring the point an abrupt thrombosis in a heart vessel or a sudden perforation of a peptic or duodenal ulcer or of an intestine may prove to be expressions of very similar excitations stemming from common regulatory centers (see Cushing<sup>7</sup> 'Peptic ulcers and the interbrain') and with a certain cogency therefore we may speak of angina pectoris of the gallbladder of the pancreas and so forth.

On anatomic as well as physiologic ground the occurrence of centripetal transmission of pain along commonly shared visceral afferent fibers secures a new and strong support in the recent work of Ashkenaz<sup>8</sup> on the centripetal visceral pathways of the gallbladder in the cat. Ashkenaz and Spiegel<sup>1</sup> in an earlier publication described in the cat a contraction of the panniculus carnosus muscles which produces a movement of the skin of the trunk on the underlying tissues. This contraction is caused by a spinal cord reflex after painful distension of the gall bladder or duodenum and the reflex has its afferent pathway through the splanchnic nerve its efferent pathway through the anterior thoracic nerves and the central part of the reflex arc is located within the spinal cord.

Utilizing this localized muscular contraction visceropannicular reflex as a signal of pain Ashkenaz<sup>8</sup> plotted out the distribution of afferent visceral fibers from the gall bladder and he determined that these fibers go to practically all the right sided thoracic dorsal spinal root ganglia the upper level was Th 2 the lower level Th 10 as a rule but the lower level was not as sharply defined as the upper in some cases reaching as low as Lumbar 3. He found furthermore these visceral fibers pursue either of two ascending routes: 1. they ascend in the sympathetic trunk before entering the spinal cord or enter the spinal cord at a low level and ascend by intraspinal paths. Last but equally important the afferent visceral fibers may cross from the right sympathetic trunk to the left trunk in at least one animal of the 60 cats studied afferent visceral fibers entered a number of thoracic dorsal roots on the left side. Before this Schrago and Ivy<sup>10</sup> and Davis et al.<sup>11</sup> had called attention to the large number of afferent connections in the case of the gallbladder with many dorsal roots. Ashkenaz's investigations however are most complete and have the virtue of having utilized a single well defined and objective signal of pain subject to no misinterpretation.

*The Predominance of Entry of Visceral Afferent Fibers into the Spinal Cord*

This bilateral, although predominantly right sided, sympathetic innervation and the arrangement of a series of multiple entries into many dorsal roots bear

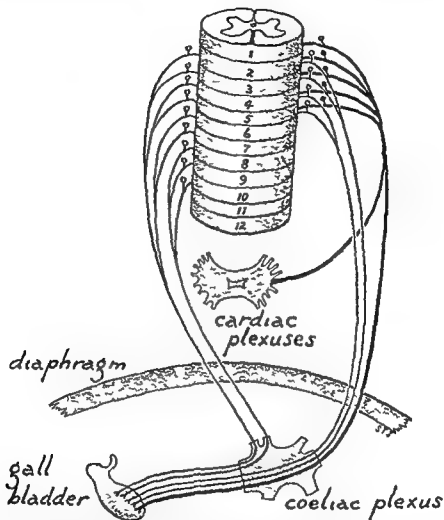


FIG. 61 —The Pathways for Referred Pain from the Gall Bladder into the Cardiac Territory. The gall bladder has many afferent fibers entering almost every level of the thoracic cord on the right side and a number of upper levels on the left side as well. The cardiac afferent fibers have their usual entry into the upper four thoracic segments of the left side. The radiations of gall bladder and heart disease are therefore as a rule distinctly apart and registered in characteristically different areas of the body. When gallbladder pain is referred into the cardiac territory we may explain it on the basis of an arrangement of fibers illustrated above. The predominance of entry of afferent fibers from the gallbladder is indicated as on the left side of the upper thoracic cord the zone in which anginal referred pain is mediated. The same scheme would hold if the mediation were in dorsal ganglia or roots.

directly upon our problem of referred pain in man. Since there is every reason to believe that a similar arrangement exists for him, it would appear that if

the entry of visceral afferent impulses from the gallbladder were predominantly high this would correspond practically to the level concerned with heart pain (Fig 61) (It is conceivable that the usual and predominant right sided development of afferent fibers from the gallbladder might be reversed

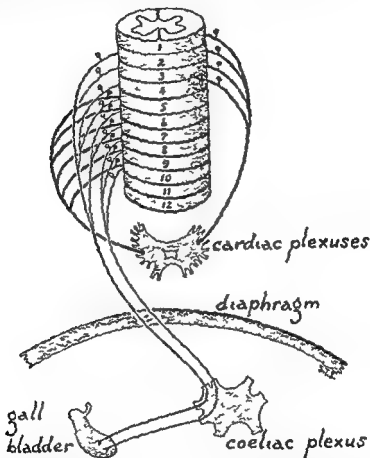


FIG 62 - The pathways for Referred Visceral Pain into the Gall Bladder Region. The drawing illustrates the arrangement of afferent fibers that would prevail in those comparatively infrequent cases when a visceral pain is propagated into the gall bladder region.

The cardiac afferent fibers are drawn here as predominantly dorsal and overlapping the entry zone of the main group of afferent fibers from the gall bladder

(with a left sided predominance in this type of case). A similar multiple arrangement for the entry of afferent impulses to all or very many dorsal roots probably exists for other abdominal viscera. This would render it possible to have painful impulses pass from noncardiac organs to local or referred areas in a

about the heart and pain could be projected out of an involved organ, where it properly belongs, into the heart or aorta.

On a similar anatomic basis the probability lies open that visceral afferent impulses from the heart are carried, in some cases, to dorsal roots below Th 4 and even below Th 5 or 6, furthermore, similar fibers may find an entry into the spinal cord through a number of dorsal roots on the contralateral (right) side. If the entry of afferent heart impulses were predominantly low, below Th 6 or 7, or fortuitously coincided with those segmental cord levels receiving visceral afferent fibers from abdominal and pelvic viscera, anginal pain might very well be experienced in the related noncardiac viscera (Fig 62).

The pathways for simulating anginal pain in or away from the heart, depend therefore, upon the architectural pattern of the visceral afferent pathways from the heart and all other organs or structures. With regard to peripheral structures as instigators of pain referred to the heart, the afferent somatic nerves may be regarded as analogous to the visceral afferent fibers with this exception that somatic nerves enter a fixed number of related cord segments, at most, three to five. The references of pain, therefore, cannot be as widely ranged as in the case of the visceral afferent pathways. A case in point is the intense pain of brachial neuritis known to extend to or center in the heart region and simulate anginal pain (Lian,<sup>31</sup> also Boyer<sup>6</sup>), but the sensory impulses cannot reach more than the upper thoracic, possibly the 8th cervical spinal cord segments or corresponding dorsal roots, and within the spinal cord these impulses travel up or down for only a few levels by either somatic or sympathetic dendrites as the case may be.

#### IV Characteristics of Referred Anginal Pain

Many of these characteristics, already mentioned are here regrouped and re-emphasized.

##### A SINISTRALITY

A striking aspect of referred anginal pain is its sinistrality and extension to the ventral chest wall and arm. Although pain is known to penetrate to the back this is more likely to be a through and through deep pain reaching the vertebral column than a pain which is referred to posterior cutaneous areas in the left chest. The most frequent type of chest radiation is transverse in direction but well into the left side, and is often an extension of the more centrally located substernal pain. The involved area on the anterior chest includes not only the usual pectoral region but the left shoulder the entire neck, and the left arm as well or is confined to only one of these regions. There are odd instances when the pain in the arm is limited in glove like formation to the ventral surface of the 4th and 5th fingers or the pain may form a bracelet encircling only the region of the left wrist. Sometimes the left biceps muscle region is the seat of extremely sharp pain similar to the excruciating kind of a crushed

finger. The spread into the head regions especially to the jaws teeth scalp and ear is not altogether rare and is apt to lead to much confusion and uncertainty in diagnosis. Interesting observations are those of referred mandibular pain in teeth with caries or into a subacromial bursa etc. Referred pain in the epigastrium in the flanks around the umbilicus and even lower in the scrotum or rectum is unusual but occurs. In all these left sided radiation is predominant. The right and bilateral distributions are much less frequent. Danielopolu and Danulesco<sup>19</sup> observed right sided radiation in a case of complete situs inversus. Whereas referred anginal pain is usually radicular in nature a number of the neurologic manifestations detailed above belong instead to the nerve trunk or diffuse variety.

### B. AMPLIFICATION

The attack of angina pectoris or acute myocardial infarction consists of physical and emotional upheavals. The emotional elements do not concern us at this point the physical elements take the form of shock and other features among which pain is predominant and overwhelming. The pain is a furious storm surpassed in severity by no other kind of pain. This intense agony is often associated with anatomic lesions that are themselves disproportionately small to the nature of pain they produce. While there is not always a perfect correlation between the extent and degrees of anatomic lesions and the quality intensity and duration of pain the disparity in the case of anginal pain may be so striking as to call for some explanation.

An attempt at an explanation is provided by the theory of amplification and summation developed by the studies of the electrophysiology of the nervous system. It is claimed that evidence points to the summation of effects from the impulses of anginal pain that arrive at common neuron connections in the spinal cord. At these connections (or in the dorsal roots) weak or interrupted sensations of pain from the heart coronary vessels or aorta supposedly are converted into stronger or continuous sensations of pain. In the same regions of the cord at common synaptic junctions (or again possibly in the dorsal roots) similar impulses are amplified and in this form pass contralaterally and upward in the spinal cord to the thalamus. There is a belief that in the thalamus and cortex these sensations may be amplified still further. By virtue of this capacity of amplification impulses of pain reach consciousness vastly augmented and frequently beyond the possibility of control. This phenomenon is assumed to operate for referred pain from all viscera but nowhere more conspicuously and dramatically than in that of anginal origin.

### C. RESIDUAL EFFECTS

In general direct pain within an organ—splanchnic pain—is weaker and less sharp than pain referred from an organ—somatic pain. This distinction be-

tween deep "splanchnic pain" in a viscus and superficial "somatic" peripheral pain was known to Ross, Head also differentiated "sharp, aching stabbing" referred pain from "dull, wearing" direct pain

Referred anginal pain is often much more intense and sharp than the sternal or retrosternal variety, and the pain may be wholly referred and the sternal region escape. As referred pain subsides the affected region often undergoes a feeling of numbness or dullness. Sometimes this effect is a tingling or a sharply localized thermal sensation, hot or cold. The nerves that distribute referred pain may stay sensitive to pressure, or they may set up reverse and paradoxical attacks of pain, travelling toward the precordium. Attacks of anginal pain have been provoked by pressure or thermal stimuli to extra cardiac surface areas on the left arm for example, and it would almost seem as if these areas become more readily responsive to the initiation of similar attacks after having experienced the first one. The anginal pain that comes after chilling the skin belongs in this category.

In addition to zones of hyperesthesia, trophic changes are known to appear and swellings in the breasts, even mastitis, in the arms and in fact in areas as far away as the lower limbs and testes. The left arm, after an attack, may lose its motor power and atrophy of the muscles supplied by the ulnar nerve has been noted. Herpes zoster along the course of nerves that have carried anginal pain is not altogether a rare occurrence.

#### D. EMOTIONAL COMPONENT

The emotional suffering seems to possess singular psychogenic traits that are seldom seen in other types of agony, and the intensity of this emotional picture overshadows that observed in nonanginal kinds of pain. An intimation, therefore, may be in order that this inordinate psychic upheaval is produced in the higher centers through the intervention of some mechanism of amplification analogous to that described in connection with anginal pain.

#### BIBLIOGRAPHY

- <sup>1</sup> ALLBUTT I. C. Diseases of the Arteries Including Angina Pectoris. London: Macmillan 1915.
- <sup>2</sup> ARONOWITSCH G. D. Über anginoide Anfälle bei Schmerzen im linken Brachialplexus. Klin. Wchnschr. 1925 4: 117.
- <sup>3</sup> ASHKENAZ D. M. An experimental analysis of centripetal visceral pathways based upon the visceropannicular reflex. Am. J. Physiol. 1937 120: 587.
- <sup>4</sup> ——— AND SPIEGEL E. The visceropannicular reflex. Am. J. Physiol. 1935 112: 573.
- <sup>5</sup> BOAS F. P. AND LEVY H. Extracardiac determinants of the site and radiation of pain in angina pectoris with special reference to shoulder pain. Am. Heart J. 1937 14: 540.
- <sup>6</sup> BOYER A. De l'angine de poitrine compliquant les neuralgies intercostales et brachiales gauches. Thèse Paris 1930 6: 13.
- <sup>7</sup> CUSHING H. Peptic ulcers and the interbrain. Surg. Gynec. & Obst. 1937 55: 1.
- <sup>8</sup> DANIELOPOULU D. L'angine de poitrine et l'angine abdominale. Paris: Masson 1927.
- <sup>9</sup> ——— J. de Chirurgie 1938 51: 1.

- 10 — AND DANULESCO V Transpozite completa de viscere cu insuficienta mitrala I  
nortica cronica Bull. Ascz Brancovenesti 1916
- 11 — AND HASTIDE Reberches ur la sensibilité cardiaque Possibilité d'améliorer  
l'angine de poitrine par la résection des racines postérieures ou des nerfs juxtaux. Comp  
rend Soc. de Biol 1925 88 271 Bull et mem Soc. Méd d Hôp de Paris 1923 4 69
- 12 DAVIS L POLLOCK L J AND STONE T T Visceral pain Surg Gynec & Obst 1915 55  
418
- 13 EDELMAN J AND WOLPERTH C C Persistent pain in the shoulder region following myo-  
cardial infarction Am J M Sc. 1936 191 201
- 14 EPPNER H AND HOFER G Zur Pathogenese und Therapie der Angina pectoris Wien  
Klin Wchnschr 1923 36 334
- 15 — AND — Die Therapie der Gegegnart Wien Klin Wchnschr 1923 64 169
- 16 GOLD JUDITH A Behandlung der arteriosklerotischen Schmerzen Ztschr f Physikalische  
u Diät Therap 1910 23 3
- 17 — Über die operative Behandlung der Angina pectoris Klin Wchnschr 1924 4 2425
- 18 — Zur Frage der tiefen Druckempfindung in Klin Wchnschr 1925 4 9 9
- 19 HEAD H On disturbances of sensation with special reference to the pain of visceral dis-  
ease Brain 1893 16 1
- 20 HEBERDEN W Some account of a disorder of the breast Med Trans Coll Phys London  
1772 2 11
- 21 HEINBECKER P Anatomical and physiologic criteria for surgical relief of cardiac pain J  
Thorac Surg 1932 2 311
- 22 HILTON J Rest and Pain A course of lectures on the influence of mechanical and physio-  
logical rest in the treatment of accidents and surgical diseases and the diagnostic value  
of pain 10th ed Edited by Jacobson W H London 190
- 23 HERTZ A H (HERTZ) On the insensibility of the alimentary canal in health and disease  
Lancet 1911 1 10 1 1119 1187
- 24 HOFER G Bericht u die Durchschneidung des Nervus Depressor bei der Angina pectoris  
nach Eppner H u Hofer G Ztschr f Hals Nasen u Ohren 1923 11 68
- 25 JEVVER E Quoted by Osler W in Lectures on Angina Pectoris and Allied States  
New York D Appleton 1897
- 26 LAXLEY J V The Autonomic Nervous System Cambridge W Heffer & Son 1921
- 27 — The sensor nerve fibres of the heart and aorta Lancet 1924 2 955
- 28 — AND ANDERSON H On reflex actions from sympathetic ganglia. J Physiol 1894 16  
410
- 29 LEMAITRE Quoted by Danielopolu D
- 30 LERICHE R La chirurgie de la douleur et ses résultats. La Presse Médicale 1927 32 49  
Ibid 1927 36 661
- 31 LILLY C L Angine de poitrine Paris Masson 1932
- 32 LUBMAN F Symposium Angina pectoris with special reference to coronary artery disease  
Bull New York Acad Med 1935 11 477
- 33 LIVINGSTON W K The Clinical Aspects of Visceral Neurology Baltimore Chas C Thomas  
Co 194
- 34 MAKENZI J Some points bearing on the association of sensory disorders and visceral  
disease Brain 1893 16 321
- 35 MARTIN S On the physiological meaning of inframammary pain Brit M J 1864 276  
(Sept 16)
- 36 MOORE H M MOORE R E AND SINGLETON A O JR Experiments on the chemical  
stimulation of pain endings associated with small blood vessels Am J Physiol 1934  
127 194
- 37 MURLEY J Visceral pain Brit M J 193 12 0 (Dec 25)



- <sup>38</sup> ODERMATT W Die Schmerzempfindlichkeit der Blutgefäße und die Gefäßreflexe. Beitr f Klin Chir 1922 127 1
- <sup>39</sup> PARRY, C H An Inquiry into the Symptoms and Causes of the Syncope Commonly Called Angina Pectoris London Cadell & Davis 1799
- <sup>40</sup> PENFIELD W The neurological mechanism of angina pectoris and its relation to surgery. Am J M Sc 1925 170 864
- <sup>41</sup> PIKE F H On the difficulties encountered in the evolution of air breathing vertebrates. Science 1924 59 402
- <sup>42</sup> — A further note on the difficulties encountered by land vertebrates in their development. Science 1928 69 348
- <sup>43</sup> — An approach to the problem of pain fields with special reference to those associated with diseases of the nose and throat. Laryngoscope 1928 38 219
- <sup>44</sup> POLLOCK L J AND DAVIS L H Peripheral Nerve Injuries New York P B Hoeber 1929
- <sup>45</sup> RANSON S W AND BILLINGSLEY P K The superior cervical sympathetic ganglion and the cervical portion of the sympathetic trunk. J Comp Neurol 1918 29 313
- <sup>46</sup> ROSS J On the segmental distribution of sensory disorders. Brain 1888 10 333
- <sup>47</sup> RYLE J A Visceral pain and referred pain. Lancet 1926 1 695
- <sup>48</sup> — The clinical study of pain with special reference to the pains of visceral disease. Br M J 1928 1 534
- <sup>49</sup> SCHRAGER V I AND IVY A C Symptoms produced by distention of the gall bladder and biliary ducts. A clinical and experimental study. Surg Gynec & Obst 1928 47
- <sup>50</sup> SPIEGEL E A Über das Wesen des Bauchschmerzes und seine Begleiterscheinungen. Wien med Wchnschr 1927 77 349
- <sup>51</sup> — Experimentelle Neurologie Berlin S Karger 1928
- <sup>52</sup> — Visceral and vascular pain. Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 1930 5 213
- <sup>53</sup> — AND HASHIMOTO S Über die Schmerzleitung aus dem cardioaortalen System. Beziehung zu den Spinalganglion und den Rückenmarksbahnen. Ztschr f d ges exp Med 1930 71 408
- <sup>54</sup> — AND WASSERMAN S Experimentelle Studien über die Entstehung des Vorterschmerzes und seine Leitung zum Zentralnervensystem. Ztschr f d ges exp Med 1928 52 180
- <sup>55</sup> STORR P JR Mikroskopische Anatomie des vegetativen Nervensystems Berlin J Springer 1928
- <sup>56</sup> — Bemerkungen zur Gefässinnervation. Zentralbl f Chir 1934 61 2
- <sup>57</sup> SUTTON D C AND LUETH H C Pain. Arch Int Med 1930 45 827
- <sup>58</sup> WEISS S AND DAVIS D The significance of the afferent impulses from the skin in the mechanism of visceral pain. Skin infiltration as a useful therapeutic measure. Am J M Sc 1928 176 514
- <sup>59</sup> WENCKEBACH K Angina pectoris and the possibilities of its surgical relief. Brit M J 1921 1 809
- <sup>60</sup> WHITE J C The Autonomic Nervous System New York Macmillan 1935
- <sup>61</sup> — Chapters 5 and 15 in Diseases of the Coronary Arteries and Cardiac Pain. Levy R I New York Macmillan 1936

## CHAPTER VII

# The Simulations of Anginal Pain, Angina Pectoris, and Acute Myocardial Infarction

THE SIMULATIONS of anginal pain are not to be confused with its abnormal projections (p. 31). The latter represent examples of anginal pain with uncommon references whereas in simulations the pain that originates in non cardiac organs or other structures is evinced in the heart and in adjacent regions. These simulations from a practical point of view are best grouped with regard for their regional locality. Clinically other types of heart pain produced by nonanginous cardiovascular disease or by general toxic agents fall into other groups.

### I The Simulation of Anginal Pain in the Sternum or in the Region of the Sternum

Since anginal pain as we have defined it is so frequently and customarily localized in the sternal region or deep beneath it in the chest there is the danger of overlooking non cardiac causes of pain in these regions. These causes are numerous. The skin overlying the sternum the subcutaneous tissues the sternum itself may be the seat of infections or the sternal articulations are attacked by arthritic changes after an allergic or infectious (toxic) process. Rheumatism of the articulations of the breastbone including the claviculo-sternal is rare but it does occur also involvement from gonorrhea or in gout. Pathological alterations of any of the contents of the anterior mediastinal space may localize pain in the region of the sternum the lymphatic glands and loose areolar tissue the blood vessels and nerves. Gastralgia from hyperchlorhydria or obstructive conditions of the lower esophagus diseases of the stomach or of the dome of the diaphragm will induce pain in or directly beneath the sternum also traumatic injuries inflammations or neoplasms of the viscera in the other mediastinal compartments. Pressure of tumors aneurisms sacculations of fluid in the pericardial or pleural spaces are able to register pain within or close to the boundaries of the sternum. A curious and rather ill-defined type of pain resembling in some respects the anginal is that described by Posselt<sup>22</sup> intermittent claudication developed it is alleged in the pulmonary vessels. The nearer the lesion is to the sternum the better defined will be the sternal localization of pain and the greater the possibility therefore of confusion with anginal sternalgia.

## II Into the Left Anterior Chest or Pectoral Region

As far as the thorax is concerned, anginal pain and its reference are practically always confined to the left anterior wall. It is much less common to have the corresponding left posterior wall or the posterior wall participate. Only the non cardiac conditions, therefore, with pain and reference in this anterior region are germane to this discussion.

Diseases of the superficial tissues are painful also of the breasts, mastitis, hematoma, unusual hypertrophy with pain from its dragging weight. Some times the pain associated with neurofibromata or generalized adiposity is localized here. Myalgias of the pectoral muscles or infections (abscess), neuralgias along the anterior thoracic nerves to the major and minor pectoral muscles (C 5, 6, 7, 8 and Th 1), radicular pains manifested occasionally with  $\gamma$  Herpes Zoster and confined to the anterior chest, offer difficulties in differential diagnosis. Local pain accompanies osteomyelitis, periostitis, neoplasms or nutritional or endocrinal disturbances of the bony parts of the thorax, blood dyscrasias, multiple myeloma, and metabolic disorders belong here. There are also disorders of the left chest with contralateral or bilateral pain.

## III Into the Left Upper Extremity the Shoulder and the Rest of the Limb

The left shoulder is not commonly part of the anginal radiation that begins in the precordium and ends in the fingers but it may be either by itself or together with radiation well into the hand, the sole locality of anginal pain (Lideiken and Wolferth,<sup>10</sup> Libman,<sup>19</sup> and Boas and Levy<sup>8</sup> etc.) As a consequence, a number of nonanginal types of pain in the shoulder require differentiation from the anginal pain in this territory. Inflammations etc. of the overlying tissues, cervical arthritis and subacromial bursitis, belong in this group. Arthritic alterations in the shoulder girdle are painful, also neoplasms, etc. in and about the bones of the joint. The deltoid (C 5, 6) and trapezius (C 3, 4) muscles very occasionally are touched by anginal pain through the intervention of afferent somatic or visceral fibers (Fig 14) or possibly through the vagus as it connects with the upper cervical nerves. More often these muscles are the locations of painful local conditions or of nonanginal references, i.e. from the diaphragm by way of the phrenic nerve into the 4th occasionally into the 3rd and 5th cervical nerves. Non anginal pain in the biceps muscle has a similar general significance in relation to anginal pain.

The characteristic spread of anginal pain covers the small territory of the left anterior wall supplied by the second thoracic nerve and the inner aspect of the left upper arm and forearm down to and including the ventral aspect of the little finger supplied by the second and first thoracic nerves forming an ulnar distribution. In contrast pain in the left arm from non cardiac causes is practically always more extensive in area and overlaps zones supplied by the

musculo-cutaneous nerve (C 5, 6 and in many cases 4) or the radial musculo-cutaneous nerve (C 5, 6, 7, 8, Th 1) or the median nerve (C 5, 6, 7, 8, Th 1) as well as the ulnar nerve (C 5, Th 1 and in many cases C 7). Moreover the pain is of the diffuse and not of the radicular type.

Neuritis of the left cervical or brachial plexuses is extremely painful. It follows fractures or dislocations of the neck or shoulder or results from pressure to the plexus from tumors, aneurisms in the neck or vertebral caries. The neuritis after infections (influenza) from taking cold or from poisons (toxic agents) is quite intense. The spread of this pain varies with the extent of the involvement of the plexus. Lesions that attack the 4th, 5th, 6th and 7th and 8th cervical nerves produce pain in the shoulder, in the axilla and along the back of the arm, sometimes into the forearm and the muscles supplied by this innervation, sometimes develop paralysis (deltoid, biceps, coracobrachialis and supinator muscles). The neuritis that strikes the lowest cervical nerves including the 1st thoracic nerve may move across the clavicular region and along the front of the arm and into the hand and fingers and the muscles of this innervation also suffer paralysis.

The neuritis of the lower cervical nerves is apt to encroach upon the left cervical sympathetic trunk producing left oculo-pupillary signs. Horner's syndrome, i.e. contraction of the pupil and inability to dilate fully, narrowing of the palpebral aperture and slight retraction of the eyeball, also slight pallor of the left face and neck, marked dryness of the nostril and mouth and a decrease of the sweat secretion of the neck, arm and chest, flushing and perspiration are subnormal. An unusual form of neuritis associated with injury to cervical sympathetic nerves was described by Klumpke and is sometimes called Klumpke's palsy.

Brachial neuritis is a common disorder, very painful, occasionally very abrupt in its onset. The arm is kept immobile because of the intense pain and paresthesias are frequent and troublesome. Muscles supplied by the affected nerves are likely to show paralysis and later on atrophy, trophic skin changes are common. The condition lasts several weeks or months, then subsides slowly, leaving residual weakness for several weeks. Brachial as well as cervical neuritis flares up violently and lingers in gout, diabetes, anemias and leukemias and the neuritis from alcohol, metallic and other poisons and from vitamin deficiency is common knowledge.

The presence of a cervical rib is often, not always, attended by homolateral neuralgia. Distribution of pain, etc., varies with the portion of the cervical or brachial plexus compressed. From prolonged pressure the muscles of the limb undergo atrophy, generally those of the fingers and the hand below the wrist, a sign of diffuse, not radicular, nerve involvement. The muscles show R.D. The sensory loss in the cutaneous area again varies with the parts of the plexus damaged; touch is not greatly disturbed. At some stage neuritis from a cervical

cal rib may be constant and unrelieved. More often it is intermittent and aggravated by exertion or in unfavorable posture of the body, and relieved when the pressure of the rib against soft tissues is lifted as when placing the hand behind the head. In most cases an x ray will reveal the rib and fix the diagnosis but in some cases a negative x ray gives no intimation of the existence of a ligamentous band pressing upon the nerves at a spot corresponding to a supernumerary rib.

Although syringomyelia is characterized primarily by a loss of pain sensation together with perception of temperature, this disease may be painful and in the case of cervical cord affections, emit darting neuritic pains down the arm. A neuritis of left cervical distribution may lead to confusion with referred anginal neuralgia. Generally speaking, however, in its developed form syringomyelia will not be overlooked or mistaken for anginal pain. First of all, there is selective crippling of the sensory fibers that carry sensations of temperature and pain, those for tactile sensation remaining intact. This disturbance, named by Charcot dissociate anesthesia is a striking characteristic and no less striking in the frequency with which this dissociate phenomenon remains unknown to the patient until revealed to him by the physician. Other characteristic aspects of the disease are the trophic changes in the skin, muscles, joints and skeletal parts, and gradual muscular atrophy and paralysis.

Variations of symptoms depend upon the extent to which the spinal cord is involved, leading to spastic paraplegia, to derangements in tactile sensations with pain, etc. The physical signs and symptoms are bilateral but not necessarily symmetrical.

Irn<sup>18</sup> and his pupil Boyer,<sup>8</sup> described a form of very severe left brachial and intercostal neuralgia in which reference of pain into the precordium is prominent. This pain in localization, character and associated signs simulates anginal pain. Not only this but all left sided brachio intercostal pains have a certain resemblance to the anginal variety of radiation. The latter however, is usually radicular with patchy zones of dermatomic reference the former, as a rule, diffuse and irregular. This point and others described above, help in accurate differentiation.

Radicular or diffuse unilateral pain with limitation to a portion of the left arm is associated with affections of the vertebrae, spondylitis, for example of the upper thoracic or cervical region. Pain of this origin is prone to grow worse with uncontrolled movements of the body during sleep, exertion or unfavorable postures of the body intensify the pain and rest and measures of immobilization bring relief. Affections of the spinal cord may or may not cause neuritic pain, moreover, lesions of the cord result in bilateral signs not always symmetrical, with paralysis of the parts above and spastic signs of the parts below the level of the lesion.

#### IV Into the Left Side of the Face, Neck Head

The face and neck usually escape anginal pain, though it is known to get into these regions. Much more frequently pain in these parts is due to other causes.

There are special points of interest about the pain which enters the head and the cerebral structures. In such instances one must make certain that the pain in these distributions is not of anginal origin because as we have previously observed (Chapter VI) it is possible for the sensory component of the fifth nerve and the tenth nerve to carry anginal pain and possibly the sensory portions of the seventh and ninth nerves act in a similar manner.

#### V Thoracic Conditions that Simulate Anginal Pain

Lung diseases, pleurisy, herniations at the diaphragm and other diaphragmatic disorders (including subdiaphragmatic conditions) are capable of producing chest pain in or near the heart. The intermittent claudication of pulmonary vessels (Losselt) has been mentioned. Thrombosis of large veins in the thoracic cavity seen in rheumatic cardiovascular disease or after injury or with arteriovenous anastomosis or in diseases of the blood or with deep phlebitis from any infection (including the migrating type) are painful. If the lesion is left sided, sinistral radiation into the cervical or brachial plexus may occur. Anginal pain may appear with pulmonary embolization and infarction; the embolus may have a cardiac or peripheral venous origin.

#### VI Cardiovascular Conditions with Simulated Anginal Pain

Lesions of the pericardium in general and especially those close to the aorta and other large vessels may cause pain that resembles the anginal variety. As a rule, however, painful pericarditis is not mistaken for anginal pain. The fresh pericarditis with heart muscle infarction produces pain; it is localized, aggravated by movements of the chest and by pleural complications. The pathway of pericardial pain is by way of the phrenic nerves into the fourth cervical dorsal root and along the fourth cervical nerve into the shoulder region. (Coffey and Brown and Humber<sup>9</sup> have described an anastomosis between the phrenic nerve and the superior sympathetic cardiac nerve.)

Distention of the aorta in hypertension is usually painless. Dilatation of the aortic ring, a feature in the dilated flabby heart of marked anemia, is occasionally accompanied by cardiac pain. The pain of aortic regurgitation manifested in luetic aortitis with its obstructive encroachment on the coronary orifices does not belong in this category of heart pain; it has already been described under anginal pain. Aneurism of the aorta produces pressure pain and not anginal pain; it has been known, however, to produce anginal pain and even the rest of the anginal syndrome (Osler<sup>24</sup>). Coiled and elongated arteriosclerotic aortas are not painful. A dissecting aortic aneurism may be ex-

tremely painful and intense pain is associated with sudden blocking of the large tributaries of the aorta as from embolization

Rheumatic aortic disease and arteriosclerotic alterations especially when accompanied by stenosis of the valve are painful in some cases. Pain occurs in advanced arteriosclerotic alteration of the aortic valve. Rheumatic disease that attacks the mitral valve, the stenotic variety, produces pain, somewhat more frequently in children (Schwartz<sup>6</sup>). The pain that arises in disease of the blood vessels in the chest has already been mentioned (p. 38). Precordial pain, even radiating into the arm, is known to appear with sudden or severe derangement of the rhythm of the heart, particularly of the paroxysmal variety, i.e., auricular or ventricular tachycardia, paroxysmal auricular flutter, paroxysmal auricular fibrillation, and some forms of heart block also belong here. The pain in many of these instances is due to acute coronary insufficiency as associated with some degree of ischemia of heart muscle. Pain under these circumstances is truly anginal in character.

## VII Simulation from Abdominal and Pelvic Conditions

We have already suggested that pain and the rest of the anginal syndrome will stem from a physiologic mass action of the entire autonomic system and that the different constellations of signs and symptoms vary with the specific pathways called into action.

The same mechanism functions in the case of abdominal or pelvic organs that produce pain. Most diseases of these viscera develop no "heart" pain, but this kind of pain, however, is capable of reaching the cardiac territory and of simulating anginal pain. It is either a mild, more benign type, comparable to interval pain, or intense and paroxysmal. The latter together with manifestation of shock, anxiety, etc., are hardly distinguishable from the state attendant upon acute myocardial infarction with or without coronary occlusion. The angina pectoris or acute myocardial infarction masquerade of abdominal disease therefore is responsible for tragic errors in surgical judgment. Acute generalized postoperative peritonitis simulating acute coronary occlusion is a striking case in point (Averbuck<sup>4</sup>).

Acute gall bladder disease (cholecystitis, empyema), acute pancreatitis, sudden perforation of the stomach, duodenum or intestine are explosive conditions characterized by pain and often with references of pain and by general manifestations again suggesting a mass excitation of the entire autonomic system. This is analogous to the state of affairs that prevails in an attack of angina pectoris and we could, therefore, with some relevancy speak of "angina pectoris" of the gall bladder or of the pancreas. Intense colic from bowel obstruction or from mechanical obstruction to any hollow structure, ureter, bile duct, etc., from extensive infarction of an organ or from thrombosis in large abdominal or thoracic vessels (including the pulmonary) or dissecting aneurism of the aorta, all these induce pain and associated features closely simulating the

intense attack of acute myocardial infarction with or without acute coronary thrombosis. Although of rare occurrence the pelvic organs male or female engender pain that finds its way to the cardiac region the reverse of this has been described in Chapter VI. Abdominal viscera act in a similar way the organs closest to the diaphragm causing the most pronounced effects. For example in no other condition — angina pectoris or acute myocardial infarction more closely simulated than in esophageal herniation. Upper abdominal organs possess a double and full innervation (sympathetic and parasympathetic) and perhaps also a more diffusely developed system of visceral afferent fibers. Organs lower in the celomic cavity are not as well developed in this respect, and this may account for their comparative immunity as sources of explosive episodes.

Surgical conditions of the abdomen and pelvis do not as a rule offer any insurmountable difficulty in differential diagnosis from angina pectoris or acute myocardial infarction but there are unfortunately enough exceptions when a differential diagnosis is almost impossible and the reason for this to some extent we have tried to clarify elsewhere in this text (Chapter VI). We see no point in connection with this problem to detail extensively the signs and symptoms of the surgical conditions that attack the abdomen and pelvis. Although these are well known even experienced physicians well grounded in these details encounter cases that defy accurate diagnosis.

### VIII More General Causes that Simulate Anginal Pain

These form a rather large but ill-defined group

#### A TOXIC AGENTS AND STATES

Of these poisons like lead and arsenic etc. and the abuse of tobacco are held under special suspicion. These substances exert a general noxious influence on the nervous system deranging vegetative centers or peripheral nerves or perhaps set up allergic changes or some degree of chemical alteration of which pain in the heart and reference is one feature. Nutritional deficiency states probably belong here also.

**Tobacco** To speak of the simulation of anginal pain from tobacco presupposes that tobacco can cause anginal pain. The guilt of this weed however, as a cause of anginal pain is not entirely clear. Allbutt believed smoking causes violent angina. *Huchard*<sup>15</sup> described several clinical forms of tobacco angina and emphasized the effect of nicotine especially in connection with the production of arteriosclerosis. On the other hand *Brooks*<sup>1</sup> from his experience refused to inculcate tobacco. The literature contains many statements pro and con. To name but a few *Frössinger*<sup>4</sup> published cases with a precipitating and lethal effect of tobacco hard to deny and *Moscowitz*<sup>22</sup> reported several cases with symptoms closely simulating anginal pain.



tremely painful and intense pain is associated with sudden blocking of the large tributaries of the aorta as from embolization

Rheumatic aortic disease and arteriosclerotic alterations especially when accompanied by stenosis of the valve are painful in some cases. Pain occurs in advanced arteriosclerotic alteration of the aortic valve. Rheumatic disease that attacks the mitral valve, the stenotic variety, produces pain, somewhat more frequently in children (Schwartz <sup>6</sup>). The pain that arises in disease of the blood vessels in the chest has already been mentioned (p. 38). Precordial pain, even radiating into the arm, is known to appear with sudden or severe derangement of the rhythm of the heart, particularly of the paroxysmal variety, i.e., auricular or ventricular tachycardia, paroxysmal auricular flutter, paroxysmal auricular fibrillation, and some forms of heart block also belong here. The pain in many of these instances is due to acute coronary insufficiency associated with some degree of ischemia of heart muscle. Pain under these circumstances is truly anginal in character.

## VII Simulation from Abdominal and Pelvic Conditions

We have already suggested that pain and the rest of the anginal syndrome will stem from a physiologic mass action of the entire autonomic system and that the different constellations of signs and symptoms vary with the specific pathways called into action.

The same mechanism functions in the case of abdominal or pelvic organs that produce pain. Most diseases of these viscera develop no "heart" pain, but this kind of pain however is capable of reaching the cardiac territory and of simulating anginal pain. It is either a mild more benign type comparable to "interval" pain, or intense and paroxysmal. The latter together with manifestation of shock, anxiety, etc., are hardly distinguishable from the state attendant upon acute myocardial infarction with or without coronary occlusion. The angina pectoris or acute myocardial infarction masquerade of abdominal disease, therefore, is responsible for tragic errors in surgical judgment. Acute generalized postoperative peritonitis simulating acute coronary occlusion is a striking case in point (Averbuck<sup>4</sup>).

Acute gall bladder disease (cholecystitis, empyema), acute pancreatitis, sudden perforation of the stomach, duodenum or intestine are explosive conditions characterized by pain and often with references of pain and by general manifestations, again suggesting a mass excitation of the entire autonomic system. This is analogous to the state of affairs that prevails in an attack of angina pectoris and we could therefore with some relevancy speak of "angina pectoris" of the gall bladder or of the pancreas. Intense colic from bowel obstruction or from mechanical obstruction to any hollow structure, ureter, bile duct, etc., from extensive infarction of an organ or from thrombosis in large abdominal or thoracic vessels (including the pulmonary) or dissecting aneurism of the aorta, all these induce pain and associated features closely simulating the

autonomic nervous centers. On the other hand these persons have a peripheral effect and cardiac pain may be therefore a consequence of an induced neuritis for example or perhaps even of a toxic action on heart muscle.

### B. DRUGS

Adrenalin is known to induce pain in the heart and insulin has precipitated paroxysms practically identical with those of angina pectoris. This occurs more frequently in anginal sufferers than in normal subjects. There is sometimes a generally accepted notion that caffeine and strong tea also may produce pain in the heart. While it is conceded that these substances bring some degree of cardiac distress from cardiac overactivity or mild arrhythmia they have no great practical significance as instigators of heart pain.

### C. STATES OF ASHYXIA

This has been alluded to elsewhere (Chapter V). Conditions of low oxygen artificially produced as in testing the endurance of aviators or in very high altitudes provoke pain in the heart. Asphyxiating gases may also cause cardiac pain.

### D. ANEMIAS AND OTHER BLOOD CONDITIONS

The heart exhibits pain not always to be sure in impoverished states or disorders of the blood forming tissues. (Allvardin<sup>12</sup> reported two striking instances of pronounced precordial pain with radiation into the left arm due to hemorrhoidal loss of blood and sudden severe loss of blood from gastric ulcer leads to acute coronary insufficiency and anginal pain (Scherf<sup>23</sup> Master et al.<sup>24</sup> Buchner<sup>25</sup> Aschenbrenner<sup>26</sup>). Anemias more especially pernicious anemia have neuritic features and these in the left arm or chest may simulate anginal pain.

### E. ENDOCRINE DISORDERS

Heart pain is associated with endocrine disorders and in menopause precordial pain may appear. Sometimes it is associated with hypochromic anemia at this stage of life or without anemias flushing, hot and cold sensation, emotional changes and neuritic pain in the limbs are frequent.

Myxedema (Meissner<sup>1</sup> Zondek<sup>25</sup> Fahr<sup>11</sup> reported cardiac enlargement (distention) in myxedema that receded on thyroid therapy heart pain was not a feature. In view of this the case reported by Laubry, Mussio, Fournier and Walser<sup>17</sup> and two cases published by Abram, Bruk and Hertz<sup>1</sup> have unusual interest. Thyroid therapy stopped the paroxysm and helped the myxedema. In the cases of Abram et al. the therapy aggravated a hypertensive state.

Graves disease (cardiac pain is sometimes observed in this condition with its profound autonomic derangement and cardiac hyperactivity. The pain

It is common experience to observe heart pain or distress from smoking in a certain number of healthy and perhaps more often in cardiac subjects. The older view held nicotine responsible, but this has no established foundation. In statistical studies, to mention but one publication, White and Sharber<sup>7</sup> from an analysis of 750 cases of anginal pain found no more smokers than in a control group of 750.

There are, of course, individual differences in sensitivity to tobacco. For some a large amount of tobacco is innocuous; for others with marked sensitivity a small quantity is injurious, as from an occasional short inhalation of tobacco smoke or absorption of tobacco protein through the mucous membranes of the mouth. These short exposures to tobacco are known to induce pain in the heart or aggravate an already existing anginal state. More recent investigations point to a relationship between tobacco and the cardiovascular system.

Harkavy<sup>14</sup> believes the incidence of sensitivity to tobacco protein (he is careful to make it clear that he is not speaking of nicotine) is high in individuals who have vascular disease. For example, of 140 subjects with thromboangitis obliterans 70 per cent gave a positive skin reaction to various tobaccos tested and of these positive reactors, one half had reagins (antibodies) to tobacco in the blood serum. About one tenth of the number of the 70 per cent possessed a general constitutional allergy to many proteins. This would signify that of the total 140 cases with thromboangitis obliterans 60 per cent were essentially sensitive to tobacco but were free of every other type of protein sensitivity. In contrast were some 400 unselected normal smokers as a control group; of these only 10 per cent were positive to tobacco alone out of a total of 38 per cent who reacted not only to tobacco but also to the proteins of timothy hay, ragweed and horse dander in various combinations.

Similar observations on coronary artery disease disclosed results of special significance with respect to angina pectoris. Testing 100 subjects with coronary artery disease Harkavy uncovered about 40 per cent that were sensitive to tobacco as well as to some of the proteins listed above. Of these 33 per cent had personal or family histories of allergy. This contrasted with an incidence of 10 per cent of constitutional allergy in the thromboangitis obliterans group. Of the 40 per cent reacting to tobacco two thirds had reagins to tobacco in their circulation. Finally, a point of some clinical import: the majority of these hypersensitive coronary artery disease subjects fell into an age group averaging 45 years or younger.

These studies appear to confirm the clinical impression that the cardiovascular system is peculiarly vulnerable to the ravages of tobacco and seems to act within certain limits as an allergic shock organ.

*Lead, arsenic, other metals.* These have the common property of acting on the vegetative centers. It is, therefore, conceivable although no proof is at hand, that these poisons produce cardiac pain as part of the reaction of the

dividuals with so called circulatory neurasthenia 'soldier's heart,' belong here

All these individuals may be regarded as belonging to a hypersensitive group (Chapter VII). It is well to appreciate however that angina pectoris and acute myocardial infarction show no tendency to spare them as a class in deed large numbers are victims. During the throes of a severe paroxysm especially if acute coronary occlusion has occurred there is seldom any doubt about the true nature of the malady but after recovery the patient may complain of precordial pain and radiation or of apprehensions that tax the diagnostic skill of the attending physician. Are these subjective signs without any organic basis or are they the attestations of recurrent occlusions in small coronary twigs or of episodes of acute coronary insufficiency? The answer is that one or all may occur but the important fact will remain that it is wiser and safer to look upon these complaints as not imaginary in view of the past history of the patient and to temper the prognosis against the hypersensitive background of this type of individual. One can never wholly disregard the anginal factor in a person who has once had a genuine paroxysm.

There is still another group of individuals who over many years have suffered with pain that seems to arise from various viscera. In many instances the pain is so intense and so well localized that surgical treatment is instituted. These individuals are apt to suffer the removal of appendix gall bladder pelvic organs only to continue to have pain in their remaining organs often the heart with radiation into corresponding dermatomes. Apparently these pains have no organic basis and are induced by psychogenic states for example by reaction to fear to subconscious causes or to conditioning mechanisms. Many of these subjects are conversion hysterics who express the conversion by cardiovascular features with precordial pain and radiation a prominent manifestation.

#### BIBLIOGRAPHY

- \*ARRAUD P, BACLIÉ M AND HEITZ M. Complications of two cases of angina pectoris with myxlema hypertension aggravated by thyroid therapy. Bull et mém Soc méd d Hôp de Paris 1925 49 112
- \*ALLBUTT T C. Diseases of the Arteries Including Angina Pectoris. London: Macmillan 1915
- ASCHENBURNER A. Mangelutung und Anomie des Herzmuskel. Ztschr F. inn. Med 1935 177 160
- AVERBUCK S H. Acute generalized post operative peritonitis simulating coronary artery thrombosis. J Mt Sinai Hosp 1942 8 335
- \*BOIS E P AND LEVY H. Extracardiac determinants of the site and radiation of pain in angina pectoris with special reference to shoulder pain. Am Heart J 1937 14 340
- BOYER A. De l'angine de poitrine compliquant les névralgies intercostales et brachiales gauches. Thèse Paris 1930 6 13
- BROOKS H. Angina Pectoris. New York: Harper & Brothers 1929

may require separation from the anginal type particularly in subjects with auricular fibrillation or other signs which denote myocardial alteration

## F MISCELLANEOUS

Laubry<sup>14</sup> had a remarkable experience of witnessing intense precordial pain with radiations into both arms, shock, etc., pointing to angina pectoris in a man of 60, a smoker, who, two days later, proved to have epidemic encephalitis

Biliary duct disease also has been described with the occurrence of anginal pain, and Osler<sup>3</sup> wrote of the association of anginal pain with migraine attacks and with Raynaud's disease. Much has been published on the connection between angio spastic states of blood vessels in general and the coronary vessels (p. 281)

Pain in the heart is not a rare occurrence in subjects with gout and diabetes mellitus. Coronary artery disease is, of course, common in individuals who have these afflictions. The matter of incidence in similar age groups may be relevant or it may be that the metabolic disease is fertile soil for the development of occlusive manifestations in the coronaries and other vessels. These metabolic disorders, however, are alleged to induce non anginal cardiac pain, that is to say, in the absence of involvement of the coronary circulation. Libman<sup>15</sup> mentions a case in point.

In diabetes mellitus pain in the precordial region, especially with radiation into the cervico brachial plexus or into lower intercostal nerves suggests some form of neuritis. The neuritic pain, as we have indicated, is able to "flow" toward the heart region and so simulate either anginal pain or even the entire syndrome of angina pectoris. An interesting corollary is the severe precordial pain with radiation and other features of angina pectoris precipitated by the administration of insulin.

## G EMOTIONAL STATES

Many emotional states ranging from intense anger, grief, fear, mental distress to mild upsets of worry or anxiety produce pain that is felt in the heart. This pain is nonanginous unless the heart coronary vessels or aorta are actually implicated (p. 194).

There are many kinds of nonanginous pain in the heart or in the chest region of the heart variously termed 'heart pang', 'heartache', etc. They range from mild almost gentle discomforts or paresthesias to sharp and severe or dull and throbbing manifestations. Their duration is, as a rule, brief. The subjects are usually high strung neurotic individuals, heart conscious and nervously apprehensive, often sensitive to any discomfort and generally tired and fatigued. They have nervous heart trouble or pain and are very apt to be on the defensive regarding the validity of their symptoms or complaints. In

## SECTION FIVE

# Concept and Mechanism of Anginal Pain

---

## CHAPTER VIII

# Physiologic Aspects of Pain

### I General Considerations

**PAIN** has general biologic and more specifically physiologic significance. Biologically it is allied to other sensory phenomena and seems to act within certain limits as a premonitory warning and as a protective mechanism. The registration of pain in consciousness i.e. the recognition of pain probably belongs in the realm of psychology; the initiation and transmission in the realm of physiology.

From the physiologic point of view pain depends on two factors: the nature of the stimulus and the function of the nervous apparatus which receives and transmits it and registers the effect. The outer integument of the body is richly endowed with many nerve endings from which nerve fibers go to the cerebrospinal system and along these fibers a variety of sensations are conveyed. There are nerve endings for picking up tactile and thermal sensations and special nerve endings with arborization arrangements for pain. Moreover, certain zones in the skin are unusually hypersensitive to pain: the cornea, for example, the tympanic membrane, the nail beds, the junctions of skin and mucous membrane at the mouth and anus. The finger tips, lips, and genitalia and anus are richly supplied with all forms of nerve endings. The cornea, tympanum and dental pulp possess pain receptors only.

The muscles covered and protected by the skin or outer envelope of the body are not required to appreciate or discern thermal or tactile sensations but they can produce pain after extreme or prolonged contractions or marked stretching. Muscles become painful when their usual range of activity is exceeded and cramps in the muscles are everyday occurrences. Muscular activity is observed also in hollow organs of the body i.e. bile passages, gastrointestinal tract, genitourinary tract, arteries; the lining or inner coat of these structures, contrasted with the skin, is insensitive to pain. The outer coat or serous layer is likewise insensitive yet the organs it encases readily become the site of pain when the muscular layers are provoked into exaggerated or prolonged contractions, for example in overcoming an obstruction in a lumen. Muscular contractions beyond a certain point or threshold in other words, an increased tension of the muscle fibers is announced as pain.

Solid organs like the brain, the liver, the spleen, the kidneys are insensitive to stimuli that readily produce pain in the skin. Countless incidents are on

- <sup>3</sup> BUCHNER I Die Koronarsuffizienz Dresden u Leipzig Theodor Steinkopff 1939
- <sup>4</sup> COFFEY, W B BROWN P K and HUMBER, J D Angina Pectoris The Anatomy Physiology and Surgical Treatment New Orleans A J Dickerson 1927
- <sup>5</sup> EDEIKEN J, AND WOLPERTH C C Persistent pain in shoulder region following myocardial infarction Am J M Sc 1936 191 201
- <sup>6</sup> FAHR, C Myxedema heirt J A M A 1925 84 345
- <sup>7</sup> FLEISSINGER C L'angine de poitrine tabagique Rev gén d clin et d ther 1913 7/ 640  
L'angine de poitrine tabagique Ibid 1919 33 169, Le mort par le tabac dans l'angine de poitrine Ibid 1923 37 827
- <sup>8</sup> GALLAVARDIN L L'angine de poitrine d'effort dans les états anémiques post hémorrhagiques Pratique médicale française 1925 6 10
- <sup>9</sup> HARRARY J Personal communication
- <sup>10</sup> HUCHARD H Maladies du cœur et des vaisseaux artériosclérose aortites cardiopathies artérielles angine de poitrine Paris O Douin 1889
- <sup>11</sup> LAUBRY C Syndrome angineux et encéphalite épidémique Bull et mém Soc méd d Hop de Paris 1924 48 1588
- <sup>12</sup> — MUSSIO FOURNIER AND WALSER J Syndrome angineux par insuffisance thyroïdienne Bull et mém soc méd d Hop de Paris 1924 48 1597
- <sup>13</sup> LIAN C L'angine de poitrine Paris Masson 1932  
De l'angine de poitrine compliquant les névralgies thoracobrachiales gauches Rev belge soc méd 1931 3 354
- <sup>14</sup> LIBMAN E Symposium Angina pectoris with special reference to coronary artery disease Bull N Y Acad Med 1935 11 427
- <sup>15</sup> MASTER A M DACK S GRISHMAN A FIELD L F AND HORN H Acute coronary insufficiency an entity Shock hemorrhage and pulmonary embolism as factors in its production J Mt Sinai Hosp 1947 14 8
- <sup>16</sup> MEISSNER R Münch med Wchnschr 1920 67 1316 Ibid 1921 68 488
- <sup>17</sup> MOSCOWITZ E Tobacco angina pectoris J A M A 1928 90 733
- <sup>18</sup> OHLER W Lectures on Angina Pectoris and Allied States New York D Appleton & Co 1897
- <sup>19</sup> POSSELT A Die klinische Diagnose der Pulmonalarteriensklerose Münch med Wchnschr 1908 55 1675
- <sup>20</sup> SCHERF D Ein Fall von Angina pectoris Ztschr f Klin Med 1937 120 115
- <sup>21</sup> SCHWARTZ S P Paroxysmal cardiac pain The syndrome in young adults with rheumatic valvular heart disease Am Heart J 1927 2 497
- <sup>22</sup> WHITE P D AND SHARBER T Tobacco alcohol and angina pectoris J A M A 1934 102 655
- <sup>23</sup> ZONDER H Das Myxodemherz Münch med Wchnschr 1918 65 1180

in cutting this nerve pathway. Elsewhere we have commented upon these views (Chapter XVI).

States of intravascular pressure within the aorta and the special bearing this has upon the aortic nerve endings (perhaps including also the nerve supply and action of the carotid sinus {Koch<sup>13</sup> Hering<sup>14</sup> Heymans et al<sup>15</sup>}) are invoked as responsible mechanical agents for the provocation of anginal pain. On this basis with the vagus and the depressor nerve in constant touch with the heart and with their participation in the regulation of pulse rate and systemic blood pressure the aorta is looked upon as a kind of tambour for the announcement of effects within and for the initiation of important regulatory reflexes not only pain. By bringing into prompt action a reflex fall in systemic blood pressure this trigger ready action of this part of the aorta renders it possible to ward off distention in this vessel and in the heart also. The individual is thus in possession of a wider margin of safety and not only is pain warded off but more important sudden and overwhelming cardiac inhibition. The action of the vagus and depressor nerve have been aptly called the safety valve of aortic and cardiac distention.

The aortic theory has received the brunt of many onslaughts and a seeming teasing blow is the absence of a depressor nerve in man (Chapter IV). This blow however is not as devastating as one might believe. The existence of sensory fibers in the vagus is not questioned and these may be capable of carrying pain impulses from the aorta. Moreover, there are sympathetic fibers from this region (aorta) that possibly function in a similar way and indeed some anatomists find that the equivalent of the depressor nerve may consist of sympathetic strands.

### B. CORONARY ORIGIN

A second concept has been advanced that the coronary vessels of the heart are the primary seat of anginal pain. Here again there are chemical and mechanical stimuli at work. The chemical are either in the nature of solutions or substances acetylcholine or sympathin (adrenin like) etc. liberated during the transmission of impulses to the nerve endings or chemical substances elaborated during the metabolism of heart muscle. The proximity of these latter substances to produce pain is regulated by the amount and character of the blood supply to the heart muscle.

Mechanical stimulation also accounts for pain that arises in the coronary vessels. These vessels are very prone to suffer temporary or prolonged occlusion. In the former instance pain attends the transient block or constriction. In the latter pain is an accompaniment of the first hours that ensue. It has therefore been argued that pain follows from the initial spasm present in both instances and that the block itself is not a responsible agent. This is not the place to dilate on this subject but data exist to indicate that the mechanical



record of sharp and deep wounds or lacerations to these organs in which no pain was experienced. The coverings of these organs, however, are responsive to pain producing stimuli, such as injuries, inflammations, stretchings, pressure, etc. As a result, headache from meningeal irritation is common, pain from hepatic, splenic or renal capsular involvement is not rare. It seems that in these solid organs, the likelihood for the occurrence of pain is in direct relation to the linear distance that separates the lesion in the organ from the envelope that encases it. The heart and its envelope, the pericardium, are no exception.

While pain in the foregoing conditions is caused by a variety of stimuli, in cardiac, coronary or aortic pain the stimuli are primarily mechanical or chemical.

## II Sites of Origin of Cardiovascular (Anginal) Pain

The victim of anginal pain, and for that matter of any type of heart pain, is unable to localize accurately in what structure his pain originates. It is sometimes stated that any pain that starts in the aorta or coronary vessels or heart muscle possesses some distinguishing traits in each instance. This view is maintained by some but most agree that differentiation on this basis is not possible. Be this as it may, it is, nevertheless, of practical value to consider these three anatomic structures as the chief sites of the origin of anginal pain.

### A AORTIC ORIGIN

With respect to the aorta the theory has long been held that anginal pain and the entire anginal syndrome is produced in the first or ascending portion. (As a matter of interest Heberden's<sup>12</sup> description of angina pectoris has been interpreted as of aortic origin.) This theory presupposes the mechanical or chemical irritation of sensory nerve endings in this proximal portion of the aorta which undergoes spasm and leads to the most frequent variety of anginal pain, substernal. The occurrence of spasm or constriction is supposedly facilitated by alterations in the vessel wall or of its nutrient channels. According to Allbutt<sup>2-4</sup> and to Wenckebach<sup>10</sup> the spasm follows mechanical and chemical irritation or upon intravascular alterations of tension, and sensory impulses from the aorta travel along the so called depressor nerve, a vagal structure. Vaguez<sup>9</sup> also was a strong proponent of the aortic genesis of anginal pain and angina pectoris, and Allbutt and Wenckebach were the chief advocates of the importance of the depressor nerve. Allbutt wrote that this nerve became hypersensitive, "worried," in angina pectoris that it was "stung by anginal pain to act upon the heart often decrescent and in this way caused cardiac inhibition and death."

Wenckebach not only upheld the aortic genesis and the role of the depressor nerve but, with others in Vienna maintained that the relief of anginal pain lay

neutralized or enhanced by (b) an adequacy or deficiency of the circulation to the muscle affected. Ischemia proves to be a common underlying factor in many situations. Thus anginal pain is frequent in disease of the heart muscle or of its irrigating channels or of the proximal part of the aorta and in any of these circumstances ischemia of heart muscle may be an associated factor. A special form of coronary artery disease is attended by a high incidence of anginal pain namely aortic disease of the orifices of these vessels. Here the requisite blood supply to the heart muscle is diminished and ischemia obvious. It is not an unanticipated consequence. Anginal pain is not at all rare in cardiac or even normal individuals suddenly subjected to low oxygen tension as in attaining great mountain heights (Monge<sup>17</sup>) or working at industrial projects at low barometric pressure. Anginal pain is encountered in severe anemia in poisonings which lower the oxygen capacity of the blood, and after severe exercise individuals who have had cardiac pain may develop anginal pain with characteristic electrocardiographic signs or electrocardiographic signs may occur without the pain (Katz<sup>18</sup>). Tennant and Wiggers<sup>1</sup> believe that anginal pain is produced by the periodic stretching of damaged heart muscle, similar to the stretching of muscle elsewhere in the body i.e. gall bladder intestine etc.

Studies of the chemistry of ischemia have uncovered new and significant data. Lewis Fickering and Rothschild<sup>19</sup> found special metabolites formed during the contraction of skeletal muscle these products stimulated the pain nerve endings. They labelled these chemical products P factor. The same products or I factor elaborated at a much lower rate were found in muscles at rest. This was established by Perlow Markle and Katz.<sup>4</sup> The concentration of these metabolites was greatly hastened in the case of heart muscle when the organ was compelled to contract in the face of difficulties i.e. high aortic pressure or when already damaged as in marked dilatation of its chambers and from the ligation of a coronary vessel the related muscle segment was shown to develop excessive quantities of lactic acid with depletion of glycogen. On all these grounds an ischemia of heart muscle came to be looked upon as the cause of anginal pain.

In the course of investigations it was recognized that the P factor if not identical is close to lactic acid at least in many respects it behaves like lactic acid (or phosphoric acid). For example lactic acid is known to cause pain in muscles when injected intravenously (Moore Moore and Singleton<sup>20</sup>) muscular contractions will cease with the accumulation of the acid (Tennant<sup>21</sup>) and a high concentration of the acid depletes muscle glycogen. Since lactic acid is neutralized by alkali ingested soda bicarbonate has been employed successfully to retard the onset of pain in an arm when exercised (Katz<sup>18</sup>). These properties of lactic acid are almost interchangeable with those of the P factor.

occlusion of coronary vessels observed in gradual obliteration of the lumen or in an organized thrombosis of long standing is not painful. This statement however is not intended to ignore the vital function of collateral circulation, the relation of spasm to arteriosclerotic vessels is not clear.

To some extent, but only to some, animal experiments lend support to the belief that a temporary mechanical constriction of a coronary vessel is painful. We have in mind the signs of pain that attend the sudden rapid ligaturing (squeezing) of such a vessel. Although Cohn<sup>7</sup> has argued that experimental traction on or squeezing of an animal's coronary vessel may not be identical with the spontaneous spasm of a human coronary vessel it would seem to us that it cannot be denied that all three events have a common denominator, namely, a physical mechanical element, and this regardless of any chemical chain of reactions. The mechanics of spasm, therefore, may be common to artificial and spontaneous coronary constriction. Wiggers<sup>11, 12</sup> objection or rather his reservation to the acceptance of the theory of spasm is more to the point. He stresses that the coronary vessels contain very few muscle fibers for the development of sufficient tension to produce pain. The induction of pain by ligating a coronary vessel or by tridirectional traction exerted on the vessel in one plane (Gorham and Martin<sup>12</sup>) probably depends on mechanisms other than tension of coronary muscle fibers. A further criticism of the spastic theory is that in coronary spasm coronary flow may not be reduced after all, a position advanced by Wenckebach<sup>10</sup> on clinical grounds and indirectly suggested by the work of Lewis, Pickering and Rothschild<sup>13</sup> who found that blood vessels of ischemic skeletal muscle became dilated and developed an increased pressure. Wiggers and Cotton<sup>14</sup> do not accept this.

It will be noted that pain has here been described in terms of mechanisms outside the anoxic effect on the myocardium (p. 6) a point of view emphasized again recently by Wyburn Mason.<sup>15</sup> The theory of spasm of the coronary vessels cannot yet be abandoned.

### C. MYOCARDIAL ORIGIN

The occlusion of a coronary vessel is a mechanical event the significant results that follow from this are chemical. This is true under natural conditions in man and in experimental practice on animals. A coronary vessel that nourishes a section of heart muscle and removes metabolites from it cannot function when suddenly and tightly ligated. The heart muscle is injured and develops changes in electrical potential. Electrocardiographic records of such changes resemble closely records obtained after an abrupt coronary closure in humans. The logical inference is therefore, that in each case an ischemia of the cardiac muscle occurs. This ischemia as we shall discover is conditioned by two opposing factors at least: (1) a chemical alteration oxygen lack, or "P" factor (lactic acid production) in the muscle which in turn is minimized,

not thrombosed. The systemic the constitutional features accompanying a reduction in coronary circulation a reduction which appears to be essentially functional in nature (p. 1) as in the case of acute coronary insufficiency, and those which come with structural damage of the heart i.e. acute myocardial infarction are the expression in both instances we believe of autonomic activity varying only in intensity and duration. It is not suggested that the reduction in coronary flow brought on functionally i.e. by vasoconstriction or by sudden blocking of the lumen of the vessels or the actual heart muscle damage precipitates the autonomic reaction or vice versa. There is no settled knowledge on this point. However it seems to be established that cardiac pain (and cardiac pain will be assumed to be a testimony of diminished coronary circulation) can be induced by stimulating a part of the autonomic system. Leriche<sup>10</sup> brought on intense cardiac pain in human beings by stimulating the left stellate ganglion and Spiegel and Hashimoto<sup>11</sup> obtained the same result in dogs.

### III The Nervous Apparatus for the Initiation and Transmission of Pain

Our understanding of the initiation and transmission of pain has been altered and extended by the use of the cathode ray oscillograph. This instrument based upon vacuum tube amplification will record the amplified action potential of nerve axons stimulated by pain. The electrical potentials of sensory nerves are very minute and have different waves with respect to size shape and rate and differences also in refractory period in electrical excitability and in their predilection to travel in nerve fibers depending upon their diameter and the presence or absence of myelination. On the basis of these criteria nerve fibers for carrying pain appear to fall into four general groups and of these two are especially concerned with pain in general and from our special point of view with cardiac pain.

These two groups so-called C and II non medullated and small-sized medullated fibers are slow fibers that is they convey pain impulses at slow velocities about 15 to 60 per second contrasted with velocities of 100 to 300 per second from muscle spindles. There is some evidence that fibers of the C group non medullated fibers are identified with dull lingering pain and fibers of the B group small medullated fibers with transient sharp pain. In general however variations of intensity are due chiefly to an aggregate effect obtained by simultaneously exciting different kinds of fibers each with its own characteristic limit of velocity shape and size of potential waves.<sup>12, 13</sup>

No matter what kind of excitation thermal mechanical or chemical is applied to the nerve ending for pain these structures in reacting obey a constant law. By this is meant that the electrical potential waves evolved are of a well defined range of frequency and of unchanged magnitude and form. An increase in the intensity of the applied stimulus does not alter the size and shape of these waves nor their frequency beyond a definite rate. For example a painful et

The production of lactic acid or a "P" substance, however, is but part of the story, the other part depends, as already hinted, upon the circulation to the tissue affected. The piling up or removal of metabolites is governed by conditions which either facilitate or prevent anoxemia (oxygen lack). A blood supply insufficient to prevent (by neutralization or physical displacement) the concentration of these chemicals above a certain threshold shares in the mechanism that incite the pain nerve endings to produce pain.

A natural corollary is the alleviation or termination of pain in a muscle when its circulation is improved and the oxygen lack or debt in the tissue is thereby wiped out. For anginal pain an adequate circulation or a blood supply ready to meet the urgent demands of impending ischemia of cardiac muscle is a *sine qua non*. Pain, therefore, in the heart and its allied structures is determined and regulated by the accumulation and concentration of metabolic products and by the availability of adequate quantities of oxygen transported through the circulation. (See Chapter I for anoxemia of heart muscle.)

The painstaking studies of Blumgart and his co-workers<sup>4, 5</sup> carried out on a large postmortem material of cases showing clinical manifestations of angina pectoris, coronary thrombosis and myocardial infarction, and congestive failure, led them to conclude that "the underlying mechanism in angina pectoris, coronary failure and acute myocardial infarction rests upon a relative disproportion between the requirement of the heart for blood and the supply of the coronary vessels." The extent and duration of the relative ischemia was responsible for the myocardial alteration, not the manner in which the change was caused. This myocardial damage (infarction) and not the closure of the coronary vessels *per se* was responsible for the clinical syndrome designated as acute coronary occlusion and characterized by severe precordial pain, pallor and other features of shock and by well recognized electrocardiographic findings. Extensive and minute examination of the autopsied hearts convinced the authors that in the human being an effective collateral coronary circulation is formed to meet the new demands consequent to myocardial infarction and that the sudden onset of angina pectoris or marked exacerbations in intensity or frequency of attacks of angina pectoris is presumptive evidence of coronary occlusion or progressive narrowing which has gone beyond the rate of development of coronary circulation. Attacks of severe and enduring pain associated at times with collapse, were attributed to anoxia (ischemia) resulting from a prolonged insufficiency of blood supply to the heart muscle, in other words to a disproportion between the quantity of blood the heart needs and that which it receives. This 'coronary failure' they go on to say may occur with or without simultaneous, or immediately preceding coronary thrombosis.

If for the sake of argument one substitutes the condition 'acute coronary insufficiency' for 'coronary failure' it will be appreciated that a wide range and intensity of symptoms may attend attacks in which the coronary vessels are

The second objection revolves about the concept that differences in the acuity and in the localization of referred pain are determined by the fact that sensations of pain are carried along many fibers converging upon common intraspinal central neurons whereas touch sensations are transmitted by fibers each of which makes a separate contact with an individual intraspinal central neuron. It is difficult to accept this concept unreservedly because the common neurons in the spinal cord concerned with referred pain may well receive a converging group of sensory impulses from multiple foci on the surface of the body and yet fail to produce angular pain.

Impulses of pain have the smallest magnitude and their velocities are slow and intermittent yet pain from the heart and aorta often is rhythmic even constant. A theory of the function of some amplifying device at work in the spinal cord and probably in the higher brain centers has been proposed to explain the registration into consciousness of pain as an intense and continued sensation. The thalamus and cortex are recognized as receptors translators differentiators of pain whereas the lower centers especially the central synaptic junctions in the spinal cord according to Wiggers are supposed to fulfill the main amplifying function. The concept of pain amplified in the neuraxis is not yet fully established.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. ADRIAN, E. D. The Mechanism of Nervous Reaction. Electrical Studies of the Neurone. Univ. of Pennsylvania Press, 1932. Croonian Lecture. The messages in sensory nerve fibres and their interpretation. Proc. Roy. Soc. London, 1931-2, 109-1. The impulses produced by sensory nerve endings. Part 4. Impulses from pain receptors. J. Physiol., 1936-7, 69-33. Mechanism of the sense organs. Physiol. Rev., 1930, 10, 336.
2. ALLBUTT, T. C. Diseases of the Arteries Including Angina Pectoris. London: Macmillan, 1915.
3. —. Angina pectoris. New York M. J., 1933, 115, 181.
4. —. Certain points in diagnosis and treatment of angina pectoris. Lancet, 1923, 1, 883.
5. BLUMGART, H. L., SCHLESINGER, M. J. AND DAVIS, D. Studies on the relation of the clinical manifestations of angina pectoris, coronary thrombosis and myocardial infarction to the pathologic findings. Am. Heart J., 1940, 19, 1.
6. —. AND ZOLL, P. Angina pectoris, coronary failure and acute myocardial infarction. The role of coronary occlusion and collateral circulation. J. A. M. A., 1961, 116, 91.
7. CORLI, A. E. Introduction to Diseases of the Coronary Arteries and Cardiac Pain. ed. by LEVY, R. L. New York: Macmillan, 1936.
8. DALL, H. Transmission of nervous effect by acetylcholine. Bull. New York Acad. Med., 1933, 13, 39.
9. DOGIEL, A. S. Die sensiblen Nervenendigungen im Herzen und in den Blutgefäße der Säugetier. Arch. f. mikroskop. Anat., 1898, 47, 44.
10. —. Zur Frage über den feineren Bau der Herznerven der Menschen und der Säugetiere. Arch. f. mikroskop. Anat., 1899, 53, 237.
11. GARR, H. S. The control of excitation in the nervous system. Harvey Lecture, 1933, 169.
12. GORNAN, L. R. AND MARTIN, S. J. Coronary occlusion with and without pain. Arch. Int. Med., 1938, 6, 891.

citation to these nerve endings produces a volley of impulses which is readily recorded as potential waves along the axons of the fibers connected to the nerve endings. This volley or train of impulses travels at a slow rate, about 30 to 40 per second. At this rate pain has an interrupted or pricking character. With a faster frequency, about 60 per second, pain grows continuous or smooth. This change in rate takes place in axons that are the same (identical) and with no variation in magnitude or form of the waves, moreover, the velocity does not exceed its upper limit, 60 per second, and this increased rate is still slow compared with that of touch.

The heightening or intensification of pain is accomplished, therefore, by variations in the rate of the frequency of the potential waves that pass along identical nerve axons. Except for this rate of frequency the waves undergo no change in range, magnitude or shape. The main cause of intensification of pain, it is alleged, is a spread of activity among an increased number of identical axons. The intensity of pain, however, does not influence the duration of pain, pain does not linger merely because it is more intense. Furthermore, the intensity of pain is not related to any increased acuity in its localization. Heinbecker, Bishop and O'Leary<sup>12</sup> demonstrated experimentally that an increase in the total number of nerve fibers carrying touch merely enlarges the area wherein the touch sensation is felt.

Like referred pain from other organs, the coronary cardiac variety has two independent routes: a visceral and a somatic, both active and with common focal points for the meeting of their impulses. This hypothesis is well established in the literature. As it stands, however, it has to overcome important objections, only two of which we shall discuss at this point. \* First, as far as we know no one as yet has finally defined anatomically the central connections for pain in the entry zone of the dorsal grey matter of the spinal cord. † Indeed, the zone of entry may be elsewhere<sup>13</sup> in the dorsal roots according to Pike (Chapters I and VI). The premise of mediation of reference in the dorsal grey matter ignores the fact that referred pain is nearly always radicular and that this type of distribution could hardly be inaugurated within the spinal cord where impulses would undergo diffusion through several segmental levels. The referred pain that assumes on occasions, a diffuse character is accounted for by Pike on the basis that mediation of reference occurs in the dorsal root peripheral to its ganglion. This again places the locus of convergence and mediation outside the cord with the actual mediation accomplished by a transfer of impulses or their effects from afferent visceral fibers to afferent somatic fibers, both types of fibers in the dorsal root lying juxtaposed and without a myelin sheath.

\* See Chapter VI for a fuller discussion.

† Dogiel<sup>13</sup> believes he found such connections but this does not exclude their existence outside the grey matter.

## CHAPTER XIV

# Psychologic Aspects of Pain

### I General Considerations

THE PSYCHOLOGIC concept of pain is complex and difficult to define in precise terms. Yet it is essential that we consider it not only as a biologic and physiologic entity and try to differentiate variously localized types of pain but also that we recognize its psychologic aspect from the standpoint of the physician and the viewpoint of the sufferer.

Pain cannot be simply defined because although it is found in the realm of sensation it is not clearly established whether it is a single specific sensation or whether what we describe as pain is a complex of several known sensations. In its simplest form pain would seem to be a reaction to unpleasant stimuli. Primitive animal forms respond by a reflex. Among the lower vertebrates the thalamus is a receptor organ for pain. In primates and in man the highly developed thalamic and cortical structures are the regions in which pain is not only received but registered and translated into consciousness.\* Curiously enough the thalamus and cortex like the rest of the brain are themselves insensitive and serve only as the instrument through which pain is realized.

Pain varies in type and intensity; it has both qualitative and quantitative dimensions. A familiar example is the effect of friction on a portion of the skin. Gentle friction which may be neutral or pleasurable can readily become unpleasant or even exquisitely painful. The change is brought about by a quantitative increase in the stimulus rather than by any change in its nature. The cumulative effect of the stimuli causes a gradual transition from a pleasant sense of friction to one of pain. The same principle observed here in connection with a tactile stimulus can be seen in the case of thermal stimuli; i.e. warmth can readily become heat and this in its cumulative effect become painful. This re-emphasizes the idea already expressed—that pain is closely allied to thermal, tactile and compression sensations. But it is more than a physical reaction. There is always an accompanying emotional component seemingly unpleasant†. This unpleasantness or unbearableness is so much part of the picture that oftentimes we gauge pain by our emotional reaction (emotional component) to it rather than by the merely physical aspects; i.e. the volume or strength or quality, etc. of the stimulus or the physical response of the organ.

It is not within the scope of this discussion to attempt precise psychologic delineations of concepts such as consciousness, sensation, feeling. The terms are used in their accepted more popular sense.

† The pleasure sensation or gratification (which is) associated with pain are subjects which belong to psychiatry.



- <sup>10</sup> HEBERDEN, W. Some account of a disorder of the breast *Med Tr Coll Phys London* 1772 2 59
- <sup>11</sup> HEINBECKER P BISHOP G H AND O'LEARY, J L Pain and touch fibres in peripheral nerves *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 1933 29 771
- <sup>12</sup> HERING H I Die Karotissinusreflexe auf Herz und Gefäße *Dresden u Leipzig* 1927
- <sup>13</sup> HEYMANS C, BOLCHAERT J J AND REGNIERS P Le sinus carotidien *Paris G Doin* 1933
- <sup>14</sup> KATZ I N Mechanism of pain production in angina pectoris *Am Heart J* 1934 10 322
- <sup>15</sup> KOCH E Die reflektorische Selbststeuerung des Kreislaufes *Ergebn d Kreislaufforsch* 1931 1 1
- <sup>16</sup> LEWIS T PICKERING G W AND ROTHSCHILD P Observations on muscular pain in intermittent claudication *Heart* 1929-31 15 309
- <sup>17</sup> LFRICHE P La chirurgie de la douleur et ses résultats *Presse Med* 1927 52 497
- <sup>18</sup> MONGE C L erythémie des altitudes *Arch mal coeur* 1929 22 641
- <sup>19</sup> — High altitude disease *Arch Int Med* 1937 59 32
- <sup>20</sup> MOORE R M MOORE R F AND SINGLETON A O JR Experiments in the chemical stimulation of pain endings associated with small blood vessels *Am J Physiol* 1934 107 594
- <sup>21</sup> PERLOW S MARKLF P AND KATZ L N Factors involved in the production of skeletal muscle pain *Arch Int Med* 1934 53 814
- <sup>22</sup> PIKE F H An approach to the problem of pain fields with special reference to those associated with diseases of the nose and throat *Laryngoscope* 1928 38 219
- <sup>23</sup> SPIEGEL I A AND HASHIMOTO H Über die Schmerzleitung aus dem kardioaortalen System in Beziehung zu den Spinalganglion und den Rückenmarkshäuten *Ztschr f d ges exp Med* 1930 71 408
- <sup>24</sup> TENNANT R Factors involved in the arrest of contraction in an ischemic myocardial area *Am J Physiol* 1935 113 677
- <sup>25</sup> — AND WIGGERS C J Effect of coronary occlusion on myocardial contraction *Am J Physiol* 1935 112 301
- <sup>26</sup> VAQUEZ H Diseases of the Heart Transl and ed by Laidlaw G F Philadelphia W B Saunders 1924
- <sup>27</sup> WENCKEBACH K F Angina pectoris and the possibilities of its surgical relief *Brit M J* 1924 1 809
- <sup>28</sup> WIGGERS C J The physiology of cardiac pain Chap 6 Diseases of the Coronary Arteries and Cardiac Pain ed by LEVY R L New York Macmillan 1936
- <sup>29</sup> — Physiology in Health and Disease Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1934
- <sup>30</sup> — AND CORTON F S Studies on the coronary circulation 1 The pressure pulses and their interpretation *Am J Physiol* 1933 106 9
- <sup>31</sup> WILBURN MASON I A new conception of angina pectoris *Brit M J* 1948 1 912



gina pectoris the character of the pain is an outstanding feature. It seems to be different from any other type of pain representing something distinct and apart from the physical descriptions of crushing, vise like, etc. As a matter of fact, aside from its horrible intensity, the pain is of such a nature that the sufferer finds no adequate words to characterize it.

General considerations of the psychology of pain are but the background of the problem. The more practical and individual details depend upon the other two aspects which belong in this chapter, namely the physician's ability to interpret objective and subjective evidence and the capacity and ability of the sufferer to feel and experience pain, to react to pain, to adjust himself to the onslaught of pain with all its curiously related emotional traumas and to the whole cycle of his life of which pain is a recurring feature.

## II The Individual Capacity To Feel and Experience Pain and To React to Pain

Psychologic as well as physiologic factors are vital determinants in the individual's capacity to feel and experience pain and to react to pain. Compared with their role in the mechanism of pain (p. 239) these factors here are less clearly defined and almost inseparable one from the other. The capacity and the pattern of the reaction are however the result of more than these two factors. Race, heredity, disposition, qualities of discipline and training, emotional endowment, sex, age and perhaps climatic and atmospheric conditions are also important.

To disentangle these manifold influences is extremely difficult. The task however appears to offer two avenues of approach: an understanding of the known anatomic structures and physiologic mechanisms that pick up, transmit and register pain, and an appreciation of all the potentialities for function that are developed on this basis, supplemented by important exogenous elements. Unfortunately, on all these points our knowledge is fragmentary, but we can at least attempt a critical appraisal.

As far as the problem permits, therefore, we must study pain (a) as a physiologic manifestation initiated and transmitted by the physical apparatus that exists in the body, and (b) secondly, as a psychologic reaction by the individual to the sensation or experience. Sometimes the physiologic and psychologic elements appear to act simultaneously, sometimes one precedes the other. The physical apparatus consists of chemical transmitter substances, acetylcholine and sympathin, a rather intricate synaptic junction system in the cord and a receptor system in the thalamus and in the cortex. The more recent studies in neurophysiology indicate that physical arrangements in the apparatus alone can account for quality and intensity of pain. Quality of pain is achieved chiefly by an aggregate effect that follows a simultaneous stimulation of different types of pain fibers each with its own physiological effect (Wiggers<sup>3</sup>). Intensity of pain is determined by the rate of action waves set up

ism. A linkage of emotional and physical factors is normal, in fact in severe pain these two factors are scarcely separable and engender a feeling of revulsion. But that this revulsion (unbearableness) need not be an integral part of pain is proved by the fact that in mild pain it is practically nonexistent. \* Pain therefore, rests largely on a physical basis.

This physical basis is still further exemplified in the case of referred pain from viscera, the heart for instance, by the feature of "amplification" of pain. It has been suggested that referred pain is amplified in the synaptic junctional area of the spinal cord and perhaps in the thalamic and cortical regions. The amplification may be physical and apart from any emotional reaction or the element of shock, it is perhaps a frequent concomitant in anginal pain. Should the concept of an amplifying mechanism prove to be valid, it may contribute to our understanding of how it comes to pass that a comparatively small lesion, a thrombus, in what is after all a small vascular channel in the case of a coronary artery produces such terrific pain. On the other hand, the explanation may rest upon a local cause, i.e., a specialized threshold for pain at the cardiac nerve endings, or other factors.

The sources of pain in general, are twofold: those which result from stimuli that impinge on the integument of the body and those which have their origin within the organs or deep tissues. The sensation of pleasure and pain from the integument or envelope of the body is a matter of great interest and concern to the psychiatrist, especially in its connotation of generalized libido and specialized areas of erotic reaction. The problem of intrabodily pain may take on almost a similar significance, i.e., the libidinization of internal organs. For the internist therefore the general emotional aspects may become an important field of interest. The individual with angina pectoris for example may be exemplifying a libidinization effect diverted to his heart when he is victimized by emotional reactions which spring from anxiety, frustration, guilt or are engendered by inherent or acquired psychologic forces set into action by the organic illness. These emotional reactions according to Freud are connected with sexual instincts and drives retained in the unconscious and often play an important if not primary role in the total clinical picture. On the other hand the individual with angina pectoris may be concerned chiefly with a real or anxiety appropriate to the serious nature of the malady. (See Chapter XX for psychologic aspects in psychosomatic disorders of the heart.)

The language is prolific in adjectives that are commonly used to describe pain. This is evidence of its manifold aspects: words such as boring, burning, piercing, twisting and countless others indicate the varieties of pain. These terms do not denote differences in degree of intensity, that is they are not quantitative measures but rather expressions of qualitative variants. In an

\* The role of the unconscious is not included in this connection.

gna pectoris the character of the pain is an outstanding feature. It seems to be different from any other type of pain representing something distinct and apart from the physical descriptions of crushing vise like etc. As a matter of fact aside from its horrible intensity, the pain is of such a nature that the sufferer finds no adequate words to characterize it.

General considerations of the psychology of pain are but the background of the problem. The more practical and individual details depend upon the other two aspects which belong in this chapter namely the physician's ability to interpret objective and subjective evidence and the capacity and ability of the sufferer to feel and experience pain to react to pain to adjust himself to the onslaught of pain with all its curiously related emotional traumas and to the whole cycle of his life of which pain is a recurring feature.

## II The Individual Capacity To Feel and Experience Pain and To React to Pain

Psychologic as well as physiologic factors are vital determinants in the individual's capacity to feel and experience pain and to react to pain. Compared with their role in the mechanism of pain (p. 239) these factors here are less clearly defined and almost inseparable one from the other. The capacity and the pattern of the reaction are however the result of more than these two factors. Race heredity disposition qualities of discipline and training emotional endowment sex age and perhaps climatic and atmospheric conditions are also important.

To disentangle these manifold influences is extremely difficult. The task however appears to offer two avenues of approach: an understanding of the known anatomic structures and physiologic mechanisms that pick up transmit and register pain and an appreciation of all the potentialities for function that are developed on this basis supplemented by important exogenous elements. Unfortunately on all these points our knowledge is fragmentary but we can at least attempt a critical appraisal.

As far as the problem permits therefore we must study pain (a) as a physiologic manifestation initiated and transmitted by the physical apparatus that exists in the body and (b) secondly as a psychologic reaction by the individual to the sensation or experience. Sometimes the physiologic and psychologic elements appear to act simultaneously sometimes one precedes the other. The physical apparatus consists of chemical transmitter substances acetylcholine and sympathin a rather intricate synaptic junction system in the cord and a receptor system in the thalamus and in the cortex. The more recent studies in neurophysiology indicate that physical arrangements in this apparatus alone can account for quality and intensity of pain. Quality of pain is achieved chiefly by an aggregate effect that follows a simultaneous stimulation of different types of pain fibers each with its own physiological effect (Wiggers<sup>1</sup>). Intensity of pain is determined by the rate of action waves set up

in the nerve endings in response to painful stimuli and transmitted along the same kind of fibers, C and B, to common synaptic connections. Although this mechanism is important, the main factor in intensification of pain appears to be an increase in the total number of the same type of fibers, with no alteration in the velocity of their electrical waves.

Leaving out of account for the moment what transpires in the process of the delivery of pain impulses from the central synaptic connections to the thalamus and to the cortex, it is clear that in the lower limb of the nerve arc, i.e. from tissues and organs to the spinal cord, there are anatomic and physiologic determinants of the quality and intensity of pain, and quality and intensity are practical criteria for estimating the individual response to pain.

Diligent study is being directed to all three components of the lower limb of the nerve arc, nerve endings, axons, and synaptic connections, but we still lack information on the norm or standard of the quantitative relationship that exists between them. The number of nerve endings may be subnormal, the arrangement of the axons not always the same for each person, or in a particular portion of the nervous system. The chemical substances elaborated during impulse transmission are not fixed. Moreover, we are ignorant of the exact conditions by which groups of fibers other than "C and B" are called into action and our ignorance is no less with respect to the arrangement and functions of the common synaptic junctions. It is therefore not possible to say whether quality and intensity of pain are not largely determined in this portion of the nervous system. This ignorance renders it difficult too and perhaps even futile to appraise the influence of the higher pathways and centers. For convenience, human beings in their response to pain have been roughly divided into three groups, normal (average) hyposensitive and hypersensitive. These differences in response are undoubtedly attributable to the action of the higher as well as the lower centers but it may well be that the latter play a far more significant and important role than we have hitherto understood.

The pathway from the central synaptic areas in the spinal cord to the thalamus and then to the cortex are also shrouded in darkness. A few things however have come to light. All sensations of pain reach the thalamus and according to the neurologist many probably go no further. Lesions in the thalamus and in the cortex frequently are accompanied by emotional derangements. These parts of the brain not only receive pain impulses translating them into consciousness, but function to achieve a kind of basal emotional equilibrium. These structures are all important stations in the consideration of the individual response to pain. To the physiologist thalamus and cortex are one instrument with the thalamus capable of affecting broad and general influences on emotionality, the cortex finer and preciser controls. Both structures are looked upon as a physiologic unit in a manner similar to the consideration of the dif-

fuse reticular zone spreading through the medulla pons mesencephalon and diencephalon by which control of physical and chemical bodily processes is accomplished. Unfortunately, very little is known of the interplay of forces between the thalamus and the cortex but there is hardly any doubt that emotional element as well as the intelligence residing supposedly in the cortex, have much to do with the response and reaction to pain in each case.

The higher centers however and in fact the pathways that start at the junctional tissues in the cord the spino-thalamic tract possibly also sympathetic fibers in the spinal cord as well as extraspinal sympathetic and vagal routes all play a significant part in the reaction process of pain. By the reaction process we mean the potentialities of function that are developed from this point i.e. junctional tissues on into very consciousness. This portion of the cerebrospinal system has to do with every response that neutralizes diminishes or augments the effects of impulses of pain. Moreover in these higher centers resides the capacity to differentiate pain, to experience its various tones as it were or to use another figure to distinguish various kinds of pain through consciousness as one recognizes the composition of light that passes through a prism.

### RACE

It is more than probable that different races\* vary in their emotional responses and especially to pain. There is some intimation that male Pueblo Indians and possibly Eskimos and Negroes also a number of primitive groups in various parts of the globe possess either a higher threshold for pain or are incapable of generating highly emotional states in the presence of pain or at any other time.

In general the proof of inherent hyposensitiveness is difficult to obtain or appraise. The inference that such a state exists in Negroes is based on the experience for instance that they often develop anatomic lesions that go with anginal pain and angina pectoris in other races and yet there are in this race proportionately few subjective accounts or objective observations of anginal pain (PALLIS<sup>12</sup>). This infrequency is not entirely accounted for by the unrecallability and inarticulateness of many Negroes in giving medical histories. If the premise should prove valid that the Negro who is often very emotional is hyposensitive it would point to a nice and interesting distinction between sensitivity to pain and general emotionality. Lillman believed male Pueblo Indian were hyposensitive. In this race however we must consider the factor of stolidity combined with discipline and tradition in other words Spartan qualities and perhaps above all the force of tribal opinion as a deterrent to the

\*This term is here employed not in the anthropologic sense it designates merely well recognized human groups.

display of signs of pain. The power of this force Stefansson<sup>4</sup> has emphasized in a similar connection for Athapaska Indians and Eskimos. Among these people, to show suffering is to lose prestige.

In response to a request for information, Mr. Desmond Holdridge<sup>1</sup> was kind enough to furnish the following comments:

"I have been among Eskimos, Kujala bush Negroes in Suriname, Neskopi Indians in Labrador, and various Indian tribes in tropical South America. With Eskimos and Negroes I have noted nothing unusual in their manner of reacting to pain. I have, however, noted again and again among Indians both in Labrador and in South America, a willingness to endure pain that on first sight is quite remarkable. Almost all of the Amazonian tribes have hunting and puberty ordeals that involve a great deal of personal mistreatment that must be borne without evidences of pain, and as a general thing these tests are passed successfully. But that this apparent insensitivity is due to a nervous peculiarity I can hardly believe. Rather I would trace it to environment and upbringing which brings about an attitude of stoicism.

As an example of the influence of this attitude, I had often noticed that an Indian hunter might stand on a nest of ants or astride a large column of ants while close to game, and make absolutely no sign of the intense pain. At first I was quite admiring, but later I found that when sufficiently interested in hunting myself and accustomed to the Indian example, I was able to do precisely the same thing, letting ants bite me without disturbance and even getting a perverse kind of pleasure from it, and I am no stoic."

Hyposensitiveness should not be considered a deficiency, it is rather an endowment and is not to be confounded with stoicism, a state wherein a practiced self control simulates lack of capacity for emotional response. A mild subjective response in these races therefore, calls for special caution in anginal cases. The mildness of pain is no gauge of the serious import of the malady and this is equally true of the absence of pain.

Hypersensitiveness is comparatively common in some racial groups. It is of course dangerous and misleading to label an entire people as hypersensitive, or for that matter to endow them with any special characteristic, although it would seem that the Latin temperament and the Semitic groups, Jewish, Arab, etc., for example, are more likely to have their emotions touched off by pain. It is not established that environmental rather than inherent elements evoke the reaction.

#### HEREDITY AND DISPOSITION

Emotional response to pain is however, governed also by the inherited make up of each individual. A patient born of strong sturdy emotionally stable forebears has an advantage in coping with angina pectoris. The emo-

tional equilibrium he inherits often will save him self inflicted fear and anguish that the over apprehensive individual suffers. For want of a better term we speak of the inherited disposition of a human being as placid phlegmatic amiable happy or explosive aggressive irascible sullen. These kind of disposition are bound up with psychologic traits and especially with introversion or extraversion of mind and spirit.

There are of course inherited physical factors upon which the emotions depend for example hormonal secretions in the body that undoubtedly share the cause of the manner in which an individual is provoked by pain and reacts to it. Inherited and acquired physical somatic and emotional or psychic forces are interlocked and fashion the various kinds of response to pain.

### ENVIRONMENT AND TRAINING

The response to pain is subjective as well as objective we have already commented rather extensively on the objective reactions (Chapter II). The behavior of the angular sufferer in the presence of these objective signs will often depend on his capacity to control his subjective reaction. The objective signs conform to fairly well recognized clinical pictures and are in keeping with the physical nature of the malady. Objective and subjective features combined form the total expression of the way in which any angular sufferer acts.

No elaboration is necessary of the power of the subjective features or emotions where pain is concerned. It is not the same for every individual and widely varied differences rest not only on racial and hereditary attributes to which those of sex and age may be added but upon factors of environment and training.

Stoicism and tolerance are elements often evoked in the reaction to pain. They are not necessarily inherent qualities though it must be admitted that one cannot draw too fine a line in this respect. Stoicism is a form of disciplined self control and represents a kind of protective armor fashioned by the psyche to ward off the penetration of pain. This is distinct from tolerance or bearableness which may be defined as the equivalent of reserve upon which the individual draws to withstand pain that might otherwise be annihilating or beyond his control. This idea of reserve is comparable to the alkali reserve in the blood or to cardiac reserve which act as reservoirs in time of urgent need. The capacity to bear pain what the psychologist term bearableness is not to be mistaken for an attribute of the physical mechanism involved in reacting to pain.

The acquired factors of environment and training, are quite apart from inherent physical differences in the nervous apparatus by which individuals may or may not be able to withstand pain or permit its entry into consciousness. Guidance in infancy, childhood and adolescence the preparation for the chal-



lence that meets the individual during these stages and later adult life develop, or at least ought to develop, qualities of discipline and fortitude. An environmental existence reasonably adapted to the individual's potentialities should produce an emotional equipment adequate to face affliction and pain with sound sense, free of ascetic martyrdom or of indulgence and self gratification, even with calm and equanimity in many cases. A philosophy that recognizes the futility and the deep inartistry of fighting inexorable biological laws and that accepts the inevitability of certain problems will save the individual from wasting his emotional strength. This does not imply an attitude of fatalistic defeatism.

All this is not accomplished by exhortation on the part of the physician or by girding up the loins on the part of the patient. A long antecedent period of child and adult training is a prerequisite or, in fortunate instances, a natural gift of wisdom. The practical bearing for the anginal sufferer is that all this supports him if the pain is not too overwhelming and devastating to prevent him from replenishing his strength from the wells of his emotional reserves. It enables him to contrive and develop distractions with which to throw off or soften pain. It colors his outlook on life, safeguarding him from unwise exertion and sharpening, within his own restricted limits, his individual capacity for adjusted living during the intervals free of pain. An adjusted human being should not fear death nor live in apprehensive wait of death or pain and during the waiting process miss his opportunity to live in the fullest and best sense as far as he is able. The invalidism of anginal patients is by no means a time of total loss for living. As is well known, the anginal victim who so often comes so close to death learns to appreciate life and savor its best with moderation and a keener sense of awareness. The degree to which this can be attained is however unfortunately governed all too often by the acquisition of peace of mind that comes from social and economic security. All this is true not only for anginal sufferers but for many patients afflicted by other serious forms of organic heart disease.

Another aspect of the armamentarium which environment and training forge is reflected in an attitude of resignation. This strange reaction is at times the outgrowth of deep religious feeling and not necessarily an escape from reality. At its best it is an indication and expression of emotional equilibrium achieved without terror and without frustration and guilt. This attitude is an invaluable bulwark against the mental ravages of anginal pain or severe distress associated with fear and anxiety. It is hardly to be expected in younger people who are more likely to be embittered and resentful of their premature incapacitation but in older persons too a quieter resignation is by no means the rule. In fact those with cerebral arteriosclerosis frequently develop irascibility and an abnormal tendency to struggle against the inevitable.

## ATMOSPHERIC AND CLIMATIC CONDITIONS

These are difficult to evaluate. It is common experience to hear of a lighting up or aggravation of various kinds of pain during inclement weather or in climates that tax the resources of some individuals. Unfortunately no exact studies exist on this point. As nearly as one can tell the influence on pain is not due to electric conditions of the atmosphere as in 'bad' weather storms etc. but rather to excessive variations in humidity.

## Classification of Individuals With Respect to Pain

Pain is a valuable yardstick with which to measure the emotional and mental equipment of most patients. The capacity to differentiate pain resides in the higher brain centers notably the cortex and perhaps the adjoining subcortical territory. Human consciousness is capable not only of recognizing pain but can differentiate nuances and modalities of pain. By virtue of consciousness the will to do and the will to live, pain may be narrowed or deflected or disregarded. Distraction, discipline, training bear on this problem as we have already observed, but the mind is also able to develop substitutive reactions that repel, retain or qualify pain. All these factors relate to and condition or fix the individual's capacity for experiencing pain.

The reaction to pain and practically speaking this alone is at present our reliance for placing all human beings into the three groups already mentioned: hypersensitive or overactive, hyposensitive or underactive, and a middle or average group. This classification is but a rough expedient and leaves much to be desired.

*a The hypersensitive group.* The first, the hypersensitive group, comprises individuals who are apprehensive, overanxious, and whose reaction to pain is usually exaggerated. The pain is not imagined; there is no question therefore of its validity, but in such individuals an uncontrolled imagination may arouse unwarranted emotional emphasis. The emotional component is not only marked but may dominate the scene, physiologic manifestations taking a secondary or even neglected place. It is surmised, though by no means proved, that the higher brain centers of such patients are hypersensitive, that is to say, trigger ready and overactive when they are touched off. The physiologic activities which do not go higher than the spinal centers do not evoke an emotional component since the higher parts of the brain concerned with consciousness are not involved. The lower neuron system, however, has its own threshold for picking up and transmitting pain, but it is not known whether the lower system too may become hypersensitive in the same way as the upper centers.

*b The hyposensitive group.* In hyposensitive people the reverse seems to be true. The upper centers are low and sluggish to act and their response is slight or negligible. The emotional accompaniment is therefore feeble or

submerged. Since the upper centers are not called upon, the lower pathways and centers are probably chiefly responsible for the subnormal reaction in general, and for the special patterns of radiation, etc. that are encountered in these subjects. This is by no means fully established and indeed the entire relationship of psychologic to physiologic factors requires much more study.

The usual forms of pain in this group—their reference, the substitutes and equivalents for pain—have been studied by Libman. He recognizes types in general by applying a simple test which he devised. In his own words: "in performing the test, it is important, after one has exercised the control pressure upon the mastoid process and proceeds to press in the direction of the styloid process not to also press upon the ramus of the lower jaw. There exists a naturally sensitive point at about the middle of its border, and when this is pressed upon, in addition to the sensitive point behind it, the patient, if at all sensitive to pain, responds more than if the usual point alone is examined." The pressure is exerted upon a branch of the auricularis magnus nerve.

According to this author the hyposensitive subject whom he recognizes by this method will not only feel little or no pain when afflicted with conditions that usually produce cardiac or anginal pain but whatever cardiac pain he has, is much more apt to exhibit greater radiation. He is more likely to have reflex symptoms as well as substitutes or equivalents for pain. Mild pain or absence of pain occurs in other groups, but in the hyposensitive patient it is practically the rule, at least intense pain is not a frequent incident. The radiation is on the left side; this may be looked upon as the same side in which the lesion exists, or the radiation may be contralateral. "Inverse" radiation, or perhaps better expressed, a reversal of the direction of radiation, is considered characteristic of the hyposensitive state. e.g., referred anginal pain may begin in the little finger or wrist and spread to the pectoral and sternal areas. Furthermore, the hyposensitive state is supposed to be more prone to develop reflex symptoms in angina pectoris in the presence or absence of pain.

It is claimed that this group exhibits a greater propensity for developing substitutes and equivalents for pain. dyspnea, not a usual feature in angina pectoris (apnea instead) is outstanding with pain secondary or completely supplanted or covered up by the dyspnea. Vertigo may take the place of pain or of nausea and vomiting and instead of pain the victim will complain of heart weakness or profound general weakness or heavy fatigue. As a rule the severe local pain of the sensitive individual is absent. Other substitutive symptoms of anginal pain of a noncoronary variety are a feeling of pressure, a weight in the chest, thermal sensations burning or severe cold in the chest or in radiated areas, a sense of constriction in the throat or chest, or a feeling of fullness in the arms, forearms, etc.

c. Between the hypersensitive and hyposensitive groups are those who when afflicted with anginal pain exhibit reactions which go to neither extreme.

This does not mean that patients in this group will not suffer from gradations of pain, but whether mild or intense the whole picture of their reaction is in harmony with the degree and duration of the pain experienced. They differ more especially from hypo sensitive individuals in that they respond in the average normal way to Libman's pressure test. It is possible though for a paroxysm of angina pectoris to seize them and cause little or no pain.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- <sup>1</sup>HOLDRIDGE, D. Personal communication.  
<sup>2</sup>LIBMAN, E. Tr. & Amer. Phys. 1926 41 305 1929 44 57. Observations on individual sensitiveness to pain. J. N. A. 1934 107 335. Symposium. Angina pectoris with special reference to coronary artery disease. Bull. New York Acad. Med. 1935 11 427.  
<sup>3</sup>PAULIN, J. E. Tr. & Am. Phys. 1927 47 46. Confirmed by Thayer and Longcope. (In the discussion on this paper Paulin and Thayer stressed the difficulty of eliciting a history of anginal pain in the Negro.)  
<sup>4</sup>STEPHENSON, V. Personal communication.  
<sup>5</sup>HAGGERS, C. J. The physiology of cardiac pain. Chap. 6. Diseases of the Coronary Arteries and Cardiac Pain. ed. by LEVY, R. L. New York: Macmillan 1936. Physiology in Health and Disease. Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger 1934.

The following additional references bear on the text of this chapter.

- BURNETT, A. C. AND DALLENBACH, K. M. The experience of heat. Am. J. Psychol. 1927 38 418.  
 HARTSHORNE, C. The philosophy and psychology of sensation. Chicago: University of Chicago Press 1934.  
 KNIGHT, L. The interrelation of warmth and pain. Am. J. Psychol. 1932 33 387.  
 KATZ, J. P. Summary in Murpherson's 'Foundation of Experimental Psychology'. Worcester, Mass. and London: Clark University Press 1929.  
 STRONG, C. A. The Origin of Consciousness. London: Macmillan 1918.



# Psychosomatic Disorders of the Heart

---

## CHAPTER VI

# Psychosomatic Disorders of the Heart

### Introduction

**T**O COMPREHEND psychosomatic disorders which involve the heart it is necessary to have an understanding of psychosomatic disorders in general. Accordingly in this chapter some of the general principles of these conditions will be discussed and inasmuch as this volume is chiefly concerned with the behavior of the autonomic nervous system in relation to angina pectoris and myocardial infarction the discussion will center on psychosomatic disorders which may simulate these conditions. The remarks which follow are however equally relevant to other forms of heart disease.

Although the term psychosomatic signifies an ever present interdependence between psychological and somatic factors and thus implies that every condition in health or disease is psychosomatic, it is nevertheless true that the attempts to single out certain conditions and diseases under this designation have the advantage of always directing attention to both factors when one or the other might be ignored. These factors not only affect each other but together achieve a dynamic equilibrium of the activities of the mind and body and to a great degree these activities are controlled by the autonomic nervous system.

We shall in this chapter touch upon certain aspects of the autonomic nervous system even though they have received rather full attention earlier in this volume. These aspects comprise the flexibility of the autonomic dynamic equilibrium, the misaction of the autonomic apparatus as a whole and its related patterns of clinical disorders and disease and the process of referred pain. Before however considering these features we shall briefly review several relevant psychological processes.

### PSYCHOLOGICAL ASPECTS

A most important element in the psychogenesis of psychosomatic disorders is the emotional tension which builds up in the individual. The small conflicts and tensions inherent in daily living are usually quickly resolved but they may become intensified and augmented and find no ready outlet. Emotional disturbances may be acute, dramatic and violent as in rage or fear or insidious and subterranean in the form of guilt, anxiety and therefore less obvious.

*Emotional Reactions and Autonomic Activities*

The strong emotional upheaval of excitement or rage, accompanied by a multitude of physiologic reactions can be relieved just as quickly and dramatically as it came by utilizing the voluntary or skeletal musculature and the sensory perceptive system. Motor acts brought into play in a fight will greatly decrease and even obliterate emotional tension. The heat of battle over and anger cooled, the autonomic activities which accompany the emotional storm rapidly return to normal and no emotional residue is left behind to stimulate the autonomic nervous apparatus.

Frequently, however, the individual is the victim of slowly piled up conflicts which lead to emotional pressure. This pressure is kept up by recurrent psychic stimuli which induce a state of general autonomic excitation. Since the physiological accompaniments of autonomic hyperactivity are themselves incapable of relieving tension, the subject becomes a victim of emotional and bodily disturbances, these are termed vegetative neuroses. Essential hypertension and chronic hyperchlorhydria are held to be examples of autonomic or vegetative neuroses.

*Emotional Reactions and Conversion Hysteria*

In many cases, however, an inner or unconscious\* urge for relief of the retained emotional tension will not down and the patient often resorts to a conversion mechanism to obtain relief. The mechanism consists of unconsciously projecting complaints and symptoms into various regions or organs of the body. For this purpose he employs the same apparatus i.e., the skeletal musculature and sensory perceptive system but since its use is partial and ineffectual the result in terms of relieving tension, is inadequate. In short although he seeks outer means for expressing the need to reduce his inner tension these means are weak substitutes for the vigorous and full acts of the somatic systems. For example the deep unconscious impulse to secure relief or to protest or cry out may take the form of a dysfunction of the larynx or bronchial musculature or an inability to walk as in hysterical paralysis of limb muscles.

Ineffectual as these symptoms are they nevertheless represent a kind of instinctual urgency and are symbolic of this need. The symbolism attaches to the process, i.e. *modus operandi* by which the symptoms penetrate to a particular organ and not to the signs and complaints in terms of the organ involved.

Attempts have been made to distinguish conversion hysteria from autonomic (vegetative) neuroses on the basis that the former is usually free of autonomic activities, but psychiatrists are well aware that such a distinction is not always possible. To begin with the patient with conversion hysteria may actually suffer from emotional stress which inaugurates autonomic reactions as

\* This word is employed in its psychodynamic meaning

in other subjects. Moreover, the psychoneurotic may undergo autonomic activities expressed as physiologic reactions in various organs including the one that is the recipient of the conversion symptom. This kind of symptom therefore may or may not be associated with general autonomic hyperactivity. In any event the conversion symptom although at best an incomplete and futile attempt at relief represents an unconscious requirement and a source of satisfaction. Abetted by the conviction that a tissue or organ is diseased, the patient gives dramatic import to his signs and symptoms and thus procures some measure of gratification.

### *Emotional Behavior and Infantile Mechanism*

Psychosomatic disorders possess a strong etiological basis of regressive or infantile attitudes and emotional traumas. These disorders are in a psychodynamic sense disorders of infancy; namely, they conform chiefly to the instinctual and emotional life that starts in the pregenital period and continues into adulthood. The concentration of the patient's interest or energies on somatic features is accompanied by a strong unconscious wish to withhold from view infantile emotional motivation and behavior. This appears to be the case in persons who have a disordered physiology, i.e. functional disturbance involving the autonomic nervous system, who have organic disease, or who through a personality defect cannot cope with physical illness.

## AUTONOMIC MASS ACTION\* IN PSYCHOSOMATIC DISORDERS

### *Physiologic Responses*

The entire autonomic nervous apparatus functions as a unit, i.e. as if all its central representations were set in motion. These representations extend throughout the spinal cord, medulla, pons, mesencephalon, diencephalon, and for the most part consist of aggregations of cells, nuclei, with rather well defined anatomic boundaries and specific physiological functions. Some nuclei or centers are less clearly defined anatomically and distinguished almost wholly by their physiologic properties. All the areas or centers together may be touched off as a unit by a variety of stimuli and the effects of the reaction are transmitted by a vast number of efferent sympathetic and parasympathetic pathways to all parts of the body.

Once an emergency state is met by fight or flight, the autonomic responses return to normal and the emotional tension practically disappears. Autonomic responses set off as part of an autonomic mass reaction are however brought into play by emotions other than fright or anger. These responses are likely to be less marked and widespread and as already mentioned are usually without effect as far as ridding the body of emotional tension goes.

A fuller exposition of this subject will be found in Chapter IV.



*Emotional Reactions and Autonomic Activities*

The strong emotional upheaval of excitement or rage, accompanied by a multitude of physiologic reactions can be relieved just as quickly and dramatically as it came by utilizing the voluntary or skeletal musculature and the sensory perceptive system. Motor acts brought into play in a fight will greatly decrease and even obliterate emotional tension. The heat of battle over and anger cooled, the autonomic activities which accompany the emotional storm rapidly return to normal and no emotional residue is left behind to stimulate the autonomic nervous apparatus.

I frequently, however, the individual is the victim of slowly piled up conflicts which lead to emotional pressure. This pressure is kept up by recurrent psychic stimuli which induce a state of general autonomic excitation. Since the physiological accompaniments of autonomic hyperactivity are themselves incapable of relieving tension, the subject becomes a victim of emotional and bodily disturbances, these are termed vegetative neuroses. Essential hypertension and chronic hyperchlorhydria are held to be examples of autonomic or vegetative neuroses.

*Emotional Reactions and Conversion Hysteria*

In many cases, however, an inner or unconscious\* urge for relief of the retained emotional tension will not down and the patient often resorts to a conversion mechanism to obtain relief. The mechanism consists of unconsciously projecting complaints and symptoms into various regions or organs of the body. For this purpose he employs the same apparatus, i.e., the skeletal musculature and sensory perceptive system, but since its use is partial and ineffectual the result in terms of relieving tension, is inadequate. In short although he seeks outer means for expressing the need to reduce his inner tension these means are weak substitutes for the vigorous and full acts of the somatic systems. For example the deep unconscious impulse to secure relief or to protest or cry out may take the form of a dysfunction of the larynx or bronchial musculature or an inability to walk as in hysterical paralysis of limb muscles.

Ineffectual as these symptoms are they nevertheless represent a kind of instinctual urgency and are symbolic of this need. The symbolism attaches to the process, i.e. *modus operandi*, by which the symptoms penetrate to a particular organ and not to the signs and complaints in terms of the organ involved.

Attempts have been made to distinguish conversion hysteria from autonomic (vegetative) neuroses on the basis that the former is usually free of autonomic activities but psychiatrists are well aware that such a distinction is not always possible. To begin with the patient with conversion hysteria may actually suffer from emotional stress which inaugurates autonomic reactions as

\* This word is employed in its psychodynamic meaning

in tance The initial emotional provocation may range from lethargy to excitement and rage or from grief frustration to joy and other emotional experience

### *The Tonic State of the Emotions*

A normal human being is probably never devoid of emotions Just as the dynamic or tonic state of the body is determined by physiologic and psychologic factors so too psychogenic and physiologic elements determine the dynamic or tonic equilibrium of the emotions The body possesses mechanisms in the physiologic realm which function at levels that are trigger ready to react they do not start at zero or at zenith and a similar provision holds for the emotions (p 16) Chemicals hormones and other agents participate in the preservation of the emotional dynamic balance but the chief control devolves on the cortex and adjacent subcortical territory In conjunction with other areas of the neuraxis they function as a whole to establish an emotional equilibrium i e a tonic emotional state

*The function of the cortex* The cerebral cortex (neopallium) has autonomic representations of its own but it exercises a supervisory inhibitory power over the broader and less discriminative functions of the lower archaic brain centers It possesses also an excitatory effect on many activities of the brain stem Despite this dual action the cortex in the aggregate holds the activity of the lower older centers in leash and gives their activities a finer sharper focus

There is little doubt of the interaction between cortical processes (will power intellect discipline conditioning) and the deep pseudoaffective reactions which are demonstrable in animals deprived of cortex and thalamencephalon (p 136) An interaction also exists between cortical processes and emotional states such as anger experienced in full consciousness The cortex is the repository of highly organized processes with which in the form of consciousness will power discrimination the individual can shield himself or modify and fend off emotional onslaught The supervisory or restraining influence of the cortex exercised on emotional states engendered in the cortex itself or in deeper cerebral regions the hypothalamus particularly is very great Were this not the case violent and explosive reactions without semblance of control would be touched off by trivial provocation and the tumult and intensity of these attacks could be devastating In man for example the cortex acting as a damper and rheostat for the hypothalamic region permits the slow and orderly evolution of shades of mood and feeling The gradient so to speak of emotion is steady and progressive not necessarily disruptive and bounding The normal full grown individual develops adaptive reflexes with which to meet the strain of an emotional storm To lose one's head in an emergency means literally the loss of cortical faculties This point of view is also supported by experimental evidence in lower forms For example in the cat and dog reactions of unwar

The autonomic mass action induced by psychic stimuli differs in no respect from that produced by other types of stimuli. The general and peripheral reactions are coordinated and give rise to a clinical picture which may be mild or intense, brief or prolonged, intermittent, regional or wide flung. Under some conditions, as in excitement, the adrenergic or sympathetic adrenal activity is to the fore, under other circumstances, as in lethargy approaching sleep, the cholinergic or parasympathetic influence is ascendant and dominant.

A large variety of emotional stimuli may disturb the autonomic regulations and these are registered as central and peripheral effects producing deviation in heat or water exchange, metabolism, circulation, respiration, gastrointestinal and genitourinary functions, sweating and pilomotor acts, sleep-waking rhythm. These disturbed activities make up in a variety of combinations, the clinical patterns of disease. Since an autonomic mass action is common to them all, it is not surprising that varied and unrelated conditions, as for example cerebral apoplexy, acute coronary occlusion, and even food poisoning, may resemble each other and even defy clinical differentiation. This principle is valuable in appraising the nature of cardiac manifestations produced by organic lesions in other parts of the body.

### *Emotional Factors*

A great many psychosomatic disorders are examples of an exaggerated or subnormal autonomic activity which has not gone on to produce morphologic damage. Prolonged, marked, frequently recurrent autonomic disturbances as already intimated, need not cause tissue damage. Witness the chronic recurrent condition of neurocirculatory asthenia or observe the palpitation, essential hypertension or spastic phenomena that recur and endure over years and yet lead to no structural injury. A chronic or oft repeated state of emotional tension may however set up morphologic alteration. A classic example is peptic ulcer. The ulcer or crater is the somatic consequence of a stomach under a protracted neurogenic bombardment instigated by emotional factors. The ulcer does not relieve the emotional tension; on the contrary it may add to it. Nor has the ulcer any connotation of a wish for self punishment or self immolation since it is devoid of any psychodynamic implication of symbolic expression. The morphologic destruction, i.e. the peptic ulcer, may however serve as a useful gauge of the fluctuation of the unrelieved emotional tension or conflict.

The autonomic disturbances of the body induced by emotional factors are in turn capable of arousing superadded emotional phenomena. For example fear may be the original precipitating cause of a general autonomic reaction but the associated change in the behavior, let us say, of the heart, bowel, larynx, can cause further fear and anxiety. Fear therefore will engender new fear derived from the symptoms and complaints in the organ involved, the heart for

Each organ possesses a supply of afferent *sympathetic* fibers which goes to a specific number of dorsal roots and then to the substantia gelatinosa in the cord. In most individuals these fibers converge predominantly upon a limited number of dorsal roots and then travel to corresponding cord levels. For example, the preponderance of convergence and entry of afferent sympathetic fibers from the heart is at the levels of Th 1 to 4 on the left side from the gall bladder at the cord levels on the right side of Th 8 and 9 perhaps 7. This rather sharply defined concentration of afferent autonomic visceral fibers accounts for the particularity with which as a rule each organ announces visceral pain into its related dermatomes.

The second set of the dual system of pathways consists of afferent *somatic* fibers which connect each group of dermatomes related to a specific organ to the substantia gelatinosa in the cord. The concentration of somatic and visceral autonomic fibers upon common cord levels makes possible the reference of pain from an organ into its related dermatomes. For the mediation of cardiac referred pain the afferent somatic fibers travel in the left intercostal nerves of Th 1 to 4 for pain referred from the gall bladder the somatic fibers run in the right intercostal nerves of Th 7, 8 and 9.

While referred pain in the greatest number of instances depends upon the entry of the bulk of afferent autonomic fibers from the organ in question into a limited number of cord levels, it seems to be also true that multiple accessory groups of afferent (autonomic) fibers from the organ may reach still other cord levels. Such fibers are outside the zone of concentration and are usually too few or too diffuse to transmit any appreciable quantity of sensory impulses of pain but the fibers can under certain circumstances transmit much or most of the impulses into the neuraxis. The existence of these groups enlarges the potentiality of any viscus for bringing into action many cord segments which are otherwise uninvolved.

## Psychosomatic Cardiac Disorders

### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

It may be asked why is the heart so frequently a target or offender in psychosomatic disorders? Probably as in the case of the child's gastrointestinal tract subjected to food mixed with the parents' emotions, the cardiovascular system too is readily affected in early life by emotions and the neurogenic devices by which the cardiovascular apparatus is regulated are always responsive to emotions.

It has been claimed that certain individuals with a special personality profile which includes many constitutional features are more prone to develop psychosomatic cardiac symptoms. This touches on the entire problem of

ranted ferocity are produced when the restraint of the cortex or the influence of the forebrain are disturbed or removed

*The function of the hypothalamus* This region and the adjacent subthalamic territory are closely related to the regulation of the sleep waking rhythm and to certain aspects of lethargy. Lethargy and somnolence follow damage of this part of the brain. The emotional components of lethargy and excitement are in reality not neutralized but combined and integrated so that either element gains ascendancy under suitable conditions.\* In animals, angry behavior as well as sexual excitement have been elicited by stimulation of the hypothalamus.

### REFERRED PAIN IN PSYCHOSOMATIC DISORDERS

When a patient is undergoing a generalized (total) or even a lesser degree of autonomic mass reaction, the distribution and pattern of referred pain will often indicate the specific organ responsible for the reaction (p. 226). On the other hand, although in many instances a psychoneurotic may appear to have, in addition to generalized autonomic responses, referred pain with respect to his heart or any other organ, a careful investigation may disclose that the character of the pain and the absence of contiguity of dermatomic involvement point away from referred pain. A somatic disturbance or lesion is not to be held responsible for what appears to be but actually is not referred pain.

It is profitable to recall in this connection that many thoracic and even lumbar cord levels may participate in the mediation of pain from any single viscus. This accounts for the propagation for instance of cardiac pain into unrelated i.e. noncardiac dermatomes and what is even more important to the student of psychosomatic medicine, explains the behavior and registration of noncardiac pain into cardiac dermatomes (Chapter XI).

These physiologic and autonomic considerations only serve to emphasize the practical need of determining whether simulated anginal referred pain to take but one example originates in a noncardiac lesion or is evoked solely by a psychic process. The clinical cases cited below (p. 256) bear on this subject. For convenience a brief description of the mechanism of referred pain is included at this time even though a fuller account has already been given (Chapter XIII).

Referred pain depends essentially upon the participation of a dual system of afferent pathways the one somatic the other autonomic. Impulses carried by each system converge upon common cord levels.

\* The reader is cautioned against concluding that the problem of emotional response in relation to brain structure is clear or simple. Enough however is known to indicate that emotional excitability and angry behavior as well as placidity and stolidity have their anatomic cerebral representation. Moreover the experimental results are not the same in all mammals. Damage of the forebrain structures gives rise to angry behavior in the cat but the opposite effect in the monkey.

possesses fairly well-distinguished features. Its origin, distribution and mechanism have been considered at length in Chapters VI and VIII. Cardiac pain in psychoneurotic subjects however is frequently nonanginal in character.

Psychosomatic cardiac manifestations may be divided into those observed (1) in subjects with a normal heart and (2) in subjects with a diseased or disturbed heart.

### *Manifestations in Subjects with No Organic Heart Disease\**

The neurotic individual free of organic heart disease but enraged or greatly excited exhibits general autonomic manifestations and cardiac features such as rapid or irregular heart rate and often cardiac pain which is referred. If the individual is neurotic a victim of anxiety, frustration, or guilt the cardiac manifestations may make up almost his total concern with general autonomic features such as sweating, salivation, glycosuria, insomnia minimal or absent and the general autonomic features may be fairly well marked. Neither cardiac nor general manifestations bring emotional relief as a rule and they subside when the emotional pressure is reduced. A paradoxical condition is noted in some patients: the cardiac complaints are diminished in the presence of increased emotional tension and aggravated when the patient is comparatively free of emotional strain.

The *angor animi* or *Todesgefühl* i.e. the terrorizing realization of impending death characteristic of angina pectoris or acute myocardial infarction is absent. Furthermore the cardiac symptoms provide the psychoneurotic with justification and a certain comfort of mind. He feels he has gained a solid foundation for his complaints and apprehension and what could better serve this purpose than an affliction real or imagined of an organ as vulnerable as the heart. This sense of affirmation often makes it extremely difficult to separate the subject from his complaints and symptoms among which pain in the heart or in the region of the heart may be most prominent.

### *Nonanginal Cardiac Pain*

Pain in the heart or heart region is frequently encountered in subjects who have no organic heart disease. This type of pain seems to fall into four main groups: (1) pain in the heart or heart region produced by lesions in organ other than the heart; (2) pain in the heart or heart region caused by physiologic reactions as in a generalized autonomic mass reaction precipitated by severe fright or anger; (3) pain in the heart or heart region manifested as a conversion symptom; and (4) as a deliberately malingered complaint.

1. *Pain in the heart or heart region produced by extracardiac lesions.* This form of pain may be referred to the heart region, is often transmitted into cardiac dermatomes and is usually accompanied by general autonomic manifestation.

Organic heart disease was excluded on the basis of the patient's history, physical examination, electrocardiogram, chest fluoroscopic examination.

specificity in psychosomatic research \* One group of students maintains that emotional tension induced by any cause may affect any part of the autonomic system, that if the subject is already conditioned by a weak or disturbed organ it will behave as a shock organ and react to any and all emotional provocation. Another group contends that autonomic dysfunctions will follow specific emotional stimuli and supports this premise with the argument that the physiological responses to different emotional tensions are varied. Recent investigators have urged that the psychologic background of emotional diarrhea or constipation is not the same as in gastric neurosis and that cardies are unlike asthmatics in this respect.

That the heart and emotions are closely connected is a tradition older probably than recorded history. The heart as well as the bowels have long been considered repositories of compassion and kindness, wrath and rage. Indeed many viscera have been associated with emotional qualities: the spleen with anger, the gallbladder and the biliary system with hostility, the kidney with aggression. The heart however and the entire cardiovascular system eventually came to be regarded as an actual as well as literary and poetic vehicle and instigator of emotional reactions, and it was noted that the heart could function in this respect whether it was sound or maimed.

Generally looked upon as a vulnerable, delicate organ whose failure may mean suffering or dissolution, it is quick to feel its owner's mood, apprehension or anxiety, and like all other organs of the body it is the recipient of autonomic activities induced by the psyche or body. Like other organs too it appears to serve as an object for a conversion symptom. The symptoms in either case may be focused almost wholly in the cardiac apparatus. Finally the heart may, by the symptoms aroused in it, aggravate and magnify pre-existing anxiety and thus complete a vicious circle.

### CARDIAC PAIN AND ITS SIMULATION

One of the strongest links in the chain of events which keeps the psychoneurotic attached to his psychosomatic disorder is cardiac pain. Many psychoneurotic subjects are alert to the forms and guises that cardiac pain assumes and are likely to employ this knowledge unconsciously to confound and alarm physicians and relatives. This form of motivation is not duplicity or calculation as in the malingerer. The patient furthermore, soon comes to look upon his symptoms, pain in particular with a sense of personal possession and he will fight for the validity and retention of his complaints and symptoms even in the face of authority. In all psychogenic disturbances associated with pain in the heart or the heart region, anginal pain must be excluded. This form of pain is produced by disease or physiologic disturbance in the cardiac apparatus and

\* The question of specificity in general and its bearing on the heart is beyond the scope of this volume. Psychoanalytic studies indicate that specificity is bound up with deep dynamic psychologic factors.

possesses fairly well-distinguished features. Its origin, distribution and mechanism have been considered at length in Chapters VI and VIII. Cardiac pain in psychoneurotic subjects, however, is frequently nonanginal in character.

Psychosomatic cardiac manifestations may be divided into those observed (1) in subjects with a normal heart and (2) in subjects with a diseased or disturbed heart.

### *Manifestations in Subjects with No Organic Heart Disease\**

The neurotic individual free of organic heart disease but enraged or greatly excited exhibits general autonomic manifestations and cardiac features such as rapid or irregular heart rate and often cardiac pain which is referred. If the individual is neurotic, a victim of anxiety, frustration or guilt, the cardiac manifestations may make up almost his total concern with general autonomic features such as sweating, salivation, glycosuria, insomnia minimal or absent, or the general autonomic features may be fairly well marked. Neither cardiac nor general manifestations bring emotional relief as a rule, and they subside when the emotional pressure is reduced. A paradoxical condition is noted in some patients: the cardiac complaints are diminished in the presence of increased emotional tension and aggravated when the patient is comparatively free of emotional strain.

The *angst* or *Eodeckgefühl*, i.e., the terrorizing realization of impending death characteristic of angina pectoris or acute myocardial infarction, is absent. Furthermore, the cardiac symptoms provide the psychoneurotic with justification and a certain comfort of mind. He feels he has gained a solid foundation for his complaints and apprehension, and what could better serve this purpose than an affliction, real or imagined, of an organ as vulnerable as the heart. This sense of affirmation often makes it extremely difficult to separate the subject from his complaints and symptoms, among which pain in the heart or in the region of the heart may be most prominent.

### *Nonanginal Cardiac Pain*

Pain in the heart or heart region is frequently encountered in subjects who have no organic heart disease. This type of pain seems to fall into four main groups: (1) pain in the heart or heart region produced by lesions in organs other than the heart; (2) pain in the heart or heart region caused by physiologic reactions, as in a generalized autonomic mass reaction precipitated by severe fright or anger; (3) pain in the heart or heart region manifested as a conversion symptom; and (4) as a deliberately malingered complaint.

1. *Pain in the heart or heart region produced by extracardiac lesions.* This form of pain may be referred to the heart region, is often transmitted into cardiac dermatomes and is usually accompanied by general autonomic manifestations.

Organic heart disease was excluded on the basis of the patient's history, physical examination, electrocardiographic and fluoroscopic examination.



of the same kind and degree observed in angina pectoris or acute myocardial infarction. Acute gallbladder disease, acute esophageal herniation, acute pulmonary infarction (post phlebotic) are examples of such noncardiac lesions. The combination of a severe autonomic upheaval and pain referred into typical cardiac dermatomes will naturally arouse the suspicion that the acute episode is of organic cardiac nature. But if such a suspicion is not tenable as, for example, in young subjects with a sound cardiovascular apparatus, the physician may be led to believe that the attack is hysterical. The latter diagnosis however should be considered only when organic disease has been carefully excluded. Examples of the simulation of anginal pain due to organic extracardiac conditions will be found in Chapter VII. This type of pain can also occur in neurotic subjects, in whom it must therefore not be mistaken for a neurotic complaint.

2 *Pain in the heart or heart region caused by autonomic activities.* Although it can not be said with certainty that autonomic activity will produce cardiac pain in subjects who have normal coronary vessels and myocardium there is suggestive evidence that tends to support such a possibility. For example, it is recognized that the autonomic mass reaction noted with fright or anger will liberate undue amounts of adrenalin and that this substance can raise arterial blood pressure to high levels and thus throw a severe strain on the heart. Theoretically at least such a strain, accompanied perhaps by a tachycardia which results from stimulation of the cardio accelerators might be sufficient to upset the autonomic regulation of the normal coronary circulation in a young subject who possesses a sound cardiovascular system. Pounding throbbing sensations in the heart, and even cardiac pain are not unknown in such subjects after the parenteral injection of fairly large amounts of adrenalin or after intense emotional stress. It is however, not yet determined whether milder forms of autonomic activity are able to produce similar sensations in the normal heart.

3 *Pain in the heart or heart region as a conversion symptom.* The character of the pain and its mode of onset and reference into the integument are not related to exertion or emotional strain. The pain is transmitted into dermatomes that are irregular and bizarre and lack the continuity and well-defined contour of cardiac dermatomes. Such dermatomic patterns indicate that the autonomic nerves associated with cardiac pain have not been involved and that the patient is complaining of manifestations which have no relation to autonomic pathways or functions. The preoccupation of the patient may be largely or entirely with his cardiac pain and its radiation. If he possesses accurate knowledge of the anatomy and physiology of referred cardiac pain he may mimic anginal pain, referring it into dermatomes indistinguishable from those associated with anginal reference. This may occur when the patient happens to be a physician or nurse or even an untutored layman who may have acquired in

formation by alert observation of anginal sufferers. General or cardiac manifestations of autonomic activity may be present or absent.

The following three examples of a cardiac conversion symptom illustrate in the first case the absence and in the other two cases the association of autonomic manifestations.

*Cardiac conversion symptom with bizarre dermatomic reference, no autonomic manifestations*

J B, a man of 39, had had over a period of several years recurrent attacks of terrific pain in the heart and in the left precordium. After some of these attacks he suffered from tightness in the chest for days; at other times he developed pain in the head and a feeling of weakness and faintness. For the greater part of his adult life he was depressed, fearful and anxious and found it extremely hard to have pleasant relations with his close relatives or most business colleagues. He had two unsuccessful marriages; a son, now 15, was born of the first marriage. The son and the patient's parents were a constant source of distress even when he so much as thought of meeting them. The depression and withdrawal behavior grew steadily worse and he spent a considerable part of four successive years in several mental institutions undergoing treatment by insulin, metrazol and electric shock. His left arm was fractured under metrazol therapy.

An eczematoid, and recurrent complaint was severe precordial pain radiating often into the left dermatomic area supplied by the T<sub>1</sub> to 6 nerves. The dermatomic reference consisted of irregular and disconnected portions or islands of the skin of the left forearm. Pain was frequently set off by acute emotional distress but occasionally without discernible provocation. Organic heart disease and autonomic features such as tachycardia, vasomotor manifestations, sweating, elevation in blood pressure, etc., were absent. An especially interesting feature was his description of the occasional paradoxical onset of heart pain when he was apparently calm and not under intense emotional strain.

After renewed psychotherapy he was eventually able to establish a closer and better relationship with his parents and his son; he extricated himself from a tormenting friendship with a girlfriend; and though he still retained obsessional and some hallucinatory symptoms, his general adjustment improved. The cardiac manifestations grew less frequent and milder.

*Cardiac conversion symptom associated with autonomic manifestations*

F R, an intelligent woman of 50, apparently not self-indulgent, the mother of two young adult children, had married at the age of 20 a man of foreign extraction 25 years older than herself. Shortly after the marriage she realized that the husband was emotionally difficult and that his intellectual interests and family background were very different from her own. For more than 20 years she had frequent attacks of cardiac pain, often with radiation up the sternum and into the left arm. These attacks were nearly always associated with marked vasomotor flushes, axillary sweating, cold moist hands, rapid pulse, a feeling of giddiness and a sensation of choking. She was obliged to spend several days or weeks in bed and her prostration was marked by these episodes. Her symptoms had been ascribed to metabolic disease, endocrinal disturbance and at one time to acute coronary occlusion with myocardial infarction.

Physical examination revealed no organic heart disease. The flushing she described was witnessed and proved to be of a striking violaceous hue involving large areas of the skin. It lasted about 15 to 20 minutes during an attack and then gave place to a mild copper-like color which persisted for hours. Edema of the skin or throat was never a feature.

It took but little delving to establish that the patient had been trying to do her best to

keep up her marriage with a man whom she respected but who was still alien in many respects and inadequate to her emotional and sexual needs. She had neither the courage nor the conscious wish to protest aloud but protest she did by means of her conversion symptom — through the heart. The attacks of cardiac pain which seemed to simulate anginal pain and were associated with autonomic reactions became less frequent and less marked when she succeeded in finding work and interests to keep her away from home most of the week.

*Cardiac conversion symptom associated with autonomic manifestations*

G S — a young man of 23 who had had an agitated and stormy childhood and adolescence began at the age of 10 to have attacks of severe palpitation and pain in the heart which travelled into the left upper arm. Practically always these attacks were accompanied by sweating and clammy hands, blushing and a sensation of feeling hot. Organic heart disease was excluded.

Persistent questioning revealed that the attacks had come on originally when he was 10 years old and passed through severe anxiety and panic on discovering that his parents were about to break up the home. The parents however remained together for the next 12 years but during this period the threat of their separating never quite left him. They were finally divorced when he was 22 but the cardiac and other symptoms persisted for two years before he was subjected to psychotherapy. With psychotherapeutic guidance the basis of his worry became clear to him and as his confidence in his own worth and personality grew stronger his symptoms became less severe.

The autonomic manifestations which probably included the element of pain were associated in this case with long continued emotional tension induced in childhood.

**4 Malingered and referred heart pain.** The malingerer has a clear, calculated aim and no inner lord or pressure that requires lifting. Pain in the heart serves his realistic goal. If unskilled or ignorant in the ways of cardiac pain he is likely to refer the pain into dermatomes that are irregular and unorthodox, or his information and the ensuing mimicry may be accurate. The malingerer will seldom exhibit signs of autonomic mass reaction. Character defects and anti-social thinking are not instigators of autonomic hyperactivity.

*Cardiac pain and referred cardiac pain as a malingered manifestation*

A 40 year old female E. G. always in good health developed for a period of a year episodes of severe pain in the left chest which radiated up the sternum into the left neck and down the left arm. The attacks were usually accompanied by a choking sensation. Walking or climbing stairs appeared to bring on the attacks. The pain was referred accurately along the ulnar distribution of the left forearm and according to her description involved the entire little finger but only the ulnar side of the fourth finger. She was very tender to pressure over the anterior left 5th to 7th ribs.

Organic heart disease was readily excluded and yet her symptoms persisted despite strong reassurance by competent physicians that she had no heart disease and therefore no ground for worry. After a few interviews it became evident that the patient was greatly disturbed over the infidelity of her husband and suffered intensely from jealousy and anxiety which were more marked during the three to four nights a week she was left alone at home. The history disclosed also that a much older brother had had attacks of acute coronary occlusion associated with pain and distribution of pain almost identical with her own. She recalled too that walking gave her brother pain in the heart and in the left arm.

She was an intelligent, straightforward woman and readily admitted that she had knowingly taken on her symptoms to frighten her husband and keep him from wandering. She

wanted to prove to her some worry in her husband's mind about her health and she knew all along he was not sick and was amazed that the specialists had had to make so many tests to reach the same conclusion. She was advised to try to save her marriage with her head and not with heart symptoms.

This is an example of maintaining free of autonomic manifestations. The pain and its reference accurately followed the tular distribution she had witnessed in connection with her brother's cardiac illness.

### *Manifestations in Subjects with Cardio-vascular Disease*

The subject with organic heart disease suffers as far as emotions go from a double disadvantage. Emotional stimuli or stress may affect the organic disease or the latter already associated with physical and emotional suffering may give rise to emotional reactions. Case R. J. R. (p. 51) is a demonstration of superadded grave heart damage terminating in death induced by grief and examples are frequent of patients with organic heart disease who develop anxiety and even panic at the thought of a recurrent attack of heart illness.

A veritable awareness of the likelihood of the recurrence or aggravation of heart disease should be part of the patient's equipment. Yet although these dangers in many instances may be slight and practically nonexistent emotional disturbances accompanied by cardiac complaints may be marked. This is usually accounted for by the fact that the patient having lived through the dread and anguish of a previous cardiac illness and almost touched death, is conditioned to react in terms of his experience with his sick cardiac apparatus. It may take but a minor event such as a rapid pulse, mild palpitation, or a short pang of pain in the heart region to produce great emotional stress. The panic and the physiological events which accompany it are quickly provoked because they are so close to the heart. Furthermore many subjects with organic heart disease are psychoneurotic and in them the readiness to react emotionally and the exaggerated nature of the reaction point to an underlying emotional maladjustment.

As a general rule emotional stimuli in patients with organic heart disease produce some degree of autonomic hyperactivity even when the cardiac apparatus undergoes no further physiologic change or increased morphologic damage (general and sustained, salivation, rise in blood pressure, tachycardia, increased respiration, gastrointestinal symptoms, disturbances in sleep and even fever are not rare). These features of an autonomic mass reaction are not necessarily evidence of fresh organic disease. Emotional stimuli may give rise to an autonomic mass reaction independent of an existing organic heart disease or they may affect the already damaged cardiac apparatus causing superadded attacks of angina pectoris or acute myocardial infarction the latter in turn producing autonomic hyperactivity. In either event the general autonomic and cardiac manifestations are apt to be more marked than in individuals free of organic disease.

Organic heart disease associated with coronary sclerosis, hypertension, myocardial infarction is often responsible for anginal pain with reference into well defined cardiac dermatomes, and this is true whether the pain is brought on by exertion or other precipitating elements including emotional strain. The organic cardiac state, on the other hand, may appear to be little affected by emotional factors and go on to serious symptoms and death. This is illustrated by the case of a comparatively young man who suddenly succumbed to organic heart disease following a period of ten weeks of striking improvement of his emotional strain and conflicts.

*Organic heart disease and emotional conflict*

S. L., a man of 45 in good health and a fine athlete, complained that for several months he had had repeated attacks of pain in the left chest transmitted into the left arm. The pain first appeared when he was 36 years old, recurred three years later and again about ten weeks before his terminal illness. He was a heavy cigarette smoker, drank infrequent but large amounts of alcohol and was very vigorous in all his physical activities. Despite the absence of structural heart disease the pain was looked upon as anginal because the patient was clearly not a malingerer; he had an unmistakable effort syndrome and his pain was referred into well defined cardiac dermatomes.

As far back as he could remember he was under the influence of a strong and gifted older brother and he recalled vividly that at the age of six he was humiliated at the protection this brother manifested by separating him in a fight from an opponent who was getting the worst of it. The patient referred to this incident many times. All through his early youth he experienced anguish and self reproach at being a meek male trying to follow in his brother's footsteps. He had married against his will and his wife's wealth made everything easy for him but robbed him of his manhood even though he was an adequate male sexually. He was forever vacillating between complying with his brother's and his wife's wishes and striking out for himself.

He improved rather rapidly under psychotherapy, commenced looking after his business affairs methodically and established a quieter and warmer companionship with his wife and two children. He began to enjoy what he called the best and happiest days of his life and was apparently free of anxiety and depression. About ten weeks after the start of the improvement he was suddenly stricken with an acute attack of coronary occlusion and myocardial infarction and died within a few days. The alleviation of his long standing emotional conflict and strain failed to prevent the terminal acute coronary attack.

An individual with organic heart disease is also subject to the occurrence of nonanginal pain. This form of pain will develop by mechanisms practically identical with those described in the nonorganic group. Simulations of cardiac pain produced by noncardiac lesions are not rare and add difficulty and confusion to the problems of diagnosis and therapy. Mimicry and malingered anginal pain also occur in this group of patients. The nonanginal forms of pain are possibly conjured up more readily because the patient retains the memory of having lived through the reactions and manifestations that accompany organic heart disease. The following case illustrates the concurrence of anginal pain due to organic heart disease and of pain which simulated the anginal type. The latter was associated with a psychological mechanism manifested in early childhood.

*Organic heart disease with anginal and simulated cardiac pain*

A 64 year old male (A.R.) sustained at the age of 60 an acute coronary occlusion accompanied by massive heart muscle infarction. He had marked arterial hypertension for 15 years previously. After a severe illness of several weeks he became a chronic invalid with congestive heart failure passing through three critical attacks of acute left ventricular failure brought on by emotional provocation. The physical examination at the age of 64 revealed a heart greatly enlarged notably the left ventricle. The electrocardiogram showed signs of chronic myocardial damage and evidence of an old anterior wall infarction. Emotional excitement often produced severe anginal pain with characteristic dermatome radiation. At other times, especially when talked by his adult son, he complained of pain in his heart region that seemed to be hysterical.

For at least the latter 30 years of his adult life he was a high strung aggressive person determined to succeed and in his own way. As a child and young adolescent he would have attacks of pain in his heart and have to lie down. Many of these attacks were precipitated by altercations with his parents later with his wife or children and he recalled that even as a young child he was likely to experience pain in the heart region when he failed to have his own way.

## Summary

The autonomic mass action and the radiation of pain into dermatomes are important elements in the study of psychosomatic disorders.

The psychosomatic disorders related to the heart may be divided into two groups: one concerns subjects who have a normal cardiovascular system; the other subjects with organic heart disease. In the former group emotional disturbances will produce systemic autonomic manifestations that are usually mild and cardiac features which are for the most part subjective and prominent. The cardiac pain will seldom conform to the pattern of anginal pain and its dermatome reference. The pain may serve as a conversion symptom or even take on fantasy or hallucinatory features or it may be cleverly simulated or malingered making the differentiation from anginal pain sometimes extremely difficult.

The group with organic heart disease exhibits the same tendency to systemic autonomic as well as cardiac manifestations. These may all conform to the clinical responses previously experienced as the result of the organic disease, or cardiac pain may be superimposed as a simulated, malingered or conversion manifestation which remains outside the realm and functions of the autonomic nervous system. Emotional factors can however precipitate new damage to the cardiovascular apparatus.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- The following references were consulted in the preparation of this chapter:
- KLEINMAN T. Functional disturbances of psychogenic origin. *J. A. M. A.* 1933 100 469
  - Fundamental concepts of psychosomatic research. *Psychogenesis conversion periodicity*. *Psychosomatic Med.* 1943 5 200
  - BACON C. LEVINE H. LEVINE M. AND WILSON G. The influence of psychogenic factors upon gas intestinal disturbances: a symposium. A report on research carried on at the Chicago Institute for Psychoanalysis. *Psychoanal. Quart.* 1934 3 501
  - LEO FRENCH T. M. *Studies in Psychosomatic Medicine*. New York: The Ronald Press, 1945

- AND MENNINGER W C The relation of persecutory delusions to the functioning of the gastrointestinal tract *J Nerv & Mental Dis* 1936 84 541
- BARD P Central nervous mechanisms for emotional patterns in animals *Research Pbl A Nerv & Ment Dis* 1939 19 100
- , AND MOUNTCASTLE, V B Some forebrain mechanisms involved in expression of rage with special reference to suppression of angry behavior The frontal lobes *Research Pbl A Nerv & Ment Dis* 1947 27 362
- CANNON W B Bodily Changes in Pain Hunger Fear and Rage New York D Appleton Century Co 1934
- DEUTSCH F Biologie und Physiologie der Krankheitsgenese *Int Z Psychoanal* 1933 8 290
- DRAPER G AND TOURAINE, G A The man environment unit and peptic ulcer *Arch Int Med* 1932 49 616
- DUNBAR H F Emotions and bodily changes 2nd ed New York Columbia Univ Press 1938
- WOLFE T AND RIOCH N The psychic component of the disease process in cardiac diabetic and fracture patients *Am J Psychiat* 1939 93 649
- FENICHEL O The psychoanalytic theory of neurosis New York Wm Norton 1945
- FERENCZI, S The phenomena of hysterical maternalization In *Further Contributions to the Theory and Technique of Psychoanalysis* London The Hogarth Press 1926
- FREUD S Collected Papers Vols I-IV London The Hogarth Press 1948
- GUNTHER L AND MENNINGER K A Intermittent extrasystole directly associated with emotional conflict a case report *Bull Menninger Clinic* 1939 3 164
- KLUVER H AND BLY, P C Preliminary analysis of functions of the temporal lobes in monkeys *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* Chicago 1939 42 949
- MENNINGER K A AND MENNINGER W C Psychoanalytic observations in cardiac disorders *Am Heart J* 1936 11 10
- MILLER H K Central Autonomic Regulations in Health and Disease New York Grune & Stratton 1942
- AND SPIGEL, F A Sleep induced by subthalamie lesions with the hypothalamus intact *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1940 43 300
- MILLER M L AND McLEAN H A The status of the emotions in palpitation and extra systoles with a note on the effort syndrome *Psychoanal Quart* 1941 10 545
- RANSOM H W The hypothalamus its significance for visceral innervation and emotional expression *Tr Coll Phys Phila* 1934 2 222 (4th series)
- SPIGEL E A MILLER H K AND OPPENHEIMER M J Different forebrain systems involved in the production of rage reactions after decortication *Am J Physiol* 1940 129 410 Also in *J Neurophysiol* 1940 3 538
- WEISS E AND ENGLISH O ■ *Psychosomatic Medicine* Philadelphia W B Saunders Co, 1943
- WILSON G W Acute laryngitis a conversion symptom *Psychoanal Rev* 1934 21 408
- WOLFE T P Emotions and organic heart disease *Am J Psychiat* 1936 93 681
- WOODWORTH P S AND SHERRINGTON C S A pseudoaffective reflex and its spinal path *J Physiol* 1904 31 234

# Treatment of Angina Pectoris and Myocardial Infarction

---

## CHAPTER XVI

### General Management and Medical Treatment

#### INTRODUCTION

This chapter is divided into two parts. The first is concerned with the acute episodes of coronary insufficiency, acute myocardial infarction with or without acute coronary occlusion and the complications and sequelae at the time of the acute episode or shortly thereafter. The second part deals with the interval state between recurrent episodes and the eventual chronic state of the patient. Understanding the symptoms and signs of each condition in relation to the activities of the autonomic nervous apparatus will we believe bring the medical and surgical therapy into better focus and give the physician a deeper insight into the genesis and mechanisms of the clinical features and a sharper skill with which to treat them.

#### Part I Acute Episodes

##### A TREATMENT OF ACUTE CORONARY INSUFFICIENCY (ANGINA PECTORIS)

For most cases of acute coronary insufficiency even if general systemic manifestations are marked it will suffice to put the patient to bed for approximately a week, remove him from physical and other influences which favor or precipitate an attack, administer some form of sedation and not less important rebuild his confidence and hope. He must be guarded against what is for him an excessive cardiac demand in the face of his impaired or tired coronary circulation and he must be protected from local or systemic causes which damage the heart. This may mean guarding against undue exertion or exposure to cold and wind, avoiding overweight especially in diabetics and hypertensive individuals, interdicting large meals or eating before retiring, re-educating the individual to avoid wasteful loss of energy or upsetting his emotional balance as in fancied or even well founded anxieties. Smoking often should be banned with finality. The danger of a coronary reflex from an extracardiac condition such as a diseased gall bladder, duodenal ulcer or esophageal herniation should be removed by treating these conditions. Anemia or hyperthyroidism or par-



oxysmal tachycardia, any of which may induce coronary insufficiency, must be corrected. The general autonomic disturbance is usually not severe and central effects such as fever, leukocytosis, etc., are absent or slight.

The patient may require first and almost foremost immediate relief of his pain. This is best accomplished by giving nitroglycerin\* 0.0003 to 0.0006 (gr  $\frac{1}{1000}$  to  $\frac{1}{1600}$ ) sublingually or orally, the preparation can be repeated frequently. The other nitrite products are not as good. Alcohol is often an excellent coronary dilator, 30 to 60 cc (1 to 2 ounces) is enough, given "straight" and at frequent intervals. Papaverine, proposed by Pal<sup>30</sup> many years ago and recently raised to popularity in this country, is a good coronary dilator. Doses of 0.06 to 0.24 (gr 1 to 4) three to four times a day are given by mouth or intravenously. Nicotinic acid, 50 to 100 mg. daily, has been advocated as an effective means of increasing collateral circulation. The best recourse in many cases is morphine given without delay and in adequate amounts, 0.015 to 0.030 (gr  $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$ ). This can be followed by a good morphine derivative or substitute (p. 274). For poor or restless sleep, barbiturates are often helpful: carbital 0.3 to 0.6 (gr 5 to 10), nembutal 0.1 to 0.2 (gr  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 3), seconal 0.1 to 0.2 (gr  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 3), are good preparations. Except for the use of nitroglycerin as in acute coronary insufficiency, these directions are also applicable to acute myocardial infarction with or without acute coronary occlusion.

## B. TREATMENT OF ACUTE MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION WITH OR WITHOUT ACUTE CORONARY OCCLUSION

### *General Considerations*

Although the autonomic mass action associated with acute myocardial infarction is more vigorous than in the uncomplicated episode of acute coronary insufficiency, many of the central autonomic manifestations frequently require no direct or special attention, provided the cardiovascular apparatus holds its own and is spared repeated or overwhelming injury. Thus fever, leukocytosis, abnormal sedimentation rate, sleep disturbances and mild or moderate changes in water balance subside or right themselves after the storm of an attack lets up. When, however, the cardiovascular features are marked or critical, it becomes imperative to determine whether the myocardium has suffered as a result of acute coronary occlusion or whether the injury has been produced by severe hemorrhage, postoperative shock, etc. and is unattended by acute coronary occlusion. In the latter instance measures such as transfusion of blood, vigorous antishock therapy, etc. are obligatory and can be life saving whereas such measures may be contraindicated in the former case.

In any event, it is not wise to move the patient in the throes of an attack.

\* Recent studies in the dog have raised the theoretical question: may not nitroglycerin actually increase the work of the heart when this organ is already damaged? (Wiegna<sup>31</sup>) and this may apply to other vasodilators such as papaverine.

The victim himself instinctively becomes immobile and this clue the intelligent physician recognizes and follows. The physician will therefore carry out two imperative rules immediately: first for the time being do not move or disturb the patient and second give morphine freely and enough to put him to sleep. The observance of these rules may mean the difference between life and death for the most painstaking and careful handling of the patient to move or transport him for even a very short distance may be fatal in the case of acute coronary occlusion leading to fresh occlusion—extension of the occlusion or the spreading of heart muscle damage. Withholding the morphine is no less dangerous. Violent pain, shock and mental anguish are pronounced and all effort must be made to help the victim survive. The best and first recourse is to induce sleep at once and keep the patient undisturbed while asleep. The morphine is administered hypodermically 0.015 (gr  $\frac{1}{4}$ ) sometimes with atropine sulphate 0.0004 (gr  $\frac{1}{150}$ ). It is very important not to wait too long for a next dose with or without atropine: ten to fifteen minutes are enough or the double quantity may be required at the onset. There are cases that require subsequent doses totaling 0.06 (gr 1) or more within an hour or less time. After having given the first 0.03 (gr  $\frac{1}{2}$ ) subsequent dosage may be effective in units of 0.015 (gr  $\frac{1}{4}$ ) or 0.0015 (gr  $\frac{1}{150}$ ). Nitroglycerin is seldom if ever of value. The patient is kept warm covered with light weight woolen blankets especially in the cold season of the year; the ventilation of the room suitably adjusted and visitors and all family members excluded. It is not necessary to urge food or water upon the patient until he has had time to benefit from the morphine. The greatest part of wisdom at this stage is to do as little as possible and sit tight. Even the relief of a full bladder, a full rectum, meteorism are deferred if at all possible until the pain and shock subside.

### Mental State

Although not often the case the mental and emotional aspects of an attack not pain may dominate the scene; all too often they play a neglected but important part in the outcome of the patient. A premonitory stage or aura may precede shock or severe pain. Mental anguish may be very intense during the attack and possesses characteristics that almost seem to be pathognomonic. Of this the attending physician must be aware the moment he meets his patient. Morphine is given with no loss of time and the sufferer is secluded and kept quiet. Before the drug dulls the mind the patient will be terrorized and certain that death is near to overtake him in a very few minutes. He will be alert to every play of expression on the features of those around him and he will catch almost imperceptible gestures or inflections of the voice that will mean to him encouragement and hope or confirmation of his worst fears. The quiet and firmness with which the physician conducts himself the absence of visible signs of apprehension in his manner the buoyancy and resoluteness with which

he takes hold of the case, are strong props for the patient. This calming attitude helps change the patient from a panic stricken and helpless object to a willing and cooperative subject and in this state the effectiveness of morphine is enhanced.

Following the sleep and rest of the first hours the physician will again have an opportunity to instill hope and confidence. He is now in a position to emphasize, in as few words as possible, that the patient has passed the violence of the storm and, to continue the figure of speech, the patient like a ship will need care and skillful guidance before reaching calm waters. After this, generally speaking the less the physician says by way of bolstering up the courage of the patient, the better. There are too many unpredictable dangers ahead. It is inadvisable therefore to appear too sanguine. To say nothing and thus avoid opening up doubts and apprehensions in the mind of the patient is good practice.

### *Pain*

The physician may be conscious of the danger of shock and the menace of heart failure but the intense pain of acute myocardial infarction, intensified perhaps by a concurrent acute coronary occlusion, is his immediate concern. Pain ceases appreciably after its early fury but it can grow more severe or it can linger sharp and strong for a long time and then stop abruptly or wane before stopping. The pain may recur in waves or spasms, and as intense or devastating as the initial attack. Fresh pain, and as bad as the original agony, may be due to a new acute coronary occlusion with infarction of a fresh myocardial area or to extension of the original coronary thrombus, or to pericardial involvement.

The best means for subduing the pain, in addition to complete rest, are morphine and oxygen. The rest must be complete and absolute. The morphine should be used liberally, or a morphine substitute, codeine sulphate 0.03 to 0.06 (gr  $\frac{1}{2}$  to 1), demerol 50 to 100 mg, dilaudid 0.002 to 0.004 (gr  $\frac{3}{32}$  to  $\frac{1}{8}$ ), pantopon 0.01 to 0.02 (gr  $\frac{1}{8}$  to  $\frac{1}{4}$ ), papaverine hydrochloride 0.06 to 0.24 (gr 1 to 4). Sometimes it is well to give barbiturates alone or supplemented by drugs of the morphine group. The barbiturates have advantages over the morphine group: they produce few if any of the morphine 'after effects', sleep is not as heavy, the respirations escape the danger of depression, the bowel and bladder functions are not interfered with and of course habituation is less of a problem. These drugs are however not free of disadvantages. They are sometimes capricious in their action leaving after sleep symptoms, depression or excitement, and are known to cause alarming anaphylactic shock symptoms, and occasionally when sorely needed fail to bring sleep. The following preparations are in general use: adalin 0.6 to 1.2 (gr 10 to 20), alional 0.25 to 0.5

(gr 4 to 8) amytal 0.1 to 0.3 (gr  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to  $4\frac{1}{2}$ ), amytal sodium 0.1 to 0.3 (gr  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to  $4\frac{1}{2}$ ) carbital 0.3 to 0.6 (gr 5 to 10) dial 0.1 to 0.3 (gr  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to  $4\frac{1}{2}$ ) nembutal 0.1 to 0.2 (gr 1<sup>1</sup> to 3), phanodorn 0.1 to 0.2 (gr  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 3), seconal 0.1 to 0.2 (gr  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 3). A very useful product for subcutaneous administration is sodium luminal put up in sterile ampules the dose is 0.12 to 0.24 (gr 2 to 4) every four to eight hours. Some patients need mild but uninterrupted sedation for several weeks after the acute paroxysm. This is best accomplished with bromides phenobarbital or codeine.

The prompt subduing of pain helps minimize shock and may even aid in preventing reflex coronary vasoconstriction. This constriction probably vagal in nature is sometimes relieved by atropine 0.0005 to 0.001 (gr  $\frac{1}{16}$  to  $\frac{1}{8}$ ) given every four hours for several doses. The administration of papaverine as early as possible is recommended to overcome vasoconstriction, and since according to McEachern et al.<sup>22</sup> and Lindner and Katz<sup>23</sup> the drug appears to have an antifibrillation effect in dogs it may have similar value in man. In the dog experimental coronary ligation with acute myocardial infarction seems to favor reflex coronary constriction. This chain of events is conducive to the onset of ventricular fibrillation (LeRoy and Snider<sup>24</sup>). A similar danger probably exists in man. The occurrence of reflex vagal constriction allegedly exerted on the uninvolved portion of the coronary circulation when a coronary vessel is acutely occluded is questioned in some quarters.

No time should be lost in giving oxygen therapy for the relief of pain. While the patient is still under the influence of morphine and as soon as he has been transported to a bed an oxygen tent should be placed over him. The usual equipment for tent treatment consists of motor-driven apparatus. The concentration of oxygen is maintained at 40 to 60 per cent and to insure this concentration frequent testing of the atmospheric content of the tent is necessary. The temperature of the tent is kept at about 65° F. The patient remains in the tent as many days as necessary until the peril of heart failure is over. It is better not to remove him prematurely but rather to err on the safe side by allowing him to remain there an extra day or so. The tent must be lifted off only in the presence of a physician because of grave danger that the patient may unexpectedly collapse. It should be kept in readiness for an additional day or two in case of emergency.

Other methods of administering oxygen are sometimes better tolerated but are in general less effective. The nasal catheter method is fairly good and provides almost 40 per cent of oxygen if the catheters are properly adjusted in the nostrils. As a rule the patient develops irritation and dryness in the throat and a troublesome dry cough and even the frequent sprayings with mild anesthetics will not permit its use beyond a comparatively short time. Several face masks are in popular use and in many cases quite satisfactory. The method of administering oxygen under high pressure developed by the United States Army

possesses advantages at least from a physiological point of view, but clinical information on its use in myocardial infarction is not general

All nursing and this must be of the most skillful order, is performed with the patient in the tent. He should be propped up at an angle of 30 or 40 degrees, this also keeps the tongue from falling back. He is spared every movement, however slight, in the beginning fluids are given with a medicine dropper or teaspoon

### *Shock*

Oxygen therapy and the relief of pain are powerful agents in combating shock. In addition, the patient should be kept warm although on this point there has been recent discussion as to whether keeping the patient cool rather than warm is not a better way of treating shock. Cardiac stimulants may be dangerous and are perhaps better withheld unless the heart action is failing so rapidly that little additional risk is involved in active stimulation. In the presence of rapidly developing or developed acute heart failure, caffeine sodium benzoate is injected 0.12 to 0.5 (gr 2 to 7½) subcutaneously, intramuscularly or even intravenously. The following may also be used: adrenalin 1:1000 solution 0.3 to 1.0 (M 5 to 10) or for slower and more continuous absorption adrenalin in oil 0.75 to 1.5 cc (15 to 3 mg) subcutaneously every four hours in the same dosage, or ephedrine 0.0225 to 0.030 (gr ⅓ to ⅓) by mouth. These products are to be given with great caution in the cardiac states under consideration. The intravenous use of ouabain or strophanthin digitalis or aminophyllin may be dramatically life saving. For the sake of convenience these three drugs are discussed rather fully at this juncture.

*Digitalis* The administration of digitalis bodies may be very effective when the circulation is failing. Acute heart failure under almost all circumstances, is a prime indication for digitalis: the cardiac rhythm is not necessarily a determinant. If time permits it is best to give the drug by mouth and not too rapidly, in divided doses within 12 to 24 hours or when haste is essential as a full initial dose.

A number of dry leaf products prepared by reliable pharmaceutical firms are good for oral use. It is not necessary to adhere to the method of cat unit dosage. Preparations are administered at the rate of about 0.01 (gr ⅓) of dry drug per pound of body weight. A man weighing 150 pounds will therefore receive about 22½ grains. Slowing of the ventricular rate to within the normal range is a sign that digitalization has been accomplished. The maintenance dose is gr 1 to 2 of dry substance. Digitoline (Nativelle) the original digitoxin a pure crystalline product well known on the continent for many decades has been brought into popular use in this country through the studies of Cold and his associates.<sup>15</sup> Rapid digitalization is achieved by giving 1.2 mg as one dose or in two or three divided doses at about three hour intervals. The maintenance

dose is between 0.1 and 0.2 m<sub>g</sub> daily. The drug is completely absorbed, has a rapid action and is practically free of untoward gastric effects. Digitalis intoxication with it may be insidious and rather severe.

The intravenous use of digitalis bodies is an excellent procedure in many cases. Good preparations are available. With digitolin (Ciba) full digitalization is induced by 6 cc. per 100 pounds of body weight given perhaps in two or three doses at two to four hour intervals. In a cardiac emergency, 4 cc. may be introduced. Digitalization is reached with about 6 to 8 cc. of cedilanid lanatoside C (Sandoz) as a single dose or divided over 12 to 24 hours.

The intravenous use of calcium-containing preparations is best omitted while the patient is taking digitalis. The possible synergistic action of the drugs is not fully proved but cases of sudden death have been reported from intravenous injection of calcium salts in digitalized patients. The combined use of ephedrine and digitalis is supposed to be more toxic than when either substance is used singly. Ephedrine is therefore to be used very cautiously in digitalized subjects. A caution about the use of quinidine with digitalis appears to be unduly stressed.

Toxic effects of digitalis should be avoided: disturbances in cardiac rhythm, loss of appetite, nausea and vomiting, headache, fatigue and drowsiness, disturbances in vision and skin rashes, etc. A disadvantage recently described in the use of digitalis or allied preparations is their propensity to shorten the coagulation time and thus produce thrombus formation.

**Ouabain.** The administration of ouabain or strophanthin is extremely valuable and sometimes the first choice. The beneficial effect is obtained in minutes rather than in hours. Oral administration is of little value; intravenous injection highly effective. The initial dose should be small, at the very most 0.5 mg. more usually 0.25 mg. or half this amount. A dose of 0.1 mg. may be repeated every hour but not more than 1 mg. of the glycoside is to be given in 24 hours. It is sometimes preferable to distribute the single milligram in evenly divided doses spaced at 4 to 6 hour interval. At the end of the emergency (it may last several days) digitalis is resorted to and maintained. Although it is advisable to withhold these drugs until the patient is rid of digitalis bodies, allowing two weeks at least for this purpose, ouabain and strophanthin have been given with good results by experienced observers to patients who still had digitalis. Monographs on ouabain, strophanthin have been published by Fraenkel<sup>11</sup> Kisch.<sup>12</sup>

**Aminophyllin.** The intravenous use of aminophyllin when heart failure is an element in the shock has a sound physiologic basis (Howarth et al.<sup>13</sup>). It is given very slowly and with full realization that sudden extrus has been ascribed to its intravenous use. A stop watch is employed to insure slow injection. The dose is 10 cc. containing 0.24 Gm. repeated every 6 to 8 hours and at shorter intervals if necessary during a critical state. The intravenous use of the drug

may be replaced by rectal administration (p 285) Oral products have not been satisfactory Recently, glytheonite (p 285) has been recommended for this purpose

A useful procedure in some cases is the application of a tourniquet around each limb close to the torso The tourniquets are removed slowly and one at a time as soon as the feeble pulse grows stronger, within five to ten minutes in any event, and reapplied if necessary Intravenous injection of saline or glucose solutions and other products is best avoided if the heart is struggling against imminent failure

### *Cardiovascular Manifestations*

These are always of primary significance During the acute attack the manifestations may be mild or severe, and this is usually conditioned by the force of the general autonomic upheaval and the character of the injury sustained by the cardiovascular system

*Cardiac Arrhythmias* Cardiac irregularities are not unusual They can come at once or early in the acute attack or appear in the early days thereafter or even later Their management and treatment require skill and experience Cardiac irregularities are produced by central autonomic effects or by changes in the peripheral cardiac innervations or by morphologic change in cardiac pacemaker areas or the intracardiac conduction system

*Paroxysmal Auricular Tachycardia* Although in many circumstances of no grave import and often ending abruptly and spontaneously, this complication may be the precursor of auricular fibrillation, especially in the presence of acute infarction of heart muscle It is likely to yield spontaneously or upon carotid sinus pressure or pressure over the eyeball, or the induction of nausea and retching Mecholin used guardedly is useful about 25 and up to 40 mg given subcutaneously depending on the age of the patient it is never to be used intravenously oral use (50 to 100 mg) is not very effective

*Paroxysmal Auricular Fibrillation* This a serious complication, may disappear spontaneously within a few hours or days If it persists, it requires attention without delay Digitalis and quinidine are the indicated remedies Some cardiologists favor one drug as against the other, or prefer the prior use of one to the other We feel there is no fast rule and no practical contra-indication to utilize one drug before the other Digitalization must be carried out with reasonable dispatch administering enough to come close to slowing the ventricles, digitalization is maintained by a suitable daily amount

Quinidine may be required after digitalization proves of no avail or quinidine may be the drug of first choice Quinidine sulphate 0.06 to 0.12 (gr 1 to 2) is given for two or three doses about 4 hours apart and if no untoward effect ensues, the drug is pushed more rapidly and in larger quantities 0.12 to 0.16 (gr 2 to 3) every three or two hours About 1.8 to 2.4 (gr 30 to 40) is given the

first day double this amount the following day 3.6 to 4.8 (gr 60 to 80) or more the next day and then perhaps tapered off. We have had to give as much as 0.6 (gr 10) every hour for eighteen or twenty consecutive doses to restore sinus rhythm. There are toxic dangers to bear in mind: amblyopia, severe skin rashes (purpura), depressive mental states, etc., and its employment is contra-indicated in renal disease, thrombus formation in the heart and if strong sensitivity to the drug exists. The prophylactic value of quinidine is not established.

Certier and Yohalem<sup>14</sup> have used atabrine as a substitute for quinidine to arrest auricular fibrillation and supraventricular tachycardia. Normal rhythm was promptly restored by a single dose of 0.6 Gm. in 10 cc. of 1 per cent novocaine administered intramuscularly and almost immediately by 0.1 Gm. given intravenously. The drug is not in general use and its usefulness and contra-indication not yet established. Its indiscriminate use is dangerous.

*Paroxysmal Auricular Flutter.* The tendency to spontaneous recovery and the indications for treatment are the same as for fibrillation. Digitalization should not be prolonged for fear of inducing a permanent state of auricular fibrillation. But this is a minor problem: auricular fibrillation is a less harmful condition for the heart than uncontrolled and rapid flutter. The flutter is sometimes stopped abruptly by exerting unilateral firm manual pressure over the vagus trunk in the neck or over the carotid sinus or upon an eyeball. The induction of nausea and retching occasionally has a similar effect.

*Paroxysmal Ventricular Extrasystoles.* These are seen after acute myocardial infarction. They should not be taken lightly because they can be the forerunner of ventricular fibrillation. Quinidine given early is effective. It is administered as already described (p. 218). A preventive dose of 0.06 to 0.2 (gr 1 to 3) is supposed to be beneficial.

*Paroxysmal Ventricular Tachycardia.* This infrequent complication carries with it the danger of heart failure. The prompt administration of quinidine is sometimes life-saving in warding off ventricular fibrillation and almost certain death. Large doses may be necessary, even as much as 0.6 to 1.2 (gr 10 to 20) every one to two hours; smaller amounts are often effective. The danger of excessive dosage is a secondary consideration in this emergency.

*Heart Block.* This is a grave complication when the heart is acutely damaged. In some cases, however, the heart block is transient, disappearing within a few hours or days, indicating that no permanent injury was sustained to the A-V tissues; no special therapy is necessary. The heart block seen in chronic myocardial disease after coronary occlusion and almost always associated with Stokes-Adams episodes (Gallavardin<sup>15</sup> and Schwartz<sup>16</sup>) is of a different significance. Schwartz<sup>16</sup> and Schwartz and Jezer<sup>17</sup> originally described two mechanisms: standstill of the ventricles and ventricular fibrillation. They claimed in standstill there was hope of righting the rhythm of the heart by the prompt use of epinephrine hydrochloride (1 to 1000 aqueous solution) 0.3 to 1 cc. (M. to 15)



may be replaced by rectal administration (p 283) Oral products have not been satisfactory Recently, gly theonate (p 285) has been recommended for this purpose

A useful procedure in some cases is the application of a tourniquet around each limb close to the torso The tourniquets are removed slowly and one at a time as soon as the feeble pulse grows stronger, within five to ten minutes in any event, and reapplied if necessary Intravenous injection of saline or glucose solutions and other products is best avoided if the heart is struggling against imminent failure

### *Cardiovascular Manifestations*

These are always of primary significance During the acute attack the manifestations may be mild or severe and this is usually conditioned by the force of the general autonomic upheaval and the character of the injury sustained by the cardiovascular system

*Cardiac Arrhythmias* Cardiac irregularities are not unusual They can come at once or early in the acute attack or appear in the early days thereafter or even later Their management and treatment require skill and experience Cardiac irregularities are produced by central autonomic effects or by changes in the peripheral cardiac innervations or by morphologic change in cardiac pace maker areas or the intracardiac conduction system

*Paroxysmal Auricular Tachycardia* Although in many circumstances of no grave import and often ending abruptly and spontaneously this complication may be the precursor of auricular fibrillation especially in the presence of acute infarction of heart muscle It is likely to yield spontaneously or upon carotid sinus pressure or pressure over the eyeball or the induction of nausea and retching Mecholin used guardedly is useful about 25 and up to 40 mg given subcutaneously depending on the age of the patient it is never to be used intravenously oral use (50 to 100 mg) is not very effective

*Paroxysmal Auricular Fibrillation* This a serious complication may disappear spontaneously within a few hours or days If it persists, it requires attention without delay Digitalis and quinidine are the indicated remedies Some cardiologists favor one drug as against the other or prefer the prior use of one to the other We feel there is no fast rule and no practical contra indication to utilize one drug before the other Digitalization must be carried out with reasonable dispatch administering enough to come close to slowing the ventricles digitalization is maintained by a suitable daily amount

Quinidine may be required after digitalization proves of no avail or quinidine may be the drug of first choice Quinidine sulphate 0.06 to 0.12 (gr 1 to 2) is given for two or three doses about 4 hours apart and if no untoward effect ensues, the drug is pushed more rapidly and in larger quantities 0.12 to 0.15 (gr 2 to 3) every three or two hours About 1.5 to 2.4 (gr 30 to 40) is given the

vasodilators other than nitroglycerin has wide acceptance and papaverine and aminophylline are widely employed.

**Spastic Phenomena.** Some individuals develop spasm of blood vessels other than the coronary vessels before the onset of a frank anginal seizure or spastic changes intermittent claudications may follow an anginal attack and the latter indeed is sometimes considered a coronary localization of a general spastic disorder. The occurrence of intermittent claudication in the limbs, vascular crisis in the brain, abdomen, pelvis should put one on guard that the coronary vessels may be similarly seized. Claudications in any part of the body are good reason for continuing general treatment of the patient when it would otherwise have been stopped. For these spastic reactions all active and passive exertion should be reduced and exposure to severe meteorological change avoided. Atropine 0.0004 to 0.0006 (gr  $\frac{1}{8}$  to  $\frac{1}{16}$ ) may be prescribed or other antispasmodic belladonna 0.1 to 0.2 (gr  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 3) 3 to 4 times daily, scopolamine 0.1 to 0.2 (gr  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 3) or trisentine 0.15 to 0.15 (gr  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 2) every 4 to 6 hours. Papaverine 0.06 to 0.24 (gr 1 to 4) given several times a day is a good antispasmodic and whiskey alone or combined with these drugs is helpful.

Constrictions may also attack noncardiovascular structures, i.e. the bronchial, laryngeal or pharyngeal musculature or the muscles of the epigastric region. Sensations of severe constriction can be experienced in any of these regions and for them except perhaps in the case of bronchial spasm nitroglycerin 0.0003 to 0.0006 (gr  $\frac{1}{16}$  to  $\frac{1}{8}$ ) is as strikingly helpful as in many instances of blood vessel spasm. The drug is given as a tablet or in fluid form and need not necessarily be administered under the tongue. The same dose may be repeated within a few minutes and even repeated again. The existence of hypertension is not a contraindication. The tablet form of the drug must be fresh; it will keep if securely stopped to exclude air. Amyl nitrite 0.2 cc is not as good a remedy nor are the other dilators of the nitrite group as effective except perhaps erythrol tetranitrite 0.03 to 0.06 (gr  $\frac{1}{4}$  to 1). Papaverine seems to be quite effective and is given rather freely 0.06 to 0.24 (gr 1 to 4) about every 4 hours. This may be combined with whiskey in 30 to 60 cc (31 to 2) doses several times a day. For spasm of the bronchial musculature it may be necessary to give with caution small doses of aqueous adrenalin (1:1000) 0.3 to 0.6 cc notwithstanding the coronary nature of the underlying illness.

### Cardiovascular Complications

The major complications which appear during an acute cardiac attack shortly thereafter or during the chronic state are (1) fresh extension of acute myocardial damage (2) supervention of a fresh infarction with or without acute coronary thrombosis (3) reflex vagal constriction of the coronary circulation (4) acute pericarditis (5) acute embolization to the lungs (6) acute pulmonary edema especially in hypertensive patients in whom the left ventricle fails and (7) general anasarca.

intramuscularly or even intravenously, repeating the dose every few hours and continuing it after restoration to normal sinus rhythm as a preventive. The other mechanism associated with heart block is ventricular fibrillation and with this complication most cases terminate fatally within a few seconds or minutes. However, there are patients who live through numerous episodes of ventricular fibrillation within the day and the night (Schwartz), and for them epinephrine is contraindicated. Schwartz has now come to believe that the classification of Stokes-Adams disease based on the two mechanisms he described may have to be modified.

In ventricular standstill, ephedrine sulfate and barium chloride have been recommended. The dose of ephedrine sulfate is 0.0225 to 0.030 (gr  $\frac{3}{8}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$ ), it is not as effective as epinephrine. Barium chloride is administered three or four times a day in amounts of 0.015 to 0.03 (gr  $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$ ), the drug has no place as a prophylactic measure. There is theoretical ground for withholding quinidine in Stokes-Adams attacks because experimentally it tends to favor the onset of ventricular fibrillation.

*Blood Pressure Changes.* The low blood pressure which accompanies acute myocardial infarction is treated by the measures already described for the support of the circulation (p. 276). A steady and maintained rise in blood pressure usually parallels the improvement in general condition. Persistent low blood pressure, especially of the diastolic level, 50 mm Hg or less (assuming that aortic insufficiency is not a factor) is very serious. In some special circumstances and with due recognition of the hazard to the damaged heart small doses of ephedrine by mouth every three or four hours or subcutaneously in an aqueous or oil vehicle are worth using, epinephrine in oil may also be used. Since the heart may be too severely injured to tolerate sudden and forceful activity, stimulation therapy, as with caffeine, should be employed with great circumspection. Digitalis is of doubtful value though there are some authorities who recommend it in regular small 'tonic' doses. Cortin or other adrenal cortex preparations such as desoxycorticosterone have been advocated, but their value in this condition is not established. Large amounts of salt as recommended for hypotension and asthenia in Addison's disease is seldom advisable since congestive heart failure may prove to be a latent or even full-blown complication. The application of tourniquets mentioned in connection with the treatment of shock is not indicated in states of hypotension that last days or weeks.

A sudden violent leap in blood pressure to 200 mm Hg systolic or more seen in a comparatively limited number of cases with the onset of an attack calls for no special treatment. The blood pressure will generally drop within a few minutes to its previous level or close to it. This abrupt elevation in blood pressure is not too rare in an anginal attack in hypertensive individuals. Acute hypertension is infrequent in acute myocardial infarction. The use of vasodilators such as nitroglycerin etc. is seldom effective in acute heart infarction especially if complicated by acute coronary occlusion. The use of

for several days even when the drug has been withdrawn. The supervision of bleeding tendency or of a markedly lowered prothrombin level calls for the prompt use of blood transfusion and vitamin K. The synthetic product of vitamin K (menadiolone) is highly recommended and 60 to 70 mg. are administered and repeated as required. Allen<sup>1-3</sup> claims that the guide for the use of dicumarol is not the prothrombin time but rather the prothrombin level, i.e. the percentage of the normal. He feels that the prothrombin time may change because of variation in potency of thromboplastins.

Heparin and dicumarol are often used simultaneously. For adults 50 mg. of heparin are given intravenously every 4 hours during 36 to 48 hours. With the first dose of heparin 300 mg. of dicumarol are given by mouth and on the following day reduced to 200 mg. Thereafter it may be sufficient to rely on dicumarol alone giving about 200 mg. a day or less according to the prothrombin level. A recent and full report on the use of these drugs in acute coronary occlusion has been published by Wright et al.<sup>40</sup>

Contraindications to the use of anticoagulants are blood dyscrasias, bleeding tendencies, gastric or duodenal ulcer, advanced liver or renal disease, postoperative states especially after brain surgery. A point worth remembering is that dicumarol makes the sedimentation test less dependable.

(4) *Acute Pericarditis*. This complication is noted in those forms of acute myocardial infarction which involve the pericardial surface of the heart. It is in most cases a comparatively early complication and far more apt to occur with acute coronary occlusion where the injury to the heart extends to the pericardial lining. Special treatment is seldom required. An ice bag applied locally and sedation for pain are helpful. Turning from side to side may cause pain and should be avoided. The best therapy for this complication is careful attention to the underlying myocardial damage.

(5) *Reflex (Vagal) Coronary Constriction*. Although the problem of whether the coronary vessels in man actually undergo constriction is far from settled (Opdyke and Sellert<sup>41</sup>) considerable evidence points in this direction. Nitroglycerin is given at once under the tongue 0.0004 (gr.  $\frac{1}{160}$ ) (p. 242) and repeated if coronary spasm is suspected. Other preparations are papaverine gr. 1 to 4 several times a day, atropine 0.0004 to 0.0006 (gr.  $\frac{1}{160}$  to  $\frac{1}{80}$ ) and the frequent use of small amounts of whiskey. Atropine is given either by mouth or subcutaneously limiting the total dose in twenty-four hours to about 3 m., if tolerated. The drug in smaller amounts may be repeated over several days as a preventive measure. For constriction that recurs frequently or appears to be intractable, aminophyllin may bring relief. It is given intravenously and repeated every 6 to 8 hours as required. It is sometimes of advantage to continue the aminophyllin several days longer than the atropine if anginal pain from reflex coronary constriction is stubborn or if breathing is irregular or of the Cheyne Stokes type or if cyanosis persists. The efficacy of quinidine

(1) *Extension of an acute myocardial damage* (2) *the supervention of a fresh infarction*, and (3) *acute pulmonary embolization* require anticoagulant therapy in addition to the other measures already considered for each of the complications. These complications are far from negligible, acute pulmonary embolization, for example, as a cause of death in acute myocardial infarction is about 10 per cent, according to Woods and Barnes.<sup>29</sup> The anticoagulants are widely used and although indications and methods for employment are not finally established, the drugs appear to have a valuable place in therapy.

The drugs are also indicated when venous clots in limbs or other locations are likely to become dislodged and threaten to embolize in the lungs or other organs. Confinement to bed enhances this danger, the bedridden patient with acute myocardial injury may be in greater jeopardy from emboli loosened from his peripheral veins than from intracardiac thrombi. Ligating the veins in the groin may be necessary and can be life saving. Anticoagulants should be instituted without delay but very cautiously.

The two anticoagulants employed are heparin and dicumarol (Allen et al,<sup>1-3</sup> Loewe). Heparin acts more promptly, the effect does not endure and can be stopped quickly. About 50 to 100 mg of heparin solution are administered intravenously, undiluted, every 4 to 6 hours for one or two days, it is as a rule not necessary to give more than 250 to 300 mg a day. The intervals between injections can be adjusted to this schedule. The drug may also be administered in saline solution. A 10 cc vial of heparin containing 10 mg is added to each 500 cc of saline and introduced intravenously, at the outset at a continuous infusion rate of about 2 cc (30 drops) a minute. Again, the total daily dose seldom need exceed 300 mg. Frequent observation and care are required to avoid variations in the rate of flow which can occur with variations in the position of the arm or when the apparatus is at fault. For use deep in the subcutaneous tissues 200 to 400 mg in Pitkin menstruum as recommended by Loewe may be given every 48 hours, or a heparin product called Liquaemin (Roche) may be used subcutaneously. The clotting time is checked frequently, it should be at 15 minutes and not over 25. Should hemorrhage occur heparin is promptly discontinued, if the hemorrhage is severe, whole blood should be administered without delay.

Dicumarol is given by mouth, it acts more slowly the effect is more lasting and is easier to control than heparin. After determining the prothrombin time beforehand 300 mg is given. The prothrombin level of whole plasma is tested frequently once a day at least. The normal prothrombin time is 12 to 14 seconds it should be kept, under dicumarol treatment at 25 to 30 seconds. The drug is stopped at once if the prothrombin time is over 30 seconds or the drug is reduced and daily amounts kept to 50 to 100 mg if the prothrombin time is less than 25 seconds. It should never be given unless the prothrombin time is known and carefully followed. When large amounts of dicumarol are given over several days and then completely stopped, the prothrombin time may remain prolonged

some when they occur with cardiac arrhythmias or heart failure as in acute myocardial infarction. Giddiness or lightness of the head, however, are not always manifestations of circulatory disturbance; other causes should therefore be excluded and smoking prohibited. Barbiturate and morphine preparations may aggravate the symptoms. Rigorous restriction of sodium in the diet sometimes alleviates them.

**Respiratory Difficulties** The inhalation of oxygen, sedation and respiratory stimulants are the measures indicated. If morphine is employed, depression of the respiratory centers must be avoided. The drug is invaluable if pulmonary edema is threatening or established. Keeping the throat and nasal passages clear and the use of a back rest help the breathing. The treatment for respiratory disturbances due to cardiac failure consists largely of bringing aid to a failing circulation. aminophyllin and digitalis, sometimes caffeine parenterally administered, are excellent. Coramine is a respiratory stimulant; given alone or combined with aminophyllin intravenously or intramuscularly is valuable; the dose of coramine is 1.5 cc repeated every 1 or 2 hours as required. An oral preparation of coramine is available; the dose is 1 to 3 cc (M 15 to 45) every few hours. The liberal use of aminophyllin by vein, despite a certain degree of danger which attaches to this route of administration, can bring striking benefit. It should be given rather freely, 10 cc containing 0.24 (gr 4) of the drug, every eight hours or oftener and the interval increased as the patient improves. Glytheonate has been recommended as a good oral preparation of aminophyllin. It consists of theophyllin buffered with sodium glycinate. 1 to 3 tablets are given every 4 to 6 hours. Aminophyllin may also be given by rectal route; the dry drug 0.5 to 0.75 is dissolved in about 150 cc of distilled water and introduced rectally every 6 to 8 hours. Camphor in doses of 0.2 to 0.3 (gr 3 to 5) given in oil and subcutaneously is still employed but its value is overrated.

**Gastro-intestinal Manifestations** These are frequently mild but if severe or protracted may tip the scale between a good and a bad outcome. Most of the complications are parasympathetic in nature.

**Flatulence** During the acute stage of illness local applications, stupes, are to be avoided or carried out only with the greatest care; the water must not be too hot, the cloths not too heavy and the duration of the treatment short. Enemas are dangerous; instead a glycerin suppository is inserted in the rectum or a small amount of bland oil, an ounce or two, 30 to 60 cc, instilled in the rectum through a small caliber catheter. The use of a rectal tip to keep the sphincter open is of some use. Carminatives must be chosen wisely: a few drops of Hoffman's anodyne on a small lump of sugar dissolved in the mouth, a small quantity of fairly warm freshly brewed tea or concoction of Chamomile tea or other herbs like peppermint, etc., may bring relief. Small doses of charcoal, 0.3 to 1.5 (gr 5 to 25) or the ready-made Eucarbon tablets (containing a small amount of cascara) are good. Sometimes small doses of calcium carbonate, 0.6 to 2.0 (gr 10 to 30) or kaolin, 4 to 8 (gr 60 to 120) bring relief. Soda

as a preventive of ventricular fibrillation which may be induced by reflex coronary constriction has not yet been proved

(6) *Acute Pulmonary Edema* The pulmonary, smaller, circulation (it includes as an "accessory circle" the liver veins to their "exit barrier") is not only the first to receive the brunt of congestive failure but the last to be rid of its effects. The rate of blood flow in the pulmonary venous vessels is retarded and does not return to normal until the pulmonary circulation is free of congestive failure. The velocity of pulmonary venous blood flow, therefore, may be looked upon as a barometer of the development and recession of pulmonary congestion and in turn of congestive heart failure. The practical therapeutic point is that the treatment of congestive failure is not completed, regardless of all apparent amelioration, until the rate of blood flow in the pulmonary venous channels is restored to normal (Blumgart et al,<sup>4</sup> Hitzig,<sup>16</sup> Miller,<sup>5</sup> Miller and Furman<sup>27</sup>)

Sudden heart failure in the form of acute pulmonary edema can come early in the cardiac attack or days later. This dread complication, a sequel frequently of sudden left ventricular failure, is the most dramatic form of heart failure and a sharp threat to life. Factors other than increased obstruction to pulmonary blood flow are probably necessary to produce pulmonary edema, anoxia for example with its effect on pulmonary capillary permeability and shifts in the amount of plasma protein (Cameron<sup>7</sup>), but whatever the mechanism, at the first sign of pulmonary congestion (or general edema) treatment should be prompt and energetic. Oxygen therapy should be started at once. Some patients are relieved promptly by a single dose of morphine 0.01 to 0.015 (gr  $\frac{1}{8}$  to  $\frac{1}{4}$ ) combined with atropine 0.0006 (gr  $\frac{1}{160}$ ) even before time permits the use of oxygen. The atropine in the same or lesser quantity may be repeated every 15 to 20 minutes for a few doses. The weakening left ventricle sometimes needs the help of caffeine sodium benzoate 0.12 to 0.3 (gr 2 to 5) injected parenterally. Ephedrine in oil 0.015 (gr  $\frac{1}{4}$ ) combined or preceded by aqueous solution (gr  $\frac{1}{8}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$ ) may be useful. A good remedy is the intravenous introduction of strong hypertonic glucose solution 50 cc. of 25 or 50 per cent. to which amino phyllin may be added 0.26 or ouabain 0.025 mg. or at most 0.5 mg. at any one time. The ouabain may be repeated in 0.1 to 0.2 mg. units every few hours. The total amount should not exceed 1.0 mg. in twenty-four hours and it is best not to use it at all if the patient is still under the effect of digitalis. Venesection may be life saving. Two hundred to 500 cc. of blood are withdrawn, the effect of a small amount removed is striking and sudden enough to suggest a reflex mechanism.

(7) *Congestive Heart Failure (General Anasarca)* This is discussed on p. 290

#### *Other Complicating Manifestations*

*Dizziness and Vertigo* These symptoms may be mild or fleeting as in mild and brief attacks of acute coronary insufficiency or they may be severe and trouble-

venously by a slow drip method about 1 to 2 cc per minute. This is repeated within twenty-four hours. Sodium chloride may be needed to replenish chlorides lost by vomiting. Drugs to overcome nausea are usually not efficacious although calcium oxalate 10 to 20 (gr 15 to 30) small oral doses or cocaine 0.015 (gr  $\frac{1}{4}$ ) or chloralose 0.2 to 0.6 (gr 3 to 10) are recommended.

*Fatigue and Exhaustion* In some respects fatigue and exhaustion save the individual from physical movement. This advantage is greatly overbalanced however by the danger of collapse from the symptoms. The victim of a severe acute myocardial infarction suffers from weakness in the heart as well as general exhaustion. The weakness in the heart is no illusory matter. It may prove to be a manifestation of the general autonomic reaction or of course of heart muscle injury. For asthenia no specific remedy is known and resort is made to general methods: warmth of the body, maintaining the general circulation, careful nourishment and preserving the patient's reserve strength by avoiding stress, strain and exertion. Desoxy corticosterone may be tried 1 to 2 cc parenterally one or two times a day. Small doses of strychnine 0.001 (gr  $\frac{1}{8}$ ) with or without caffeine citrate 0.06 to 0.12 (gr 1 to 2) or ephedrine 0.015 (gr  $\frac{1}{4}$ ) by mouth help. The ingestion of large amounts of sodium chloride may be tried if heart failure is no factor. Citrate salts (gr 30) three or four times a day have been recommended to overcome a tendency to mild alkalosis and thus offset asthenia.

*Sweating* Intractable drenching sweats may become extremely troublesome and add to the exhaustion. As long as it lasts the sweating represents a portent of the serious state of the patient. Measures to alleviate this symptom are not always effective. Restriction of fluid and of sodium chloride intake is of little value and needlessly adds to the discomfort of the patient. Something is accomplished by attention to the weight of coverings and by alcohol sponge baths. Drugs are of variable value: belladonna 0.3 to 1 cc (M 1 to 15) or atropine (gr  $\frac{1}{4}$ ) should be beneficial but often fail. Gynergen 0.5 to 1 cc subcutaneously is not of striking benefit; agaracin 0.005 to 0.02 (gr  $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$ ) is sometimes good. Sodium amylal in large doses 0.2 (gr 3) every two or three hours for several consecutive doses has been recommended. The drug is supposed to act on cerebral centers bringing relief without any soporific effect.

*Hyperglycemia* associated with glycosuria is an occasional complication of acute myocardial infarction and requires no therapy. It is probably a central effect and subsides in short order. The hyperglycemia and especially the glycosuria of a diabetic who suffers a cardiac attack may need prompt and vigorous attention. Insulin therapy in such patients carries with it the hazard of causing vagal coronary constriction or liberation of adrenalin with a deleterious influence on the coronary vessels.

*Insomnia* This is a central disturbance and difficult to combat. A dread of dying in sleep not a rare experience in these patients makes the insomnia still more difficult to overcome. The patient may hide this dread and the wary physician should be on the lookout for it and reassure the patient firmly and



bicarbonate 4 (gr 60) and charged or effervescent fluids are uncertain in effect, occasionally adding to the flatulence Syntroge! or Gelusil tablets, one after each meal and before retiring are useful, also Resinat, 1 or 2 capsules The regulation of all fluids and food is important in overcoming flatulence A regimen of liquids if given in small quantities not too hot or too cold, and food that is semi solid, easily digestible, occasionally small portions of fairly solid food, for example, toast, a small baked potato, cooked cereal that is firm, a small portion of well cooked puree of peas may turn the trick Raw fruits and their expressed juices and raw vegetables are best avoided Flatulence in some cases is relieved by the use of a vasodilator, nitroglycerin or amyl nitrite, each ampule of the latter contains 0.2 to 0.4 (M 3 to 5) The use of posterior pituitary extract 0.5 to 1 cc (10 to 20 units) and prostigmin (1 to 2000 or 1 to 4000 solution) 0.5 to 1 cc as advocated is much too dangerous in this type of patient Atropine may prove to be a good remedy

*Constipation* Allowing the patient to go without a bowel movement for several days after his acute cardiac attack is often a wise procedure However, should abdominal distress develop to an appreciable degree the bowels may require attention The mildest measures are the safest, 3 to 4 ounces of warm, bland oil instilled into the rectum, supplemented if well borne by several tablespoonfuls by mouth Glycerin suppositories may help as a rule not Small weak soap sud enemata, 6 to 8 ounces, are worth a trial, given slowly Colon irrigations, as a rule, are contraindicated but when resorted to they are to be carried out with great care, a few ounces at a time allowed to go into the rectum and then promptly siphoned off The entire procedure is not to take more than ten minutes, perhaps less, and stopped at the least sign of pain in the chest

Purges and all strong cathartics are generally best avoided There are patients, however, who do well especially after the severe initial illness on small daily doses of mild purgatives, such as milk of magnesia 8 to 12 cc (3u to 5u), Carlsbad salts 4 cc (5i) in a glass of hot water sodium phosphate 4 to 8 cc (5i to 5u) or 4 cc (5i) soda bicarbonate in a glass of hot or cold water, etc The solid cathartics in small amounts, are good cascara sagrada (gr 5) or the senna preparation, glyssennid one tablet at night The aim is to have a mild movement with as little effort as possible and not more than once a day, every other day may be good enough

*Nausea* This may come with the onset of the attack It is well to remember that morphine and similar products produce nausea and other medications are not free of this disadvantage Many patients never have nausea, in others nausea persists, also retching and vomiting These symptoms in acute myocardial infarction are dangerous because they may cause extension of a coronary thrombosis or a fresh thrombosis When fluids and carbohydrates are not retained or absorbed through the stomach intravenous glucose is indicated Five hundred to 1000 cc of 5 per cent glucose in saline solution or 10 per cent distilled water (less likelihood of local venous thrombosis) are administered intra

standing of his physician and of other persons around him the confidence he has in his treatment all play their part to this end. Yet if pain is severe and stubborn aside from the use of oxygen therapy which brings relief in the early days after an attack resort to drugs for the longer subsequent periods becomes the mainstay for easing pain and for bringing relaxation rest and sleep. These drugs have already been described their selection and the frequency with which they are administered are determined by the need in each case. The drugs to ease pain are more than anodynes and analgesics, they are invaluable calmatives. The abolition of pain or its appreciable reduction or even increasing the interval between attacks are invaluable not only because of the relief but also because absence or mitigation of pain helps conserve the strength of the patient and thus further his recuperation. The drugs carry with them certain drawbacks already discussed. A general disadvantage that derives from the eradication of pain by any means is the disappearance of the warning signal function of arterial pain (Chapter II), but this disadvantage is no contraindication to striving for relief. It is well however to re-emphasize that in the absence or abolition of pain the underlying malady and the menace that goes with it still exist.

The patient sometimes procures grateful relief of pain from the use of simple measures such as the application of heat to the precordium or gentle counter-irritation from a mustard plaster or rubbing with methyl salicylate. Precordial pain also the radiation into the arm are eased and lessened on occasions by placing the left arm in a special position or posture by immobilizing the arm as much as possible or by exerting strong pressure upon the nerves of the arm implicated in the distribution of pain. Libman procedure.<sup>9</sup> This latter manipulation is not to be undertaken lightly when the patient although convalescing is still seriously ill. Cold applications (ice bag) are not welcome occasionally however they relieve precordial pain notably when tachycardia is a feature.

The pain of acute pericarditis is of a different order its reference is by way of the phrenic pathways to the trapezius muscle. Sometimes a pericardial rub is audible and pain absent. However when pain is present it is apt to be aggravated as the patient shifts from side to side and a fairly frequent complaint is the intensification of pericardial pain from resting on the left side. For pericardial pain an ice bag may be helpful, sometimes heat occasionally strapping the chest when there is pleuropericardial involvement, and sedation.

### *Dyspnea*

This is almost always a feature of heart failure associated often with troublesome almost intractable cough and disturbed rest and sleep. Mechanical pressure by an engorged left auricle on the left recurrent laryngeal nerve can aggravate the cough and add to the dyspnea. The remedy is vigorous treatment of the heart failure with diuretics digitalis strophanthin aminophyllin etc. Watching the weight increase is a reliable way of estimating fluid increase in

with good common sense, or explore the psychologic aspects of the fear. It is not advisable to "push" morphine or allied drugs lest unpleasant and stubborn after effects and addiction appear. Chloral hydrate by mouth may be valuable 0.3 to 0.6 (gr. 5 to 10); it is also given per rectum, repeated in three to six hours in larger amounts in some cases. Severe insomnia is sometimes broken by the milder sedatives. The general management, quiet of the room, the elimination of disturbing factors, are conducive to sleep.

## Part II Interval and Chronic States

### TRTATMENT

After the violence of the attack has subsided, the patient will be left spent, or if no serious cardiovascular lesion exists as in many cases of acute coronary insufficiency he may exhibit an immediate and almost miraculous recovery. The attack of acute myocardial infarction can be brief, too, and the patient will pass through a short period of convalescence. His subsequent course will be governed by the absence or recurrence of pain, mental anxiety, and his ability to function in accordance with the demands made upon him. Therapy may call for little more than wise counsel and careful instruction to avoid situations which precipitate an attack. Freedom from attacks and a sense of comparative well being, however, are no guarantee of immunity from the danger of succeeding attacks or sudden death. The care from now on is largely preventive, and the predisposing and excitatory factors which bring on an attack must be shunned or guarded against.

But in a great many patients with acute myocardial infarction the acute episode is followed by sickness and disability for weeks and even months, and some individuals who develop recurrent infarction or progressive alteration of the coronary tree become permanent invalids.

The patient with an acute myocardial infarction is kept in bed during the first three to four weeks of illness. This period is best not shortened even if the attack seems to be mild. The period of bed rest, with certain exceptions, is wisely not prolonged because of the danger of pulmonary embolization especially from undetected venous thrombi in the lower limbs. The extremities are carefully and frequently moved to minimize this danger. When he is ambulant he is supervised for months under orders to avoid fatigue or strain. During the immediate period of convalescence and for months thereafter, he may develop pain or fatigue, exhaustion, dyspnea, psychic disturbances. The gravest danger is heart failure, or acute pulmonary edema (Cameron<sup>7</sup>). In some cases therapy and management may have to be continued for the remaining life span of the patient.

### *Pain*

The alleviation of pain is not a matter of drugs altogether. The general comfort of the patient, the skill with which he is nursed, the psychologic under

standing of his physician and of other persons around him the confidence he has in his treatment all play their part to this end. Yet if pain is severe and stubborn aside from the use of oxygen therapy which brings relief in the early days after an attack resort to drugs for the longer subsequent periods becomes the mainstay for easing pain and for bringing relaxation, rest and sleep. These drugs have already been described their selection and the frequency with which they are administered are determined by the need in each case. The drugs to ease pain are more than anodynes and analgesics they are invaluable calmatives. The abolition of pain or its appreciable reduction or even increasing the interval between attacks are invaluable not only because of the relief but also because absence or mitigation of pain helps conserve the strength of the patient and thus further his recuperation. The drugs carry with them certain drawbacks already discussed. A general disadvantage that derives from the eradication of pain by any means is the disappearance of the warning signal function of anginal pain (Chapter II) but this disadvantage is no contraindication to striving for relief. It is well however to re-emphasize that in the absence or abolition of pain the underlying malady and the menace that goes with it still exist.

The patient sometimes procures grateful relief of pain from the use of simple measures such as the application of heat to the precordium or gentle counter irritation from a mustard plaster or rubbing with methyl salicylate. Precordial pain also the radiation into the arm are eased and lessened on occasions by placing the left arm in a special position or posture by immobilizing the arm as much as possible or by exerting strong pressure upon the nerves of the arm implicated in the distribution of pain. Libman procedure.<sup>6</sup> This latter manipulation is not to be undertaken lightly when the patient although convalescing is still seriously ill. Cold applications (ice bag) are not welcome occasionally however they relieve precordial pain notably when tachycardia is a feature.

The pain of acute pericarditis is of a different order its reference is by way of the phrenic pathways to the trapezius muscle. Sometimes a pericardial rub is audible and pain absent. However when pain is present it is apt to be aggravated as the patient shifts from side to side and a fairly frequent complaint is the intensification of pericardial pain from resting on the left side. For pericardial pain an ice bag may be helpful sometimes heat occasionally strapping the chest when there is pleuropericardial involvement and sedation.

### Dyspnea

This is almost always a feature of heart failure associated often with troublesome almost intractable cough and disturbed rest and sleep. Mechanical pressure by an engorged left auricle on the left recurrent laryngeal nerve can aggravate the cough and add to the dyspnea. The remedy is vigorous treatment of the heart failure with diuretics digitalis strophanthus aminophyllin etc. Watching the weight increase is a reliable way of estimating fluid increase in

the body, and as little as one pound of edema fluid may bring on dyspnea, especially of the nocturnal type

Extracardiac causes of dyspnea demand attention to the specific trouble in each case. Removing these causes can add greatly to the chances of recovery of heart failure.

### *Psychic Disturbances*

For the psychic disturbances that trail an attack of angina pectoris or acute myocardial infarction, it is good practice to vary the sedatives and hypnotics. A fairly large number of individuals differ in their response to these drugs and in some cases fears, uneasiness, bad day or night dreams, depressive states or exhilarated and manic states are produced by some of these drugs. The barbiturates are frequent offenders in this respect, morphine and its derivatives to a lesser degree. The mental anxiety is removed sometimes by measures that relieve the physical symptoms by nitrites, atropine, papaverine or other antispasmodics which ameliorate or abolish constriction or oppressions of the throat, chest or epigastrium and in this way allay 'fears of choking.'

As the hours and days of acute illness draw to a close the physician will have opportunities to sense and learn the background of the patient: the capacities of discipline, of stoicism, and for hope. The patient must suffer no betrayal of confidence even in matters that seem trivial. The understanding and mutual confidence established in the very beginning of the illness will prove a foundation stone upon which to build a skillful psychological bridge between patient and physician for the future. Members and close friends of the family also are to exercise caution and a cheerful demeanor in the presence of the patient and here too an instinct for family and personality values will guide the physician in his counsel.

### *Congestive Heart Failure*

When the infarcted heart muscle fails to heal or after healing remains weak, the patient may sooner or later develop myocardial insufficiency manifested chiefly by a reduced cardiac reserve with congestive failure absent or minimal or congestive heart failure may dominate the situation. A number of procedures are available for treating congestive failure: (a) rest in bed or modified ambulatory treatment, (b) restriction of sodium intake, (c) the use of diuretics, (d) digitalis especially when the rhythm is deranged and (e) mechanical measures to remove dropsical fluid.

(1) *Bed rest.* Confinement to bed alone seems to have a diuretic effect. With bed rest alone four or five pounds of dropsy may go in as many days provided no excess of salt was ingested. This procedure in the greatest number of cases, however, is ineffective. In addition to bed rest, at least in the early period following a cardiac attack, the patient may have to be treated by supplementary measures, i.e., marked restriction of sodium intake, the administration of

mercurial diuretics to promote elimination of sodium and water and with digitalis

(b) *The rigorous reduction of sodium intake* and adherence to this regimen is extremely important and itself sufficient oftentimes to rid the patient of edema and keep him edema free. The severe regimens limit the intake to 200 mg. of sodium which is equivalent to 0.5 Gm. NaCl, or the sodium in the diet may be doubled. This is accomplished by substituting salt butter for sweet. Too long on this restriction can cause general weakness, malaise and irritability and salt intake may have to be increased. Fluids are not strenuously curtailed as in former regimens. 1000 cc. of milk and about 1500 to 2000 cc. of plain water are permitted. Overenergetic or too rapid dehydration is avoided. The patient is weighed frequently daily if possible.

The following, compiled from a number of sources, is a useful restricted sodium diet containing 200 mg. Na equivalent to 0.5 Gm. NaCl. Nothing that is not mentioned on this list should be taken. Drinking water which has been run through water softening equipment is not allowed. Use no salt in cooking. Take no soda bicarbonate.

*Meat or Fish* 3 oz. by raw weight of fresh beef, lamb, pork, veal, poultry or fresh fish, oysters but no shellfish. These foodstuffs must not be used in frozen form unless it is certain they have not been processed with salt. Smoked, processed and canned products are selected with the same precaution. They may be fried in unsalted vegetable fat (olive oil, Spray, Crisco, Wafat) or lard.

*Eggs* one egg daily. If egg is needed for lesser use one or two yolks, not the white.

*Milk* salt free milk. Lanolac marketed by Mead Johnson Co. is a salt free milk. The directions come with the product. The equivalent of a fluid quart may be taken daily.

*Bread* low sodium bread 4 slices daily. A good preparation is made by many bakeries.

For rye bread (matzo) the plain or the tea biscuit may be used.

*Cereals* plain farina, Wheatena, rice, rolled oats (oatmeal), puffed wheat, puffed rice, shredded wheat, Pettijohn's macaroni, spaghetti.

*Tea* salt free 4 squares ( $\frac{1}{2}$  inch thick) daily.

*Cheese* made from salt free milk.

*Spices* practically all except celery, onion or garlic salt and no marketed sauce such as ketchup, horse radish, mustard, etc.

*Vegetables* 3 to 4 servings of the following. The frozen products of those marked with an \* may be used.

Asparagus	Cowpeas	Peppers
Beans green	Cucumber	Potatoes white or sweet one daily
Beans lima green	Eggplant	Pumpkin
Beans red dried	Endive	Radishes
Broccoli	Lettuce	Rutabagas
Brussels sprouts	Mushrooms	Soy beans fresh or dried
Cabbage	Okra	Squash
Carrots	Onions	Tomatoes
Cauliflower	Parsley	Turnip leaves
Corn	Parsnips	Turnips white or yellow
	Peas	

*Fruit* all fresh raw or cooked fruits and fresh fruit juices, all canned, dried or frozen fruits if they contain no salt or sodium benzoate.

<i>Desserts</i>	gelatin (not prepared gelatin desserts)	honey	jam	jelly, marmalade	unsalted nuts
<i>Beverages</i>	Apple juice	Chocolate (with salt free milk)	Coca Cola	Cocoa (with salt free milk)	avoid Dutch process cocoa)
	Coffee	Ginger ale	Orange juice	Grape juice	Pineapple juice
		Grapefruit juice	Postum	Lemonade	Prune juice
		Lanolin milk, salt free	Tangerine juice	Orange crush	Tea

This diet alone may be sufficient to rid the patient of anasarca or it may be necessary to administer 1-2 cc mercurpurin daily or almost daily for several weeks and at longer spaced intervals during subsequent months. Kempner<sup>1</sup> claims that strict adherence to the rice diet which he developed will remove even the massive edema of congestive heart failure and keep the patient edema free. He administers no digitalis, mercurials or other diuretics. The diet consists of cooked rice prepared from a daily allotment of 200-300 gm of dry product supplemented by fruits, syrups, sugar. It contains 20 Gm protein, 3 Gm fat and not more than 150 mg sodium and 200 mg chloride. The total caloric value is 2000 calories. If 3000 calories are given the protein is raised in ratio. Milk and condiments are interdicted. Patients who are kept on this diet for many months apparently develop no hypoproteinemia. The diet is rigorous and psychologically difficult to adhere to but it appears to have much merit in some cases. The more liberal diet outlined above may have to be resorted to and if need be supplemented by the administration of mercurials to keep water exchange in balance.

Fox and his associates<sup>9</sup> have suggested that giving sodium lactate followed by sodium and potassium acetates will remove anasarca associated under certain circumstances with decreased plasma sodium and acidosis. Their studies indicate that the restriction of sodium as employed at present may require modification in some cases at least. Salt substitutes have not been successful; they are seldom palatable.

(c) *Diuretics*. These make up several groups with individual differences and indications for use. The first group consists of urea, the second of acid and base forming drugs, the third metal preparations especially of mercury, the fourth purine drugs, the fifth digitalis and allied drugs, the sixth hormone products, the seventh hypertonic glucose or sucrose solutions.

Urea is sometimes a good remedy; it is given in large amounts, 15 to 25 grams (5/4 to 7) in solution three times a day (Miller and Feldman<sup>10</sup>). Despite its unpleasant and often objectionable taste, some patients take it readily or school themselves to take it. The additional fluid intake needed to dissolve the

urea is more than balanced by the large quantities of urine passed. Urea in these massive amounts may be given uninterruptedly for many months. Some patients in our practice have taken more urea than the equivalent of their own body weight. When edema disappears its reaccumulation is prevented by the continued use of urea even in smaller amounts. Disadvantages to urea therapy are (a) it is not always effective (b) it produces itching and excessive thirst (c) it does not rid the body of enough sodium chloride and as we have already mentioned (d) it is hard to take. Charged water as a diluent rids urea of much of its unpleasant taste.

**Acid and base forming drugs.** Of these ammonium chloride and ammonium nitrate are in most general use. They are given in doses of 2 to 3 grams (gr 30 to 45) three times a day and are continued for weeks and months and as in the case of urea with no deleterious effect to the body and more particularly to the kidneys. Of their own accord they may act well or their effect may be augmented by the simultaneous use of another diuretic like urea or again their chief role may consist in increasing the efficacy of administered mercurial diuretics. Disadvantages are gastric upsets and in the case of nitrate salt methemoglobinuria.

**Base forming or alkali drugs** have been proposed when acid drugs fail. The dehydrating effect of potassium nitrate was known nearly a century ago. Binger and Keith<sup>2</sup> confirmed the use of potassium salts. They employed potassium chloride as suggested by Barker<sup>3</sup> with good diuresis and no injurious effect. They also recommended potassium nitrate.

The third group comprises metal preparations and of these mercurpurin and mercurhydrin have the widest use.<sup>4</sup> They are to the regulation of cardiac dropsy what insulin is to glycosuria. Their intravenous administration is very effective. The dose in the beginning may be 0.5 to 1 cc. to avoid too sudden and drastic depletion. After an interval of a few days 1 cc. or more (not above 2 cc. as a rule) are given. Thrombosis in the veins injected and febrile reactions are rare. Deaths have been reported from intravenous use and attributed to too rapid administration. This does not seem to be the whole explanation. The intramuscular route of administration is preferred by many who fear this effect or wish to avoid a possible thrombosing effect on the veins. This is a very useful method the danger of local necrosis is not great. The buttocks are good sites avoiding the sciatic nerves and alternating each buttock for successive doses.

The mercurial preparations are also available in suppository form and worth using. It may be very profitable to give a mercurial preparation almost daily or actually daily for several weeks or longer (Calkins) continuing four to five times per week to prevent reaccumulation of edema gradually increasing the interval.

Thimeron, a new mercurial preparation has recently been recommended. It possesses excellent diuretic effect, has low toxicity and produces little local reaction. The dose is 0.5 to 2.0 cc. subcutaneously.



<i>Desserts</i>	gelatin (not prepared gelatin desserts)	honey	jam	jelly	marmalade	unsalted nuts
<i>Beverages</i>	Apple juice					
	Chocolate (with salt free milk)					
	Coca Cola					
	Cocoa (with salt free milk avoid Dutch process cocoa)					
	Coffee					
	Ginger ale	Orange juice				
	Grape juice	Pineapple juice				
	Grapefruit juice	Postum				
	Lemonade	Prune juice				
	Lanolin milk salt free	Tangerine juice				
	Orange crush	Tea				

This diet alone may be sufficient to rid the patient of anasarca or it may be necessary to administer 1-2 cc mercupurin daily or almost daily for several weeks and at longer spaced intervals during subsequent months. Kempner<sup>17</sup> b claims that strict adherence to the rice diet which he developed will remove even the massive edema of congestive heart failure and keep the patient edema free. He administers no digitalis, mercurials or other diuretics. The diet consists of cooked rice prepared from a daily allotment of 200-300 gm of dry product supplemented by fruits, syrups, sugar. It contains 20 Gm protein, 5 Gm fat and not more than 150 mg sodium and 200 mg chloride. The total caloric value is 2000 calories. If 3000 calories are given the protein is raised in ratio. Milk and condiments are interdicted. Patients who are kept on this diet for many months apparently develop no hypoproteinemia. The diet is rigorous and psychologically difficult to adhere to but it appears to have much merit in some cases. The more liberal diet outlined above may have to be resorted to and if need be supplemented by the administration of mercurials to keep water exchange in balance.

Iox and his associates<sup>9</sup> have suggested that giving sodium lactate followed by sodium and potassium acetates will remove anasarca associated under certain circumstances, with decreased plasma sodium and acidosis. Their studies indicate that the restriction of sodium as employed at present may require modification in some cases at least. Salt substitutes have not been successful, they are seldom palatable.

(c) *Diuretics* These make up several groups with individual differences and indications for use. The first group consists of urea, the second of acid and base forming drugs, the third metal preparations especially of mercury, the fourth purine drugs, the fifth digitalis and allied drugs, the sixth hormone products, the seventh hypertonic glucose or sucrose solutions.

Urea is sometimes a good remedy, it is given in large amounts 15 to 25 grams (5/4 to 7) in solution, three times a day (Miller and Feldman<sup>20</sup>). Despite its unpleasant and often objectionable taste some patients take it readily or school themselves to take it. The additional fluid intake needed to dissolve the

the patient with chronic congestive heart failure. Diuretics that have been tried and found wanting at one time must not be permanently discarded.

(d) *Digitalis* is one of the best remedies for ridding the body of cardiac edema especially where the dropsy has resulted from myocardial insufficiency in which auricular fibrillation plays a part. *Digitalis* alone is almost a specific or *digitalis* is excellent in combination with one or several of the diuretics or the procedures already mentioned. There is seldom need for great haste in its administration in chronic congestive heart failure.

(e) *Mechanical measures*. In cases in which diuretics were tried without success or lost their effectiveness after a time mechanical measures may prove valuable. Every clinician of experience learns that in special instances the simultaneous removal of cardiac edema fluid from pleural or abdominal cavities or the lower limbs converts a hitherto ineffectual diuretic into a potent active agent. Again mechanical removal of a large quantity of accumulated fluid is all that is needed to permit the body to carry out the brisk and adequate elimination of fluids unaided by other means. The indications for thoracic or abdominal paracentesis or the withdrawal of edema fluid from the lower limbs by Southey tubes are seldom major problems. The usual precautions of asepsis are imperative nowhere more so than in the use of the Southey tubes.

The patient with congestive heart failure in whom dropsy is not to the fore but who suffers from myocardial insufficiency in other ways will need special care in preserving what cardiac reserve remains and adding to it. Some cases need attention to liver disturbances (hepatic insufficiency) associated with some degree of jaundice. It is claimed that the jaundice of myocardial insufficiency is not necessarily an expression of liver dysfunction. Even if this be so the *jaundice* calls for special dietetic and other care. Large amounts of multiple vitamins and crude liver introduced intramuscularly are recommended.

#### *Associated Metabolic and Endocrine Disorders*

The incidence of coronary disease and angina pectoris in middle aged and somewhat older groups is of course, high and in these groups also many metabolic and extracardiovascular disorders are frequent. Examples are obesity, diabetes, gout, anemia especially the type associated with menopause and hypothyroid states. Cardiovascular renal conditions and varied forms of generalized decreascent arteriosclerosis frequently coexist with angina pectoris and coronary artery disease. This association of *coronary* cardiac disease and extracardiac disorders requires treatment of the noncardiac condition undertaken with due regard for the cardiac aspect of the case. Treating the one often benefits the other. The treatment however of the extracardiac associated condition for example diabetes mellitus or gout should not be too strenuous.

Diabetes mellitus is associated not only with alterations in the coronary vessels but in many other parts of the vascular tree. The victims are generally middle aged or older. The diabetes offers no great problem in therapy as a rule but

until the drug is administered three, two or less times a week. Urea or acid forming drugs are sometimes employed as supplementary measures. In the presence or suspected existence of renal disease, mercurial as well as other metal containing preparations such as bismuth salts, are usually interdicted. To offset or prevent abrupt water depletion and an accompanying intoxication and exhaustion, effects which follow the excessive action of these mercurials 2 to 3 grams of table salt by mouth after an initial large output of urine totalling 1000 to 1500 cc, may be given as recommended by Poll and Stern.<sup>31</sup>

The oral use of mercurhydrin is still a matter of investigation. The dose is 0.2 to 0.4 (gr. 3 to 6) three or four times daily, the urine should be watched for evidence of possible renal damage, and gastric disturbances avoided.

The fourth group of diuretics, purine drugs, has fallen into some disfavor because other drugs and methods have proved more dependable and effective. Pharmacologically these drugs are known to increase and improve the coronary circulation. However, all the pharmacological evidence is based upon animal experiments *in situ* or on heart lung preparations kept alive under painstaking but nevertheless artificial conditions. There is still no convincing proof that xanthine products have a similar effect on the coronary vessels in man. It must be stated with equal emphasis that neither can the contrary be proved and indeed, some clinical reports extol the effectiveness of these products. These drugs do not merit complete neglect, particularly such preparations as diuretin 0.3 to 0.6 (gr. 5 to 10) three times a day, theocalcin 8 to 10 tablets daily, euphylline 0.1 (gr. 1½) by mouth 3 to 4 times a day, theobromine 0.12 to 0.3 (gr. 2 to 5) three times a day, theocine 0.12 to 0.3 (gr. 2 to 5) three times a day and caffeine in concoction form or as citrate or the benzoate salt.

Some endocrine products possess a diuretic action. the pituitary extracts (0.5 to 1 cc.) in diabetes insipidus thyroid substances 0.06 or more (gr. 1 or more) three times a day in nephrosis and parathormone (units 5 to 15) in cardiovascular renal edema. These products are sometimes given in intractable cardiac edema. Their use however is not routine.

Hypertonic solutions of glucose or sucrose, introduced intravenously are good diuretics. There is seldom any contraindication to their use but they are not always effective. The glucose solutions are administered in 25 or 50 per cent concentration, preferably in distilled water to lessen the likelihood for thrombosis and to avoid giving sodium the preparations are buffered and injected rather rapidly. This may be repeated six to eight hours apart for several times. Glucose therapy is not always innocuous, we have the impression it has been followed by pulmonary congestion. Sucrose in 50 per cent solution is administered very slowly.

An interesting and strange variability in efficacy often characterizes the use of many diuretics. Drugs or other measures to produce diuresis tried and proved ineffectual yet utilized at another time and under conditions that seem unchanged become vigorously active. This fact is not to be lost sight of in treat-

compatible with a good degree of cardiac function and reserve (p. 1) constitute an ever present peril of sudden death. This type of sudden death possesses several curious aspects. In the first place it does not occur in all cases of pronounced coronary stenosis, this has been explained by the variable factor of the protective function of newly developed intercoronary and arteriovenous channels. In the second place considering the extent and efficacy of such a collateral circulation able to keep the heart from faltering sudden death becomes difficult to reconcile with an abrupt mechanical exclusion of blood at the mouths of the coronaries since the increment of blood suddenly shut off must be negligible. Thirdly this type of sudden death is not so common in other forms of ostial narrowing i.e. arteriosclerotic thickening.

Most patients with cardiovascular syphilis suffer not only severe anginal pain but in later stages poor cardiac reserve and congestive heart failure. Antiluetic therapy for them must be undertaken with great caution if at all. Since such individuals have a life expectancy that is short at most one or two years it might be asked is it ever sound to advocate this form of therapy attended as it is by risks? There are those who prohibit any form of antiluetic treatment fearing this form of therapy precipitates sudden death or congestive failure when luetic narrowing of coronary orifices is advanced. A special contraindication attaches to the use of arsenical preparations especially when administered intravenously. Arsphenamine for example is known to produce severe shock (Jarisch Herzheimer reaction) or acceleration and spread of the focal syphilitic lesion in the cardiovascular system (the therapeutic paradox of Wile<sup>21</sup> 22). These serious untoward results may prove fatal especially in the presence of congestive heart failure. Congestive heart failure is treated by the measures already described (p. 290) and anginal pain calls for the therapeutic procedures already discussed (p. 214). The removal or alleviation of congestive heart failure is said to favor the return of temporarily suppressed anginal pain.

Despite the arguments leveled at treating luetic heart disease sufferers with unrelieved torment even with recurring congestive heart failure have obtained relief by antiluetic measures. The most recent methods depend upon penicillin although mercury arsenic and iodides are still employed. Details of therapy are available in the literature.

#### BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. ALLEN E. V. The clinical use of anticoagulants: report of treatment with dicumarol in 1686 postoperative cases. *J. A. M. A.* 1947 134 323.
2. — The emergency treatment of vascular occlusions. *J. A. M. A.* 1947 135 15.
3. ALLEN E. V. HORTS E. L. JR. KVALE W. F. AND BARKER A. W. The use of dicumarol as an anticoagulant. *Ann. Int. Med.* 1947 27 371.
4. BARKER M. H. Edema as influenced by low ratio sodium to potassium intake. Clinical observations. *J. A. M. A.* 1932 98 2193.
5. BEYER M. W. AND KEITH A. M. The effect of diuretics in different types of edema. *J. A. M. A.* 1933 101 2009.

advanced decrescent changes as in the Kimmelstiel Wilson's syndrome are more difficult to treat. If insulin is employed, anginal seizures from its use should be avoided. Diabetics, especially in the older age groups, do quite well on fairly liberal dietary regimes and without insulin. It is wise not to aim too rigorously at making the urine sugar free. For the diabetic with coronary disease there is a special advantage in adhering to a total calorie regimen below the standard requirement for his weight, age, etc.

Gout is by no means rare in individuals who suffer from coronary artery disease and myocardial damage. A dietary factor perhaps underlies each respective condition or is possibly common to both. The gout should not be treated too vigorously.

*Cardiac Cachexia* A very unusual state of marked emaciation and asthenia, resembling in some respects Simmond's disease, is sometimes encountered in chronic advanced heart disease produced by myocardial damage. This condition, termed "cardiac cachexia" is not understood although some of the features point to a neurohormonal disturbance. The condition may resist treatment. A course of insulin combined with a carefully selected high calorie diet, large amounts of vitamins, endocrine products (Intuitin S, etc.) deserve a trial. A point usually overlooked in this connection as in most patients with chronic heart failure, is the possibility of liver insufficiency associated with prolonged engorgement and stasis of the liver. Large doses of multiple vitamins, intramuscular injection of 2 to 3 cc. of crude liver every other day and amino acids orally and parenterally, etc., are worth trying.

### *Cardiovascular Syphilis*

Syphilis is not primarily a disease of heart muscle. However, myocardial changes and spirochetes in the heart muscle have been found by Warthin<sup>35</sup>. Cesa Bianchi<sup>8</sup> of Milan also reported a small group of cases with spirochetes and alteration of the heart muscle and later Norris<sup>3</sup> published similar findings in three cases. The presence of spirochetes in heart tissue however is strongly disputed by Saphir<sup>3</sup>, at best it is rare.

Lues primarily attacks the aorta especially the suprasigmoid portion. Lesions confined to this part of the vessel are however not incompatible with a moderately long span of life and with fair comfort. The condition is often undetected and even the Wassermann reaction is likely to be negative in about 50 per cent of the cases (Gallavardin and Gravier<sup>12</sup>). Except for the serum test all this is changed when the pathological process creeps below the level of the coronary orifices and into the sinuses of Valsalva, eventually deforming the aortic valve with incompetence of the valve as a mechanical sequence. Two chains of events follow the incompetence of the aortic valve leads to enlargement of the left ventricle, later often to congestive heart failure and anginal pain develops as the luetic process encroaches on the coronary ostia actually obliterating their lumen. The constricted ostia though frequently

- \*PAL, J. Die Tonuskrankheiten des Herzens und der Gefäße ihre Biologie und Therapie  
Wien J Springer 1934
- \*POLL, D. AND STERN, J. E. Untoward effects of diuresis with special reference to mercurial  
diuretics Arch Int Med 1936 58 1087
- \*SPEHR, O. Syphilitic myocarditis Arch Path 1937 13 266 436
- \*SCHWARTZ, M. W. Transient ventricular fibrillation A study of the electrocardiograms ob-  
tained from a patient with A V dissociation Recurrent syncopal attacks Arch Int Med  
1937 40 287
- \*— AND JEZER, A. Transient ventricular fibrillation The clinical and electrocardiographic  
manifestations of the syncopal seizures in a patient with A V dissociation Arch Int  
Med 1937 50 450
- \*WARTHIN, A. A. Studies of the pulmonary artery syphilitic aneurysm of left upper division  
demonstration of *Spirocheta pallida* in wall of artery and aneurysmal sac Am J Syphilis  
1917 1 693
- \*WEGELA, R. Personal communication (publication in press)
- \*WILE, U. J. The treatment of syphilitic liver and heart a therapeutic para lor Am J M  
Sc. 1922 164 415
- \*— Principles underlying the treatment of cardiovascular syphilis Am Heart J 1930  
6 157
- \*WOODS, R. M. AND BARNES, A. R. Factors influencing immediate mortality rate following  
acute coronary occlusion Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 1941 16 341
- \*WRIGHT, I. S. MARPLE, C. D. AND BECA, D. F. Anticoagulant therapy of coronary throm-  
bosis with myocardial infarction J A M A 1943 138 1014
- — AND — Report of the committee for the evaluation of anticoagulants in  
the treatment of coronary thrombosis with myocardial infarction Am Heart J 1949  
36 801

- <sup>6</sup> BLUMGART H L, LEVINE S A AND BERLIN D D Congestive heart failure and angina pectoris. The therapeutic effect on patients without clinical or pathological evidence of thyroid toxicity. *Arch Int Med* 1933 51 866
- <sup>7</sup> CAMERON, G R Pulmonary edema. *Brit M J* 1948 (May 22) 965
- <sup>8</sup> CESA BIANCHI D Sulla miocardite sifilitica a tipo interstiziale. *La Clinica Medica Italiana* 1914 53 542
- <sup>9</sup> FOX C I JR, McCUE D J, BLAKEMORE A H, MOLOSHOK R E AND DELANGE S The disappearance of edema through diuresis following artificial elevation of plasma sodium and bicarbonate. *Bull N Y Acad Med* 1948 24 394
- <sup>10</sup> FRAENKEL A *Strophanthin Therapie*. Berlin J Springer 1933
- <sup>11</sup> GALLAVARDIN I Les angines de poitrine. Paris Masson 1925
- <sup>12</sup> — La fibrillation ventriculaire. *J Med de Lyon* 1927 8 453
- <sup>13</sup> — AND GRAVIER R Le diagnostic de l'insuffisance aortique syphilitique et ses difficultés. D'après une statistique de 84 cas d'insuffisance aortique solitaire de l'adulte avec autopsie. *J Méd de Lyon* 1931 12 539 567
- <sup>14</sup> GERTLER M M AND LOHALEM S B The effect of atabrine on auricular fibrillation and supraventricular tachycardia in man. *J Mt Sinai Hospital* 1947 13 323
- <sup>15</sup> GOLD H The pharmacologic basis of cardiac therapy. *J A M A* 1946 132 547
- <sup>16</sup> HITZIG W M Measurement of circulation time from antecubital veins to pulmonary capillaries. *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1934 31 935
- <sup>17</sup> HOWARTH S, McMICHAEL J AND SHARPEY SCHAEFER F P The circulatory action of theophylline ethylene diamine. *Clin Sc* 1947 6 125
- <sup>18</sup> KEMPNER W Some effects of the rice diet treatment of kidney disease and hypertension. *Bull New York Acad Med* 1946 22 358
- <sup>19</sup> — Treatment of cardiac failure with rice diet. history of patient with myocardial aneurysm. *North Carolina M J* 1941 8 128
- <sup>20</sup> KISCH B *Strophanthin*. New York Brooklyn Medical Press 1944
- <sup>21</sup> LEBOY G V AND SNIDER S S The sudden death of patients with few symptoms of heart disease. *J A M A* 1941 117 2019
- <sup>22</sup> LIBMAN F In discussion of A review of 18 months experience with total ablation of the thyroid for angina pectoris and congestive failure by BLUMGART H I, BERLIN D D, DAVIS D, RISEMAN J E F AND WEINSTEIN A A. *J A M A* 1935 104 17
- <sup>23</sup> LINDNER E AND KATZ L N Papaverine hydrochloride and ventricular fibrillation. *Am J Physiol* 1941 133 155
- <sup>24</sup> LOFWE L Anticoagulant therapy with heparin. Pitkin menstruum in thromboembolic disease. *Am J Med* 1947 3 447
- <sup>25</sup> MCGACHERN C G, SMITH F H AND MANNING G W The effects of intravenous injection of papaverine hydrochloride upon the mortality resulting from sudden occlusion of coronary arteries in dogs. *Am Heart J* 1941 21 25
- <sup>26</sup> MILLER H R The use of drugs in oil intravenously. *Tr Coll Phys of Philadelphia* 1920
- <sup>27</sup> — The velocity of blood flow in part of the pulmonary circulation. *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1934 31 942
- <sup>28</sup> — AND FELDMAN A Prolonged use of massive doses of urea in cardiac dropsy. *Arch Int Med* 1932 49 964
- <sup>29</sup> —, AND FURMAN M Pulmonary blood velocity in congestive heart failure. Velocity in pulmonary venous circuit. *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1935 32 728
- <sup>30</sup> NORRIS J C Myocardial Syphilis. *South M J* 1933 26 399
- <sup>31</sup> — Syphilis of the myocardium and coronary arteries. *J A M A* 1937 108 169
- <sup>32</sup> ORDYKE D F AND SELKURT E L A study of alleged intercoronary reflexes following coronary occlusion. *Am Heart J* 1948 36 73

of the sympathetic dilators Katz and Jochim<sup>12</sup> claim the coronaries are constricted by sympathetics

While it is highly probable that the sympathetic (adrenergic) division dilates the coronary vessels it constricts nearly all other vascular territories including the vast cutaneous vascular bed. It is commonly held that by way of exception the splanchnic vessels as in shock for example are dilated while the peripheral circulation is constricted. But according to Tomb<sup>13</sup> in shock the splanchnic as well as the cutaneous vascular beds undergo constriction the skeletal vessels becoming dilated. Much further study is needed to confirm these points. However if it were an accepted fact that the coronaries are dilated by sympathetic nerves it would permit the interesting hypothesis that these vessels are endowed with a means of remaining open and filled during a generalized sympathetic hyperactivity characterized by wide spread vasoconstriction. Wenckebach entertained such a belief. It is however extremely likely that during such hyperactivity vagal coronary constrictors are brought into action and indeed become ascendant in their influence over coming the effect of sympathetic dilatation. Or it may be conceived that the activity of the coronary sympathetic dilators becomes excessive and eventually weak or paralyzed whereupon by default as it were vasoconstriction without or with vagal constriction takes place. This latter mechanism is exemplified in the behavior of peripheral small blood vessels (p. 80).

All these nervous influences on the coronary vessels and the heart are mediated through efferent pathways. The vessels also possess an afferent supply of sympathetic and vagal fibers. The sympathetic afferent fibers are the main pathways for transmitting pain from the heart into consciousness and to interrupt these pathways various surgical attacks have been developed. These surgical methods do not attack pain or the conditions responsible for pain they merely intercept the pathways and so aim to prevent painful impulses from traveling along these routes.

A number of fundamental and practical questions arise in connection with the surgical and allied procedures in respect to anginal pain. (a) Do all or at least the bulk of cardiac and aortic afferent fibers converge upon one point or region or are there significant accessory afferent pathways? (b) Are all the cardiac afferent impulses carried to special zones in the spinal cord (or dorsal roots) i.e. to the left Th 1 to Th 4 levels only? (c) Can it be that anginal pain is conveyed into consciousness without the intervention of nerve pathways? These questions bear upon a critical evaluation of the surgical attacks that have been proposed.

(a) Do all or at least the bulk of cardio aortic afferent fibers converge upon one point or region? Nearly all these fibers converge in the upper portion of the thoracic sympathetic trunk and then pass over the left upper transverse loops (white rami communicantes) into corresponding posterior roots which in turn



## CHAPTER XVII

# Surgical Treatment

### I Neurosurgery and Paravertebral Block

#### ANATOMIC AND PHYSIOLOGIC CONSIDERATIONS

FROM the preceding chapters the reader will realize that anginal pain is an expression of autonomic disturbance, often with a predominant emphasis of the sympathetic system and that the pain is transmitted chiefly, if not wholly, by sympathetic fibers. It is therefore not surprising that most surgical attempts at the cessation and prevention of cardiac pain have been directed to breaking these sympathetic routes.

Basing their approach to the problem of heart pain on the contention of Ranson,<sup>96</sup> Ranson and Billingsley,<sup>97</sup> Holmes and Ranson,<sup>44</sup> Danielopolu,<sup>17</sup> and others who claim that the superior sympathetic cardiac nerve contains a large group of efferent fibers exercising a constant tonic constrictive action on the coronary vessels, Coffey and Brown<sup>18</sup> limited their operation to severing this nerve or removing its related ganglion, the superior cervical, and they reported good results. Kerr<sup>51</sup> also obtained relief and the prevention of further attacks of anginal pain from superior cervical ganglionectomy. By ostensibly blocking the stream of efferent impulses to the coronary vessels these investigators believe they averted spasm of these vessels. On the other hand, Richardson and White<sup>99</sup> as well as White<sup>11</sup> obtained poor results from this operation and abandoned the procedure.

Clinicians speak of spasm of the coronary vessels in man but this is not an acceptable concept to all physiologists. Indeed there is no unanimity of agreement on the mechanism of the nervous regulation of these vessels (p. 94). Pharmacologic studies are often conflicting in the same species. The coronary vessels of cold blooded forms, the tortoise for example (Drury and Smith<sup>100</sup> Drury and Sumbal<sup>101</sup>), appear to possess an arrangement opposite to that of mammals, namely, vasodilatation is vagal and vasoconstriction sympathetic. The investigations in mammals are contradictory but in the main point to vagal constriction and sympathetic dilatation. Clinical observations favor the existence of sympathetic vasoconstrictor activity and an embryologic basis helps strengthen this point of view (Ranson<sup>96</sup>). The consensus however leans toward a vagal constrictor influence over the coronaries in man and to a vasodilator action by sympathetics. Physiologists like Anrep and co-workers<sup>1-4</sup> Hochrein,<sup>39-40</sup> Rein,<sup>95</sup> Wiggers<sup>1-7</sup> while not oblivious to the importance of the sympathetic dilators, emphasize the significance of the vagal constrictors. Others, Greene<sup>24-27</sup> Hinrichsen and Ivy<sup>28</sup> stress the predominant tonic action

the entire task of afferent conduction. The failure of these operations could thus be accounted for without invoking the existence of afferent fibers in the ventral spinal roots. Clinical observations also support these criticisms. For instance, visceral pain, tabetic or anginal is not abolished sometimes until the excision of posterior dorsal roots is wide and in some cases bilateral (Davis<sup>19</sup>). Not only only rhizotomy and chordotomy but all other surgical approaches to stopping anginal and other visceral pain take on a new implication when viewed against the knowledge that visceral organs possess a diffuse and multiple arrangement of afferent fibers reaching all or most of the thoracic dorsal roots.

(c) The third and last question is without the practical connotation of the other two. It is nevertheless in some ways a challenge to our comprehension of the physiology of anginal pain. The question is—*is it possible that anginal and other visceral pain occurs without the intervention of nerve pathways?* Chemical substances more especially hormonal agents may play a role and perhaps also processes that are analogous to those of electrical induction a commonplace in the realm of physics. On the basis of the knowledge available today we would be tempted to hold that any pain conceived to exist outside the anatomic pathways of the nervous system in strong likelihood would be very diffuse and probably lack the sharpness and other special qualities that characterize focused or localized pain. However this argument would have little force against any weight of future evidence that pain travels by means other than nerve fibers.

### 1 SYMPATHETOMY

François-Franck<sup>20</sup> realized that the cervical sympathetic nerves transmit painful impulses from the heart into the central nervous system and as early as 1899 he suggested that division of these nerves would stop anginal pain. The suggestion lay dormant for 14 years. No one had enough interest or courage to put it to the test until 1916 when Jonnesco<sup>21-22</sup> of Bucharest later with Gomoiu<sup>23</sup> brought complete relief to some anginal sufferers by removing cervical sympathetic ganglia and nerves rather widely on both sides. Despite complications and fatalities (six of the nine cases were lost) the feasibility of a surgical attack on anginal pain was demonstrated. From then on various types of cervical sympathetomy were elaborated. These gave relief in some cases but unfavorable postoperative consequences and a high mortality rate were deterrents to a wider trial (Bruning<sup>24</sup> Danielopolu<sup>25</sup> Kappis<sup>26</sup> Kummel<sup>27</sup> Jeth<sup>28</sup> and Tuffer<sup>29</sup>).

Coffey and Brown<sup>30</sup> urged that removing a smaller portion of the cervical sympathetic system and on one side would circumvent these untoward results. This appealed to Cutler and Levine<sup>31</sup> Leriche and Fontaine<sup>32-33</sup> White<sup>34-35</sup> and others.

Danielopolu<sup>25</sup> worked out an extensive technic of his own sparing the stellate ganglion but cutting all the afferent pathways from the cardio aortic region to the central nervous system. He performed the operation in two stages. At the

enter the dorsal grey matter of the cord. Theoretically, at least, this zone of convergence, i.e., upper white rami with their corresponding posterior roots, aptly called a 'bottle neck' by White,<sup>11</sup> would seem to be the strategic locality of choice for the severance at one blow of nearly all cardio-aortic afferent fibers, and a number of methods for the surgical relief of anginal pain have, therefore, aimed at this region. Unfortunately, success has not always attended the attempts designed to break these pathways at this point. The failures, we believe, were due to the fact that the operations, no matter how well executed technically, left intact a number and variety of accessory afferent pathways and these (Chapter XI), although ordinarily of secondary significance, were able to carry the burden of afferent conduction. For this reason, in our opinion, even after fairly extensive surgical excision or obliteration of the upper white rami or contiguous nearby nerve structures, cardio-aortic pain in some patients persisted or underwent a change in quality or intensity or penetrated into new localities. When, however, important accessory afferent pathways were presumably absent or inadequate to transmit and register anginal pain, blocking this 'bottle neck' area frequently was brilliantly successful.

(b) The unsuccessful results from surgical intervention raise another question related to the first one in some ways. Is the entry of all visceral afferent sensations of which anginal pain is an example always and predominantly limited to one small portion of the spinal cord, i.e., for the heart and aorta the left T1 to T4 levels? In the case of the heart and aorta, are there exceptional cases with a wider and more extensive series of entry fibers into the spinal cord? (The afferent impulses carried by the vagal system into the medulla and higher levels of the brain are not part of this discussion for the moment nor those impulses again in the vagal system which may reach the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion.)

Important experimental studies on other viscera bear on this query. The investigations of Schrager and Ivy<sup>10</sup> and of Davis and his collaborators<sup>10-11</sup> and particularly those of Ashkenaz<sup>6</sup> already quoted in Chapter XI, indicate that the gallbladder for example through its splanchnic innervation sends afferent fibers into all or nearly all the thoracic posterior roots of the right side and into a large number on the left side also. This signifies that nearly all (for practical purposes we may say all) the thoracic segments of the spinal cord are bilateral recipients of visceral afferent impulses. Consequently the destruction of upper thoracic white rami or upper dorsal roots would still permit the entry of visceral afferent impulses into the spinal cord through intact lower thoracic dorsal roots and the reverse would also be true namely upper roots would function if the lower were destroyed. This chain of events Ashkenaz<sup>6</sup> duplicated experimentally and, with sound logic he suggested that partial rhizotomy (Loerster,<sup>30</sup> Lehmann,<sup>63</sup> Wartenberg<sup>116</sup>) or chordotomy (Loerster and Gage<sup>11</sup>), performed at a selective level of the cord were open to the criticism that extra-spinal afferent fibers in the sympathetic trunk were left unharmed to take over

A method proposed by Raney<sup>20</sup> interrupts the communication to the neuraxis by surgery instead of alcohol block. He severed the rami communicantes 2-3 and the sympathetic trunk between levels Th 5 and 6 on the left side. Relief from pain was striking, he claimed.

Coffey and Brown<sup>15</sup> obtained relief of anginal pain by excising just the superior cervical ganglion. Their book cites eight cases with death in two and mentions other investigators who reported on this comparatively simple procedure (Bacon<sup>2</sup> Holmes<sup>10</sup> Kerr,<sup>11,12</sup> Lambert<sup>13</sup> Marvin<sup>14,16</sup> Mortensen<sup>17-19</sup>). Since the superior cardiac nerve is not known to contain afferent fibers (Fitzgworth<sup>21</sup> Huber<sup>22</sup> Ranson<sup>23</sup> Ranson and Billingsley<sup>24</sup> Holmes and Ranson<sup>25</sup> Langley<sup>26-31</sup>) the relief obtained by removing the superior cervical ganglion or cutting its nerve was explained (Ranson and Billingsley, Langley, Holmes and Ranson, Danielopolu, Kerr) on the basis of severing efferent constrictor fibers to the coronary vessels, thereby freeing the vessels from a constant constrictor influence (Coffey and Brown). But there is doubt of the existence of such constrictor fibers in the superior cardiac nerve and even if interrupted bilaterally other efferent fibers would still be left undisturbed in the middle inferior and posterior sympathetic cardiac nerves.

Cutting the middle cardiac nerve alone is an unsatisfactory attack because the nerve is uncommon and when present contains a comparatively limited number of efferent or afferent fibers. Dividing the inferior cardiac nerve alone is also open to criticism (p. 68) since there is doubt of its coronary constrictor function. However since the middle inferior and posterior cardiac nerves contain afferent cardiosensory fibers, severing these afferent nerves is indicated if the goal is interruption of afferent pathways which convey pain to the neuraxis. Except in the case of the posterior cardiac nerves the interruption is better carried out by cutting the white rami at Th 1 to 4.

## 2. EXTIRPATION OF THE STELLATE GANGLION

Leriche<sup>32</sup> believed that pain in the heart may be produced by reflex from the stellate ganglion and he brought relief by injecting a local anesthetic into the ganglion or extirpating it. But before him Jonnesco<sup>33</sup> advocated its removal as a means of suppressing painful impulses from the heart, coronary vessels and the aorta. Jonnesco's physiologic basis for ablation of the ganglion was open to objections. In the first place although afferent fibers would no longer transmit pain from the coronary vessels the vessels would still be subject to vagal constriction with resultant pain. In the second place the eradication of this ganglion needlessly mutilated a large number of important efferent nerves, accelerators to the heart, adjustors of sweating and pilomotor acts to the upper limbs and head region, regulators of the iris and the muscle of Muller. Danielopolu<sup>34</sup> protested against indiscriminate injury to these efferent nerves and he stressed the danger especially after bilateral stellate ganglionectomy of robbing the heart of its accelerator control and leaving it a prey to the unchecked hyper-

first, which was sometimes alone sufficient to alleviate and prevent anginal pain, he severed the sympathetic trunk directly above the stellate ganglion. In addition, he cut the communicating rami from this ganglion to the sixth, seventh, eighth cervical and first thoracic nerves, taking care to divide these rami (on both sides if necessary) close to the spinal cord in order to avoid injuring a similar ramus that emerges from the first thoracic component of the stellate ganglion and connects with the second thoracic intercostal nerve, this lower ramus occasionally carries cardio accelerator fibers. He also divided the vertebral nerve.\* The following structures were then divided at this first stage: the cervical trunk above the stellate ganglion; the connections between this ganglion and the lower cervical and first thoracic nerves; the descending cardiac branches from the superior and middle cervical sympathetic ganglia and the cervical vagal branches, also the branches from the superior and inferior laryngeal nerves and those from the vagal trunk and the depressor nerve, when the latter exists or can be found.

After an interval of time, the second stage was performed if pain recurred or remained unrelieved. The upper cervical sympathetic trunk, including the superior and middle cervical ganglia, was removed thus severing the connections with the upper five cervical nerves and in addition the thoracic cardiac branches of the vagus were divided. Danielopolu<sup>17</sup> stressed the care necessary to avoid injury to the vagus trunk and to the superior and inferior laryngeal nerves; he recommended the two stage operation for the right side if pain persisted after left side intervention.

This two stage procedure has been included not necessarily because we recommend it or feel it possesses greater merit compared to others but rather because it constitutes a realization that *multiple* afferent pathways which connect the heart and aorta to the spine and brain must be interrupted. While the existence of afferent fibers has not been established in all the structures Danielopolu severs, the vertebral nerve for instance, final judgment on this point and others too should be deferred until complete electrophysiologic investigations have been carried out on all the nerves in question.

Yates and Trehwella<sup>18</sup> culled the results of 44 authors who performed 138 neurectomies. Relief was complete in 44.5 per cent, partial in 27 per cent. The immediate mortality was low if cases of luetic aortitis were excluded.

\* According to François Franck<sup>19</sup> the vertebral nerve contains sensory fibers. Langley<sup>10-11</sup> however, a close student of the sympathetic system, maintained there was no appreciable number of sensory fibers in the vertebral nerve and to quote his own words, he explained "the reflex movement which François Franck obtained on stimulating the end of the nerve passing to the lower cervical as due to his not having separated it from the small nerve from the seventh (or seventh or eighth) cervical running to the underlying longus coli muscle. Langley saw no object in severing this nerve in the hope that sensory fibers were cut except for Danielopolu and Cino Pieri<sup>20</sup> whom the former quotes in his book. The vertebral nerve is hardly ever included in sympathectomy for cardiac pain.

41 per cent. The element of great apprehension and fear marked before operation was allayed or abolished. White and Bland<sup>128</sup> have advocated upper thoracic ganglionectomy for unilateral anginal pain if the patient is in only fair condition and has fair cardiac reserve. But if his condition is better and the reserve fairly good they favor bilateral laminectomy with root resection.

### 5 SECTION OF THE POSTERIOR SPINAL ROOTS (RHIZOTOMY)

The partial rhizotomy performed by Foerster<sup>28</sup> Lehmann<sup>42</sup> Wattenberg<sup>114</sup> and the allied procedure of chordotomy carried out by Foerster and Gage<sup>11</sup> have already been alluded to also the objections raised to these procedures (p. 307). The operation of rhizotomy—section of the posterior spinal roots was claimed by Davis<sup>19</sup> to give complete relief from anginal pain for a long time. He divided the first six thoracic posterior roots. Although this type of surgery has the obvious advantage of being carried out under direct vision, this is easily outweighed by the hazard attached to an extensive operation in subjects who have as a rule myocardial and coronary artery disease. The objections to rhizotomy voiced by Ashkenaz (p. 302) also are pertinent.

The early impetus to neurosurgery in connection with anginal pain was responsible for procedures which led to poor results and even disaster. These were soon modified or abandoned and two comparatively safe methods developed: (1) cutting the depressor nerve and (2) alcohol block of the upper thoracic sympathetic ganglia.

### 6 CUTTING THE DEPRESSOR NERVE

The depressor nerve is identified in lower mammals but not in man in whom its existence as a separate strand is disputed. A number of earlier workers believed they succeeded in cutting this nerve in man and as proof they pointed to the clinical relief which followed the operation. The general belief is that the nerve eludes recognition. Severing the depressor nerve has been studied by Borchard<sup>11</sup> Danielopolu<sup>17</sup> Ippinger and Hofer<sup>74</sup> Hofer<sup>11</sup> Jonnesco<sup>45</sup> Odermatt<sup>46</sup> Wenckebach<sup>119</sup>.

### 7 PARAVERTEBRAL BLOCK

At the suggestion of von Bergmann Laeven<sup>55</sup> in 1922 performed paravertebral block for heart pain; the outcome of this attempt is not known. That same year Kappis<sup>5</sup> suggested the use of novocain injection in the neighborhood of the lower portion of the cervical spine to interrupt sympathetic and vagal fibers which convey cardiac pain. Brunn and Mandl<sup>14</sup> utilizing novocain injection reported 6 cases in 1924.

The following year Mandl<sup>72-3</sup> published his results in 16 additional cases and in his monograph of 1926<sup>78</sup> he reported on another group of 20 cases. Of

activity of the vagus nerve, moreover, by obliterating important fibers with dilator action on the coronaries these vessels were deprived of their normal blood volume. The danger of leaving the heart exposed to the uncontrolled influence of the vagus was voiced also by Spiegel<sup>106</sup> and by Braeucker.<sup>1</sup> These fears, however, are not always borne out by practical experience although irritation or injury to the stellate ganglion has led to disaster.

Danielopolu<sup>17</sup> describes Leriche's experience of sudden and intense pulmonary edema immediately after injection of the stellate ganglion. Laubry and Heim de Balsac<sup>6</sup> also recorded sudden acute pulmonary edema followed in a few minutes by death while injecting a local anesthetic solution into the stellate ganglion. Pletnew<sup>21</sup> had two cases that developed immediate and intense cardiac collapse, after injecting alcohol into the stellate ganglion, and Pletnew cites Braeucker as having caused a similar untoward effect. These very serious and highly dramatic reactions Danielopolu attributes to a sudden failure of the left ventricle brought on by a marked loss in the contractility of this chamber as a result of paralysis of cardiac sympathetic fibers. This paralysis together with that of coronary vasodilators greatly reduced the blood flow to the myocardium with acute myocardial insufficiency and even death as consequences.

The relief obtained by removing the stellate ganglion or for that matter the superior cervical ganglion seemed to strengthen the concept that the conduction of pain from the heart to the cord may take place independently of the somatic sensory system. Spiegel<sup>106-108</sup> proposed that sensory somatic impulses may play a role in maintaining the excitability of the sensory visceral elements of the posterior horn of the cord. After cutting the intercostal nerves and the brachial plexus, thus causing degeneration of the somatic sensory cells of the spinal ganglion, Spiegel and Hashimoto<sup>107</sup> produced pain by stimulating the cardio-aortic pain fibers in the stellate ganglion.

### 3. INTERRUPTION OF THE POSTERIOR CARDIAC NERVES

These nerves or rami run directly across the posterior mediastinum from the 1st, 3rd and 4th sympathetic thoracic ganglia to the cardiac plexuses (Kuntz and Morehouse<sup>27</sup>). The fibers arise from these ganglia below the stellate ganglion and carry visceral afferent and efferent fibers. The efferent fibers act as accessory accelerators to the heart while the afferent fibers serve as an accessory pathway for anginal pain (Fig. 37). These fibers are not disturbed by removing the stellate ganglion by any neurosurgical procedure carried out cephalad to the first dorsal level. Thus posterior cardiac nerves are able to convey pain to the neuraxis when the sympathetic cardiac branches have been severed.

### 4. UPPER THORACIC PARAVERTEBRAL GANGLIOMECTOMY

Lindgren and Olivecrona<sup>1</sup> resected the upper four thoracic ganglia including the stellate for severe cardiac pain. They reported on 71 patients. Complete relief was obtained in 44 per cent and severe symptoms were made milder in

41 per cent. The element of great apprehension and fear marked before operation was allayed or abolished. White and Bland<sup>14</sup> have advocated upper thoracic ganglionectomy for unilateral anginal pain if the patient is in a fairly fair condition and has fair cardiac reserve. But if his condition is better and the reserve fairly good they favor bilateral laminectomy with root resection.

### 5 SECTION OF THE POSTERIOR SPINAL ROOTS (RHIZOTOMY)

The partial rhizotomy performed by Foerster<sup>15</sup> Lehmann<sup>16</sup> Wartenberg<sup>17</sup> and the allied procedure of chordotomy carried out by Foerster and Gager<sup>18</sup> have already been alluded to. Also the objections raised to these procedures (p. 307). The operation of rhizotomy—section of the posterior spinal roots—was claimed by Davis<sup>19</sup> to give complete relief from anginal pain for a long time. He divided the first six thoracic posterior roots. Although this type of surgery has the obvious advantage of being carried out under direct vision, this is easily outweighed by the hazard attached to an extensive operation in subjects who have as a rule, myocardial and coronary artery disease. The objections to rhizotomy voiced by Ashkenaz (p. 302) also are pertinent.

The early impetu to neurosurgery in connection with anginal pain was responsible for procedures which led to poor results and even disaster. These were soon modified or abandoned and two comparatively safe methods developed: (1) cutting the depressor nerve and (2) alcohol block of the upper thoracic sympathetic ganglia.

### 6 CUTTING THE DEPRESSOR NERVE

The depressor nerve is identified in lower mammals but not in man in whom its existence as a separate strand is disputed. A number of earlier workers believed they succeeded in cutting this nerve in man and as proof they pointed to the clinical relief which followed the operation. The general belief is that the nerve eludes recognition. Severing the depressor nerve has been studied by Borchard<sup>20</sup> Danilopolu<sup>21</sup> Lippinger and Hofer<sup>22</sup> Hofer<sup>23</sup> Jonnesco<sup>24-25</sup> Odernatt<sup>26</sup> Wenckebach<sup>27</sup>

### 7 PARAVERTEBRAL BLOCK

At the suggestion of von Bergmann Laewen<sup>28</sup> in 1922 performed paravertebral block to heart pain. The outcome of this attempt is not known. That same year Hay<sup>29</sup> used the use of novocain injection in the neighborhood of the lower portion of the cervical plexus to interrupt sympathetic and vagal fibers which convey cardiac pain. Dunn and Mandl<sup>30</sup> utilizing novocain injection reported 6 cases in 1924.

The following year Mandl<sup>31</sup> published his results in 16 additional cases and in his monograph of 1926, he reported on another group of 20 cases. (1)



these 20 cases, 11 were permanently improved, 7 had a "satisfactory" result 2 were failures, and one died four days after the injection Mandl used novocain solution and injected the Th 1 to 4 levels on the left side His work placed the method on a firm basis

The procedure was modified by Swetlow<sup>109</sup> in 1926, he used strong alcohol solution to produce degeneration of the sympathetic fibers, introducing novocain beforehand as an anesthetic Five years after his first publication Swetlow<sup>109-110</sup> gave his results in 22 cases relief was obtained in 18 patients and no patient died after injection he injected as low as the 9th dorsal root in some instances The alcohol method of paravertebral block was soon taken up in this country and abroad

Reports in this country appeared from Richardson and White,<sup>99</sup> Mixer and White<sup>101</sup> Levy and Moore<sup>70-1</sup> White<sup>1-3</sup> in 1936 stated that in about 70 per cent of his cases he had been able to procure permanent relief from anginal pain Failures in 30 per cent of the cases were attributed to errors in selecting suitable cases and to faulty technic \* A group of 30 cases studied by Levy and reported by Murray<sup>79</sup> showed considerable relief in 40 per cent, complete failure in 50 per cent and the rest unsuccessful Publications from abroad were in practical agreement (Woodbridge<sup>1-3</sup> duBoise<sup>1</sup> Ilthow,<sup>2</sup> Pletnew<sup>94</sup> Ruth<sup>101</sup> Berard<sup>10</sup> Ierliche<sup>64</sup> Paraf and Drevfus Laloyer,<sup>90</sup> Jessen,<sup>47</sup> O'Shaughnessy<sup>1-49</sup>)

The later publications by White<sup>1-3</sup> Levy and Moore,<sup>71</sup> Perlow,<sup>81</sup> Mandl,<sup>1</sup> Grant<sup>32</sup> and White and Blind<sup>16</sup> provided a still larger basis for evaluating paravertebral alcohol block In the main the later results agreed with those obtained earlier White<sup>1-3</sup> and White and Smithwick<sup>1-3</sup> found that of 67 cases with intractable angina pectoris complete or nearly complete relief of pain was obtained in 52 per cent and severe attacks were reduced to a mild form in 35 per cent, the unsatisfactory results amounted to 9.5 per cent and 6.7 per cent died within two weeks of injection The latter authors stated "in our experience failure to relieve precordial pain and arm pain by this method has never been encountered in the presence of signs of an effective paralysis of the upper thoracic sympathetic fibers i.e., vasodilatation and sudomotor paralysis of the upper extremities and Horner's sign" Horner's sign, according to them is not essential to success but paralysis of the nerves and sweat glands of the face and upper extremities is essential They were able to observe clear cut Horner's signs in less than one half of their available records The patients who retained a hot dry hand were permanently relieved of cardiac pain and attacks of pain invariably returned when the hand became moist within a few days

In a follow up of available cases Levy and Moore obtained permanent relief in 47.5 per cent and some relief in a total of 77.5 per cent and 22.5 per cent

\* The persistence of accessory afferent fibers capable of taking over afferent conduction we believe is another explanation

of the cases had no improvement. Anginal pain with radiation in a number of instances returned later into the identical territory and dermatomic zone temporarily relieved by the alcohol block. Perlow<sup>71</sup> in 1942 reviewed a series of 22 advanced cases that had received no relief before paravertebral block was instituted: one third of the group had constant pain. He was able to get complete relief in 7 cases, partial relief in 9, and no improvement in 6 cases.

From 1921 on Mandl<sup>72-73</sup> employed novocain as well as alcohol for paravertebral block. He published a group of 20 cases treated between 1940 and 1944 of which 16 received novocain and alcohol at the same time. Ten of the 16 were strikingly improved and returned to work. 2 died, and the others were slightly or questionably improved. Mandl has continued to use novocain alone or novocain and alcohol in paravertebral block in a large number of cases and believes that the value of the procedure is established. The results are good in about 65 to 75 per cent of his material.<sup>73</sup>

White and Bland<sup>74</sup> found that of 15 patients treated by paravertebral block injection with alcohol, 56 per cent were entirely or almost completely relieved of pain on the side of injection, about 21 per cent showed fair results, 8 per cent derived no adequate help, and 8 per cent died as a direct result of the procedure.

#### *Pathological Effect of Alcohol*

To throw light upon the puzzling recurrence of anginal pain in the same territory and dermatomic areas temporarily relieved by alcohol block, Merrick<sup>75</sup> carefully investigated the degeneration and recovery of nerve fibers following alcohol injection into the sympathetic trunks and ganglia. He used cats and injected the alcohol (95 per cent) into the ganglion or the ramus directly or by the established paravertebral approach. Injection into a ganglion or close to it caused a permanent block of all the postganglionic fibers which originate from it: the ganglionic cells were destroyed and after 35 days only a connective tissue scar remained. Injecting alcohol into the ramus dissolved the myelin sheath of the nerves and the continuity of the axon was disrupted. In about three months myelin regeneration could be noted; a month later function was restored in the preganglionic fiber.

He came to the conclusion that alcohol injection into the ramus may produce temporary block whereas complete surgical section produces permanent block.\* Since alcohol infiltration of the ganglion will destroy the cells of the postganglionic fibers, a permanent and complete block of the nerves to the heart and the aorta may be accomplished by paravertebral injection, but this is less likely to be the case when the rami are injected. In the latter instance paralysis of the sympathetic nerves may prove to be transient.

According to White and Smithwick, however, cutting the rami may be followed by regeneration within a space of time; resecting the ganglia is therefore preferred.

*Site of Injection*

The site of injection is posteriorly and over the left upper four or five thoracic sympathetic ganglia. Injection below this level offers no special technical difficulties, but the upper cervical ganglia are inaccessible. For pain that is entirely or predominantly dextral the alcohol is introduced on the right side, and in bilateral radiations the treatment is bilateral.

Two suggestions have been proposed as aids in selecting the levels for treatment: (1) a careful preliminary survey of the epicritic and protopathic reactions of dermatomic skin zones to uncover the spinal cord levels that may be involved and (2) infiltration with local anesthetic solutions into selected thoracic sympathetic ganglia to distinguish the skin areas which receive referred pain from those which do not.

*Selection of Subject*

The selection of suitable cases requires good clinical judgment and experience. It has been stated that the most suitable cases are those of unrelieved and intractable anginal pain with little or no structural cardiovascular damage. This would narrow the usefulness of this method. The method, however, has not been limited to such cases. The anginal sufferer is more than likely to show cardiovascular alterations and sequelae which result from this damage. Structural changes, therefore, have been no strong deterrent to instituting paravertebral alcohol block. Neither heart muscle injury, unless recent and fresh, congestive heart failure, nor a very restricted cardiac reserve have been considered contraindications. Indeed, it is in this type of case that relief of pain may be the greatest boon because surcease from pain may protect the patient from progressive exhaustion and so turn the tide. Suffering intractable pain these patients will submit willingly to any proffered aid for they have little to lose but their unrelieved torment. Rheumatic activity and syphilis are no contraindications.

*Complications*

The postoperative complications of paravertebral alcohol block are as follows: pneumothorax from inadvertent puncturing of the pleura or lung; pleurisy or bronchopneumonia for the same reason; and transient but sometimes prolonged and troublesome intercostal alcoholic neuritis lasting weeks and months. From any of the proposed neurosurgical procedures as well as from alcohol block a number of untoward results and complications have been reported: (a) Horner's syndrome, fully developed about 48-72 hours after operation; (b) clinical signs and symptoms due to the interruption of sympathetic fibers to peripheral structures: i.e. homolateral or bilateral suppression of sweating of the face, or the shoulder, neck, arm or pectoral region; paresthesias, flushing and hyperemia from loss of tone of blood vessels in any of these areas (this flushing

phenomenon may last two to three months) muscular weakness or atrophy of muscles in these regions increase in the skin temperature as much as 1 degree F appearing four to eight hours postoperatively and lasting two to three weeks, (c) bradycardia (d) the persistence or the initial appearance of intense pain, homolateral as a rule and in any of the regions already mentioned (brachial

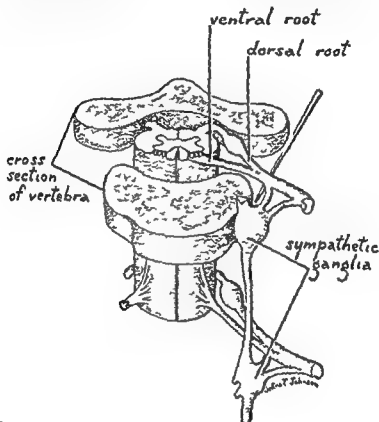


FIG. 63.—The Relations of the Thoracic Sympathetic Ganglia to the Dorsal and Ventral Roots of Spinal Nerves at the Same Levels

neuralgia (severe pain from chewing) and (e) syncopal sensations in the epigastrium or sensations of marked cardiac weakness.

The neurologic consequences are not difficult to understand if one visualizes the anatomic relations of the sympathetic afferent fibers in the white and grey rami with respect to the sympathetic ganglionated chain and to the posterior and anterior (ventral) roots of the spinal nerves. Figure 63 illustrates the relative positions of these structures within the retropleural space surrounded by loose connective tissue. The sympathetic ganglia and their rami are situated

at least three quarters to one inch distant to the spinal roots and are separated from the latter by fibers of intercostal muscle as well as by retropleural connective tissue. Furthermore, the posterior and anterior divisions of the spinal nerves lie within the intervertebral foramina, and as these roots emerge to form a common nerve trunk the nerve structures are still enveloped and protected by a prolongation of spinal cord covering. The roots, therefore, may escape the effects of alcohol. However, this is not certain. Clinically, at least, paralysis of arm muscles innervated by the Th 1 and Th 2 components of the brachial plexus is not encountered. Intercostal muscles do not seem to be paralyzed, but paralysis may elude ordinary clinical detection. The instillation and diffusion of alcohol reaches the sympathetic ganglia and destroys (a) the preganglionic (myelinated) efferent fibers and the afferent fibers in the white rami and (b) the postganglionic (unmyelinated) efferent fibers in the grey rami.

### 8 OTHER METHODS

Two other methods have been recommended for the relief or abolition of referred anginal pain. Both methods, as we have remarked in Chapter III, have a common principle, namely, the reduction in the quantity of impulses in the somatic afferent neuron concerned with the reference of pain. The total number of afferent molecular charges brought to the synaptic 'articulation' between somatic and visceral afferent neurones is reduced sufficiently to prevent the manifestations of radiation or reference of pain.

The first method consists in anesthetizing the skin area of involved dermatomes (Weiss and Davis<sup>117</sup>). The second method originally recommended by Danielopolu and Hristide in 1922 and 1923<sup>118</sup> and again reported by Danielopolu<sup>117</sup> is aimed at the intercostal nerves, usually the left Th 1 to Th 4. These nerves are infiltrated with a local anesthetic or alcohol or severed completely. The physiologic basis for these methods, especially with regard to the second procedure, has been attacked by Spiegel and Hashimoto.<sup>107</sup>

The reflex of paroxysmal anginal pain has been treated by Rinzier and Travell<sup>100</sup> by local anesthetization of trigger zones in the pectoral muscles.

When good success in relieving pain has been achieved, one need not lament the loss of pain as a danger signal. The abolition of pain has advantages which outweigh the value of retaining pain as a warning or deterrent. Moreover, almost any one manifestation as much as any other of the upheaval that results from the mass action of the entire autonomic system, may carry the same weight as a danger or warning signal if properly evaluated.

## II The Artificial Vascularization of the Heart

The heart, rich in nutrient blood vessels, is able in the course of years to call upon small unused channels to help nourish the myocardium altered by obliterative and other vascular changes as in the aging heart. The adjustment between circulation and slowly advancing decreascent changes of heart muscle

is very gradual. In the face however of a sudden disaster as for example the occurrence of a sudden occlusion of a large coronary trunk the heart cannot obtain urgently needed blood in amounts sufficient to meet the emergency induced by the sudden deprivation of blood in the infarcted area. The extra coronary system which exists cannot enlarge reflexly to transport enough blood to the injured muscle. It requires months and years to grow collateral coronary channels.

The extracoronary channels comprise two sets of tiny vessels. One set embedded in the fat at the base of the heart is made up of an extensive anastomosis of auricular blood vessels and coronary twigs with pericardio-phrenic branches of the internal mammary arteries and the anterior mediastinal pericardial bronchial superior and inferior phrenic intercostal and esophageal branches of the aorta. Despite its extent it can carry as already indicated little blood and hardly deserves to be designated as a vascular system. Yet it may become expanded and enlarged enough to transport fairly good amounts of blood to the myocardium. According to Hudson Moritz and Wearn<sup>24</sup> this may occur when the coronary system is extensively sclerosed.

A second group of extracoronary anastomoses can arise in adhesions which form between the surface of the heart and the pericardium (Moritz Hudson and Organ<sup>25</sup>). The heart normally glides smoothly within and against its pericardial envelope but after pericarditis numerous blood channels appear in the newly formed adhesions. Thorel surmised that such cardio-pericardial vessels might act as an accessory blood supply for the heart.

It occurred to Beck and his co-workers to investigate whether these groups of inconsequential vessels could be vastly multiplied and expanded. Animal experimentation convinced them<sup>2-9</sup> that these channels could be artificially developed into an extensive collateral vascular supply. Various grafts were utilized fibrous pericardium pericardial fat omentum brought up through a diaphragmatic aperture or a pedicle of pectoral muscle the last held most promise. Within about three weeks vessel in the graft grew into the coronary vessels. These anastomoses could be augmented when the demands upon them were increased by various experimental methods i.e. shutting off coronary vessels etc. In short by a variety of ingenious experimental devices it was demonstrated that an extracoronary supply of sufficient size and number to function as a real compensatory system was possible (Beck Tich and Moritz<sup>26</sup>). Anastomoses in cardio-pericardial adhesions could be greatly increased by producing inflammatory reactions on the surface of the heart from irritation with foreign substances.

The essential aim of these investigations is summarized by Beck. Coronary occlusion is not a surgical stimulus but it can be effective in an indirect way. Catastrophe can be averted by a small quantity of blood delivered where the blood supply is deficient. By small quantity is meant that which could be considered as a blood bath—enough to preserve viability of muscle so that it will

remain as muscle, and to prevent ventricular fibrillation. If this crisis can be passed over so that the heart keeps on beating, then a good retrograde circulation can develop. This small quantity of blood can be provided by surgical methods—by grafts and by inflammation on the surface of the heart. The inflammatory agent that is best so far has been powdered asbestos. This produces a reaction of inflammation and opens intercoronary communications."

Applying the principles and methods elaborated in animals to human beings with coronary sclerosis he proceeded to increase the extracoronary channels, ordinarily small and insignificant and lying in the fat at the base of the heart and in cardiopericardial adhesions, and to establish a new and adequate arterial or arteriolar supply for the heart. The procedure was in some respects similar, as he himself pointed out, to the operation on the omentum for liver cirrhosis (Talma Morrison) except that arterial and not venous anastomoses were involved.

The epicardium of the heart was removed to permit grafts to come into direct contact with the coronary vessels. The pericardium was roughened to enable the pericardial fat receiving its blood supply from extracardial sources to grow onto the myocardium. He used later powdered beef bone on the surface of the heart to induce a low grade inflammatory reaction between the heart surface and the grafts on the heart and for a graft he fashioned a pedicle from the left pectoralis major muscle. The local use of procaine directly to the heart proved valuable, and drainage of the inflammation into the left pleural cavity was indispensable. Patients were considered suitable for operation if the heart had suffered a diminution in blood supply from occlusive coronary disease and if protracted medical measures had been of no avail to diminish the disability or the severe symptoms. Congestive heart failure was a contraindication.

Feil and Beck<sup>3</sup> reported that of thirteen patients followed for five months or longer postoperatively three were free of pain, required no drugs and had acquired an increased effort tolerance, nine had less pain, no increase in effort tolerance and needed medication from time to time, one patient exhibited some relief of pain and very slight increase in effort tolerance. All thirteen had benefited to some degree at least from the operation. An interesting feature was the marked emotional reaction with which operated subjects extolled the benefits of the operation. Sixteen patients were living and nine died, eight succumbing one week after operation. These statistics however should be appraised with the critical observation that while 50 per cent of the first twelve operated cases were fatal only 15.4 per cent of the subsequent thirteen cases died, and the last nine consecutive cases showed no mortality.

More recently, Beck has attempted to revascularize the heart by converting the coronary sinus into an artery<sup>4</sup>, dogs were used. After ligating the coronary sinus he anastomosed into it a tributary of the aorta, the carotid artery, performing an end to end or side to side anastomosis. He also employed in some instances, a graft of vein or artery as a connecting channel between the aorta

and the coronary sinus. Arterialization of the coronary sinus made it possible to ligate a major coronary artery in the dog with little or no mortality and with little or no infarction. Postoperative thrombosis did not intervene, as a rule.

Beck carried out arterialization of the coronary sinus in a 45 year old man with angina pectoris who was almost totally incapacitated. A segment of the left brachial artery was used for a graft. Although the anastomosis was successful, remaining patent even after death, the patient succumbed after twenty-four hours from a fresh myocardial infarction. Beck has since tried the procedure on four other patients.\*

Although arterialization of the coronary sinus seems to be feasible in dogs several important questions have been raised. These have a vital significance in connection with human subjects. For example, what are the incidence and dangers of postoperative thrombosis? What is the optimal effective blood flow through the new channel and how can the flow be controlled? Is the venous drainage from the myocardium deleteriously disturbed? What will be the eventual result of an arteriovenous fistula placed so close to the heart?

About the time when Beck made his first report on experimental revascularization of the heart, O. Shaugnessy et al.<sup>27-29</sup> turned to the same problem, developing vascular connections between the heart muscle and extracardiac vessels by the following measures: (a) producing cardio-pericardial adhesion by the intrapericardial introduction of a sterile aleuronate paste; (b) placing a pedicled omental graft in the pericardial sac and stimulating the production of adhesions between the omentum and heart with aleuronate; (c) grafting omentum to the outer surface of the pericardium after producing cardio-pericardial adhesions. In two cases, at least, collateral communications between the lung and the coronary circulation were established by grafting a lobe of lung to the myocardium. The clinical improvement by these procedures was notable. Of fifteen patients with angina pectoris, ten lost their anginal symptoms and were able to return to profitable work. Of five cardiac patients without angina, one died as a result of operation and one of the remaining four became symptom free.

Thompson<sup>11</sup> produced a successful collateral circulation in dogs by introducing sterile talc (hydrous magnesium silicate) into the pericardial sac. With Raisbeck, he recorded<sup>12</sup> the results on thirteen patients; four died, two showed moderate and seven marked improvement. Thompson later<sup>13</sup> stated the results were good to excellent in more than 40 per cent of a group of 38 patients and in four the results were less than 33 per cent improvement and therefore classified as poor.

#### BIBLIOGRAPHY

- ANDER, G. V. Regulation of coronary circulation. *Physiol. Rev.* 1926, 6: 596.  
 — Neue Untersuchungen über Physiologie und Pharmakologie der Kranzgefäße. *Arch. exp. Pharm.* 1925, 13: 119.



- <sup>1</sup> ANREP G V AND SEGALL H V The central and reflex regulation of the heart rate *J Physiol* 1926 61 215
- <sup>2</sup> —, AND — The regulation of the coronary circulation *Heart* 1926 13 239
- <sup>3</sup> ASHKENAZ D M An experimental analysis of centripetal visceral pathways based upon the visceropannicular reflex *Am J Physiol* 1937 120 581
- <sup>4</sup> BACON J H Left superior cervical sympathectomy under local anesthesia in angina pectoris *J A M A* 1923 81 2112
- <sup>5</sup> BECK C S The development of a new blood supply to the heart by operation *Ann Surg* 1935 102 801
- <sup>6</sup> — Further data on the establishment of a new blood supply to the heart by operation *J Thor Surg* 1936 5 604
- <sup>7</sup> — The coronary operation *Am Heart J* 1941 22 539
- <sup>8</sup> — Revascularization of the heart *Ann Surg* 1948 128 854
- <sup>9</sup> BECK C S TICHY V I AND MORITZ A R The production of a collateral circulation to the heart *Proc Soc Exp Biol & Med* 1934-35 32 759
- <sup>10</sup> BÉRARD M Les méthodes du traitement de l'angine de poitrine *Lyon Rev* 1931
- <sup>11</sup> BORCHARD A Quoted by Kappis M in *Diskussions Bemerkungen Das Schmerzproblem der Eingeweide* 46th Kongr Verhand d Dtschr Gesellsch F Chir 1972 *Arch f Klin Chir* 1922 121 188
- *Med Klin* 1923 19 1696
- Zur chirurgische Behandlung der Angina pectoris *Arch f Klin Chir* 1923 127 212
- <sup>12</sup> BRAEUCKER W Der Brustteil des vegetativen Nervensystems und seine klinisch chirurgische Bedeutung *Beitr z Klin Tuberk* 1927 66 1
- <sup>13</sup> BRUNING F Die operative behandlung der Angina pectoris durch Exstirpation des Halsbrust Sympathicus und Bemerkungen über die operative Behandlung der abnormen Blutdrucksteigerung *Klin Wschr* 1923 2 777
- <sup>14</sup> BRUNN F AND MANDEL F Die paravertebrale Injektion zur Bekämpfung visceraler Schmerzen *Wien Klin Wschr* 1924 37 511
- <sup>15</sup> COFFEY W B AND BROWN P K The surgical treatment of angina pectoris *Arch Int Med* 1923 31 200 1924 34 417
- <sup>16</sup> CUTLER E C AND LEVINE S A *Proc Inter State Post Grad Med Assembly of N Amer* 1933 229
- <sup>17</sup> DANIELOPOLU D L'angine de poitrine et l'angine abdominale *Paris, Masson et Cie* 1927
- <sup>18</sup> — AND HRISTIDE Recherches sur la sensibilité cardiaque Possibilité d'améliorer l'angine de poitrine par la résection des racines postérieures ou des nerfs spinaux *Compt rend Soc de biol* 1923 88 211 *Bull et mem Soc Med d Hôp de Paris* 1923 47 69
- <sup>19</sup> DAVIS L The surgical treatment of intractable pain *J A M A* 1933 101 1921
- <sup>20</sup> — HART J T AND CRAIG R D The pathways for visceral afferent impulses within the spinal cord *Surg Gyn & Obst* 1929 48 647
- <sup>21</sup> — POLLOCK L J AND STONE T T Visceral pain *Surg Gyn & Obst* 1932 55 418
- <sup>22</sup> DRURY A N AND SMITH F M Observations relating to the nerve supply of the coronary artery of the tortoise Pt I Direct observations of the artery *Heart* 1924 11 71
- <sup>23</sup> — AND SUMBAL J J Observations relating to the nerve supply of the coronary arteries of the tortoise *Heart* 1924 11 267
- <sup>24</sup> DU BOSE F G Therapeutic paravertebral alcohol block observations of its effect following its use in angina asthma and Raynaud's disease *Am J Surg* 1931 11 497
- <sup>25</sup> FERGUSON F H On a large fibred sensory supply of the thoracic and abdominal viscera *J Physiol* 1892 13 260

- \*EPPINGER H AND HOFER G Die Therapie der Gegenwart Wien Klin Wschr 1923 61  
 169  
 — and — Zur Pathogenese und Therapie der Angina pectoris Wien Klin Wschr  
 1923 36 334  
 \*FEIL H AND BECK C S Coronary sclerosis and angina pectoris J Thor Surg 1941  
 10 229  
 \*FLOTJON P G Diagnostic and therapeutic injections of sympathetic nerves Am J Surg  
 1931 41 591  
 \*FOERSTER O Die Leistungen des Schmerzgefühls u die chirurgische Behandlung der  
 Schmerzzustände Berlin Urban u Schwarzenberg 1927  
 \*— AND GAGEL O Die Vorderseitenstrangdurchschneidung beim Menschen Eine  
 klinisch pathophysiologisch anatomische Studie Ztschr f d ges Neurol u Psychiat  
 1932 139 1  
 \*FRANÇOIS FRANCA Signification physiologique de la résection du sympathique dans la  
 maladie l'épilepsie l'idiotie et le glaucome Bull d l'Acad Méd 1899 41 563  
 \*GRANT F C In Stroud W D Cardiovascular Diseases Philadelphia Davis 1945  
 \*GREENE C W An analysis of the efferent pathways and vasomotor control of the coronary  
 circulation of the dog Am J Physiol 1931 97 526  
 \*— The nerve control of the coronary vessels with new experimental evidence for the  
 pathways of efferent constrictor and dilator neurones in the dog Am J Physiol 1935  
 113 361  
 \*— Control of the coronary blood flow by reflexes arising in widely distributed regions of  
 the body Am J Physiol 1935 113 399  
 \*— An analysis of the relations of the coronary constrictor and dilator nerves in the  
 cervical vagosympathetic of the dog Am Heart J 1936 11 592  
 \*HENRICHSEN J AND IVY A C Effect of stimulation of visceral nerves on coronary blood  
 flow in dogs Arch Int Med 1933 51 932  
 \*HOCHREITZ M Der Koronarkreislauf Physiologie Pathologie Therapie Berlin J Springer  
 1932  
 \*— Der Myokardinfarkt Erkennung Behandlung und Verhütung Dresden u Leipzig  
 Th Steinkopff Ed 2 1941  
 \*HOFER G Bericht u die Durchschneidung des Nervus Depressor bei dem Angina pectoris  
 (nach Eppinger H u Hofer G) Ztschr f Hals u Ohren 1923 6 68  
 \*— Surgical treatment of angina pectoris Wien Klin Wschr (supp) 1924 3/ 1  
 \*HOLMES W Quoted by Coffey W M and Brown P K in Arch Int Med 1924 34 417  
 \*— AND RANSON S W Cervical sympathectomy in angina pectoris J Lab & Clin  
 Med 1924 10 183  
 \*HUBER K Über den Einfluss der Kranzarterienkrankung auf das Herz und die chro-  
 nische Myocarditis Virchow's Arch 1882 89 236  
 \*HUDSON C L MORITZ A R AND WEARY J T The extracardiac anastomoses of the  
 coronary arteries J Exp Med 1932 56 919  
 \*JESSEN H Die Neurologie und Neurochirurgie der Angina pectoris München med  
 Wschr 1938 85 1149  
 \*JOURNÉSCO TH Traitement chirurgical de l'angine de poitrine par la résection du sym-  
 pathique cervico-thoracique Presse Médicale 1921 29 193 1923 31 517  
 \*— Angine de poitrine guérie par la résection du sympathique cervicothoracique Bull de  
 l'Acad Med Paris 1920 83 93  
 \*— Le sympathique cervico-thoracique Paris Masson et Cie 1921  
 \*— AND GOMORT quoted by Danielopolu D in L'angine de poitrine et l'angine ab-  
 dominale Paris Masson et Cie 1927

- <sup>33</sup> KAPPIS M Die operative Behandlung der Angina pectoris *Med Klin* 1923 19 1658
- <sup>34</sup> KATZ L N AND JOCHIM H Observations on the innervation of the coronary vessels of the dog *Am J Physiol* 1939 126 395
- <sup>35</sup> KERR, H H Surgical treatment of angina pectoris *Ann Clin Med* 1915, 4 30
- <sup>36</sup> — Operative treatment of angina pectoris *Ann Surg* 1915 82 354
- <sup>37</sup> — Personal communication to White J C Chapt 14, Diseases of the coronary arteries and cardiac pain edited by Levy R L New York, Macmillan 1936
- <sup>38</sup> KUMMEL H J Beobachtung und Erfahrungen an 52 Sympathectomien *Zentralbl f Chir* 1923, 50 1434
- <sup>39</sup> KUNTZ A AND MOREHOUSE A Thoracic sympathetic cardiac nerves in man their relation to cervical sympathetic ganglionectomy *Arch Surg* 1930 20 607
- <sup>40</sup> LAEWEEN, A Über segmentäre Schmerzaufhebung durch paravertebrale Novokaininjektionen zur Differentialdiagnose intraabdominaler Erkrankungen *Münch med Wschr* 1922 69 1423
- <sup>41</sup> LAMBERT, A Quoted by Coffey W B and Brown P K in *Arch Int Med* 1924 34 417 Angina pectoris cardiac pain *Am Heart J* 1926 2 19
- <sup>42</sup> LANGLEY, J N The Autonomic Nervous System Cambridge W Haffer & Son 1921
- <sup>43</sup> — The sensory nerve fibres of the heart and aorta in relation to surgical operations for the relief of angina pectoris *Lancet* 1924 2 935
- <sup>44</sup> LAUBRY C AND HEIM DE BALSAC R Considérations sur un cas de l'angine de poitrine mortel *Bull et mem Soc méd d Hôp d Paris* 1934 50 1248
- <sup>45</sup> LEHMANN W Über die sensiblen Nerven in der vorderen Wurzeln und ihre Beziehung zur Sensibilität der visceralen Organe *Zschr f d ges exp Med* 1921 12 331
- <sup>46</sup> LERICHE R The Surgery of Pain Translated and edited by A Young Baltimore Williams & Wilkins 1939
- <sup>47</sup> — AND FONTAINE R Quatre observations d'angine de poitrine traitées chirurgicalement *Arch des maladies du coeur* 1927 20 513
- <sup>48</sup> — Surgical treatment of angina pectoris what it is and what it should be *Am Heart J* 1928 3 649
- <sup>49</sup> — Deux nouveaux cas d'angine de poitrine traitées chirurgicalement *Arch des maladies du coeur* 1919 22 598
- <sup>50</sup> — Contribution à l'étude de l'angine de poitrine d'origine traumatique *Arch des maladies du coeur* 1930 23 689
- <sup>51</sup> — Chirurgie des nerfs du coeur *J de chir* 1932 40 503
- <sup>52</sup> LEVY R L AND MOORE P I Paravertebral injections of alcohol for the relief of cardiac pain A review of experience to date and a report of nine cases *Arch Int Med* 1931 48 146
- <sup>53</sup> — AND — Paravertebral sympathetic block with alcohol for the relief of cardiac pain report of 45 cases *J A M A* 1941 116 2563
- <sup>54</sup> LINDGREN I AND OLIVEROVA H Surgical treatment of angina pectoris *J Neurosurg* 1941 4 19
- <sup>55</sup> MANDL F Weitere Erfahrungen mit der paravertebralen Injektion bei der Angina pectoris *Wien Klin Wschr* 1921 35 159
- <sup>56</sup> — Die paravertebrale Injektion zur Bekämpfung visceraler Schmerzen *Wien Klin Wschr* 1924 No 21
- <sup>57</sup> — Die Wirkung der paravertebralen Injektion bei Angina pectoris *Arch f Klin Chir* 1925 115 136 1925 136 495
- <sup>58</sup> — Die paravertebrale Injektion Vienna Springer 1926
- <sup>59</sup> — Die Funktionserkrankungen der Epithelkörper Die Epithelkörperkrankheit (Epithel körpersyndrom) *Wien klin Wschr* 1938 51 67 106
- <sup>60</sup> — Paravertebral block in diagnosis prognosis and therapy New York Crane & Stratton 1947

- "MARVIN H M An evaluation of the surgical treatment of angina pectoris Bull New York Acad Med 1935 11 43
- "— Diagnosis of coronary artery disease New England J Med 1943 276 251
- "MERRICK R L Degeneration and recovery of autonomic neurons following alcoholic block Ann Surg 1941 113 298
- "MINTZ W I AND WHITE, J C Pain pathways in the sympathetic nervous system Clinical evidence Arch Neurol & Psychiat 1931 25 996
- "MORITZ A M HUDSON C L AND ORGAIN E S Augmentation of the extracardiac anastomoses of the coronary arteries through precordial adhesions J Exp Med 1937 58 917
- "MORTON EN M A Angina pectoris and its management Southwestern Med J 1934 8 10
- "— Personal communication to Coffey W B and Brown P K Arch Int Med 1934 34 417
- "ODERMATT W Die chirurgische Behandlung der Angina pectoris. Dtsch Zschr f Chir 1923 187 341
- "OSHAGNESSY L An experimental method of providing a collateral circulation to the heart Brit J Surg 1936 23 665
- "— Surgical treatment of cardiac ischemia Report of 6 cases of cardio-omentopexy Lancet 1937 237 185
- "— SLOWE D AND WATSON F Surgical revascularization of the heart The experimental basis Lancet 1939 1 617
- "PARAF J AND DREYFUS LEFOYER P Anesthésie du ganglion stellaire par voie paravertébrale Bull et mém Soc méd d'hôp de Paris 193 53 116.
- "PERLOW S Paravertebral alcohol injection for relief of cardiac pain Illinois M J 1942 81 55
- "PIERI G Résultats éloignés d'une intervention chirurgicale pour angine de poitrine (Méthode de la suppression du réflexe presseur) Bull et mém Soc méd l'hôp d Bucarest 1928 10 211
- "PLETU A Cervical sympathectomy as a means of stopping pain of angina pectoris Am J Surg 1937 35 300
- PISTVEN D D Zur Frage der Dauerresultate nach Anwendung der paravertebralen Alkoholinjektion bei Angina pectoris Zschr f Kreislauf 1931 23 117
- "RANEY R B A hitherto undescribed surgical procedure relieving attacks of angina pectoris J A M A 1939 113 1619
- "RANSON S W The cardiac nerves in angina pectoris Am Heart J 1925-26 1 508
- AND BILLINGSLEY P M The superior cervical sympathetic ganglion and the cervical portion of the sympathetic trunk J Comp Neurol 1918 29 313
- "REIN H Die Physiologie der Herz-Kranzgefäße Zschr Biol 1931 32 101
- "RICHARDSON E P AND WHITE P D Sympathectomy in the treatment of angina pectoris Comparison with those from paravertebral alcohol injection Am J M Sc 1929 177 161
- "RINZLER S H AND TRAVELL J Therapy directed at the somatic component of cardiac pain Am Heart J 1949 35 248
- "RATH H S Diagnostic, Prognostic and Therapeutic Nerve Blocks J A M A 1933 10 419
- "SCHRAGER L V AND FRY A C Symptoms produced by distention of the gall bladder and biliary ducts A clinical and experimental study Surg Gynec & Obst 1928 47 1
- "SPIEGEL E A Über das Wesen des Bauchschmerzes und seine Begleiterscheinungen Wien med Wchnschr 1927 77 39
- "— Wie kommt es zur Generalisierung der Rindenerregung im Epileptischen Anfall? Wien Klin. Wchnr 1927 77 1157

- <sup>52</sup> KAPFIS, M Die operative Behandlung der Angina pectoris Med Klin 1923, 19 1658
- <sup>53</sup> KATZ, L N, AND JOCHIM K Observations on the innervation of the coronary vessels of the dog Am J Physiol 1939 126 395
- <sup>54</sup> KERR, H H Surgical treatment of angina pectoris Ann Clin Med 1925 4 30
- <sup>55</sup> — Operative treatment of angina pectoris Ann Surg 1925 82 351
- <sup>56</sup> — Personal communication to White J C, Chapt 14, Diseases of the coronary arteries and cardiac pain edited by Levy, R L, New York Macmillan 1936
- <sup>57</sup> KUMMILL H J Beobachtung und Erfahrungen an 52 Sympathectomien Zentralbl f Chir 1923, 50 1434
- <sup>58</sup> KUNTZ A AND MOREHOUSE A Thoracic sympathetic cardiac nerves in man their relation to cervical sympathetic ganglionectomy Arch Surg 1930 20 607
- <sup>59</sup> LAEWFEN A Über segmentäre Schmerzaufhebung durch paravertebrale Novokaininjektionen zur Differentialdiagnose intraabdominaler Erkrankungen Münch med Wschr 1922 69 1423
- <sup>60</sup> LAMBERT A Quoted by Coffey W B and Brown P A in Arch Int Med 1924 34 417 Angina pectoris cardiac pain Am Heart J 1926 2 18
- <sup>61</sup> LANGLEY J N The Autonomic Nervous System Cambridge W Heffer & Son, 1921
- <sup>62</sup> — The sensory nerve fibres of the heart and aorta in relation to surgical operations for the relief of angina pectoris Lancet 1924 2 955
- <sup>63</sup> LAUBRY C, AND HEIM DE BALSAC R Considérations sur un cas de l'angine de poitrine mortel Bull et mem Soc méd d Hôp d Paris 1934 50 1248
- <sup>64</sup> IERHANN W Über die sensiblen Fasern in der vorderen Wurzel und ihre Beziehung zur Sensibilität der visceralen Organe Zschr f d ges exp Med 1921 12 331
- <sup>65</sup> IERICHE R The Surgery of Pain Translated and edited by A Young Baltimore Williams & Wilkins 1939
- <sup>66</sup> — AND FONTAINE R Quatre observations d'angine de poitrine traitées chirurgicalement Arch des maladies du coeur 1927 20 513
- <sup>67</sup> — Surgical treatment of angina pectoris what it is and what it should be Am Heart J 1928 3 649
- <sup>68</sup> — Deux nouveaux cas d'angine de poitrine traitées chirurgicalement Arch des maladies du coeur 1929 22 588
- <sup>69</sup> — Contribution à l'étude de l'angine de poitrine d'origine traumatique Arch des maladies du coeur 1930 23 689
- <sup>70</sup> — Chirurgie des nerfs du coeur J de chir 1932 40 508
- <sup>71</sup> LEVY P L AND MOORE R L Paravertebral injections of alcohol for the relief of cardiac pain A review of experience to date and a report of nine cases Arch Int Med 1931 48 146
- <sup>72</sup> — AND — Paravertebral sympathetic block with alcohol for the relief of cardiac pain report of 45 cases J A M A 1941 116 2563
- <sup>73</sup> LINDGREN I AND OLIVECRONA H Surgical treatment of angina pectoris J Neurosurg 1947 4 19
- <sup>74</sup> MANDL F Weitere Erfahrungen mit der paravertebralen Injektion bei der Angina pectoris Wien Klin Wschr 1925 38 759
- <sup>75</sup> — Die paravertebrale Injektion zur Bekämpfung visceraler Schmerzen Wien Klin Wschr 1924 No 21
- <sup>76</sup> — Die Wirkung der paravertebralen Injektion bei Angina pectoris Arch f Klin Chir 1925 115 136 1925 136 495
- <sup>77</sup> — Die paravertebrale Injektion Vienna Springer 1926
- <sup>78</sup> — Die Funktionserkrankungen der Epithelkörper Die Epithelkörperkrankheit (Epithelkörpersyndrom) Wien Klin Wschr 1938 51 67 106
- <sup>79</sup> — Paravertebral block in diagnosis prognosis and therapy New York Grune & Stratton 1947

# Author Index

- Abram 779  
 Adrian 96  
 Albutt, 194 27, 234  
 Allen 287 293  
 Anderson 67 69 70  
 Anre 8 9 68 11 94 98 113  
 Aronowitsch 211  
 Achenbrenner 279  
 Achner 116  
 Ashkenaz 19 213 307 301  
 Aubert 183  
 Averbuck 21 226  
 Bacon 303  
 Bacq 3  
 Baehr 6  
 Bailev 106  
 Bainbriwe 32  
 de Balaac Heim 306  
 Barbour 66  
 Bard 18 108 112  
 Barker 293  
 Barnes 282  
 Bauer 90 114  
 Bayliss 90 93 95 96  
 Beattie 68 93 106 108 109 112 116 119  
 120 121 166  
 Bechterew 10 116  
 Beck 313 314 315  
 Bender 14 95 113  
 Berard 308  
 Bernard C 61 68 64 75  
 Berrhardt 182  
 Berrv 66  
 Bezold 5 181  
 Bidder 2 132  
 Pedl 93  
 Billingsle 2 132 300 303  
 Binger 293  
 Bishop 240  
 Bland 307 308 309  
 Blatz 93  
 Blumgart 3 9 11 16 238 284  
 Boas 11 209 222  
 Bochefontaine 103  
 Boeke 131  
 B rcharl 30  
 du Bose 308  
 Bouckaert 3 98  
 Bowen 108  
 Boyd 54  
 Bover 216 274  
 Boyle 5  
 Braeucker 148 181, 306  
 Brailsford 66  
 Brenner 110  
 Breslauv 62  
 Britton 148  
 Brock 181  
 Brodie 67  
 Bronk 96  
 Brooks, 274  
 Brow 68 93 106 166  
 Brown 58 68 300 303  
 Bruce 67  
 Brulé 229  
 Brüning 303  
 Brunn 307  
 Büchner 3 4 9 11 229  
 Bucy 106  
 Burch 42  
 Burn 114  
 Cameron 284 288  
 Campbell 66  
 Cannon 61 2 3 16 71 18 112 149  
 Capps 99  
 Cargill 29  
 Castex 116  
 de Castro 98  
 Cesa Bianchi 296  
 Christ 4  
 Cuminata 18  
 Coffey 58 68 300 303  
 Cohn 236  
 Coombs 108  
 Cotton 236  
 Crouch 108 109 117  
 Cunningham 163  
 Cushing 109 213  
 Cutler 303  
 Cybulski 66 67  
 Cyon 95 182  
 Dale 73 74 90 114

- <sup>105</sup> SPIEGEL, F. A. Experimentelle Neurologie Berlin S Karger 1928
- <sup>106</sup> — The mechanism of pain Internat Clin 1939 3 141
- <sup>107</sup> — AND HASHIMOTO S. Über die Schmerzleitung aus dem cardioaortalen System in Beziehung zu den Spinalganglion und den Rückenmarksbahnen Zschr f d ges exp Med 1930 71 408
- <sup>108</sup> SWETLOW G I. Paravertebral alcohol block in cardiac pain Am Heart J 1925-26 1 393
- <sup>109</sup> — Alcoholic injections into nerve tissues for relief of pain Am J M Sc 1926 111 391
- <sup>110</sup> — A clinicophysiology study of the pathway of pain impulses in cardiac disease Am J Med Sci 1929 178 345
- <sup>111</sup> — Angina pectoris paravertebral alcohol block for relief of pain Am J Surg 1930 9 89
- <sup>112</sup> THOMPSON S A. An operation for the relief of coronary artery disease A preliminary report Quart Bull Sea View Hosp 1940 3 175
- <sup>113</sup> — Personal communication
- <sup>114</sup> — AND KAINBECK M J. Cardio pericardiopexy. The surgical treatment of coronary artery disease by the establishment of adhesive pericarditis Ann Int Med 1947
- <sup>115</sup> TOMB J W. Shock and allied conditions Lancet 1931 233 1416
- <sup>116</sup> TUFFIER M. Discussion de la communication de Jonnesco Bull d l Acad d Méd Paris 1921 86 70
- <sup>117</sup> WARTENBERG K. Klinische Studien zur Frage der Geltung des Bell Magendieschen Gesetzes Zschr f d ges Neurol u Psychiat 1928 113 518
- <sup>118</sup> WEISS S AND DAVIS D. The significance of the afferent impulses from the skin in the mechanism of visceral pain. Skin infiltration as a useful therapeutic measure Am J M Sc 1928 176 511
- <sup>119</sup> WENCKEBACH K. Verh d Kongr f inn Med Wien 1923 35 1
- <sup>120</sup> — Angina pectoris and the possibilities of its surgical relief Brit M J 1924 1 809
- <sup>121</sup> — Klinik und Wesen der Angina pectoris Wien med Wchnschr 1924 74 671 736 907
- <sup>122</sup> WHITE J C. Experimental and Clinical Studies in surgical treatment of angina pectoris Ann Int Med 1933 7 229
- <sup>123</sup> — The Autonomic Nervous System New York Macmillan 1935
- <sup>124</sup> — Chapt 15. Diseases of the Coronary Arteries and Cardiac Pain edited by LEVY R L New York Macmillan 1936
- <sup>125</sup> — Technique and paravertebral alcohol injection methods and safeguards in its use in the treatment of angina pectoris 1940 71 334
- <sup>126</sup> — AND SMITHWICK R I. The Autonomic Nervous System New York Macmillan 1941
- <sup>127</sup> — AND BLAND F F. The surgical relief of severe angina pectoris methods employed and end results in eighty three patients Medicine 1948 27 1
- <sup>128</sup> WIGGERS C J. Chapt 2. Diseases of the Coronary Arteries and Cardiac Pain edited by LEVY R L New York Macmillan 1936
- <sup>129</sup> WOODBRIDGE P D. Therapeutic nerve block with procaine and alcohol Am J Surg 1930 9 218
- <sup>130</sup> YATER W M AND TREWHELLA A P. The case for and against the operative treatment of angina pectoris Am J M Sc 1931 182 35

- Hochhaus, 10  
 Hohen 11 68 300  
 Hofer 18<sup>7</sup> 194 30  
 Hoff 6<sup>7</sup> 106 117  
 Hogen 114  
 Holmdge 248  
 Holmes, 300 305  
 Holtz 113  
 Hooker 96  
 Horn 9  
 Hussay 112 116  
 Hovelacque 61  
 Honarth 217  
 Hsyle 66  
 Hrstude 199 312  
 Hrvntschak 62  
 Huber 305  
 Huchard 6 277  
 Hudson 313  
 Humber 68  
 Hume 110  
 Hunt 114  
 Hurst, 197  
 Hurtle 89  
 Hvalovics 91  
 Ivy 68 197 213 300 307  
 Jacques 163  
 Jargher 110  
 Jegerow 165  
 Jeliffe 61  
 Jenner 195  
 Jessen 308  
 Jester 2 9  
 Jochum 36 68 301  
 Janneson 303 305 307  
 Jourdan 98  
 Kabat, 108 109 112 116 117  
 Kahr 135  
 Kappus, 303 307  
 Karjlu 108 109 113 116 117  
 Katz 36 47 68 23 215 301  
 Keefler 3  
 Keith 293  
 Keller 68  
 Kempner 292  
 Kennard 62  
 Kerr 68 108 300 305  
 Kilborn 93  
 Kisch 131 217  
 Kissin 8  
 Kleinknecht 106  
 Koch 9 183 235  
 Kohler 106  
 Kölliker 165  
 Kolls 113  
 Kolm 66  
 Koster 187  
 Kountz 113  
 Krakow 61  
 Kramer 66 67  
 Kreilemann 187  
 Kreiß 108 109 116 117  
 Kroetz 4 9  
 Krogh 89  
 Krüger L. 8 66 61 68 1 94  
 Kümmei 303  
 Kuntz 67 148 306  
 Kurl 64 93 134  
 La Jon 96  
 Laeven 307  
 Lambert 305  
 Lampe 113  
 Lan lois 105  
 Langendorff 66 68  
 Langley 62 108 137 703 705 304  
 Laurin 229 306  
 Lavman 103  
 LeBlanc 66  
 Lehmann 307  
 Lemaire 199  
 Leriche 8 239 303 305 307 308  
 Le Roy 37 215  
 Leschle 116 121  
 Levine S A 303  
 Levy A G 121  
 Levy H 209 227  
 Levy R L 8 309  
 Lenin 114  
 Lewis 62 148 236 237  
 Lian 8 216 224  
 Libman 34 209 211 222 247 252 259  
 Lichtwitz 14  
 Lim 66 109  
 Lindgren 306  
 Lindner 275  
 Lissak 13 112  
 Livingston 61 198 204 211  
 Loew 287  
 Lucas 73 74  
 Lohr 66  
 Long 68 93 106 16  
 Lucas 9



- Danielopolu 3 25 80 96 150 151 152 160  
     182 195 199 200 217 300 303 304  
     305 306 307 312  
 Danilewski 105  
 Danulesco 217  
 Dautrehande 97  
 Davis L 197 199 204 213, 302 303 307  
     312  
 Dean 65  
 DeBurgh Daly 66 67 69 96  
 Demoor 165  
 Dietrich 3  
 Dikshit 109  
 Dixon 66 67  
 Dock 10  
 Dogiel 165  
 Doi 64  
 Dresel 116  
 Dreyfus LeFoyer 508  
 Drury 94 300  
 Dunbar 67  
 Dusser deBarenne 106  
 Eckhardt 58 67  
 Edeiken 209 222  
 Edgworth 305  
 Elliott A H 4  
 Elliott F A 73  
 Elliott W H Jr 108 109 117  
 Enachescu 148  
 Eppinger 91 194 301  
 Erikson 66  
 Fulenberg 105  
 Fyster 96  
 Fahr 229  
 Farber 114  
 Feil 314  
 Feldberg 114  
 Feldman 297  
 Ferris 99  
 Fiessinger 227  
 Finkelstein 182  
 Flothow 308  
 Foerster 302 307  
 Fontaine 503  
 For 292  
 Fraenkel 217  
 François Franck 65 106 160 183 303 304  
 Friedberg 7  
 Fuhner 66  
 Fulton 106 109 120  
 Furman 284  
 Gagel 302 307  
 Galfavardin 229 219 296  
 Geising 113  
 Gellhorn 81  
 Gerhardt 61  
 Certler 219  
 Gilbert 4 8 36 37 51  
 Glaser 105  
 Gold 216 293  
 Goldberger 54  
 Goldenberg 113  
 Gollwitzer Meier 8 66 67 68 71, 94 97  
 Goltz 108  
 Comou 303  
 Goodale 30  
 Corham 7 236  
 Grant 308  
 Gravier 296  
 Green H D 9 106  
 Greene C W 31 68 300  
 Gross 9  
 Grutzner 93  
 Guertsey 98  
 Haager 3  
 Haertig 109  
 Haidenham 93  
 Hallermann 3  
 Hammer 10  
 Harkavy 228  
 Hartman 93  
 Hashimoto 8 200 239 306 312  
 Hasterlik 93  
 Head 190 194 197 218  
 Heberden 11 38 195 234  
 Heger 61  
 Heinbecker 181 203 208 210 240  
 Heitz 229  
 Henriques 69  
 Hering 90 96 91 98 183 235  
 Herrick 11  
 Hetherington 112 116  
 Heymans 67 96 91 98 121 183 235  
 Hickham 29  
 Hilton 194 191 198  
 Humwich 81  
 Hunrichsen 68 500  
 Hunsey 131  
 Hukawa 61  
 Hirsch 2  
 Hirschfeld 181  
 Hitzig 284

- Russ 111  
 Rymak 165  
 Rynik 3  
 Retsius, 165  
 Richard 114  
 Richardson 68 300 308  
 Richter 116  
 Rinkler 312  
 Risch 110  
 Rjasansky 111  
 Roberts 105  
 Roever 183  
 Ronen 66 67  
 Rosen 65  
 Rosenthal 3  
 Ross 190 194 197 199 218  
 Rothberger 94 113  
 Rothschild, 8 236 23  
 Rouget 90  
 Ruth 308  
 Ryle 197  
 Saha 31  
 Saito 109  
 Sal 2 69  
 Saghar 297  
 Sappey 182  
 Scarpa 182  
 Schafer 66  
 Scheri 4 9 31 54 58 67 229  
 Schiff 103  
 Schili 114  
 Schilapp 114  
 Schleunger 66  
 Schmitt 165  
 Schmitt 111  
 Schmitt 31 58 6  
 Schirger 197 213 307  
 Schrezenmayer 88  
 Schrottenbach 116  
 Schuhmacher 146  
 Schulte 97  
 Schurmeier 113  
 Schwalbe 182  
 Schwab 12 37 226 249 280  
 Schwab 132  
 Schwab 3  
 Schwab 105  
 Schwab 8 68 71  
 Schwab 32 37 283  
 Sharber 229  
 Schreyer Schaefer 30  
 Sheehan 109 135  
 Silver 109  
 Silver 144  
 Singleton 194 23  
 Sismos 165  
 Smith F 11  
 Smith F M 300  
 Smith H 68  
 Smithwick 308 309  
 Smiler 3 215  
 Siskowick 62 705  
 Soliman 66  
 Spaltholz 1 4  
 Speranskaya Stepanowa 67  
 Szeget 8 67 103 106 109 131 149 199  
 200 211 213 239 266 317  
 Stacey 113  
 Starling 66 98  
 Stavsky 112 121  
 Stead 79 30 32  
 Stefansson 249  
 Stern 294  
 Sternberg M 10  
 Sternberg W II 9  
 Stohr 163  
 Strasschesko 10  
 Stricker 93  
 Struett 31 67  
 Suh 109  
 Sumbal 300  
 Sutton 198  
 Sweet 106  
 Swetlow 308  
 Szymonowicz 66  
 Tandler 163 165 181  
 Taub 63  
 Tello 98  
 Tennant 237  
 Tesner 14 181  
 Thompson 315  
 Tichy 313  
 Tierstedt 75 108 181 182  
 Toldt 165  
 Tomb 68 19 301  
 Tonnesen 148  
 Travell 312  
 Trevisanus 15  
 Treshella 304  
 Tribe 66 67  
 Tschermak 182  
 Tuffer 303

- Ludwig 95 105 182  
 Lueth 198  
 MacDonald 114  
 Mackay 114  
 MacKenzie 94 190 194 197 198 211  
 Magoun 109 112 116 117  
 Mandl 301 308 309  
 Manning 32 37  
 Manouelian 165  
 Marlburg 76  
 Marie 10  
 Marine 65  
 Markle 237  
 Martin 7 236  
 Martin 194 197  
 Marvin 305 308  
 Masserman 109  
 Ma ter 3 4 9 229  
 Matthews 135  
 Mautner 90 91 95 113 114  
 McDowall 32 69 103 110 114  
 McEachern 32 275  
 McGregor 62  
 McMichael 30  
 Méhes 113  
 Meijling 97  
 Meissner 229  
 Merrick 309  
 Meyer 66  
 Michael 97  
 Michailow 165  
 Miller 2 65 92 106 284 292  
 Mintz 36  
 Mislawsky 106  
 Mixter 148 308  
 Moissejeff 97  
 Molinelli 112 116  
 Molitor 95  
 Moller 67  
 Monge 337  
 Moore 197 237 308  
 Morat 93  
 Morehouse 306  
 Moritz 313  
 Morley 199  
 Mortensen 305  
 Morton 109  
 Moshcowitz 227  
 Müller 105  
 Murray 101  
 Mussio Fournier 229  
 Nachmansohn 74  
 Neuburger 4 9  
 de N6 74  
 Nandez 96  
 Norris 296  
 Obrastzon 10  
 Odermatt 198 301  
 O'Leary 240  
 Olivecrona 306  
 Opdyke 32 37 293  
 Opitz 4 9  
 Orgain 313  
 Osborne 182  
 O'Shaughnessy 309 315  
 Osler 37 230  
 Otto 94  
 Owsjannikow 101  
 Pal 32 91  
 Paraf 309  
 Iardee 11  
 Iarin 31  
 Parry 191  
 Paullin 247  
 Peczenik 113  
 Penfield 76 112 121 201  
 Perlow 237 308 309  
 Péter 96  
 Pettitjean 66 67  
 Philippson 67  
 Peck 66 67 80 95 113 114  
 Pickering 236 237  
 Iien 304  
 Ike 95 108 110 114 198 199 240  
 Iulcher 66  
 Pleth 303  
 Pletnew 306 309  
 Plummer 65 66  
 Poll 294  
 Pollock 197 204  
 Popper 106  
 Posselt 32 221 225  
 Potain 3  
 Irevost 69  
 Prinzmetal 11 16  
 Ratscheck 315  
 Ianey 305  
 Iandies 40  
 Ianson 77 93 109 109 110 112 116 117  
 119 120 132 300 305  
 Reed 103  
 Rein 8 9 68 71 94 300

# Subject Index

- Accessory afferent cardiac fibers 307
- Acetylcholine 74 85 95 113 235 245
- Adrenalin 73 88 111 113 229
- Adrenalin anginal pain 246
- Adrenal sympathetic III
- Adrenergic (see Sympathetic)
- Afferent cardiac fibers ( bottleneck ) 307
- Afferent neurons (sympathetic) to head 160 161 204
- Afferent neurons vagal 150
- Afferent neurons vagal to head 160 205
- Aminophyllin 2 285
- Anginal pain
  - adrenalin 246
  - amplification 217
  - anesthetizing skin 312
  - anoxemia 6
  - aortic origin 234
  - brachial plexus 139 193
  - carotid sinus 235
  - coronary origin 235
  - coronary ostial narrowing 16 296
  - decubitus, 25
  - dermatomes 195
  - dermatomes nerves 185
  - individual reaction 245 251
  - influence of local anesthesia 59
  - in uln 230
  - ischemia 231 238
  - myocardial origin 236
  - referred unusual territory 192
  - referred usual territory 191
  - shock 1 20 34 246
  - simulation 221
  - sites of origin 194 234
    - aortic 234
    - coronary 195
    - heart muscle 195
  - summation 217
  - surgical treatment 300
  - sympathetic pathways 137
  - trigger zones anesthesia 312
  - trophic changes 218
  - vagal route 207
  - window shopping 27
- Angina pectoris (see Coronary insufficiency) 3
- angor animi 18 25 (see Aura)
- attacks mild 15
- attacks, severe 16
- aura 18 243
- breathing 18
- chest fullness 1
- clinical features 15
- collapse 1
- cyanosis 18
- decubitus 25
- electrocardiographic findings 8
- exhaustion 18 35 287
- fear of sleeping 17
- heart weakness, 36 281
- incidence 16
- intermittent claudication 32
- pain 16 17
- paroxysm 15 25
  - duration 6 274
  - petit mal 15 25
- precipitating factors 5
- psychic features, III 290
- pulmonary vagal manifestations 37
- shock 16 17 20 37 246
- sighs 28
- simulation 221
- sine dolore 16 25
- sleep 25
- sudden death 12 15
- surgical treatment 300
- sweating 23 34 281
- sympathetic manifestations 23
- syncope 17
- temperature regulation 3
- thyroidectomy 180 201
- treatment medical 241
- surgical 300
- vagal effects 34
- vasomotor disturbances 35 36 37
- ventricular fibrillation 3 249
- water metabolism 19
- yawning 28
- Angor animi 18 25
- Anoxemia
  - anginal pain III
  - myocardial metabolism 30
  - myocardium 7

- Urban 117  
 Vacquez 25 234  
 Valedensky 165  
 van Bogaert 109 110 112  
 Vancea 97  
 van Damme 98  
 Vanesco 182  
 van Wyngarden 66  
 Velich 67  
 Vercoullie 67  
 Verdon 33  
 Vernev 96  
 Verworn 96  
 Verzár 96  
 Vignal 165  
 Villaret 31 67  
 Viti 182  
 Volkmann 72 132  
 von Brücke 95 110  
 von Euler 66 67 69 114  
 Vulpian 105  
 Wagner 15 91 181  
 Wallenberg 117  
 Walser 229  
 Wang 109 116  
 Warren 29 30 32  
 Wartenberg 302  
 Warthin 296  
 Wassermann 198  
 Waterman 109  
 Watts 120  
 Wearn 313  
 Weber 3 66 67  
 Wegna 9 272  
 Weisman 98  
 Weiss 99 199 312  
 Wenckebach, 194 195 234 301, 307  
 Werne, 62  
 Werzloff 93  
 White J C., 88 148 203 228 300 302 303  
 307 308 309  
 White P D 68 228  
 Wiggers 66 68 71 90 94 236 237, 241  
 245 300  
 Wightman 93 109  
 Wile 297  
 Wilson 165  
 Winkler 109  
 Winsor 42  
 Wittkower 62  
 Wolferth 209 222  
 Wood 65  
 Woodbridge 308  
 Woods R M 282  
 Woollard H H 12 90 165  
 Wright 283  
 Wyburn Mason 4 236  
 Yanof 30  
 Yaskin 109  
 Yates 304  
 Yohalem 219  
 Zondek 229

- Cardiac rhythm 121  
 Cardiac tamponade 36  
 Cardiac sympathetic innervation 1-9  
   connections with vagal cardiac innervation 180-707  
 Cardiac vagal innervation connection with cardiac sympathetic innervation 180-207  
 Cardiac accelerator fibers 68-93-153  
 Cardiacortic inhibitors 94  
 Cardiovascular reactions sympathetic 88  
   vagal 93  
 Cardiovascular syngilus 296  
 Carotid-cervical anastomotic inferior nerve 160  
 Carotid (anterior) sinuses, 94  
   cerebral circulation III  
 Carotid (sinus) nerve 96  
 Carotid sinus 96  
   anginal pain 233  
   depressor effects 36-99  
   pressor effects 107  
   syncope 99  
 Carotid sinus reflex 160  
 Cephalic efferent sympathetics 203  
 Cerebral circulation carotid and aortic sinuses 98  
 Cervical ganglia 143  
 Cervical nerves 139  
   loop between C and C 133  
 Cervical sympathetic trunk and ganglia 143  
 Cervical vagal branches 173  
 Cheyne-Stokes breathing 18-38  
 Cholinergic (parasympathetic) fibers 2-10-181  
 Chordotomy 307  
 Ciliary ganglion 160  
 Circulation reflexes intrinsic 93  
 Circulation regulation III  
   autonomic peripheral 88  
   bulbar controls 103-106  
   central controls 105  
   cortical blood pressure 107  
   cortical controls 105  
   hepatic constriction 93  
   hypothalamic control 108  
   parasympathetic activities 93  
   parasympathetic cardiac inhibitory 94  
   parasympathetic coronary constrictors 94  
   parasympathetic peripheral vessels 93  
   parasympathetic vasodilators in skeletal muscles 93  
   sympathetic control 107  
   sympathetic 88  
   sympathetic cardiac accelerators 93  
   sympathetic cardiovascular 90  
   sympathetic hypothalamic-pituitary fibers, 93  
   sympathetic pulmonary 91  
 Collapse (see Shock)  
 Congestive heart failure 76-37-200  
   cardiac output 29-30  
 Convergence zone 200  
 Coronary arteries  
   anastomoses 11-16-27  
   arteriosclerotic 11-16-27-238  
   blood pressure 31  
   blood flow 24-29  
   chemical factors 234  
   innervation 88-94-164  
   occlusion 1-10-12-26-28-29-34-236-237  
   spasm 204-235-238-300  
 Coronary circulation collateral channels 21  
   constriction 37  
   coronary insufficiency acute 30  
   metabolism of heart 94  
   oxygen consumption 94  
   physiologic factors 2-30  
 Coronary failure 238  
 Coronary insufficiency acute 1-3-4-30 (see Angina pectoris)  
   cardiac output 23  
   coronary circulation 30  
   death sudden 24  
   electrocardiogram III  
   signs and symptoms 6  
 Coronary pulmonary reflex 88  
 Coronary reflex constriction 283  
 Coronary sinus arterialization 315  
 Coronary vessels  
   anastomoses arteriovenous 7-11-27  
   intercoronary 11  
   arteriosclerotic changes 26  
   innervation 300-301  
   ligation 7  
   reflex constriction 37  
   spasm 236-300  
   sympathetic vasodilators 90  
 Cortex emotions 259  
 Cranial nerves 161-162  
   cranial nerve V 205 VII 204  
 Cyanosis angina pectoris III

- Ansa hypoglossus 163  
 Ansa (loop) Vieussens (subclavia) 146 151,  
     170 176 180 202  
 Antidromic action 90  
 Antuitrin S 296  
 Aorta 183 194 225 234 296  
 Aortic sinus depressor effect 36  
 Apnea 37  
 Arnold's nerve 172  
 Arrhythmias 12 36 278  
 Arteric 228  
 Asphyxia, 229  
 Atabrine 279  
 Athapaska Indians reaction to pain 248  
 Atropine 80 281 283  
 Aura 18 273  
 Auricular fibrillation 28 278  
     flutter 279  
 Auricular nerve 172  
 Autonomic central controls circulation 105  
 Autonomic intrinsic reflexes 62  
 Autonomic mass action 1 2 63 75 212 226  
     272  
     clinical features 20  
     emotional factors 250  
     extracardiac conditions 19  
     myocardial infarction acute 18  
     physiologic responses 257 258  
     psychosomatic disorders 257  
 Autonomic nervous system  
     acetylcholine 74  
     adrenalin 72  
     adrenergic fibers 170 181  
     anatomic pattern 71  
     antagonisms 78  
     centers 76  
         central nuclei 63  
     chemical transmitters 72  
     cholinergic fibers 170  
     divisional features 28  
     emergency function 76  
     homeostasis 61  
     integration 80  
     parasympathetic 34 69  
     parasympathetic activities 78  
     psychic influences 61  
     subdivisions 23 63  
     sympathetic 23 64  
     sympathin 73  
     synergism 79  
     vagal 23 24  
     Autonomic peripheral pathways  
         general 131  
         parasympathetic 133  
         sympathetic 132  
     Bainbridge reflex 32 102  
     Barbiturates 274  
     Biot breathing 18 38  
     Blood pressure arterial  
         coronary insufficiency acute 31  
         cortical control 107  
         hypothalamus 115  
         myocardial infarction acute 32 35  
     Bottle neck - cardiac sensory impulses 302  
     Brachial neuritis 223 224  
     Brachial plexus 139 158 193  
     Bradycardia 28 35  
     Brachial musculature  
         constriction 23  
     Bundle of His 165  
     Caffeine 276  
     Cardiac afferent nerves 149 152  
     Cardiac arrhythmias 12 278  
     Cardiac back failure 29  
     Cardiac branches vagal 173  
     Cardiac cachexia 296  
     Cardiac fibers posterior 148 158 306  
     Cardiac forward failure 29  
     Cardiac ganglion of Wisniewski 163  
     Cardiac (aortic) sympathetics 152-159  
     Cardiac metabolism pyruvemia 30  
     Cardiac output  
         congestive failure 29-30  
         coronary insufficiency acute 23  
         myocardial damage 29 35  
         normal 30  
     Cardiac pain (see Simulations)  
         cardioaortic pathways 152-179  
         esophageal constriction 39  
         esophageal hernia 8  
         hypertension 31  
         localization 200  
         malingered 266  
         neurogenic disorders 223  
         simulations 262  
     Cardiac plexuses 163  
         deep 163-165 180  
         hypothalamus 166  
         superficial 163  
     Cardiac rate 28 119

- Histamine 88 90 114  
   Hochstauungsdruck 31  
 Horner's syndrome 223  
 Hypersensitivity 231  
 Hypertension 116 280  
 Hypoglossal nerve 172  
 Hypotension 36 117 280  
 Hypothalamic control circulation 108  
 Hypothalamic control sympathetic and parasympathetic 108 109  
 Hypothalamic nerves to heart 166  
 Hypothalamohormonal control 111  
 Hypothalamopituitary 112  
 Hypothalamus  
   blood pressure 115-119  
   cardiac rat 119  
   cardiac rhythm 121  
   emotions 260  
   extrasystoles 121  
 Indigestion 33  
 Inferior carotico-tympanic nerve (petrosal nerve small deep) 160  
 Insomnia 19 34 287  
 Insulin 296  
   anginal pain 229  
 Intercostal nerves 191 193  
   severin for anginal pain 312  
 Intermittent claudication 281  
 Internal carotid nerve 160 204  
 Internal carotid plexus, 160  
 Internal laryngeal nerve 172  
 Ischemia 236  
   alkali 23  
   anginal pain 237 238  
   chemical factors 137  
   glycogen depletion 237  
 Jarisch Herxheimer reaction 297  
 Jugular ganglion 172  
 Labyrinth reflex 103  
 Laryngeal nerve 169 180 181  
 Laryngeal plexus 180 181  
 Larynx innervation 175  
 Left recurrent laryngeal nerve 175  
 Lithmann palpation 252  
 McD wall reflex 102  
 Medullary vagal nuclei 171  
 Mental anguish 16 18 19 20 213  
 Mental state 273  
 Mercupurin 293 294  
 Metabolism cardiac 30  
 Middle cervical sympathetic nerve and ganglion 143-146  
 Morphine 213-215 296  
 Müller muscle 65 305  
 Myocardial damage cardiac output III 35  
 Myocardial infarction  
   clinical features, 11  
   coronary occlusion 1 10  
   electrocardiographic findings 12 III 56  
   predisposing factors 11  
   simulation 221  
   treatment 2 0-2,3  
   mental state 273  
 Myocardium 2 7 12 29 236 272  
   metabolism 30  
 Nausea 23 33 296  
 Nerves electrical potentials 239  
   frequency 239  
   zone of entry 240  
 Neurosurgery 300  
 Nicotine electrocardiographic changes 45 50  
 Ninth cranial nerve 204  
 Nitroglycerin 212 281 283  
 Nodose ganglion 160 172 (see Vagus)  
 Nucleus dorsal motor of vagus, 111  
 Nucleus ambiguus (sensory) vagu 177  
 Nucleus of tractus solitarius vagus, 112  
 Ophthalmic ganglion 160  
 Otic ganglion 160  
 Ouabain 2 6 277  
 Oxygen 214-216  
 Pain  
   amplification 217 241 244  
   anginal (see Anginal pain simulations)  
   anginal referred (see Referred anginal pain)  
   atmospheric factors 251  
   B and C fibers 239 240 245-246  
   biology general 233  
   capacity to feel 245  
   cardiac (see Cardiac pain)  
   cephalic middle meningeal artery ligation 204  
   climatic influence 251  
   coronary insufficiency acute 15  
   coronary (thrombosis) occlusion 7



- Death sudden acute coronary insufficiency 24 27  
 acute myocardial infarction 12  
 vagal inhibition 36  
 ventricular fibrillation 36
- Depressor effect aortic sinus 36
- Depressor nerve 165 170 182 235 304
- Dermatomes anginal pain 185  
 entry and convergence fibers referred anginal pain 185 187 190 196  
 neuraxis connection 24
- Diabetes 230 295
- Digitalis 246 278 279 290 295
- Dilaudid 274
- Diuretics 290 292
- Dizziness 284
- Dorsal ganglia (see Dorsal roots)
- Dorsal roots 147-155 185 188 190 211 216  
 (see Chapters VI VIII XVII)
- Duodenal ulcer 212 213
- Dyspnea 29 37 38 289
- Edema 20
- Efferent sympathetic fibers 153  
 to head 160
- Efferent vagal fibers to head 150
- Effort syndrome 25-27  
 delayed 28
- Electrocardiogram 42  
 acute coronary insufficiency 42  
 acute myocardial infarction with coronary occlusion 12 52 56  
 acute myocardial infarction without coronary occlusion 10 52 53 55  
 anemia 44  
 anginal pain 8  
 exertion undue 48  
 extracardiac conditions acute 54  
 hypoxia 44  
 nicotine 45 50  
 peptic ulcer 43  
 pulmonary embolism 46  
 shock postoperative 49
- Emotional reactions psychosomatic disorders 256 258
- Emotional states 230
- Emotions cortex 259
- Encephalitis anginal pain 230
- Enemas 285
- Epinephrine 279 280 284 287
- Epigastrium constriction 23 39 169 281
- Esquimos reaction to pain 247
- Esophageal hernia 8 19 223 224 227 (see Simulations)
- Esophageal plexus 165 180
- Esophagus constriction 39
- Exhaustion 18 35
- Extracardiac conditions  
 autonomic mass action 19  
 clinical cases 20  
 electrocardiographic findings 54
- Extrasystoles hypothalamic 121
- Facial nerve within aqueduct of Tellopius 204 (see Cranial nerve VII)
- Fatigue exhaustion 35 287
- Fifth cranial nerve 204-206
- Flatulence 285
- Fluid restrictions 291
- Gallbladder simulating angina pectoris 19 21 58 212
- Gasserian ganglion 160 205
- Gastric dilatation simulating angina pectoris 33
- Gastrointestinal disturbances 20 33
- Geniculate ganglion 160
- Giddiness 20 285
- Glossopharyngeal nerve 172  
 tympanic branch 172
- Glucose intravenous 286 294
- Glycogen depletion in ischemia 237
- Glycosuria 284  
 central 19
- Gout 230 296
- Grey ram 148 191
- Heart block 28 279
- Heart consciousness 17 230
- Heart dilatation 43
- Heart failure 5 284 288
- Heart muscle  
 damage (see Infarction)  
 spirochetes 296
- Heart weakness 25 29 290
- Hemoptysis 38
- Heparin 282
- Hepatic vein barriers Venesperre  
 body water regulation 36  
 parasympathetic nerves 95
- Hepatic veins sympathetic vasodilators 90
- Herpes Zoster 218

- infantile mechanism 257
- psychogenesis, 255
- referred anginal pain 260
- Pueblo Indians reaction **in pain** 247
- Pulmonary artery receptors, 31
- Pulmonary blood flow velocity 254
- Pulmonary circulation 30 91
  - acute coronary insufficiency 30
  - embolization 38
  - pulmonary blood pressure 31 66
  - sinus receptors, 31
- Pulmonary disturbances, 33
- Pulmonary edema acute 33 231 24
- Pulmonary emboli 21 38
- Pulmonary intermittent claudication 221
- Pulmonary manifestations (see Angina pectoris)
- Pulmonary reflex 165
- Pulmonocoronary reflex 58
- Pulsus alternans myocardial infarction 29 36
- Purgatives 286
- Putine drugs 294
- Quinidine 278 283
- Radiation reference (see Pain Anginal pain Referred anginal pain)
- Radiolar (see Pain Anginal pain Referred anginal pain)
- Receptors (sinuses)
  - aortic 95
  - carotid 97
  - pulmonary 31
- Referred anginal pain
  - abdomen 211
  - accessory afferent fibers (carotid aortic) 203
  - accessory afferent vagal fiber 203
  - accessory afferent visceral fiber 190
  - anesthesia 197
  - at phy of muscles 218
  - at phy radiation 208 216
  - auricular branch vagus 1 2 0
  - bilateral 201
  - bracelet distribution 216
  - tracheal plexus 200
  - bursa subacromial 217
  - cephalic distribution 203
  - cervical afferent fibers 204
  - cervical nerves (1st and 2nd) transmission into ea 207
  - cervical nerve 3rd 20
  - characteristics 216
  - chilling of skin 218
  - common reference 207
  - common territory of distribution 191
  - cranial nerve distribution 203-208
    - fifth nerve 204
    - ninth nerve 204
    - seventh nerve 204
    - tenth nerve 196 204 (see Vagus)
  - dermatomes, 191
  - diffuse 201 211
  - distribution 194
    - cephalic 203
    - lateral ganglia 147 185 190 196 240
  - dorsal roots (see dorsal ganglia)
  - duodenum 208
  - efferent fibers, transmission into head 204
  - emotional component 218
  - gallbladder 215-215
  - glove like distribution 216
  - Herpes Zoster 218
  - intercostal nerves, 197
  - intraspinal convergence 185
  - intraspinal mediation 185
  - jaw 205 206 207 21
  - left biceps 216
  - left shoulder 208 210 216
  - mechanism 195
  - mediation 195-199 240
  - neck distribution 216
  - neurosurgery 300
  - noncardiovascular viscera 211
  - pectoral muscle 200
  - pectoral region 216
  - pelvis 208
  - phrenic nerve 222
  - posterior cardiac ramus 203
  - postoperative stump 211
  - psychosomatic disorders 268
  - relations, atypical 208
  - radiolar 217
  - rectum 217
  - references bidirectional 213
  - residual effects 217
  - right-sided 211
  - scrotum 217
  - shoulder 209-210
  - sinistrality 216
  - sites of origin 194
  - somatic nerves 196 197

## Pain—Cont

- coronary vessel ligation 236
  - dermatome 198
  - disposition heredity 248
  - environment and training 249
    - equivalents 26
  - hereditary factors 248
  - hollow organs 233
  - hyposensitive group 251
  - intensification 240
  - intensity 243 245
  - localization 26
  - nervous apparatus 245
  - non anginal 8
    - median nerve distribution 223
    - musculo cutaneous nerve distribution 223
    - radial nerve distribution 223
    - shoulder 223
    - simulations 221
    - ulnar nerve distribution 223
  - pain fibers 239
  - pathway for pain 225
  - pericardial 24 274
  - physiology 233
  - psychology 243
  - pulmonary embolism 38
  - quality 245 246
  - race factor 248
  - radiation 17 (*see* Anginal pain)
  - radiation reversal 252
  - solid organs 233
  - somatic 197
  - splanchnic 197
  - subjective manifestations 249
  - substitutes 26
  - training 249
  - transmission 239
- Pancreatic disease** 212
- Papaverine** 272 283 290
  - reflex coronary vasoconstriction 37
- Paracentesis** 295
- Parasympathetic (cholinergic)** 2 74 18
- Parasympathetic innervations** 133
  - bronchial 71
  - cardiac pacemaker 71
  - cardioinhibitory 94
  - cephalic 69
  - coronary 71 94
  - general effects 11
  - hepatic vein 95
  - peripheral 69
  - pulmonary 69
  - visceral 69
- Parasympathetic manifestations**
  - cardiovascular 35
  - depressor 35
  - exhaustion 35
  - gastrointestinal 38
  - hemoptyses 38
  - prostration 35
  - reflex coronary constriction 37
  - respiratory changes 37
  - shock 34
- Parathormone diuretic** 294
- Paravertebral alcohol block** 307
  - complications 310
  - contraindications 310
  - Horner's syndrome 308 310
  - selection of cases 310
  - site of injection 310
- Peptic ulcer interbrain** 212 213
- Pericarditis** 225 283 289
- Peripheral vascular features** 12
- Petrosal ganglion** 160
- Petrosal nerve deep** 160
  - small deep 160
- Pharyngeal nerve** 172 181
- Pharyngeal plexus** 180 181
- Pharynx constriction** 39
- Phrenic nerve anastomosis with superior sympathetic cardiac nerve** 225
- Pilomotor effects** 20 23 34
- Pituitary extract diuretic** 294
- Pituitary gland** 160
- Pituitrin** 112
- Posterior sympathetic cardiac nerves** 149
  - 203 306
- Postganglionic fibers** 156
- Potassium chloride** 293
- Potassium nitrate** 293
- Preganglionic fibers** 156
- Prostigmin** 286
- Prostration** 35
- Psychic features angina pectoris** 18 244
- Psychogenic disturbances** 18 19 244 290
- Psychosomatic cardiac disorders** 255 261
  - autonomic activities 256
  - autonomic myocardium 257
  - conversion hysteria 256 264
  - emotional reactions 256

- lead 228
- leukemias 229
- lung disease 225
- menopause 229
- metals 228
- migraine 230
- myalgias 222
- myxedema 229
- neck 225
- neuralgias 224
- neuritis 223
  - cervical rib 223
- nutritional disorders 227
- occlusion aorta or tributaries 226
- osteomyelitis 222
- paroxysmal disorders of cardiac rhythm 226
- pectoral region 222
- pelvic disorders 226
- pericardial affections 225
- phlebitis large thoracic veins 225
- Raynaud's disease 230
- rheumatic heart disease 226
  - houlter region 222
- spondylitis, 224
- sternal disorders 221
- sternum 221
- sternum arthritis 221
- stomach perforation acute 226
- syngomyelia 224
- tachycardia entricular 226
- thoracic condylons 225
- tobacco 228
- toxic states 227
- trapezius 222
- upper extremity 222
- ureter obstruction 226
- Simulations ngina pectoris (see Chapter XII also Simulations anginal pain)
- Simulations myocardial infarction 221
- Sinuses (see Receptors)
- Sol. axon reflex 62 205 206 (see axon reflex)
- Somatic afferent fibers 185
- Spasm aorta 234
  - coronary vessels 37 204 235 236 300
- Spastic phenomena 231
- Splanchnic ganglion 160
- Splanchnic accessory nerve 172
- Splanchnic nerves 139 140
  - posterior divisions 147
  - sympathetic tract 150 190
- Splanchnic in heart muscle 190
- Splanchnic peripheral balance 301
- Stellate ganglion anginal pain 200 239
  - removal 305
- Stokes-Adams syndrome 2 2 240
- Straphanthin 276 277
- Sublingual plexus 165
- Submaxillary ganglion 160
- Substantia gelatinosa Rolan in 150 185 190 199
- Sudden death 6 12 24 2 3/
- Superficial cardiac plexus 149 157 163
- Superior laryngeal nerve 172
  - connection with sympathetics 181
- Superior cardiac sympathetic nerve connection with phrenic nerve 225
- Superior cardiac sympathetic nerve and ganglion 143-146 (see Chapter XII)
- Surgical treatment 300
  - depressor nerve cut 30
  - paravertebral block 30
  - posterior cardiac nerves interrupted 306
  - rhizotomy (posterior spinal roots) 307
  - thoracic ganglia removed 306
- Sweating 34 64 281
  - cholinergic character 64
- Sympathetic (adrenergic) 2 19 23 64
- Sympathectomy 303
- Sympathetic cardiac innervation (Chapter XII) 137
  - afferent cardioaortic 152
  - afferent sympathetic cardiac fibers 149
  - ansa Vieussens 145
  - cardiac plexuses 163
  - cardioaortic efferent 153
  - cephalic sympathetic (efferent) 161
  - connections with vagus 160
  - efferent sympathetic cardiac 153
  - hypothalamic cardiac fibers 166
  - posterior sympathetic fibers 148 203 306
  - pulmonary plexuses 165
  - Vagus nerve 145 157
  - vertebral plexus 151
  - Wrisberg cardiac ganglion 163
- Sympathetic and parasympathetic anastomoses 170 146 148 180 181
- Anginal pain 137
- Sympathism 74
- Synaptic articulation 312

## Referred anginal pain—Cont

- spasm of throat 207
- spinal accessory nerve 208
- spinothalamic tract 191
- stomach 208
- stump postoperative 211
- subacromial bursa 217
- substantia gelatinosa Rolandi 185 190 196 199
- sympathetic nerve 196 (*see* Autonomic nervous system)
- sympathetic pathways (*see* Autonomic nervous system)
- synaptic junctions common 217
- tenth (vagus) nerve head 204 207
- testis 218
- thyroidectomy 207
- thyroid plexus 207
- tooth carious 211
- trapezius muscle 201 289
- ulnar distribution 223
- umbilicus 217
- uncommon distribution 192 193 201
- vagal afferent route 196
- vagal motor nerves palate pharynx trachea esophagus lungs 201
- vagal nerves 196
- vagal sensory nerves to pharynx 201
- vagus pathway 207
- vertebral plexus 203
- visceral afferent fibers spinal entry 214
  - warning signal 24 233 289
- white ramus 144 148 190 191 203

## Referred nonanginal pain 214 221

## Reflex axon 62

- Bainbridge 102
- coronary constriction 37 283
- coronary pulmonary 58
- coronary vessels 37
- labyrinth 103
- Löwen 90
- McDowall 102
- peripheral 103
- pharynx 39
- Snellen 90
- Sokolow 62 203
- vagal coronary constriction 36 283
- venous intrinsic 102

## Rheumatic heart disease 226

## Rhizotomy 307

## Right recurrent laryngeal nerve 169 174

## Ritter Valsalva reaction 207

Roots dorsal (*see* Dorsal roots)

## Salt free diet 291 292

## Salt restriction 290 291

## Semilunar ganglion Vth nerve 160

## Simulations anginal pain 221

- abdominal disorders 226
- acute gallbladder disease 226
- adrenalin 229
- anemias 229
- aorta aneurysm 225
- aorta distended 225
- aortic aneurysm dissecting 225
- aortic regurgitation 225
- aortic ring dilated 225
- aortitis luetica 225
- arsenic 228
- arteriovenous anastomosis 225
- asphyxia 229
- auricular fibrillation 226
- auricular flutter 226
- auricular tachycardia 226
- brachial neuritis 223 224
- biliary duct disease 230
- bowel obstruction 226
- caffeine 229
- cardiovascular conditions
  - nonanginous 225
- cervical rib neuritis 223
- circulatory neurasthenia 231
- deltoid 222
- diabetes mellitus 230
- diaphragm affections 221
- diaphragm herniation 225
- duodenal perforation acute 226
- emotional states 230
- encephalitis 230
- endocrine disorders 229
- esophageal herniation 223 224 227
- face 225
- gastralgia 221
- gout 221 223 230
- Graves disease 229
- head 225
- Herpes Zoster 218 222
- hyperchlorhydria 221
- infarction organs other than heart 226
- insulin 229
- intermittent claudication in pulmonary vessel 221 225



- Syncope 17 24  
 carotid sinus 99  
 Syphilis 296
- Tachycardia 28 29 278 279  
 Temperature regulations 19 68 71  
 Tenth cranial nerve (vagus) 37 69 169-180  
 Thalamus 81 243  
 Therapeutic paradox ' (Wile), 297  
 Thiomerin 293  
 Thoracic branches vagal 1/4  
 Thoracic nerves 139  
 Thrombophlebitis obliterans 228  
 Thyroid plexus 175 1/8 180  
 Thyroid diuretic 294  
 Tobacco 277  
 Todesgefühl 18  
 Tourniquets 290  
 in shock 2/8  
 Treatment 271  
 acute heart failure 284  
 angina pectoris (coronary insufficiency)  
 acute episodes 271  
 angina pectoris pain 272  
 cardiovascular syphilis 296  
 chronic states 298  
 congestive heart failure 290  
 diuretics 292  
 dyspnea 289  
 gastrointestinal complications 295 296  
 insomnia 287  
 metabolic disorders 295  
 morphine 272 273 274  
 myocardial infarction acute 272  
 anticoagulant therapy 282  
 arrhythmias 278  
 blood pressure change 280  
 cardiovascular complications 281 292  
 pain 2/4  
 shock 276  
 spastic phenomena 281  
 nausea 286  
 pain 289  
 pulmonary edema 294  
 psychic disturbances 290  
 sweating 297  
 Tympanic plexus 160
- Umbilicus anginal pain referred 217  
 Urea, 292
- Vagal cardiac supply 169  
 depressor nerve 1/0 182 183  
 Vagal connections 176-1/9  
 Vagal efferent neurons 71 169  
 Vagal meningeal branch dura mater 1/2  
 Vagal nuclei see Nucleus 169 1/1 172  
 Vagal trunk 169-174  
 ganglia 169 1/2  
 Vagus nerve 169 1/1 1/5 207  
 Valentine's nerve 146 163  
 fourth sympathetic cervical 146 164  
 Vascularization (artificial) heart 312  
 Vasomotor disturbances 35 36 3/ 280  
 Venesection 294  
 Venous reflexes 102  
 Ventricular failure 35 36 284  
 Ventricular fibrillation 36 3/ 2/9 290  
 Ventricular standstill 2/9 280  
 Ventricular tachycardia 2/9  
 Vertebral nerve 304  
 Vertigo 20 2/2 284  
 Visceral afferent nerves 185  
 Visceral afferent pathway multiple 212  
 Visceral pain abolished 303  
 Viscero-pannicular reflex 213  
 Vital capacity myocardial damage 29
- Water metabolism 112  
 White ram 144 14/ 198 191 203  
 Wisberg ganglion 163
- Warming 28

